

CALENDAR 2026



RHODES UNIVERSITY
Where leaders learn





RHODES UNIVERSITY

Where leaders learn

VISION AND MISSION STATEMENT

VISION

Our vision is to be foremost in the generation and advancement of locally responsive and globally engaged knowledge that seeks to create a just and sustainable society.

MISSION

Our mission is to provide transformative education, rigorous scholarship and research that

- seeks to produce knowledge that advances the frontiers of science, human understanding and wisdom.
- cultivates knowledgeable and skilled graduates, innovative and critical problem-solvers; caring and engaged citizens; responsible, courageous and ethical leaders.
- enables and drives environmental sustainability, equitable and inclusive social and economic development based on respectful and mutually beneficial partnerships with diverse communities.

© 2026 Rhodes University, Makhanda, South Africa

All rights reserved

ISSN 1018-774X

Cover photograph: Rhodes University

Cover design and typesetting: WalkerDigital.co.za

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa
by Cadar Printers, Port Elizabeth

RHODES UNIVERSITY

MAKHANDA • SOUTH AFRICA

CALENDAR 2026

THE FRONTISPIECE

*The University motto ‘Vis, virtus, veritas’, means
‘Strength, courage, truth’.*

Heraldic description of the arms

Or on a Pile Sable an Open Book inscribed with the words ‘Sapientiam Exquiret Sapiens’ between three Escallops of the first. On a Chief Argent a Lion passant Gules between two Thistles slipped and leaved proper. And for the crest a Wreath of the Colours upon a Rock the Figure of a Man mounted on a Horse representing ‘energy’ all Argent.

Derivation of the coat of arms

Black and gold are the livery colours of the Graham family. The pile (inverted triangle) is characteristic of the Graham coat of arms, as are the escallops (shells), an emblem of pilgrimage. The lion and two thistles were taken from the coat of arms granted posthumously to Cecil John Rhodes. The crest is a representation of the famous statue by Watts which forms part of the Rhodes Memorial in Cape Town. The open book is a common feature of the arms of a college or university e.g. Oxford University.

Frontispiece: NB Hodnett

Table of Contents

Vision and Mission Statement	iii
Useful Addresses, Telephone and Telefax Numbers	4
Diary 2026	6
A Brief History of the University	23
Dedication - Academic Freedom	29
Constitution of the University	30
Officers of the University, Honorary Members & Distinguished Awards Recipients	31
Admission and Registration of Students	45
General Rules for Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates	48
Faculty of Commerce	63
Faculty of Education	86
Faculty of Humanities	110
Faculty of Law	125
Faculty of Pharmacy	131
Faculty of Science	137
Accounting	151
Anthropology	156
Biochemistry, Microbiology and Bioinformatics	159
Biotechnology Innovation Centre	165
Botany	167
Rhodes Business School	171
Chemistry	181
Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL)	186
Computer Science	195
Drama	200
Economics and Economic History	203
Education	213
Environmental Science	225
Fine Art	231
Geography	237
Geology	242
History	246
Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE)	249
Ichthyology and Fisheries Science	252
Information Systems	257
Journalism and Media Studies	261
Languages and Literatures (School of)	266
African Language Studies	266
Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies	273
Chinese Studies	275
Classical Studies	277
Creative Writing	281

French & Francophone Studies	283
German Studies	286
Law Faculty	288
Linguistics & Applied Language Studies	300
Literary Studies In English	304
Management	307
Mathematics	314
Music and Musicology	320
Pharmacy	326
Philosophy	331
Physics And Electronics	334
Political and International Studies	338
Psychology	341
Sociology	348
Statistics	354
Zoology and Entomology	360
Research Institutes and Units	366
The Albany Museum	366
Amazwi South African Museum of Literature	369
Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI)	371
Centre for Social Development (CSD)	372
Dictionary Unit for South African English (DSAE)	381
Institute for Environmental Biotechnology (EBRU)	382
Electron Microscope Unit	383
The Institute for the Study of the Englishes of Africa (ISEA)	384
Institute of Social and Economic Research	389
The Institute for Water Research (IWR)	392
Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project (RUMEP)	395
South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB)	400
Southern Ocean Group	406
Tebello Nyokong Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation.....	407
The Rhodes University Library and Information Services (RULIS)	409
Cory Library for Humanities Research	412
Administrative Senior Staff	413
Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates	418
The Residences	421
Student Disciplinary Code	427
Student Affairs: The Sports Council	452
Student Affairs: The Oppidan Union	453
Students' Representative Council	455
Constitution for Student Governance	459
General Information	485
Fees for 2026	490

USEFUL ADDRESSES, TELEPHONE AND TELEFAX NUMBERS

Correspondence with the University should be addressed to:

**Rhodes University PO Box 94
Makhanda 6140**

Completed applications should be sent to:

**Student Bureau Rhodes University
PO Box 94, Makhanda 6140**

NB All mail for students in residence should be addressed to the house and hall concerned. See index for "Mail to Residences"

**UNIVERSITY TELEPHONE EXCHANGE
(046) 603 8111** (for all departments not listed)

**ACADEMIC ADMINISTRATION
(046) 603 8213**

STUDENT BUREAU

(046) 603 8276

*for: Admissions, Residences, Financial Aid,
Examinations and Graduation*

Advice on Careers (046) 603 7076

Ms S Bikwe

Campus Health Centre (046) 603 8523

Sister-in-Charge: Ms H Ferreira

Counselling Centre (046) 603 7077

**Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic & Student
Affairs (046) 603 8149**

Professor M Monnapula-Mapesela

**Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research, Innovation
& Strategic Partnerships (046) 603 8055**

Dr N Mzilikazi

**Director: Communications and Advancement
(046) 603 8570**

Director: Equity and Institutional Culture

(046) 603 7474

Dr C Kelly

Director: Finance (046) 603 8123

Mr G Erasmus

Director: Division of People and Culture

(046) 603 8792

Mrs S Robertson

Director: Information and Technology Services

(046) 603 7560

Ms N Ripley

**Director: Institutional Research Planning and
Quality Promotions (046) 603 8060**

Dr R Nnadozie

Director: Division of Global Engagement

(046) 603 8217

Ms O Quinlan

Director: Library Services (046) 603 8079

Ms N Danster

Director: Vice-Chancellor's Office

(046) 603 8529

Ms S Smailes

Director: Division of Student Services &

Development (046) 603 8181

Dr P Tondi

Student Fees: (046) 603 8165

Manager: Mr E Walters

Sports Clubs and Facilities (046) 603 7375

Manager: Sports Administration

Mr M Sigila

Students' Representative Council

(046) 603 7080

Transport Office (046) 603 8234

Vice-Chancellor's Office (046) 603 8148
Academic Departments (046) 603 8111

DEANS OF THE FACULTIES:

Humanities

Professor S Magadla
(046) 603 8812

Science

Professor J Dames
(046) 603 7232

Law

Professor M Karels
(046) 603 7256

Education

Professor E Rosenberg
(046) 603 7335

Commerce

Professor M Mohapeloa
(046) 603 7500

Pharmacy

Professor S Khamanga
(046) 603 8381/603 8382

TELEFAX NUMBERS

Academic Administration:

(046) 603 8104

Conference Office:

(046) 603 8962

Library:

(046) 603 7310

Student Bureau:

(046) 603 8300

Student Fees:

(046) 603 7019

See also the Rhodes University web page:
<http://www.ru.ac.za> for updates.

RHODES UNIVERSITY DIARY 2026

JANUARY 2026				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Thursday		NEW YEAR'S DAY	
2	Friday			
3	Saturday			
4	Sunday			
5	Monday		UNIVERSITY OPENS	
6	Tuesday			
7	Wednesday	14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
8	Thursday	14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
9	Friday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
10	Saturday			
11	Sunday			
12	Monday		POSTGRADUATE REGISTRATION OPENS	
13	Tuesday			
14	Wednesday			
15	Thursday			
16	Friday		INITIAL FEE DEADLINE FOR RETURNING STUDENTS	
17	Saturday			
18	Sunday			
19	Monday		SUPPLEMENTARY (2025) EXAMINATIONS COMMENCE	
		08:30	New Academics Orientation Programme	Room 20 ELRC
		14:15	RUMEP	Room 1 St Peter's Building
20	Tuesday	08:30	Academic Orientation Programme for New Lecturers	Room 20 ELRC
		14:15	Health and Safety Committee	Council Chambers
21	Wednesday	08:30	New Academics Orientation Programme	Room 20 ELRC
		14:15	Wellness Committee	Council Chambers
		18:00	Residence Heads Discussion Group	Council Chambers
22	Thursday	08:30	New Academics Orientation Programme	Room 20 ELRC
		09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III

23	Friday		INITIAL FEE DEADLINE FOR FIRST-YEAR STUDENTS	
			FINAL DAY FOR REGISTRATION FOR RETURNING UNDERGRADUATE STUDENTS	
		08:30	New Academics Orientation Programme	Room 20 ELRC
24	Saturday			
25	Sunday			
26	Monday	14:15	CSD Board Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
27	Tuesday	09:00	Vacancy Committee (VAC)	Council Chambers
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
28	Wednesday	08:30	Combined SAM/ALF	Council Chambers
		14:15	IT Steering Committee	Council Chambers
29	Thursday	12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
30	Friday		SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATIONS (2025) END	
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable	CHERTL Seminar Room
		18:00	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
31	Saturday		ON-CAMPUS REGISTRATION FOR FIRST-TIME ENTERING STUDENTS	
FEBRUARY				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Sunday		ON-CAMPUS REGISTRATION FOR FIRST-TIME ENTERING STUDENTS	
		16:00	VC & SRC PRESIDENT OPENING ADDRESS	1820 Settlers Monument
2	Monday		FINAL DAY FOR ON-CAMPUS REGISTRATION FOR FIRST-TIME ENTERING STUDENTS	
			ACADEMIC ORIENTATION WEEK COMMENCES	
3	Tuesday	10:00	ISEA AGM	Room 1 St Peter's Building
		14:15	Enterprise Risk Management Committee	Council Chambers
4	Wednesday	14:15	Biosafety Committee	Council Chambers
5	Thursday		ACADEMIC ORIENTATION WEEK ENDS	
			HUMANITIES CURRICULUM APPROVAL	
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
6	Friday		Curriculum approval for ALL faculties	
		14:15	Board of Residences	Council Chambers
7	Saturday		CURRICULUM APPROVAL FOR RETURNING STUDENTS IN THE FACULTIES OF COMMERCE, SCIENCE, AND HUMANITIES	

8	Sunday			
9	Monday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES COMMENCE	
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee	Mpati House SRR
		15:00	Conference/Vacation Accommodation Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
10	Tuesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC): Size & Shape Sub-Committee	Council Chambers
11	Wednesday	08:30	SAM	Council Chambers
		12:00	Naming Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	RUMED Board of Trustees	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Research Committee	Council Chambers
12	Thursday	14:15	Academic Programmes & Curriculum Quality Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
13	Friday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee	Council Chambers
14	Saturday			
15	Sunday			
16	Monday	08:30	Budget Executive Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Education Faculty Board	Council Chambers
17	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board	Council Chambers
18	Wednesday		LAST DAY FOR SUBMISSION OF FINAL E-COPY THESES FOR MASTERS AND DOCTORAL CANDIDATES FOR GRADUATION IN MARCH 2026	
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board	Council Chambers
19	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		09:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board	Council Chambers
		14:15	Science Faculty Board	Council Chambers
20	Friday	14:15	Law Faculty Board	Council Chambers
21	Saturday			
22	Sunday			
23	Monday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC)	Council Chambers
24	Tuesday	14:15	Student Services Council	Council Chambers
25	Wednesday	14:15	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
26	Thursday	08:30	ALF	Council Chambers
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee	Rhodes Business School

27	Friday	09:00	Job Evaluation Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	RU Environmental Committee	Council Chambers
28	Saturday			
MARCH				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Sunday			
2	Monday	11:00	Middle Management Forum	Council Chambers
		14:15	Institutional Forum (IF)	Council Chambers
3	Tuesday	14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC)	Alumni House Boardroom
4	Wednesday	14:15	Language Committee	Council Chambers
5	Thursday	14:15	Disability Committee	Council Chambers
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee	Old Mutual Pavilion
6	Friday	11:00	Orientation Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
7	Saturday			
8	Sunday			
9	Monday	09:00	Deans Forum	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Gender Action Forum	Council Chambers
		18:00	Residence Heads Discussion Group	Council Chambers
10	Tuesday	14:15	Senate Executive Committee (SENEX)	Council Chambers
11	Wednesday	08:30	SAM	Council Chambers
		14:15	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee	Council Chambers
12	Thursday	10:00	Remuneration Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
13	Friday	14:15	Research Ethics Forum	Council Chambers
14	Saturday			
15	Sunday			
16	Monday	14:15	HODs Forum	Council Chambers
17	Tuesday	11:00	Academic Freedom Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	RUMED Audit Committee	Alumni House Boardroom
18	Wednesday	08:30	Combined SAM/ALF	Council Chambers
19	Thursday	09:00	Vacancy Committee (VAC)	Council Chambers
		09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	Alumni House Boardroom

20	Friday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES END	
		14:15	Senate	Council Chambers
		18:00	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
21	Saturday		HUMAN RIGHTS DAY	
			MID-SEMESTER VACATION COMMENCES	
22	Sunday			
23	Monday	09:00	Finance & General Purposes Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	RUMEP	Room 1 St Peter's Building
24	Tuesday	09:00	Audit & Risk Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
		14:15	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
25	Wednesday		GRADUATION	
26	Thursday		GRADUATION	
27	Friday		GRADUATION	
28	Saturday			
29	Sunday			
30	Monday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES COMMENCE	
31	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
APRIL				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Wednesday			
2	Thursday			
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
3	Friday		GOOD FRIDAY	
4	Saturday		HOLY SATURDAY	
5	Sunday		EASTER SUNDAY	
6	Monday		FAMILY DAY	
7	Tuesday	09:00	RUMED Board of Trustees	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
8	Wednesday	08:00	Board of Governors	Hybrid/Council Chambers
9	Thursday	14:15	Community Engagement Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee	Mpati House SRR
10	Friday	14:15	Research Committee	Council Chambers
11	Saturday			

12	Sunday			
13	Monday	10:00	Enterprise Risk Management Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Disciplinary Committee	Council Chambers
14	Tuesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC): Size & Shape Sub-Committee	Council Chambers
15	Wednesday	14:15	Health and Safety Committee	Council Chambers
16	Thursday	10:00	Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Lecture Venues Sub-committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
17	Friday	14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
18	Saturday			
19	Sunday			
20	Monday	14:15	Senate Standing Committee on Plagiarism	Council Chambers
		14:15	CSD Board Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
21	Tuesday	14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture Committee	Council Chambers
22	Wednesday	08:30	SAM	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board	Council Chambers
23	Thursday	14:15	Education Faculty Board	Council Chambers
24	Friday		SUBMISSION OF MID-YEAR EXAMINATION QUESTION PAPERS (INCLUDING NOVEMBER 2026 SUPPLEMENTARY PAPERS)	
		14:15	Law Faculty Board	Council Chambers
25	Saturday			
26	Sunday		LAST DAY FOR SOCIAL EVENTS ON CAMPUS	
27	Monday		FREEDOM DAY	
28	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
29	Wednesday			
30	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
MAY				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	FRIDAY		WORKERS DAY	
2	Saturday			
3	Sunday			
4	Monday	08:30	ALF	Council Chambers
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board	Council Chambers

5	Tuesday	09:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board	Council Chambers
		14:15	Science Faculty Board	Council Chambers
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee	Old Mutual Pavilion
6	Wednesday	14:15	ISEA Exco	Room 1 St Peter's Building
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee	Council Chambers
7	Thursday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC)	Council Chambers
8	Friday	10:00	Nominations & Governance Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
9	Saturday		RHODES OPEN DAY	
10	Sunday		Mother's Day	
11	Monday	09:00	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee	Council Chambers
12	Tuesday	08:30	Budget Executive Committee	Council Chambers
13	Wednesday	08:30	Combined SAM/ALF	Council Chambers
		11:30	Senate Examinations Committee	Registrar's Office
		14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee	Council Chambers
14	Thursday	12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
		14:15	CSD Board Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
15	Friday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES END	
			POSTGRADUATE FUNDING FAIR	
		09:00	Finance & General Purposes Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		18:00	Residence Heads Discussion Group	Council Chambers
16	Saturday		SWOT PERIOD COMMENCES	
17	Sunday			
18	Monday	14:15	Institutional Forum (IF)	Council Chambers
19	Tuesday	14:15	Senate Executive Committee (SENEX)	Council Chambers
20	Wednesday		SWOT PERIOD ENDS	
		09:30	Pension Fund	
		13:30	Provident Fund	
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable	CHERTL Seminar Room
21	Thursday	09:00	Deans Forum	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Biosafety Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
22	Friday		MID-YEAR EXAMINATIONS COMMENCE	
		11:00	Financial Aid Sub-committee	Registrar's Office
23	Saturday			

24	Sunday			
25	Monday	09:00	Audit & Risk Committee of Council	Council Chambers
26	Tuesday	09:00	Vacancy Committee (VAC)	Council Chambers
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
27	Wednesday	11:00	Middle Management Forum	Council Chambers
28	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Gender Action Forum	Council Chambers
29	Friday	14:15	Senate	Council Chambers
		18:00	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
30	Saturday			
31	Sunday			

JUNE

DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Monday	14:15	Division of Student Services Council	Council Chambers
2	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
3	Wednesday	08:30	SAM	Council Chambers
		14:15	Library Committee	Level 4 Meeting Room Main Library
		16:30	Long Service Awards	
4	Thursday	09:00	Honorary Degrees Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	HODs Forum	Council Chambers
		16:30	Alty Awards	
5	Friday	9:30	Financial Aid Committee	Council Chambers
		12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
		14:15	RUMEP	Room 1 St Peter's Building
6	Saturday			
7	Sunday			
8	Monday	11:00	Budget Strategy/FSTT	Council Chambers
		14:15	RU Environmental Committee	Council Chambers
9	Tuesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC): Size & Shape Sub-Committee	Council Chambers
10	Wednesday	14:15	IT Steering Committee	Council Chambers
11	Thursday	10:00	Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee	Mpati House SRR
		15:00	Conference/Vacation Accommodation Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom

			MID-YEAR EXAMINATIONS END	
12	Friday	09:00	Constitution Committee	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
13	Saturday		MID-YEAR VACATION COMMENCES	
14	Sunday			
15	Monday	09:00	RUMED Audit Committee	Alumni House Boardroom
		12:00	RUMED Annual General Meeting	Council Chambers
16	Tuesday		YOUTH DAY	
17	Wednesday	14:15	Lecture Venue Sub-committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
18	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		09:00	Job Evaluation Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Disability Committee	Council Chambers
19	Friday	14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC)	Alumni House Boardroom
20	Saturday			
21	Sunday		Father's Day	
22	Monday	14:15	Globalisation Committee	Council Chambers
23	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	Alumni House Boardroom
24	Wednesday	14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
25	Thursday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
26	Friday			
27	Saturday			
28	Sunday			
29	Monday			
30	Tuesday		FINAL DATE FOR APPLICATIONS FOR FIRST-TIME ENRY INTO MASTERS AND PhD PROGRAMMES	
			FINAL DATE FOR MID-YEAR MASTERS AND PhD THESES FOR PRO-RATA FEES	
JULY				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Wednesday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
2	Thursday			
3	Friday	08:00	Board of Governors	Hybrid/Council Chambers
4	Saturday			
5	Sunday			

6	Monday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES COMMENCE	
		09:00	Employment Equity & Skills Development Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC)	Council Chambers
7	Tuesday	14:15	CSD Board Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board	Council Chambers
8	Wednesday	14:15	Education Faculty Board	Council Chambers
9	Thursday	09:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board	Council Chambers
		14:15	Science Faculty Board	Council Chambers
10	Friday	14:15	Law Faculty Board	Council Chambers
11	Saturday			
12	Sunday			
13	Monday	14:15	Commerce Faculty Board	Council Chambers
14	Tuesday	10:00	Remuneration Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee	Council Chambers
15	Wednesday	08:30	ALF	Council Chambers
		14:15	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
16	Thursday	14:15	Research Committee	Council Chambers
17	Friday	11:00	Middle Management Forum	
18	Saturday		NELSON MANDELA DAY (OBSERVED)	
19	Sunday			
20	Monday	14:15	Community Engagement Committee	Council Chambers
21	Tuesday	14:15	Enterprise Risk Management Committee	Council Chambers
22	Wednesday	14:15	Health and Safety Committee	Council Chambers
23	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
24	Friday		PATH TO POSTGRAD EVENT	
25	Saturday			
26	Sunday			
27	Monday	10:00	Budget Strategy/FSTT	Council Chambers
		14:15	IT Steering Committee	Council Chambers
28	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee	Council Chambers
29	Wednesday	08:30	Combined SAM/ALF	Council Chambers
		14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture Committee	Council Chambers
		18:00	Residence Heads Discussion Group	Council Chambers

30	Thursday	09:00	Vacancy Committee (VAC)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC)	Alumni House Boardroom
31	Friday	14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable	CHERTL Seminar Room
		18:00	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
AUGUST				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Saturday			
2	Sunday			
3	Monday	08:30	Budget Executive Committee	Council Chambers
4	Tuesday	14:15	Biosafety Committee	Council Chambers
5	Wednesday	14:15	Globalization Committee	Council Chambers
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee	Old Mutual Pavilion
6	Thursday	12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
7	Friday	14:15	Senate Executive Committee (SENEX)	Council Chambers
8	Saturday			
9	Sunday		NATIONAL WOMEN'S DAY	
10	Monday		NATIONAL WOMEN'S DAY PUBLIC HOLIDAY	
11	Tuesday	14:15	ISEA ExCo	Room 1 St Peter's Building
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
12	Wednesday	15:00	Conference/Vacation Accommodation Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
13	Thursday	14:15	Disciplinary Committee	Council Chambers
14	Friday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES END	
		14:15	Wellness Committee	Council Chambers
15	Saturday		MID-SEMESTER VACATION BEGINS	
16	Sunday			
17	Monday			
18	Tuesday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
19	Wednesday	08:30	SAM	Council Chambers
		09:00	Postgraduate Conference & 3MT	
20	Thursday	09:00	Postgraduate Conference & 3MT	
21	Friday	09:00	Postgraduate Conference & 3MT	
22	Saturday			
23	Sunday			
24	Monday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES COMMENCE	
		14:15	Research Ethics Forum	Council Chambers

		09:00	Deans Forum	Alumni House Boardroom
25	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
		14:15	Institutional Forum (IF)	Council Chambers
26	Wednesday	14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
27	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Language Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
28	Friday	14:15	Senate	Council Chambers
29	Saturday			
30	Sunday			
31	Monday		FINAL DATE FOR REGISTRATION OF FIRST TIME ENTERING MATERS AND DOCTORAL STUDENTS	
		11:00	Naming Committee	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	HODs Forum	Council Chambers
SEPTEMBER				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Tuesday	11:00	RUMED Board of Trustees	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Constitution Committee	Alumni House Boardroom
2	Wednesday	14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC): Size & Shape Sub-Committee	Council Chambers
3	Thursday	09:00	Finance & General Purposes Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	RUMEP	Room 1 St Peter's Building
4	Friday		SUBMISSION OF FINAL END-OF-YEAR EXAMINATION QUESTION PAPERS (INCLUDING NOVEMBER 2026 SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATION PAPERS)	
		09:00	Audit & Risk Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Law Higher Degrees Committee	Mpati House SRR
5	Saturday		Convocation	Eden Grove Red
6	Sunday			
7	Monday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee	Council Chambers
8	Tuesday	14:15	Research Committee	Council Chambers
9	Wednesday		LAST DAY OF SUBMISSION OF FINAL E-COPY THESES FOR MASTERS AND DOCTORAL CANDIDATES FOR GRADUATION IN OCTOBER 2026	
		08:30	ALF	Council Chambers
		14:30	Disability Committee	Council Chambers

10	Thursday	14:15	Academic Programmes & Curriculum Quality Committee	Council Chambers
11	Friday	14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
12	Saturday			
13	Sunday			
14	Monday	11:00	Financial Aid Sub-Committee	Registrar's Office
		14:15	Gender Action Forum	Council Chambers
		15:00	Cory Library Advisory Board	Level 4 Meeting Room, Main Library
		17:00	Sports Council Executive Committee	Old Mutual Pavilion
15	Tuesday	08:30	Personal Promotions Committee	Council Chambers
16	Wednesday	08:30	Personal Promotions Committee	Council Chambers
17	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Orientation Committee	Council Chambers
18	Friday	10:00	Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	RU Environmental Committee	Seminar Room III
19	Saturday			
20	Sunday			
21	Monday	09:00	Board of Residences	Council Chambers
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
		14:15	Education Faculty Board	Council Chambers
22	Tuesday	14:15	Science Faculty Board	Council Chambers
23	Wednesday	09:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Board	Council Chambers
		18:00	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
24	Thursday		HERITAGE DAY	
25	Friday			
26	Saturday		LAST DAY FOR SOCIAL EVENTS ON CAMPUS	
27	Sunday			
28	Monday	09:00	Vacancy Committee (VAC)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Law Faculty Board	Council Chambers
29	Tuesday	11:00	Special Employment Equity and Skills Development Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board	Council Chambers

30	Wednesday	11:00	Lecture Venues Sub-committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
		14:15	Division of Student Services Council	Council Chambers
		18:00	Residence Heads Discussion Group	Council Chambers
OCTOBER				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Thursday		UNDERGRADUATE LECTURES END	
		09:00	Budget Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Health and Safety Committee	Council Chambers
2	Friday		GRADUATION FOR MASTERS AND PhD GRADUATES	
			SWOT PERIOD COMMENCES	
3	Saturday			
4	Sunday			
5	Monday	11:00	Financial Aid Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Institutional Planning Committee (IPC)	Council Chambers
6	Tuesday	11:00	Senate Examinations Committee	Registrar's Office
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
7	Wednesday		SWOT PERIOD ENDS	
		08:30	Combined SAM/ALF	Council Chambers
		14:15	Academic Technologies Roundtable	Council Chambers
8	Thursday		YEAR-END EXAMINATIONS COMMENCE	
9	Friday	09:00	Nominations and Governance Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	CSD Board Meeting	Alumni House Boardroom
10	Saturday			
11	Sunday			
12	Monday	11:00	RUMED Board of Trustees	Alumni House Boardroom
		14:15	Division of Student Services and Development / Cluster Coordinator Meeting	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
13	Tuesday	14:15	Senate Executive Committee (SENEX)	Council Chambers
14	Wednesday	14:15	Institutional Forum (IF)	Council Chambers
15	Thursday	14:15	Senate Nominations Committee	Council Chambers
16	Friday	09:00	Budget Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
17	Saturday			
18	Sunday			

19	Monday		COMMENCEMENT OF SUBMISSION OF END OF YEAR RESULTS TO THE REGISTRAR'S DIVISION	
		08:30	Personal Promotions Appeal Committee	Council Chambers
20	Tuesday	09:00	Budget Executive Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Biosafety Committee	Council Chambers
21	Wednesday	09:30	Pension Fund	
		13:30	Provident Fund	
		14:15	RUMED Audit Committee	Alumni House Boardroom
22	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Library Committee	Level 4 Meeting Room, Main Library
23	Friday	14:15	Senate	Council Chambers
24	Saturday			
25	Sunday			
26	Monday	08:30	Board of Governors	Council Chambers
27	Tuesday	12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
28	Wednesday	14:15	Equity & Institutional Culture Committee	Council Chambers
29	Thursday	14:15	Language Committee	Council Chambers
30	Friday	09:00	Deans Forum	Council Chambers
31	Saturday			
NOVEMBER				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Sunday			
2	Monday	09:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Division of Student Services Council	Council Chambers
3	Tuesday	09:00	Audit and Risk Committee of Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
4	Wednesday	08:30	SAM	Council Chambers
		14:15	Community Engagement Committee	Council Chambers
5	Thursday		MAIN END OF YEAR EXAMINATIONS END	
		11:00	ISEA Board Meeting	Room 1 St Peter's Building
		14:15	Enterprise Risk Management Committee	Council Chambers
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Level 4 Meeting Room, Main Library
6	Friday	14:15	Honorary Degrees Committee	Council Chambers
7	Saturday			

8	Sunday			
9	Monday		FINAL DATE FOR AEG APPLICATIONS	
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom
10	Tuesday		FINAL DATE OF SUBMISSION OF YEAR-END RESULTS TO THE REGISTRAR	
11	Wednesday		FINAL DATE FOR RELEASE OF SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATION QUALIFICATIONS BY FACULTIES TO STUDENTS WHO QUALIFY	
12	Thursday	14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee	Rhodes Business School
13	Friday		2026 SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATIONS BEGIN	
		14:15	Senate	Council Chambers
14	Saturday			
15	Sunday			
16	Monday	09:00	Vacancy Committee (VAC)	Council Chambers
		15:00	Conference/Vacation Accommodation Forum	Alumni House Boardroom
17	Tuesday	09:00	Remuneration Committee of Council	Council Chambers
18	Wednesday			
19	Thursday	14:15	HODs Forum	Council Chambers
20	Friday	14:15	Middle Management Forum	Council Chambers
21	Saturday			
22	Sunday			
23	Monday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee	Eden Grove Seminar Room III
24	Tuesday	09:00	Job Evaluation Committee	Council Chambers
		12:30	Major Projects Committee (MPC)	
25	Wednesday			
26	Thursday		2026 SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATION END	
			CHERTL TEACHING & LEARNING SHOWCASE	
27	Friday	12:30	Management & Unions Consultative Forum Meeting	Council Chambers
28	Saturday			
29	Sunday			
30	Monday			
DECEMBER				
DATE	DAY	TIME	EVENT	VENUE
1	Tuesday		FINAL DATE FOR SUBMISSION OF SUPPLEMENTARY EXAMINATION RESULTS TO THE REGISTRAR	
2	Wednesday	10:00	Council	Council Chambers
		14:15	Human Research Ethics Committee (HREC)	Alumni House Boardroom

DIARY 2026

3	Thursday	09:00	Education Higher Degrees Committee & Education Faculty Research Ethics	
		14:15	Animal Research Ethics Committee (AREC)	Council Chambers
4	Friday		LAST DATE THAT MASTERS AND PhD THESES WILL BE PRESENTED AND SENT FOR EXAMINATION	
5	Saturday		FINAL DATE FOR RESULT PRINTOUT TO DEANS FOR ANALYSIS	
6	Sunday			
7	Monday	14:15	Humanities Faculty Research Ethics Committee (HF REC)	
8	Tuesday			
9	Wednesday	09:00	Pharmacy Faculty Board (confirmation of results)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Law Faculty Board (confirmation of results)	Council Chambers
10	Thursday	09:00	Science Faculty Board (confirmation of results)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Commerce Faculty Board (confirmation of results)	Council Chambers
11	Friday	09:00	Humanities Faculty Board (confirmation of results)	Council Chambers
		14:15	Education Faculty Board (confirmation of results)	Council Chambers
12	Saturday			
13	Sunday			
14	Monday			
15	Tuesday		University closes (P&C to confirm)	
16	Wednesday		DAY OF RECONCILIATION	
17	Thursday			
18	Friday			
19	Saturday		FINAL DATE FOR RELEASE OF RESULTS TO STUDENTS	
20	Sunday			
21	Monday			
22	Tuesday			
23	Wednesday			
24	Thursday			
25	Friday			
26	Saturday			
27	Sunday			
28	Monday			
29	Tuesday			
30	Wednesday			
31	Thursday			

A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY

Rhodes University's Early Years

The idea of establishing a university in the Eastern Cape was first put forward in the 1880s. In the early 1900s, a small group formed *an ad hoc* committee to develop such an institution, using the working title of the Eastern Province University College. They changed this to Rhodes University College to leverage funding from the Rhodes Trust, which administered the will of Cecil Rhodes, who had died in 1902. The Trust subsequently granted £50,000 towards the founding of Rhodes University College.

Rhodes University College began as an affiliate of the University of the Cape of Good Hope, commencing operations in July 1904 with approximately fifty students, the vast majority of whom were men and all of whom were white. Classes were initially held in the St Andrew's College buildings. Early in 1905, operations moved to the University's current site, the old Drostdy grounds. For the first five decades or so of the University's history, student culture was, for the most part, genteel, constrained by Victorian codes of behaviour and strict rules and regulations. Social life revolved around tightly controlled dances, respectable courting, and walks on Mountain Drive. Extracurricular cultural activity centred on the debating, musical and dramatic societies. Sport gained momentum, with rugby at the forefront.

The University operated as a racially segregated institution for the first 70 years of its existence. There was a slight relaxation of this stance in the 1940s. Benjamin Mahlasela was appointed in 1942 to teach isiXhosa to first-year students – he would go on to serve the University for thirty-five years. In 1947, Rhodes began admitting black postgraduate students to courses not offered at the University of Fort Hare.

Rhodes University in the early apartheid era

Rhodes became an independent university in 1951 (having been affiliated with UNISA since 1918) and took on Fort Hare as an affiliate. The first four decades of Rhodes's existence as an independent university coincided with the apartheid era, which saw a growing polarisation between the defenders and opponents of apartheid in the university community.

While teaching was still considered the primary activity, there was evidence that research, writing, and artistic output were gaining momentum in the 1950s and 1960s. The scientist to achieve the greatest international renown at the time was JLB Smith, who identified a mysterious fish caught in East London as a coelacanth, believed to have been extinct for millions of years. Among other prominent scientists at Rhodes from the 1950s and 1960s were the physicist Jack Gledhill and the zoologist Brian Allanson. The most notable figures in the Humanities during this time included Guy Butler of the Department of English and André P Brink in the Department of Afrikaans. Guy Butler was the driving force behind the founding of the Rhodes Theatre and the Drama Department, the School of Journalism and Media Studies, the Institute for the Study of English in Africa (ISEA), the National English Literary Museum (NELM, now known as Amazwi), and the National Arts Festival. André P. Brink was the most prolific writer to have taught at Rhodes – the author of over twenty novels, in addition to his critical writings, plays, and translated works.

Research productivity was enhanced by work undertaken at various institutes, including the Leather Industries Research Institute, the JLB Smith Institute (later becoming a national facility known as the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity), the Institute for the Study of English in Africa (ISEA) and the Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER). In 1978, the University became home to the International Library of

African Music (ILAM), comprising a superb collection of African musical recordings and instruments that had been built up over decades, initially by Hugh Tracey and his son, Andrew.

In 1959, the National Party government passed legislation that ended the connection with the University of Fort Hare. This led to protests by students and staff at Rhodes. Fort Hare students who had registered during the affiliation years were permitted to complete their Rhodes degrees. These students were capped at graduation ceremonies held in the Rhodes Great Hall in 1960, 1961 and 1962. Among these graduands were Chris Hani and Griffiths Mxenge.

Unable to escape the dictates of apartheid, political controversies arose in the 1960s. In 1962, a notorious decision was taken to award an honorary doctorate to the state president, CR Swart, an apartheid hard-liner who had previously, as Minister of Justice, cracked down ruthlessly on anti-apartheid activists.

Then, in 1967, the Rhodes authorities refused to allow black student delegates to stay in university residences while attending the annual congress of the National Union of South African Students (NUSAS). Among the delegates was Steve Biko, who went on to establish the South African Students' Organisation (SASO). This new black student organisation would become the pioneer of the Black Consciousness Movement in the country. In 2009, Rhodes took the opportunity to name its student union building after Stephen Bantu Biko, honouring his legacy.

In contrast, the 1950s and 1960s represented a golden era in the history of Rhodes's sport. Some outstanding cricketers passed through the university – among them John Waite and Colin Bland. There were also fine rugby players, squash players and athletes who studied at Rhodes in this era. Great success was achieved by Rhodes's swimmers in the 1960s, with several performing exceptionally well at a national level.

Student life at Rhodes continued to be governed by strict residence rules and dress codes. For instance, mixed parties involving men and women students still required the vice-chancellor's permission. Male students were required to wear jackets and ties to classes and the library. As the more relaxed, permissive culture of the 1960s filtered into Rhodes, students began to rail against what they saw as outdated regulations and restrictions. Calls for reform culminated in a student civil disobedience campaign in 1971, during which students deliberately violated residence rules and dress codes.

The late apartheid era

The last two decades of the apartheid era, from the mid-1970s to the mid-1990s, were years when the National Party government had to contend with both growing international pressure and rising internal protest and resistance. The government devised a twofold response – mild reform combined with ever harsher repression and a ruthless crackdown on its opponents. Both trends had an impact on Rhodes University, giving rise to growing turbulence and polarisation on campus.

The first government reform to have an impact on Rhodes was the slow, limited process of desegregation. From the early 1970s, black students could apply for permits to register for courses not offered at black universities at white universities. In 1983, this policy was replaced by a quota system, which allowed white universities to admit black students regardless of their chosen courses, but with a limit on the number of admissions.

The first Rhodes students to register under the permit system mostly took courses in Journalism or Pharmacy, neither of which was offered at black universities at the time. In 1976, Rhodes admitted seven black students; by 1985, black students constituted 18% of the University's total student population.

Rhodes further expanded its engagement with the broader Eastern Cape community with the opening of its East London satellite campus in February 1981. Initially offering only BCom courses, the East London division tailored its operations to the needs of the local business sector. It later ran Humanities and Education courses, before being transferred to Fort Hare in 2004 during the government's restructuring of the tertiary education sector.

The post-apartheid era

As South Africa moved into the post-apartheid era in the 1990s, Rhodes University, like other South African universities, faced new challenges and pressures. The ANC-led government imposed demands on universities, including that they expand their student enrolments, reduce their financial dependence on government subsidies, become more responsive to the country's economic needs by producing more high-skilled graduates and relevant research, and transform themselves. The transformation imperative had several dimensions – significantly increasing the number of black students and staff; addressing and changing the institutional culture of universities to make them more inclusive and congenial to a diverse community; examining and revising curricula and teaching practices to make them more Africa-focused; and reviewing governance structures and practices.

In the sphere of governance, leading black personalities would come to take their place in the upper echelons of the University – Jakes Gerwel as Chancellor from 1999, followed by Lex Mpati from 2013; Colin Johnson, appointed as vice-principal in 2001; Saleem Badat, serving as Vice-Chancellor from 2006 to 2014, to be succeeded by Sizwe Mabizela, who had previously held the position of Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic and Student Affairs from 2008. Adèle Moodly, appointed in 2017, is the first woman and black Registrar.

After 1994, there was a steady change in the demographic composition of Rhodes's student population. In 1994, approximately 32% of the student body was black, out of a total student population of 4,094. By 2014, the proportion of black students had doubled to 64% out of a total population of 7,519 students, and by 2022, it had reached 91% out of a total population of 8,500 students. Achieving demographic representivity in the academic staff complement has been a slower process, with the proportion of black academics rising from 16% in 1994 to 25% in 2014, and 46% in 2022. On the other hand, the picture is different in the case of administrative staff (grades 6-13) – while in 1994 black administrative staff comprised about 27% of the total, this proportion rose to 58% in 2014, and to 78% in 2022.

Reflections on Rhodes University's past and present

The University is now a different place from what it was in 1994, and very different to what it was in 1904. Life for both students and academics has undergone significant changes. For several decades, teaching was considered the primary academic activity. From the 1970s, a growing emphasis has been placed on research productivity. In the 2000s, Rhodes University's research output per capita was among the highest in the South African university sector. The University appointed Peter Clayton as its first Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research and Innovation in 2008 to focus on this aspect of the institution. After his retirement, the post was taken up by Dr Kwezi Mzilikazi, who continues to drive research, innovation, and strategic partnerships.

In recent years, its foremost researcher has been Distinguished Professor Tebello Nyokong, who has headed a highly productive team of researchers and postgraduate students in the Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation, specialising in research into nano-sensors and the phototherapeutic treatment of cancer. She herself has been the recipient of many national and international awards, including being named in the 2012 exhibition of the National Centre for Research on Human Evolution in Spain, as one of *12 Names to Change the World*. Other researchers of outstanding scholarly reputation and productivity have also emerged,

prompting the University to introduce a *Distinguished Professor* academic rank in 2011 to recognise scholarly work of international acclaim. To date, the title has been conferred on Distinguished Professors Tebello Nyokong (Chemistry), Christopher McQuaid (Zoology), Paul Maylam (History), Heila Lotz-Sisitka (Environmental Education), Martin Hill (Entomology), Catriona Macleod (Psychology), Oleg Smirnov (Astrophysics), and Charlie Shackleton (Environmental Science).

Many students have benefited from the enduring commitment to undergraduate teaching, notwithstanding the more recent emphasis on research and postgraduate enrolments. In 2022, the University underwent an institutional accreditation audit by the Council on Higher Education, which focused on the ongoing quality of both the undergraduate and postgraduate offerings at Rhodes University. The reports and accompanying evidence highlighted the institution as a small university that enjoys the distinction of having among the best undergraduate pass and graduation rates in South Africa, high postgraduate success rates in relation to the sector, and being among the top-performing institutions with respect to research output per academic staff member. Rhodes University takes pride in its motto, *"Where Leaders Learn."* It aims to produce graduates who are knowledgeable intellectuals, skilled professionals, and critical, caring, and compassionate citizens who can contribute to economic and social development, as well as an equitable, just, and democratic society.

The Fallist years

The years 2015 and 2016 were turbulent ones for Rhodes and other South African universities. Student protests brought to the fore some fundamental issues facing the higher education sector, particularly those relating to institutional culture and finance. The challenges inherent in combining transformation and financial sustainability will continue to be met head-on by Rhodes University as we advance.

**The novel COVID-19 Pandemic*

The World Health Organisation (WHO) declared the novel coronavirus, COVID-19, a pandemic on 11 March 2020. On 16 March 2020, the President of South Africa, Mr Cyril Ramaphosa, declared a State of Disaster and a National Lockdown due to the outbreak of COVID-19. South African public universities, including Rhodes, closed their doors on 18 March 2020, and many activities were suspended, including face-to-face and in-person classes, as well as large gatherings deemed to have the potential to spread the coronavirus. Many of the University's face-to-face activities were placed on hold. They were gradually phased back under strict risk-controlled conditions as per the Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) regulations and directives. The University had to migrate teaching and learning to remote and digital delivery platforms. Like many universities in our country and beyond, Rhodes needed to ensure the continuity of students' education and a productive use of their time in building their futures, while also observing the nationwide lockdown regulations that required staying at home to curb the transmission of the novel coronavirus. The University had to ensure that the academic progress and future of the students were not placed on hold and that the students, staff, and the greater Makhanda community were not at risk of contracting the deadly coronavirus.

Community Engagement

The formalisation of the community engagement programme as the third pillar of the University has seen the long-time trickle of engaged research projects and service learning programmes blossom into more of an institutional culture, giving meaning to the University existing for the public good, and resulting in Rhodes University earning a reputation as a trailblazer in the proportion of student participants in meaningful engaged programmes, and in the production of thought leaders in the sector on the scholarship of community engagement. In 2022, the Community Engagement Division launched the African Journal of Higher

Education Community Engagement, offering a distinctive platform for advancing and promoting the scholarship of community engagement, particularly as it relates to the African continent. In 2024, the Postgraduate Diploma was registered with the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) and forms a part of the University Programme Qualifications Mix (PQM).

A residential University

Approximately 50% of Rhodes students and most undergraduates reside in University residences, while there are also designated residences for postgraduates. Through a well-established structure and residence committees, the residences play a crucial role in overall student development, including the development of leadership skills.

Celebrating 120 years and looking to the future

2024 marked the 120th Anniversary of the founding of Rhodes University. An RU120 anniversary programme, conceived as a year-long global celebration of the University, was structured around positive reflection on past achievements and strategic reimagining of the institution for the future. The programme built upon and further gave effect to the values, goals, and aspirations contained in the RU Institutional Development Plan (2023–2028).

In addition to special commemorations, reunions, and landmark events, an intellectual programme of symposia, colloquia, and publications celebrated the various academic strengths of the University, addressing sectoral concerns and the changing context of higher education in a year that was also the 30th Anniversary of the first democratic elections in South Africa. Past intellectual highlights celebrated included the discovery of the Coelacanth, the establishment of the Internet in Southern Africa, the Square Kilometer Array, the development of associated national institutions out of University research programmes, such as SAIAB (the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity) and Amazwi South African Museum of Literature (formerly the National English Literary Museum), the establishment of institutes and centres within the University that have attracted an international reputation, such as the Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation, the Centre for Biological Control, the International Library of African Music, the Institute for Social and Economic Research, and the Institute for Water Research which hosts the ARUA (African Research Universities' Alliance) Centre of Excellence in Water.

The RU120 programme featured several strategic unveilings of new and upgraded infrastructure on campus. Highlighting this aspect of the programme was the opening of the new Tebello Nyokong Building, which will serve as the home of the Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation. This is an investment in infrastructure to ensure that the legacy of one of the University's most outstanding scholars is an enduring platform for those who come after her to excel, as well as a symbol of inspiration to remind all who study and work at this University that no matter where you come from or where you stand, it is possible from a small town on the southern tip of Africa to create knowledge that has an impact on the entire planet. Other unveilings included the renovated Pharmacy-Chemistry Building, the Student Innovation Hub in the Biko Building, and upgrades to the University's façade areas.

Several associated anniversaries were celebrated within the RU120 year, amongst these the 15th Anniversary of the establishment of a formal Community Engagement Division as the third pillar of the institution, 100 years of Botha House, Dingemans House turning 75, and Livingstone House turning 50, and the Institute for the Study of English in Africa celebrating its 60th Anniversary. The University joined in the 50th anniversary celebrations of the National Arts Festival, marking notable milestones of some of its partner schools.

[This historical outline has been revised and updated from an earlier version penned by Professor Paul Maylam. For a more complete history of Rhodes University, see the book: Paul Maylam, *Rhodes University, 1904-2016: An Intellectual, Political and Cultural History* (Grahamstown: Institute of Social and Economic Research, 2017).]

DEDICATION - ACADEMIC FREEDOM

Rhodes University declaration of academic freedom and other ethical principles

As members of the academic community at Rhodes University, we are committed to safeguarding the principle of academic freedom and affirm our commitment to an ethical orientation in our work. The principles listed below are complex, and their meanings are subject to debate. We simultaneously affirm our rights to academic freedom and uphold the firm view that this freedom is matched by an obligation to conduct ourselves ethically with regard to our students, colleagues, and the wider society. In the context of our history and the inequalities of the present, this includes a firm embrace of the transformative commitment to equality and justice as laid out in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa ('Constitution' hereafter) and, more fundamentally, as flowing from a proper understanding of the ethic that ought to guide academic life.

Therefore, we declare our resolute commitment to promoting the following principles:

Freedom: As enshrined in the Constitution, academic freedom is a variety of human freedom, and it is a central condition for a thriving academic life. The proper instantiation of academic freedom requires the steadfast commitment to its survival by academics, students and administrators. Academic freedom includes the right to be critical of the state, the university, private power and our colleagues. Academic freedom is not compatible with the subordination of university life to a corporate or managerial logic that curtails the freedom of staff or students to pursue intellectual projects of their own choosing. Academic freedom does not extend to defamation, fraud and forms of speech prohibited by the Constitution or, more broadly, by the principle of human decency. It is a misuse of academic freedom, moreover, to invoke it to

oppose just change. Academic freedom, finally, is predicated on adequate state funding of the academic project.

Integrity: Academic integrity requires personal and collective vigilance in the face of pressures and incentives that may threaten the autonomy and quality of academic work. It requires a firm commitment to aligning one's work and conduct with the ethical principles that ought to guide academic life. Such alignment cannot be adequately achieved without ongoing examination of the values that inform current scholarly work.

Equality: The University is resolutely committed to the democratic ideal of universal equality. This requires active opposition to all forms of unjust discrimination and a vigorous effort to build a university where all students and staff feel welcome and have equal rights to participate freely in all aspects of academic life.

Collegiality: Academics should strive to create a collegial environment where all staff and students are afforded a fair and equal opportunity to participate in the academic project, including actively contributing to and maintaining proper institutional processes that promote a collegial environment. Collegiality, properly understood, is compatible with vigorous debate, provided that it is conducted in an ethical spirit, avoiding slander or acts designed to silence dissenting voices.

Excellence: Academics and students should be committed to producing work of the highest calibre in all spheres of academic life. A commitment to excellence implies an ongoing critical examination of established norms of excellence.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNIVERSITY

The University consists of the Chancellor, the Principal (who is also the Vice-Chancellor), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic and Student Affairs), the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research, Innovation and Strategic Partnerships), the Registrar, the Council, the Senate, the Institutional Forum, the Convocation, the Students' Representative Council, the academic staff, the professional, support and administrative staff and the students.

The Chancellor, elected by the Council, is the titular Head of the University and is empowered, in the name of the University, to confer all degrees. For this purpose, a Congregation of the University is held at least once a year under their presidency.

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor is the chief academic and administrative officer of the University and is *ex officio* a member of the Council and the Chairperson of the Senate.

The Council, which elects its own Chairperson, is the governing body of the University, administering its affairs and property, and is empowered to frame statutes and rules governing the general conduct and organisation of the University, as well as to make all appointments to the staff.

The Senate, as per the Statute, is accountable to the Council for the teaching, learning, research, and academic functions of the University, as well as all other functions delegated or assigned to it by the Council.

Convocation elects its own President and is required to meet at least once a year, and may discuss and express its opinion on any matter relating to the University.

The Registrar of the University is the Secretary of Council, Senate and Convocation.

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY, HONORARY MEMBERS & DISTINGUISHED AWARDS RECIPIENTS

Chancellor

The Honourable Justice M Madlanga, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (University Notre Dame)

Principal and Vice-Chancellor

SG Mabizela, BSc, BSc (Hon), MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor: (Research, Innovation & Strategic Partnerships)

N Mzilikazi, BSc (Zoology, Chemistry), BSc Hons (Zoology) (University of Transkei)

MSc (Zoology) (University of Natal)

PhD (Zoology) (University of KwaZulu Natal)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor: (Academic & Student Affairs)

M Monnapula-Mapesela, BSc.Ed(NUL), BEd(UOFS), MEd(UOFS), PGDip. HE(Rhodes), PhD (UFS)

Chairperson of Council

G Bloem, BA, STD(UWC), LLB(Rhodes)

Vice-Chairperson of Council

G Ndebele, MSc (University of Manchester)

President of Convocation

S Mngadi, BA(Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Registrar

To be confirmed

Interim Registrar

MG Karels, LLB, LLM (UFS), LLD (UNISA)

Chief Financial Officer

To be confirmed

Interim Chief Financial Officer

D Sewry, MSc, PhD (Rhodes), FICSIT, MITPSA, MAIS

THE COUNCIL

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Deputy VC: Academic and Student Affairs

The Deputy VC: Research, Innovation & Strategic Partnerships

Appointed by the Minister of Education

Ms GT Ndebele (2024-2028)

Dr R Maharajh (2024-2028)

Mr MK Rune (2024-2028)

Dr N Tisani (2022-2026)

Mr M Mtshali (2022–2027)

Elected by Senate

Prof D Nkomo (2023-2028)

Prof P Mwepu (2025-2026)

Elected by the academic staff

Mr E Knoesen (2023–2028)

Elected by the administrative/support staff

Ms S Asmal-Motara (2024-2028)

Mr V Jacobs (2023-2028)

Appointed by the Makana Municipality

Mr R Xonxa (2022-2026)

Vacant

Elected by the Board of Governors

Dr A Sangqu (2022-2026)

Appointed by Council

Mr M Rusa (2021-2026)

Dr A Westaway (2024-2028)

Dr N Stubbs (2025–2026)

Mrs M Schoeman (2025-2026)

Mr S Ntlabezo (2022-2026)

Mr L Koyana (2022 – 2026)

Co-opted Members

Judge G Bloem (2024-2028)

Mr S Tredoux (2023-2028)

Ms L Smith (2024–2028)

Vacant

Students' Representative Council (SRC)

SRC President

A student elected by the SRC

THE SENATE

Members

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor (Chairperson)

The Deputy VC: Academic and Student Affairs

The Deputy VC: Research, Innovation & Strategic Partnerships

The Registrar

The Deans of the Faculties, 2026

Humanities Prof S Magadla

Science Prof J Dames

Law Prof MG Karels

Education Prof E Rosenberg

Commerce Prof M Mohapeloa

Pharmacy Prof S Khamanga

Professors

2001 T Nyokong

2007 RB Walker

2007 L Louw

2007 CI Macleod

2008 RA Dorrington
 2008 CM Shackleton
 2008 GCG Fraser
 2009 AJ Booth
 2009 AK Cowan
 2009 MP Hill
 2009 H Lotz-Sisitka
 2009 GC Wells
 2010 W Sauer
 2010 KI Meiklejohn
 2011 MH Graven
 2013 BI Pletschke
 2013 LD Vincent
 2014 LO Juma
 2014 JL Limson
 2014 BS Ripley
 2014 JD Snowball
 2015 ML Chithambo
 2016 R Simbao
 2016 PA Tabensky
 2017 S McKenna
 2019 N Pearse
 2019 P Mwepu
 2020 S Naidu
 2020 W Potts
 2020 AO Tastan Bishop
 2021 C Grant
 2022 JA Coetzee
 2022 JF Dames
 2022 GB Glover
 2022 EH van Coller
 2022 K Bradshaw
 2023 L Dalvit
 2023 M Drewett
 2023 A Edkins
 2023 D Nkomo
 2023 S Prevec
 2024 G Klerck
 2024 AN Mukenge
 2024 ON Odume
 2024 MG Karels
 2025 CJ Christie
 2025 CJ Foxcroft
 2025 MME Mohapeloa
 2025 DO Pollney
 2025 L Raubenheimer
 2025 S Vetter
 2025 ID Paterson
 2026 HJ Kruuse
 2026 A Boshoff
 2026 SH Büttner
 2026 KA Lobb
 2026 G Thondhlana

2026 RJ Wasserman

Deputy Deans of Faculties

Humanities Dr D Santos and Prof P Mwepu
Science Prof G Thondhlana and Prof S Vetter
Law Mr S Somandi
Education Dr K Jawahar
Commerce Prof L Louw and Prof X Antoni
Pharmacy To be confirmed

Head of Department

Accounting E Horn
 Anthropology P Taruvunga
 Biochemistry, Microbiology and
 Bioinformatics J de la Mare
 Biotechnology Innovation A Boshoff
 Botany C Peter
 Business School FO Skae
 Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching
 and Learning J-A Vorster
 Chemistry N Molefe
 Classical Studies D Malamis
 Computer Science G Wells
 Drama H Gehring
 Economics and Economics History J Snowball
 Education: Department of Secondary, Post-School
 Education: Z Jojo
 Education: Department of Primary and Early
 Childhood Education: I Schudel
 Environmental Science S Ruwanza
 Fine Art L Anguria
 Geography S Strydom
 Geology S Prevec
 History J Thumbran
 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics A Todd
 Ichthyology and Fisheries Science A Childs
 Information Systems I Siebörger
 Journalism & Media Studies J du Toit
 Law M Karels
 Linguistics and Applied Language Studies M de
 Vos
 Literary Studies in English A Krueger
 Management N Oosthuizen
 Mathematics (Pure and Applied) E Andriantiana
 Music & Musicology B McConnachie
 Pharmacy S Khamanga
 Philosophy W Jones
 Physics and Electronics M Chithambo
 Political and International Studies E Jordaan
 Psychology E Fouten
 School of Languages A Mukenge
 Sociology G Klerck
 Statistics J Baxter

Zoology and Entomology B Smit

Research Institutes and Units representatives on Senate:

Albany Museum

P Cimi, Director

Amazwi (previously National English Literary Museum)

BA Thomas, Director

Centre for Social Development

F Gunzo, Director

Dictionary Unit for South African English

T van Niekerk, Director

Institute of Social and Economic Research

C Mbatha, Director

Institute for the Study of English in Africa

M Mbelani, Director

International Library of African Music

L Watkins, Director

Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project (RUMEP)

F Mkwane, Director

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity

A Paterson, Managing Director

6 members elected by academic staff who are not eligible for Senate membership by virtue of being either Professors or Heads of Departments
2 members elected by the administrative/support staff

Students Representative Council

5 students elected by the SRC

In attendance

Chief Financial Officer

Director: Communications and Advancement

Director: Equity and Institutional Culture

Dr C Kelly

Director: Finance

Mr G Erasmus

Director: People and Culture

Ms S Robertson

Director: Information and Technology Services

Ms N Ripley

Director: Institutional Research Planning and Quality Promotions

Dr R Nnadozie

Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor

Ms S Smailes

Director: Division of Student Services & Development

Dr P Tondi

Director: Library Services

Ms N Danster

THE BOARD OF GOVERNORS

Judge M Madlanga (Chancellor)

Judge G Bloem (Chair of Council)

Professor S Mabizela (Vice-Chancellor)

Mr D Neale-May (Honorary)

Ms C Rowland (Honorary)

Dr A Sangqu (Chair) (2022-2026)

Mr M Faku (2022-2026)

Mr P Harris (2022-2026)

Ms P Maurice (2022-2026)

Ms I Mkhize (2022-2026)

Mr R Mkhondo (2023-2027)

Ms Z Monnagotla (2022- 2026)

Mr K Socikwa (2022-2026)

Mr L Jiya (2022–2026)

Ms J Makgalemele (2024-2028)

Mr A Smith (2024-2028)

Ms M Maradzika (2024-2028)

Ms N Nqweni (2024 – 2028)

Honorary Life Governors

T Evans

A Gray*

RD Hamilton

HS Herman

BE Hersov

PG Joubert

C Murray

RA Plumbridge

DB Riley

P Searle

CB Strauss

BS Rayner

G Andrews

M Spicer*

K Rumble

R Vice

C Southey

M Keeton

V Kahla

C Molusi

Emeritus Governors

S Nkomo

V Kahla

C Molusi

CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

Sir Basil Schonland, CBE, MA, PhD, ScD, DSc, LLD, FRS (1951-1962)

PJ du Toit, BA, PhD, DrMedVet, DSc, DVetSc, LLD, FRSS (1963-1965)
 WJ Busschau, MCom, DPhil, LLD, CA (1966-1976)
 I Mackenzie, DSO, MA, LLD, CA(1977-1990)
 GWH Relly, MA, LLD (1991-1998)
 Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons), Lic. Germ. Phil, DLitt. et Phil. (Brussels), LLD (1999-2012)
 The Honourable Justice L Mpati, BA, LLB (Rhodes) (2013 - 2025)

MASTERS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY COLLEGE

Sir John Adamson, CMG, MA, DLitt (1925-1930)
 CW Bowles, MA, LLD (1931-1937)
 J Smeath Thomas, DSc, LLD, FIC, FRSSAf (1938-1947)
 T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1948-1950)

VICE-CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1951-1963)
 J M Hyslop, MA, PhD, DSc, LLD, FRSE (1963-1975)
 DS Henderson, BSc, MA, PhD, LLD, FCSSA, FRSSA, FRSSAf (1975-1996) *
 DR Woods, BSc, DPhil(Oxon), DCL(Oxon), FRSSAf (1996-2006)
 S Badat, B.Soc.Sc(Hons), Cert.H.E.Sc.&Tech Policy, PhD, D.Phil. (2006-2014)
 S Mabizela, MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State) (2014 - current)

PROFESSORS EMERITI

JL Cattanéo*, MA, BsLettres Diplôme de l'Ecole Supérieure de Professorat de l'Université de Paris Certificat de Phonétique Française, Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, Professor of French 1958-1985
 A Noble*, BSc, MEd, Professor of Education 1971-1985
 JK Black*, CA(SA), Professor of Accounting 1977-1987
 D Fivaz, MA(HartfordSeminary), PhD(Wits), Professor of African Languages 1972-1988
 R Mayr, DrPhil(Innsbruck), LRSM, Graduate in Organ and Pianoforte of the Bruckner Conservatory (Linz), Graduate in Conducting of the Mozarteum Academic of Music (Salzburg), Professor of Music & Musicology 1973-1988

BR Allanson, PhD(UCT), Dsc(Natal), FRSSAf, SACNS, Professor of Zoology 1963-1987
 JB McI Daniel, MA(Cantab), PhD, UED(Natal) Professor of Geography 1971-1987
 JN Suggit, MA(Oxon), Professor of New Testament Studies 1976 Professor of Divinity 1969-1988
 TRH Davenport, MA(Unisa), A(Oxon),PhD(UCT), FRHistS, Professor of History 1975-1990
 CW Cook, BA(UNISA), MA(Cantab), ThD (Princeton), Professor of Ecclesiastical History 1970-1990
 TMD Kruger, BA(Stell), MA(Pret), DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Professor of Psychology 1974-1989
 R van der Merwe*, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), Vice-Principal and. Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1986-1991
 DR Cooper, BSc(UNISA), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), AFISA, FSLTC, Director, LIRI Technologies 1975-1991
 TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon), Professor of Political Studies 1977-1991
 RB Brooks, MFineArt(Rhodes), Professor of Fine Art 1981-1996
 ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal), Professor of Law 1985-1997
 EE Baart*, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS, Professor of Physics 1969-1998*
 H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA), FRSSAf Professor of Pharmaceutical Chemistry 1978-1999
 PG Surtees, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA), Professor of Accounting 1984-1998
 P van der Watt*, MSc, PhD(UNISA), Professor of Statistics 1971-2000
 B Potgieter*, MSc(Farm), DSc (PU for CHO), DTD, MRPharmS, MPS(SA), Professor of Pharmacology 1976-2000
 F Edwards, BSc(Lond), BD(Edin), DPhil(Oxon), Professor of Contemporary Spirituality 1998-2000
 D Welz, Dr Phil(Hamburg), DLitt(Pretoria) Professor of German (School of Languages) 1978-2000
 BP Gaybba, STL, SThDoc(Urban), Professor of Systematic Theology 1989-2002
 PGR de Villiers, BA(Hons), BTh, Lic.Th, Dth(Stell), DrsTh(Calvijn Stichting), Professor of New Testament Studies 1989-2002
 MAH Smout, MSc(Natal), MA(Newcastle), PhD(London) Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1992-2001

M van Wyk Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of English 1979-2002

MG Whisson*, PhD(Cantab), Professor of Anthropology 1978-2002

ME Brown*, BSc(Hons)(Wits), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf, Professor of Chemistry 1986-2003

PL-M Fein, BA(Hons)(Hull), PhD(London), Officier dans l'Ordre des Palmes Académiques, KCM, Professor of French 1988 - 2003 and Head of the School of Languages 1998-2003

T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE), Professor of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science 1986-2003

WJ Kötze, BSc(Hons)(Stell), PhD(McGill), Professor of Mathematics 1982-2003

HR Hepburn*, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas) Professor of Entomology 1990-2003

IA Macdonald*, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas) Professor of Philosophy 1984-2004

RE Jacob, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), Professor of Geology 1990-2005

J Charteris, BA(Rhodes), MSc(Illinois), Professor of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1982-2005

JH O'Keefe*, PhD(London), Professor in the Institute of Water Research 2004-2005

PA Scott, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Stell), Professor of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1999-2005

FE Jaques, MA(UCT), PhD(Wits), Licence-essettres(Dijon), Professor in the School of Languages 2004-2006

PT Mtuzze*, BA(Rhodes), MA(UNISA), MTh(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), Professor in the Department of African Languages / Deputy Registrar 1988-2006

JM Haigh, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(UCT), MRPharmS, MPS(SA) Professor of Pharmacy 200 -2007

I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA) Professor of Pharmacy 1980-2007

PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, FRSSAf Professor of Chemistry 1987-2007

JS Gouws, MA(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon) Professor of English 1989-2007

CA Lewis, BA(Wales), PhD(Ireland) Professor of Geography 1989-2007

CR Stones, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), MSAIP, IABMCP, CPsychol, AFBPsS Professor of Psychology 1990-2008

DJA Edwards, MA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol Professor of Psychology 1985-2008

PD Rose, BSc(Hons)(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Biochemistry and Microbiology 1995-2008

JR Duncan*, PhD(Natal) Professor of Biochemistry 1999-2008

GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Economics 1991-2009

AB Edwards, BA(Rhodes), MSc(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Psychology 2007-2009

JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria) Professor of Sociology 1987-2009

S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(MED) (MEDUNSA) Professor of Pharmacy 2000 - 2009

PR Irwin, BA(Hons), UED, MEd(Natal), DEd(UNISA) Professor of Education 1988 - 2009

JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(UCT) Professor of Law 1992 - 2009

PS Walters, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of English 1982-2009

V Moller, Lic. Phil, PhD(Zurich) Professor: Institute of Social and Economic Research 1998-2010

J Prinsloo, BA(Hons)(Durban), StDip(UCT), MA (Lond), PhD(Wits), Professor of Journalism and Media Studies 2009-2010.

GE Staude, PhD (Rhodes), MBA(Cranfield), UED(Rhodes) Professor in Business Administration /Management and Director Rhodes Investec Business School 2000-2010

PD Terry, MSc (Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM, Professor of Computer Science 1981-2010

PCJ Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester), Professor and Nelson Mandela Chair in Politics 2003-2010

CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal), Professor of Botany 1987-2011

P Skelton, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Ichthyology in the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology now SAIBAB 1996-2011

CG Whiteley, PhD(Natal), MRSC, CChem Professor in Biochemistry 1979-2011

LS Wright, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), DPhil(Oxon) Professor and Director ISEA 1990-2011

GJEG Berger, BJourn, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), BA(Hons)(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Journalism and Media Studies 1994-2011

MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf Professor of Chemistry 2002-2012

JS Marsh, PhD(UCT) Professor of Geology 1992-2012

- PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens) Professor of History 1991-2012
- RCG Palmer, BA(Hons)(Durham), MA, DPhil(Sussex) Professor of Anthropology 2008-2012
- H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED(UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Education 2008-2012
- K Rowntree, MSc(Bristol), PhD(Strathclyde) Professor of Geography 1986-2013
- V Murali, MSc(Madras), MSc(Wales), PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 1988-2013
- S Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Statistics 1986-2013
- RB Mqeke*, BJuris, LLB(Fort Hare), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Fort Hare) Professor of Law 1997-2013
- A Webb, MA, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Economics and Economic History 2004-2013
- RTV Bernard, PhD(Natal) Professor of Zoology and Entomology 1996-2014
- DGN Cornwell, MA, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of English 2010-2014
- VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED(UNISA), PhD(UCT) Professor of English Language and Linguistics 1991-2006, Dean of Students 2007-2014
- CJ de Wet, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Anthropology 1995-2014
- CM Mann, BA(Wits), MA(Oxon), MA(London), Hon DLitt (Durban Westville) Professor of Poetry in the ISEA 2000-2014
- FT Hendricks, BA(UWC), MSocSc, PhD(Uppsala) Professor of Sociology 2002-2015
- NT Bishop, MA(Cambridge), PhD(Southampton), FRAS Professor of Mathematics 2009–2016
- AJFK Craig, MSc(UCT), PhD(Natal) Professor of Zoology and Entomology 2004-2016
- DA Hughes, PhD(Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat. Professor in the Institute for Water Research 2005-2016
- SE Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) Professor of Statistics 2002-2016
- AP Faure, Dipl (Agric) (US), MA (Economics) (US), DPhil (Economics)(US), PhD (Stell) Professor: Foord Chair in Investments 2003-2016
- M Neocosmos, BSc(Loughborough), MA (London), Ph.D. (Bradford, UK) Director of UHURU 2013-2017
- G Fraser Professor PhD (Stellenbosch) in the Department of Economics 2008-2018.
- AN Hodgson, BSc (Liverpool), PhD (Manchester), DSc (Manchester), FRSSAf Professor in the Department of Zoology and Entomology 2002-2018
- C Boughey MA(St Andrews), MA(Reading), PGCE(Wales), DPhil(UWC) Professor in CHERTL2008-2018
- D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Literary Studies in English 2011-2018
- RE Harmer, PhD (UCT) Professor in the Department of Geology from 2015-2019
- GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE (Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil (UNISA) Professor in the Department of Education from 2005-2019
- P-H Bischoff, BA (Wits), MA (Lancaster), PhD (Manchester) Professor in the Department of Politics and International Studies from 2007-2019
- J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons)(UNISA), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Natal), PhD (Psychotherapy)(Rhodes), CPsychol, AFBPsS, SFHEA Professor in the Department of Politics and International Studies from 2015-2019
- GF Baines BA (UCT), HED (UCT), BA (Hons)(UNISA), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT) Professor in the Department of History 2013-2020
- CD McQuaid PhD (UCT), FRSSAf Professor in the Department of Zoology and Entomology 1991-2020
- RD Adendorff BA (Hons), HDE (Rhodes), MA (Indiana), PhD (Natal) Professor in the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2002-2020
- KD Helliker PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Sociology & Industrial Sociology 2007-2021
- H Nel PhD (NMU) Professor in the Department of Economics and Economic History 1997-2021
- LN Strelitz PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies from 1987-2021
- A Terzoli PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Department of Computer Science 2004-2021
- D Wilmot PhD (Rhodes) Professor in the Faculty of Education 1993 - 2021
- P Clayton PhD (Rhodes) Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research & Innovation (2008 – 2022), Professor in the Department of Computer Science 1982 – 2008
- F Ellery PhD (University of Witwatersrand) Professor in the Department of Geography 2008 - 2022
- D Klopper PhD (University of South Africa) Professor in the Department of Literary Studies in English 2010 - 2022

C Palmer PhD (Rhodes University) Professor in the Institute for Water Research 2010 - 2022
M Schäfer PhD (Curtin University of Technology) Professor in the Faculty of Education 1997 - 2022
R Simango PhD (University of South Carolina) Professor in the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2003 -2022
D Thorburn MFA (Rhodes), TPP (New Mexico), Professor in the Department of Fine Art 1982-2023
PJ Britz PhD (Rhodes), Professor in the Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Science 1985-2023
JL Jonas PhD (Rhodes), Professor in the Department of Physics and Electronics 2001-2023
LA Wilbraham PhD (UCT), Professor in the Department of Psychology 2008-2023
KM Ngozo PhD (Rhodes), Professor in the Department of Secondary and Post School Education 2001-2023
J Gambiza PhD (Zimbabwe), Professor in the Department of Environmental Science 2003-2024
MJ Marais, D Litt et Phil (UJ), Professor in the Department of Literary Studies in English 2010 - 2025
DA Sewry, MSc, PhD (Rhodes), FICSIT, MIITPSA, MAIS, Professor in Information Systems 1996 – 2025
AC Garman, BA (Wits), BA (Hons), MA (UKZN), PhD (Wits), Professor in Journalism and Media Studies 2018 – 2025
H Kaiser, Dr.agr (Bonn), Professor in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science 2020 - 2025

ASSOCIATE PROFESSORS EMERITI

FL Coleman, PhD (Edin), DipEd.(Glas), FRHS, FR.HistS, Associate Professor of Economic History 1976-1987
HW Page, MSc(Natal), Associate Professor of Psychology 1967-1988
NC Charton, MA Admin (Pret), BA (UNISA), UED(Rhodes), BTheol(UNISA), Associate Professor of Political Studies 1968-1985
MEH Dickerson, MA(Rhodes), LTCL, LRAM(Lond), PGDEd, Acad DipEd (Lond) Associate Professor of Drama 1966-1991
KS Hunt, BA, UED(Natal), MA(Rhodes), PhD(London), FRHistS, Associate Professor of History 1980-1986, Registrar 1986-1995
ME Donaldson, MA(Durham), PhD(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Ecclesiastical History, 1994-1995

DJ Eve, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FRSD, CChem, Associate Professor of Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry 1981-1995
JA Nell, DipFineArt(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Fine Art 1982-1995
PE Hulley, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Lond), Associate Professor in Entomology 1989-2002
RA Lubke*, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MSc(Science Education)(Keele), PhD(Ontario), Associate Professor in Botany 1984-2003
DA Hendry, MSc(Stell), PhD(UCT), Associate Professor in Microbiology 1985-2003
BJ Wilson, BSP(Sask), MSc(Sask), PhD(Purdue), MPS(SA), Associate Professor of Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1995-2003
NJH Heideman, BSc(Hons)(UCT), AM, PhD(Washington), Associate Professor in Mathematics 1975-2004
AWV Poole*, PhD(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Physics and Electronics 1999-2005
PW Court, BSc(Agric)(Stell), HDE(Rhodes), MBA(Wits), PhD(Rhodes) Associate Professor of Management 2003-2007
WS Jacobson, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Birmingham) Associate Professor of English 2002-2007
WT Futter, MCom, PGDHET(Rhodes), ACIS Associate Professor of Pharmacy 1996-2008
JRD Cobbing, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Lancaster) Associate Professor of History 2000-2009
MH Burton, MSc(UCT), PhD(Rhodes) Associate Professor of Mathematics (Pure and Applied) 2010
RJ Foss, BSc(Natal), MSc(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), MACM Associate Professor of Computer Science 1999–April 2014
D Rosenberg, BCom(Hons), CTA(Rhodes), CA(SA), HDipCoLaw(Wits) Associate Professor of Accounting 2008–2014
R Dowse, BPharm, PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA) Associate Professor of Pharmacy 2004–2015
D Thram, PhD(Indiana) Associate Professor of Music and Musicology 2006–2016
JC Wells, BA(Colorado College), MA(Yale), PhD(Columbia) Associate Professor of History 2004–2015
JCS Lancaster PhD (Rhodes), CA (SA), RA Associate Professor Accounting 2008-2018
MD Vermaak BA(Hons)(Stell), DrsPhil(Leyden) Associate Professor Philosophy 1985-2018
LN Steenveld, BA (Hons)(Anglia Ruskin University), HDipJourn (Rhodes), PG Cert in Education (Brighton), MA (Rhodes), MA (University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill), PhD

(Rhodes) Associate Professor in the School of Journalism & Media Studies 2009-2019
 MJ Roodt, PhD(Rhodes) Associate Professor Industrial Sociology 2010-2019
 JA Arendse PhD (Rhodes), MTP(SA), CA(SA) Associate Professor in the Department Accounting 2014-2020
 GM Watkins PhD (UCT) Associate Professor in the Department of Chemistry 2010-2020
 MG Hendricks BA, HDE (UCT), BA Hons, MEd (Rhodes), PhD (Witwatersrand) Associate Professor in the Institute for the study of Englishes of Africa (ISEA) 2004-2021
 P Machanick PhD (University of Cape Town) Associate Professor in the Department of Computer Science 2011 - 2022
 J Finestone Praeg PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the Department of Drama 2002 - 2022
 L Quinn PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning 1994 - 2022
 C Remsing PhD (Rhodes) Associate Professor in the Department of Mathematics 1998 - 2022
 GR Keeton PhD (Rhodes), Associate Professor in the Department of Economics and Economic History 2009-2023
 A Kirkaldy PhD (UCT), Associate Professor in the Department of History 2006-2023
 JJ Brukman DMus (UNISA), Associate Professor in the Department of Music and Musicology 2006-2024
 K Ellery PhD (Rhodes), Associate Professor in the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning 2010-2024
 AL Moodly, BA(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), BED (UNISA), MEd (UNISA), MBA (Business School Netherlands), DEd (UNISA), Associate Professor in the Registrar's Division 2017 – 2025

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED RESEARCH AWARD

1991 CD McQuaid, PhD(UCT)
 1992 RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal)
 1993 JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)
 1994 PG Clayton, MSc, PhD(Rhodes)
 1995 No award
 1996 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)
 1997 EA Pakhomov, PhD (Moscow)
 1998 ME Brown*, BSc(Hons)(Wits), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf Senior Award
 1998 CJ de Wet, MA(Stell), MSt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award

1998 EL Nel, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes) Research Award
 1999 HR Hepburn, MS (Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas), FRSSAf Senior Award
 1999 M van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award
 1999 BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM(Cantab)Research Award
 1999 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award
 2000 JR Duncan, PhD(Natal) Senior Award
 2000 NP Barker, MSc(Wits), PhD(UCT) Research Award
 2001 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE) Senior Award
 2001 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, CChem, FRSSAf Senior Award
 2001 L Meintjes-van der Walt, BJuris, LLB(UPE), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Rijksuniversiteit Leiden) Research Award
 2002 C McQuaid, PhD(UCT), FRSSAf Senior Award
 2002 WHH Sauer, PhD(UPE) Research Award
 2003 T Nyokong, PhD(Western Ontario), FRSSAf Senior Award
 2003 AJ Booth, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award
 2004 VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED(UNISA), PhD (UCT)
 2005 SE Radloff, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award
 2005 MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award
 2006 GL Blatch, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PhD(UCT) Senior Award
 2006 ML Chithambo, BSc(Malawi), MPhil(Sussex), PhD(Edinburgh) Research Award
 2007 I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA) Senior Award
 2007 JE Burgess, PhD(Cranfield) Research Award
 2008 P Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester) Senior Award
 2009 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award
 2009 LS Wright, DPhil(Oxon) Senior Award
 2009 R Simbao, BFA(Stell), MWS, MPhil(Toronto), PhD(Harvard) Research Award
 2010 A Hodgson, BSc(Liverpool), PhD(Manchester), DSc(Manchester), FRSSAf Senior Award
 2010 J Limson, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award
 2011 MH Villet, PhD(Wits), PGDHE(Rhodes) Senior Award
 2011 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens) Senior Award

2011 S Vice, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Rhodes), PhD(Reading) Research Award
 2012 D Hughes, PhD(Wales), Pr.Sci.Nat. Senior Award
 2013 MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award
 2013 JD Snowball, PhD(Rhodes) Research Award
 2014 CM Shackleton, PhD(Wits) Senior Award
 2014 LO Juma, LLB(Nairobi), Dip.Law(Kenya), LLM(Pennsylvania), MA(Notre Dame), LLD(UFH) Senior Award
 2014 BVW Irwin, PhD(Rhodes), CISSP, MACM, MIEEE Research Award
 2015 C Macleod, BSc(Natal), HDE, BSocSc(Hons), MEd(Psych)(UCT), PhD(Natal) Senior Award
 2015 AL Edkins, MSc(Rhodes), MSc Forensic Sci (KCL), PhD(Glasgow) Research Award
 2016 H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd (JP) (UPE), BEd, DEd (Stell) Senior Award
 2016 D Nkomo, BA(Hons)(UZ), MPhil, PhD(Stell), PGDHE(Rhodes) Research Award
 2016 J Coetzee, PhD(Wits) Research Award
 2017 RH Kaschula, BA (Hons), LLB, HDE, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award
 2017 S Matthews, BA, MA(Pretoria), PhD(Birmingham) Research Award
 2017 F Botha, BComLaw, BCom(Hons)(Economics), M Com (Applied Econometrics)(UFS), Research Award
 2018 CJ Khene, MCom, PhD (Rhodes) Research Award
 2018 BI Pletschke, PhD (UPE) Senior Research Award
 2019 ML Chithambo, BSc (Malawi), MPhil (Sussex), PhD (Edinburgh) Senior Award
 2019 G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes) Research Award
 2020 Ayse Özlem Tastan Bishop PhD (Rhodes) Senior Research Award
 2021 Philani Mashazi PhD (Rhodes) Research Award
 2021 RB Walker PhD (Rhodes) Senior Research Award
 2022 I Paterson PhD (Rhodes) Research Award
 2023 J Coetzee PhD (Rhodes) Senior Research Award
 2024 B Ripley PhD (Rhodes) Senior Research Award
 2024 D Brown PhD (Rhodes) Research Award

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S BOOK AWARD

2002 JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria)

2003 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)
 2004 TW Martin, BSc(Hons)(Adelaide), BA(Hons)(Adelaide), PhD(UNSW)
 2005 P Vale, BA(Hons)(Wits), MA, PhD(Leicester)
 2006 PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA, PhD(Queens)
 2007 BL Schmahmann, BFA, BA(Hons), MA, PhD(Wits)
 2008 D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes)
 2009 L Praeg, BA, MA, PhD(Stell)
 2010 A Krueger, PhD(Rhodes)
 2011 HJ Wasserman, BA(Hons), BJourn(Hons), MA, D.Litt.(Stell)
 2012 CI Macleod, BSc(Natal), HDE, BSocSci(Hons), Med(Psych)(UCT), PhD(Natal)
 2013 PC Henderson, MA(Wits), PhD(UCT)
 2014 L Praeg, BA, MA, PhD(Stell), MEd(Rhodes)
 2015 AC Garman, BA(Wits), MA(UKZN), PhD(Wits)
 2017 GF Baines, BA, HED(UCT), BA(Hons)(UNISA), MA(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)
 2018...
 2019 S Naidu, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)
 2020 S Rowaldt Shell PhD (UCT)
 2021 B Nyoka PhD (Rhodes)
 2022 S McKenna BA (Natal), HDE (Natal), MA (Stellenbosch), PhD (Rhodes) and C Boughiey MA(St Andrews), MA(Reading), PGCE(Wales), DPhil(UWC)
 2023 S Magadla BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Ohio), PhD (Rhodes)
 2024 A Kirkaldy BSocSc, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA PhD (UCT)

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED TEACHING AWARD

1991 EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS
 1992 PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM
 1993 GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Couns.Psychol
 1994 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon)
 1995 No award
 1996 H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes)
 PS Walters, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)
 1997 S Sparrius, BA(SocWork)(Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych)(UCT)

1998 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)
 1999 DJA Edwards, BA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol.
 2000 S Daya, BSc (UDW), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (MEDUNSA)
 2000 GE Gordon, BA(Hons)(Natal), MA(CNAAGreat Britain)
 2001 M Lester*, BCom, CTA(Rhodes), HDipTax (Wits), CA(SA)
 2002 P Clayton, PHD(Rhodes), FICS, MCSSA
 2002 L Vincent, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)
 2003 GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)
 2003 RC Fox, PhD(Strathclyde)
 2004 CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal)
 2004 TL Amos, BSocSc(Hons)(Economics), MSocSc(Rhodes)
 2005 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)
 2006 L Praeg, PhD(Stell)
 2007 DA Sewry, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FICSIT, MCSSA, MACM, MAIS
 2007 CZ Tsampiras, BA(Hons) (Rhodes), MA(London)
 2008 H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd(JP)(UPE), BED, DEd(Stell)
 2008 RH Kaschula, LLB, BA(Hons), Phd(Rhodes)
 2009 KW Maree, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA) Senior Award
 2009 MJR Boswell, BSocSc(Hons), MSocSc(UCT), PhD(VU Amsterdam)
 2010 J Finestone-Praeg, MA(Rhodes)
 2010 J Gambiza, PhD (Zimbabwe)
 2011 AC Garman, BA(Wits), MA(UKZN), PhD(Wits) Senior Award
 2011 DA Seddon, MA(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab)
 2012 JD Snowball, PhD(Rhodes) Senior Award
 2012 L Raubenheimer, PhD(UFS)
 2013 U Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn) Senior Award
 2013 A Todd, MSc (Rhodes)
 2014 ED Goosen, BSc(Hons)(UOFS), MSc(Weizmann Institute), PhD(UOFS), HDE(UPE) Senior Award
 2014 KJ Barnard, BCompt(UNISA), MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)
 2015 C Foxcroft, BMus(UCT), UPLM(UNISA), Kunstlerische Ausbildung, Kammernusikdiplom, Konzertexamen (Hochschule für Musik und Theater, Hannover, Germany) Senior Award
 2015 JA Williams, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab)
 2015 T Poole, BFA, MFA(Rhodes)
 2016 G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes)

2016 MP Hill, PhD (Rhodes), FRSSAf Senior Award
 2017 JD Sewry, MSc (Rhodes), HDE(UNISA)
 2018 K Ellery, BSc (Hons), MSc (Wits), MEd (Higher Ed)(Natal), PhD (Rhodes) Senior Award
 2018 S Magadla, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Ohio), PhD (Rhodes)
 2019 CT Upfold, MBA (Rhodes) Senior Award
 2019 T Maqubela, MSc (West Virginia University)
 2020 D Fryer Department of Economics (category of more than ten years' experience)
 2021 K Lobb Department of Chemistry (category of more than ten years' experience)
 2021 J Cockburn Department of Environmental Science (category of ten or fewer years' experience)
 2022 J Knoetze, Department of Psychology (Category of more than ten years' experience)
 2022 N Sibiya, Department of Pharmacy (Category of ten or fewer years' experience)
 2023 B McConnachie of Music and Musicology (Category of ten or fewer years' experience)
 2024 L Olvitt of the Environmental Learning Research Centre (ELRC) (Category of more than ten years' experience)
 2024 R Wasserman of the Department of Zoology and Entomology (Category of ten or fewer years' experience)
 2025 S McKenna of the Centre for Postgraduate Studies Senior Award
 2025 S Phakathi of the Department of Economics and Economic History, (Category of ten or fewer years' experience)

DISTINGUISHED AWARD FOR COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT

2008 W Wrench Department of Pharmacy
 2008 S Srinivas Department of Pharmacy
 2009 KM Ngcoza Department of Education
 2009 J Sewry Department of Chemistry
 2010 M Gagayi Sports Administration
 2011 A Terzoli Department of Computer Science
 2012 AEM Sutherland Department of Computer Science and Telkom Centre of Excellence
 2013 MP Hill, Cock, GD Martin and JM Hill Biological Control Research Group
 2014 Jongaphambili Sinethemba Group from the Environmental Science Department (Professor S Shackleton, Dr G Cundill, Mr N Hamer, Mr M Ntshudu, Professor H Lotz-Sisitka)
 2015 Siyahluma Project (SA Paphitis, L-A Kelland, CI Macleod, RR du Toit)

2017 J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons)(UNISA), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Natal), PhD (Psychotherapy)(Rhodes), CPsychol, AFBPsS, SFHEA Department of Psychology
2017 Recreational Fisheries Research Group (W Potts, M Parkinson, A Childs, D Drennan, A Winkler, E Butler, S Mannheim)
2018 CG Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)
2019 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics Group (Mr A Todd Dr J Davy, Dr B Ryan)
2020 M Maponya MSS (Rhodes)
2021 RB Walker PhD (Rhodes)
2022 ADC Counselling Hub: Professor Megan Campbell, Ms Nqobile Msomi, Dr Duane Booysen Dr Christine Lewis, Ms Mandisa Ndabula
2023 J Cockburn PhD (Rhodes)
2024 S Naidu PhD (Rhodes)

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED ACHIEVEMENT AWARD

2019 JL Jonas, PhD (Rhodes)
2025 D Wicks

HONORARY GRADUATES

1951

Sir Philip Morris* LLD
Sir Basil FJ Schonland* LLD
Sir Arthur Trueman* LLD
Sir William K. Hancock* DLitt
Lionel Bernard Goldschmidt* LLD
Hendrik Johannes van Eck* LLD

1952

Josephine Ethel Wood* MA

1953

Sir Ernest Oppenheimer* LLD
Hugh Le May* LLD

1954

Rt Revd Archibald Howard Cullen* DD
Davidson Don Tengo Jabavu* PhD
Hon Johannes Hendricus Viljoen* LLD
Hon Percival Carlton Gane* LLD
Arthur Stanley Kidd* LLD

1955

Ronald Fairbridge Currey* LLD

1957

Rt Hon Viscount Malvern* LLD
Hon Albert vd Sandt Centlivres* LLD

1958

Petrus Johann du Toit* LLD

1959

Samuel Bonnin Hobson* LLD
John Edward Holloway* LLD

Revd Joseph Benjamin Webb* DD

1961

Alexander Kerr* LLD
Zachariah Keodirelang Matthews* LLD

1962

The State President:

Charles Robberts Swart* LLD

1963

Ernst Gideon Malherbe* LLD
Hon Olive Deneys Schreiner* LLD

1964

Thomas Alty* LLD
Margaret Livingstone Ballinger* LLD
Thomas Bouchier Bowker* LLD
Cullen Walter Bowles* LLD
Sir Evelyn Dennison Hone* LLD
Harry Albert Kendall* LLD
John Smeath Thomas* LLD
Charles Haynes Wilson* LLD
Sir John Douglas Cockcroft* DSc

1965

Percival Robson Kirby* DLitt
Harry Frederick Oppenheimer* LLD
Very Revd Robert Henry Wishart Shepherd* DD

1966

William John Busschau* LLD
Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw* DLitt
Alfred William Burton* LLD
William James Belt Slater* LLD
Most Revd Robert Selby Taylor* DD
Revd Abraham Johannes van der Merwe* DD

1967

Col John Augustus I
Agar- Hamilton* DLitt
Hon Henry Gluckman* LLD
Hon Johannes Nicolas Malan* LLD
Frederick John Todd* LLD
Mary Agard Pocock* DSc
Jacobus Petrus Duminy* LLD
Major the Hon Peter Voltelyn
Graham van der Byl* LLD
Adolf Schauder* DSocS

1968

The Hon Mr Justice Oscar
Hendrik Hoexter* LLD
Revd John McDowall* DD
Vivian Frederick M Fitzsimons* DSc
Charles John Ross-Spencer* LLD

1969

John Frederick Vicars Phillips* DSc
Revd Cedric Edgar Wilkinson* DD
Marjorie Emma McKerron* LLD

Sir de Villiers Graaff* LLD
Sally Herbert Frankel* DLitt

1970

Monica Wilson* DLitt
Ian Douglas MacCrone* LLD
Reginald Arthur Jubb* DSc

1971

Marjorie Eileen Doris Courtenary-Latimer* DPhil
Hon Edgar H Brookes* LLD
Clement Martyn Doke* DLitt
Mattheiis Uys Krige* DLitt

1972

Alan Paton* DLitt
Andries Charles Cilliers* LLD
William J Waddell* DSc

1973

The Hon Mr Chief Justice Newton Ogilvie
Thompson* LLD
Richard William Varder* DSc
Victor Norton* DLitt

1975

Ian Mackenzie* LLD
Thomas Hugh Grocott* MA

1976

Margaret Stuart Fuller* DSocS
Charles Sidney Barlow* LLD
James Morton Hyslop* LLD

1977

The Hon Mr Justice Johannes Dante Cloete* LLD
John Vernon Lockhart Rennie* LLD
Rt Revd Alpheus Hamilton Zulu* DD

1978

The Hon Mr Justice Allen Gilmour Jennett* LLD
Sir Laurens van der Post* DLitt
Frederick Johannes van Wyk* LLD
William Hofmeyer Craib* DSc
Edgar Donald Mountain* DSc
John Douglas Roberts* LLD

1979

Winifred Alice Maxwell* DLitt
Hugh James Chapman* LLD
Francis John Hewitt* DSc
Donald Bell Sole* LLD

1980

The Most Revd Bill Bendyshe Burnett* DD
Louis Dubb* LLD
Sir Michael Owen Edwardes* LLD

1981

Lucy Buyaphi Mvubelo* DSocS
John Hemsworth Osborn Day* DSc
Jack Cope* DLitt

1982

Herbert Walter Pahl* DLitt

James Beaufort Sutherland* LLD
Cuthbert John Skead* PhD

1983

Basil Edward Hersov LLD
Athol Fugard* DLitt
Joel Mervis* DLitt

1984

John Ashton Chubb* LLD
Cornelis Johannes Frederick Human* LLD
Denys Graham Kingwill* LLD

1985

Richard Stanley Cooke* LLD
Thomas Lodewyk Webb* DSc
Ernst van Heerden* DLitt

1986

Norman Stanley Bailey* DMus
Es'kia Mphahlele* DLitt
Raymond Ackerman* LLD

1987

Margaret Mary Smith* LLD
George Howe Randell* LLD

1988

Cyril Lincoln Sibusiso Nyembezi* DLitt
Michael Roberts* DLitt
Stanley Gordon Shuttleworth* DSc
Julian Ogilvie Thompson* LLD

1989

Robin Allan Plumbridge LLD
Theodoor van Wijk* LLD
Vernon Siegfried Forbes* DLitt
Noel Arthur Francis Williams* LLD

1990

The Hon Mr Chief Justice
Michael McGregor Corbett* LLD
Douglas James Livingstone* DLitt
Gwendolen Truda Brock* LLD
Helen Suzman* LLD
Denis Ian Gough* DSc

1991

Gavin Walter Hamilton Relly* LLD
Peter Humphry Greenwood* DSc
Leonard Walter Lanham* DLitt
Kathryn Freda Jagoe* PhD

1992

Chester Arthur Crocker LLD
Miriam Toba Dakile MED
Brian Robert Allanson* DSc
Peter Malcolm Searle LLD

1993

Thomas Rodney Hope Davenport* DLitt
Bennett Alexander Jacobson MPha
Nganani Enos John Mabuza* LLD

1994

Auriol Ursula Batten* PhD
 Frederick Guy Butler* DLitt
 Govan Archibald Mvunyelina Mbeki* LLD
 Michael Conway O' Dowd* LLD

1995

Omar Hajee Suliman Ebrahim, JP* DSocS
 Theocritus Simon Ndziweni Gqubule* DD
 Alastair James Kerr* LLD
 Alexander McGregor* LLD
 Allan William Buchanan Gray* LLD

1996

Frene Noshir Ginwala* LLD
 Cecil Edwin Frans Skotnes* DFA
 Wilhelmus Hendricus Welling* DSocS

1997

Kader Asmal* LLD
 The Hon Mr Justice Arthur Chaskalson* LLD
 Derek Scott Henderson* LLD
 The Most Revd
 Winston Njongonkulu Ndungane DD
 Conrad Barend Strauss* DCom
 Pieter Dirk Uys DLitt

1998

Aron Bacher LLD
 Alexander Lionel Boraine* LLD
 Gert Johannes Gerwel* LLD
 John Kani DLitt
 Anthony O'Reilly LLD

1999

John Michael Coetzee DLitt
 Aggrey Zola Klaaste* DLitt
 Colin Legum* LLD
 James Martin* LLD
 Wycliffe Mlungisi Tsotsi* LLD

2000

Richard Alan Charles Cock DMus
 Robin David Hamilton LLD
 Nombasa Nini LLD
 Neville Wallace Zietsman LLD

2001

Emeka Anyaoku LLD
 Fikile Charles Bam* LLD
 André Philippus Brink* DLitt
 Thelma Muriel Henderson* LLD
 Donald James Woods* LLD

2002

Randy Bush LLD
 Seamus Heaney* DLitt
 Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela* LLD
 George Nicholson DSc

2003

Sipho Arthur Mono Badela* DLitt
 Michael Hartnack* DLitt

Ian Cedric Player* LLD
 Stuart John Saunders LLD
 Gertrude Christina Thomas* LLD
 Desmond Mpilo Tutu LLD

2004 (Centenary Year)

Zisiwe Nosimo Beauty Balindlela LLD
 John Wesley de Gruchy DLitt
 Brian Patrick Gilbertson LLD
 Hugh Sidney Herman LLD
 Alice Maud Krige DLitt
 Zenzi Miriam Makeba * DMus
 Lex Mpati LLD
 Dikela Billy Ndwesiba* LLD
 Deryck Marshall Schreuder LLD
 Amartya Kumar Sen LLD
 Charles van Onselen DLitt

2005

Vincent Clifford Moran* DSc
 Navanethem Pillay LLD
 Brian Shepstone Rayner LLD
 Marjorie Morris Scardino LLD

2006

Johann Reinder Erlers Lutjeharms* DSc
 Peter Magubane* LLD
 Trevor Andrew Manuel LLD
 Derek Brian Riley LLD

2007

Zackie Achmat LLD
 Graca Machel LLD
 Fatima Meer* D.Litt.
 David Randle Woods LLD

2008

William Joseph Kentridge DFA
 Reuel Jethro Khoza LLD
 Pius Nkonzo Langa* LLD
 Bernard Lewis Fanaroff LLD
 John Pilger D.Litt.

Jonathan Brian Shapiro LLD

2009

Dennis Brutus* D.Litt.
 Sibongile Khumalo DMus
 Lynette Marais* LLD
 Issa G Shivji LLD

2010

Gordon Mitchell Cragg* DSc
 Marlene Dumas LLD
 Abdullah Ibrahim LLD
 Kathleen Margaret Satchwell LLD

2011

Tariq Ali D.Litt.
 George Bizos* LLD
 Herbert Kretzmer* LLD
 Basil Moore LLD

Joe Thloloe LLD
Lillian Cingo LLD

2012

Michael Noel Bruton DSc
Geoffrey John de Jager LLD
Leymah Roberta Gbowee LLD
Raymond Louw* D.Litt.
Epainette M Mbeki* LLD

2013

Carol W Hofmeyr LLD
Vusi Sydney Mahlasela LLD

2014

Sydney Brenner* DSc
Nokugcina E Mhlophe D.Litt.
Neil Turok LLD

2015

Saleem Badat LLD
David Nthubu Koloane* DFA
Francie Lund LLD
Thulisile Madonsela LLD
Hugh Ramopolo Masekela* DMus

2016

James David Matthews* D.Litt.
Beatrice Mtetwa LLD
Jeunesse Park LLD
Imtiaz Ismail Sooliman LLD
Edward Charles Webster LLD

2017

Marguerite Barankitse LLD
Linton Kwezi Johnson D.Litt.
Barney Ptyana LLD
Penny Siopis DFA
Sheila Sisulu LLD

2018

Sindiwe Magona D.Litt.
Peter Mtuze* DLitt
Andrew Mlangeni* LLD
Vishnu Padayachee DEcon
Yvonne Machaka LLD
Dikgang Moseneke LLD

2019

Chief Oyenike Monica Okundaye DFA
Pumla Gobodo-Madikizela LLD
George Ellis LLD
Glenda Gray LLD

Ian Scott LLD

2020

Mary Maria Burton LLD
Madosini Manqina* DMUS
Dr Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka LLD
Professor Patricia Whitelock LLD
Father Michael Lapsley LLD

2021

William McDonald Smith LLD
Mary de Haas LLD
Advocate Dumisa Buhle Ntsebeza, SC LLD
Nontsikelelo Biko LLD
Professor Berhanu Abegaz Molla LLD
Dr Marguerite Jean Poland DLitt
Noxolo Grootboom DLitt
Professor Salim Abdool Karim DSC

2022

Rt Hon Lord Peter Hain LLD
Makhosazana Xaba LLD
Ambassador Lindiwe Mabuza DLitt (posthumous)
Professor Quarraisha Abdool Karim DSc
Ambassador Thenjiwe Mtintso LLD

2023

Honourable Chief Justice Raymond Zondo LLD
Professor Janet Cherry LLD
Honourable Justice Mbuyiseli Madlanga LLD
Professor Debra Roberts LLD
Professor Helen Rees LLD
Bishop Peter Storey LLD

2024

Ambassador Barbara Masekela LLD
Professor Sylvia Rosila Tamale LLD
Archbishop Thabo Makgoba LLD
Thandabantu August LLD
Professor Irvy Gledhill DSc
Michael Barry LLD

2025

Paul Joseph Pretorius SC LLD
Tsitsi Dangarembga DLitt
Professor Kwesi Kwa Prah LLD
Eugenia Mbekeni LLD
Professor Franklin Larey DMus

* Asterisk next to the name depicts that the person is deceased

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

Completed application forms for undergraduate admission to all Faculties should be received by 30 September in the Student Bureau, for enrolment in the following year.

NB: *late applications will only be considered at the discretion of the Registrar.*

Admission requirements

The standard admission requirement for any undergraduate degree at Rhodes University is a National Senior Certificate with endorsement for degree studies. Additionally, each Faculty has its own minimum admission requirements.

All students intending to register as candidates for degrees must produce their National Senior Certificates or equivalent certificates either before or as soon as possible after entering the University. Failure to do so will result in a change in registration status.

Students who have attended courses at another university should obtain a transcript and, **if they attended another university in the Republic**, a certificate of good conduct from the university previously attended. Applications for exemption for courses completed at another university should be directed to the Student Bureau after acceptance and once final results are available. Brief course outlines of the course for which credit is sought must accompany the application.

Registration

The academic year begins in February. Students are expected to register on the stipulated date in February. Late registrations may be accepted with the approval of the Registrar. However, a late registration fee will be charged.

Arrangements of curricula

Students must have their curricula approved by the Dean of the Faculty in which they are to study at the beginning of each year. The Dean will advise on courses and approve curricula on behalf of the Senate.

Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curricula, not only in the current year but for the remainder of the curriculum.

Discontinuing courses

Courses may be dropped with the approval of the Dean and Faculty Officer. Courses may not be dropped after the last official day of undergraduate lectures in May (for 1st-semester courses) or October (for 2nd-semester and full-year courses).

Changes of course or Faculty

Undergraduates who wish to change from one course to another must discuss the proposed change with the Dean of the Faculty concerned or representative and, if a change of Faculty is involved, with the Dean of the Faculty to which they wish to transfer. Transfer is not automatic, and the relevant Dean or representative will consider the application.

Closing dates for the change of course

The final closing date for course changes is the End of the 2nd week of each semester **for semester courses**. However, a student may discontinue a course after this date with the permission of the Dean.

Students may not register for a full-year course after the second week of the first semester has ended.

Full-time students

A full-time undergraduate student is a student who is either engaged in full-time university studies or is following a full curriculum. A full-time postgraduate student is a student who is engaged in university studies on a full-time basis.

Part-time students registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

A part-time undergraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies and is not following a full curriculum. A part-time

postgraduate student is a student who is not engaged in university studies full-time.

Part-time students not registered for a degree or diploma:

Occasional Students are those not registered for a degree or diploma, but who are following a course recognised towards a degree or diploma. See the Fees and Charges section.

1. Occasional students must have a National Senior Certificate. They will be admitted to a course only if the Head of Department is satisfied that they will profit from the lectures for the course.
2. Occasional students must follow courses in full, which implies attending all classes, completing all class work and assignments, and writing examinations. They must earn Duly Performed (DP) certificates before being permitted to write the final examinations in any course.
3. The University reserves the right to ask occasional students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

NB The Registrar's approval is required before an occasional student who does not intend to take a degree, diploma, or certificate may be admitted.

Casual Students are those who take a course for interest, and will only be admitted to a course if:

1. The Head of the Department concerned is prepared to accept them; and
2. The Department's facilities will not be overextended as a result, and
3. The Registrar's approval is obtained.

Such students must comply with the relevant DP requirements but may not write examinations for the purpose of obtaining recognition towards any degree, certificate, or diploma without converting their status and paying the requisite fee.

Casual students wishing to convert their status must comply with the University's admission criteria and rules. The University reserves the right to request that casual students leave if their work or conduct is deemed unsatisfactory at any time.

Admission to Residence

Only full-time students are admitted to residence.

Additional requirements for specific courses **Mathematics**

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 4 for Mathematics in the NSC or an equivalent pass. Except with the permission of the Senate, a candidate may not take Chemistry 1, Computer Science 1, Mathematics 1, or Physics 1 without achieving a level 4 pass in the NSC. See Rule S.4 in the Faculty of Science. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

For admission to the Accounting curriculum in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 4 pass for Mathematics in the NSC. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

For admission to the Bachelor of Business Science degree in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass for Mathematics in the NSC.

For admission to the Bachelor of Science (Inf Sys) degree in the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass for Mathematics in the NSC.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass in the NSC. Mathematics Literacy is not accepted.

To be admitted to the Faculty of Education, a candidate must fulfil the general rules for admission to a first-degree programme. Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have obtained at least an Admissions Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 3 (40-49%) or higher in the NSC or an APS of 4 (50-59%) or above for Mathematics Literacy and an APS of 4 or above for a Home Language and an APS of 4 or above for a First Additional Language in the NSC. One of the languages must be English, either as the Home Language or the First Additional Language.

Biology or Physical Science

For admission to the Faculty of Science, candidates for the BSc degree must have obtained at least a Level 4 in either Biology or Physical Science. This is not required of candidates for the BSc (Information Systems) degree. For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at least a level 6 pass in Mathematics and a level 6 pass in Physical Science and Biology.

Other Languages

French 1, German 1 (Foreign Language), Latin 1 or Greek 1 may be taken without a pass in the language in question. Students who achieve a sufficiently high standard in the examination may be permitted to proceed to the second course in the language.

See the relevant Faculty of Humanities Rules.

DP (Duly Performed) certificates

See Rule G.19 in the General Rules.

Advice to students

Students requiring advice on academic problems should consult either the relevant Dean of the Faculty or the Head of Department concerned. For advice on non-academic matters, students should consult the Director of Student Services and Development, Residence Manager, or the Student Bureau. The Career Centre and Counselling Centre are available for relevant advice.

Examination results

The results of the June and November examinations are released as soon as they are available. The results will not be posted or communicated telephonically by the Student Bureau Staff, but will be available on the Rhodes University Website, <http://www.ru.ac.za>, under the heading ROSS (Rhodes Online Student Services); or by SMS (register for this service online at <http://ross.ru.ac.za/sms/>).

Masters and Doctoral candidates

Information for Masters and Doctoral candidates is available in the Higher Degrees Guide on the Rhodes University Website, <https://www.ru.ac.za/registrar/forms/>.

GENERAL RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

The conditions under which the University grants degrees, diplomas, and certificates are outlined in the Rhodes University Statute and the Higher Education Act (No. 101 of 1997). These rules are framed in accordance with Section 32 of the Higher Education Act (No. 101 of 1997), as amended.

Credits: The Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework (HEQSF) requires credits as a measure of the volume of learning required for a qualification. The credit rating system rates 10 notional study hours as equivalent to one credit. A minimum credit load of 120 credits per academic year is required for Bachelor's degrees and 180 credits per academic year for Master's degrees and Doctorates. In this Calendar, the term "credit" is not always used in its strict sense.

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION

G.1

A candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate in any Faculty must comply with the conditions and meet the selection criteria set out in the University's admissions policy. The Council reserves the right to refuse admission to any student if it considers it in the best interests of the University to do so.

- 1.1 Normally, students must have obtained an undergraduate degree before registration will be permitted for the Honours degree or Postgraduate diploma/certificate, provided that they meet the entry requirements and selection criteria of the programme. Furthermore, admission is subject to space availability and the programme's offering in any particular academic year.
- 1.2 The Honours degree must follow the undergraduate degree, i.e. if a BSS is obtained, the student must be registered for a BSSH, or if a BCOM is obtained, the student must be registered for a BCOH.
- 1.3 Usually, students are required to pass five (5) Honours modules to complete the

Honours degree. Students may choose modules from across two (2) departments. If it is a 4-1 module/course split, it is regarded as Honours in the subject where four (4) modules are completed. However, for a Joint Honours degree, students may choose a 3-2 split of modules/courses across two (2) Departments, where approved by the Head of Department.

- 1.4 The Honours degree may be awarded with distinction if a final overall mark equal to or greater than 75% is obtained.
- 1.5 Completion of an Honours degree allows students access to further postgraduate studies, where they meet the admission criteria and where space is available in a specific postgraduate programme.
- 1.6 Refer to Departmental and Faculty regulations for further information regarding discipline-specific Honours degrees.

Note: Although the Faculties of Law and Pharmacy do not offer Honours degrees, their four-year Undergraduate degrees permit application for Master's studies.

G.2

Students are required, on admission, to register by signing the official registration form. Students must also pay the prescribed tuition fee. They must renew their registration and pay the prescribed fee annually as long as they continue to be students of the University; provided that students may be refused permission to renew their registration for any year of study if they fail to satisfy the prescribed minimum requirements of study. (See Rule G.7.)

G.3

Candidates for a degree in any Faculty must be registered as matriculated students of the University and, for this purpose, must be in possession of a National Senior Certificate (NSC) or its equivalent with endorsement for degree

studies. In addition, applicants for admission may be required to have attained a minimum standard in a specified subject or subjects at the NSC or equivalent examination, or to have such other qualifications as may be prescribed. Students will neither be permitted to register after the first year of study nor graduate until a copy of the National Senior Certificate or international equivalent is received.

G.4

The Senate may refuse to admit any student to a postgraduate course of study in any subject if the standard of proficiency which the student has previously attained is, in the opinion of the Senate, insufficient.

G.5

Students previously registered at another higher education institution who wish to be admitted to the University must provide a certificate, satisfactory to the Senate, confirming their conduct at the other higher education institution.

G.6

6.1 Students may not be admitted to any course in any subject until their curricula have been approved by the Senate.

6.2 Such curricula may be modified only with the permission of the Senate.

6.3 The University has the right to cancel registration where it becomes aware that a student has not complied with all registration requirements, including curriculum approval, and in cases where a DP has been refused for all courses for which they are registered.

NB *Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curriculae for each year of their registration. In selecting proposed majors, students should ensure that these subjects do not clash (including checking the timetable for subsequent years of these subjects).*

In the rules that follow, unless otherwise specified or clear from the context, "course" refers to a course that spans one academic year. Two half-courses or two semester courses are deemed to be equivalent to one course. "Qualifying courses"

refers to courses accepted as credits toward a degree, diploma, or certificate.

G.7

The Senate may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to benefit from further study, or if they have failed;

7.1 at the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete two-year courses or four semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 60 NQF credits towards the degree:

and in the Faculties of Education, Humanities and Science

7.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete four year courses or eight semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 120 NQF credits towards the degree; or

7.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete six-year courses or twelve semester courses, which is equivalent to 180 NQF credits towards the degree, at least 60 credits of which should be at least NQF level 6.

and in the Faculty of Science

7.4 ...

7.5 ...

7.6 at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses for which they had been registered with the Dean's approval; *in the cases of the Faculties of Education, Science, Humanities, Commerce, Pharmacy and Law* to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years for a 360-credit qualification; and to complete the undergraduate degree within six years for a 480-credit qualification.

and in the Faculty of Commerce

as full-time candidates for the BBusSc, BCom or BEcon degrees:

7.8 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained five year courses or ten semester courses; or a combination which is equivalent to 150 NQF credits towards the degree; or

7.9 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained seven year courses or fourteen semester courses, or a combination which is equivalent to 210 NQF credits towards the degree; 60 credits of which should be at least at NQF level 6:

7.10 at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses for which they had been registered with the Dean's approval;

7.11 ...
and for students enrolled on the Commerce, Humanities or Science Extended Studies Programmes

7.12 at the end of the first year of the extended programme, normally to have obtained all courses and to have achieved an average of 60% in the courses read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

and in the Faculty of Pharmacy

7.13 in the year of entry into the second year of the BPharm curriculum at this or any other university to complete second year courses to the value of 60 NQF credits, plus all courses of the first year curriculum;

7.14 in the subsequent years of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete courses to the value of 70 NQF credits per year;

and in the Faculty of Law

7.15.1 students in any year of study of the LLB programme will be excluded if:

7.15.1.1 they are registered for five or more courses in an academic year, and they fail 65% or more of the courses registered for in that year, irrespective of the number of credits thus far obtained towards the degree; or

7.15.1.2 they do not fulfil the terms of academic probation.

G.8

The Senate may, after the mid-year examinations in any year, cancel students' registrations for the remainder of that year, and may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if the students are unable to satisfy, by the end of the year, the minimum requirements of study prescribed by the Faculty in which they are registered, and if they are not completing, will not be registered for more than one course in the semester following the mid-year examinations.

G.9

Except with the special permission of the Senate, a student who has been excluded on account of failure to satisfy the minimum requirements of study prescribed for in one Faculty may not be admitted to any other Faculty of the University.

NB: Periods of attendance and examination results at another university are taken into account in the same manner as periods of attendance and examination results at this University.

G.10

A student may not be registered for more than one degree or diploma at the same time, or be registered as a student of another university, without the permission of the Senate.

ATTENDANCE AND WORK

G.11

A candidate for a degree or a diploma must attend the courses, perform the work and pass the examinations which are prescribed for that degree or diploma.

G.12

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, students are not deemed to have attended the University in any academic year or any semester unless they have attended for at least three-quarters of that year or that semester.

12.1 Please see the University Policy on Leave of Absence for Students available on the University website. Further information can be obtained from the Division of Student

Services and Development by emailing
Studentaffairs@ru.ac.za.

For the purposes of these rules, "academic year" and "semester" are defined in the University Calendar.

G.13

A candidate who is not a full-time student may be required to devote to the curriculum for a degree, diploma or certificate at least one year more than the normal period specified in these rules. The distribution of courses in the curriculum of a part-time candidate is subject to the approval of the Dean of the relevant Faculty.

COMPLETION OF COURSES

G.14

Candidates for a degree, diploma, or certificate must comply with all the requirements that the Senate has approved for each subject they take for that degree, diploma, or certificate.

14.1 Students who meet the requirements of the qualification following the mid-year examinations and who do not register for any courses in the second semester by the relevant deadline may have their registration cancelled by the University.

G.15

An undergraduate course in any subject typically consists of not less than sixty separate class meetings in any year, and half-courses and semester courses consist of not less than thirty separate class meetings in any year.

G.16

Except as provided for in terms of Rules G.44 to G.48 or in terms of Faculty Rules, a candidate obtains credit for a course on meeting the requirements set for that course.

G.17

Except where otherwise provided in Faculty rules, or where, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate waives this Rule, students may not

17.1 enter upon the work of the second or subsequent course in any subject unless they have obtained credit for the preceding course in the subject; or

17.2 take examinations in more than one course in the same subject in a single semester.

or

17.3 a student may usually neither register nor sit for an examination at two different levels of the same subject in the same academic year.

G.18

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student must have obtained a minimum number of credits in first-year courses, as specified in Faculty Rules, before entering the second course of any subject.

ADMISSION TO EXAMINATIONS

G.19

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student may not be admitted to an examination in any course unless the Head of the Department concerned has certified that the student has satisfactorily attended the class meetings for the course under examination and has satisfactorily performed the work of the class.

19.1 Certification of attendance and performance under Rule G.19 (usually known as "the issue of Duly Performed (DP) certificates") will be notified by Heads of Departments to the Registrar after the last class meeting for the course, but before the commencement of exams.

19.2 Students failing to present themselves at the June examinations in any non-semesterised course in which any examination is set, without a medical certificate or other reason acceptable to the Senate, shall not qualify for a DP certificate for that course. The Senate may grant an exemption from this Rule to a department that applies for it.

19.3 In exceptional circumstances, the Board of the Faculty, after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned, may reinstate a student's previously withdrawn DP Certificate.

19.4 The Senate has approved the following exceptions to Rule G.19:

19.4.1 ...

19.4.2 Candidates for the BA, BJourn, BCom, BEcon, BSc, BSc(InfSys) or BSocSc degree who have completed the final courses of their major subjects, have attended the university for three years, have not more than two subsidiary courses or four subsidiary semester courses outstanding for the degree, and have left the University, may write the examinations in such subsidiary courses without re-attaining DP certificates; provided that, where practical work is required, evidence must be submitted to the satisfaction of the Head of Department concerned that the candidate has received adequate practical training.

G.20

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, certification in terms of Rule G.19 will be valid only for the examination of the year in which it is issued.

20.1 The Senate has approved the following exceptions to Rule G.20, provided the student has written all exams required for the course in the year in which the DP certificate being extended was earned:

20.1.1 A candidate granted a non-continuing pass may rewrite at a subsequent examination to obtain a continuing pass, provided that no special examination has to be set for the purpose. Students who have obtained a non-continuing pass in a course may, by application to the Dean, enter an examination in that course without earning a new DP certificate, provided they already hold a DP certificate.

20.1.2 With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, the validity of the DP certificate of a student who is in attendance at the University may be extended by one year. In the Faculty of Commerce, such an extension will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the F1 level, and students would normally be required to write and perform satisfactorily in class

tests and in the June examinations. An application for such an extension must normally be made within two weeks of the course start date [applications must be submitted via the Rhodes Online Student Service (ROSS)].

20.1.3 In the case of students who do not return to the University in any year, the validity of their DP certificates for courses in which they failed in the previous year may be extended by one year by the Dean of the Faculty after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned. In the Faculty of Commerce, such extensions will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the F1 level. Extension in terms of this Rule will not be granted, however, to students who are refused readmission in terms of Rule G.7. An application for such an extension must normally be submitted within two weeks of the course start date.

20.1.4 Candidates registered in Faculties other than the Law Faculty who have achieved an aggregate pass (ACR) in Legal Theory 1, 2 or 3 on a previous year of study, and who achieved a result of 40% or more for any of the component semester course(s) failed in Legal Theory 1, 2, or 3, may at any subsequent examination rewrite any such component semester course failed in order to obtain credit towards the LLB degree, provided that no special examinations has to be set for this purpose. Candidates must register in the Faculty for the component Legal Theory semester in terms of this Rule at the beginning of the academic year. The coursework component will not be included in calculating the final result. Students registered for the LLB degree in the Law Faculty may not rely on this Rule.

20.1.5 Candidates in their Final Year of the LLB degree in the Law Faculty who have passed all the semester courses for the degree, save four, may, at any subsequent examination, rewrite any such component

semester course failed in order to obtain credit towards the LLB degree, provided that no special examinations have to be set for this purpose. Candidates must register in the Faculty for the course in terms of this Rule at the beginning of the academic year. The coursework component will not be included in calculating the final result.

20.1.6 In the event that a student cannot register for a course on an Extended DP the year directly after attempting it because the course is not offered that year, they may complete the course on an Extended DP when it becomes available in the curriculum again.

20.1.7 Where the content of any course has substantially changed from one year/semester to the next, the Faculty concerned reserves the right to refuse an Extended DP and to require the student to repeat the course with the new/updated content.

G.21

A student, before being admitted to an examination, degree, diploma, or certificate, shall pay the fees prescribed in each case.

G.22

The Council may refuse to admit a student to an examination or to award a degree, diploma, or certificate if the student has failed to pay the required fees due to the University or an affiliated institute.

EXAMINERS

G.23

An examination of the University qualifying in any subject for a degree, diploma or certificate shall be conducted by at least two examiners, of whom at least one shall be an examiner who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination; provided that, in the case of an examination qualifying in a first or second year course, or any examination qualifying for a diploma or certificate, the Senate may waive the requirement that one of the examiners shall be a

person who has not been connected with the preparation of the student for that examination.

23.1 Under Rule G.23, the University will appoint as one of the examiners for the examinations set out below a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination, and who is not in receipt of any remuneration other than examiner's fees from the University or from an affiliated institute:

23.1.1 All written examinations in the final courses of degree and diploma subjects;

23.1.2 Practical examinations in final courses of degree subjects where required by departments;

23.1.3 All method courses for the PGCE;

23.1.4 ...

G.24

The Heads of the University Departments in which the subjects under examination are taught shall, *ex officio*, be responsible for the examination processes in their respective departments.

EXAMINATIONS

G.25

The Senate shall be the final authority in deciding the result of an examination.

G.26

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the results of examinations for all courses shall be published under seven heads, four for successful candidates namely, class 1, class 2 (divisions A and B) and class 3, and three for unsuccessful candidates, namely, Failure 1, Failure 2 and Failure 3, in all cases in decreasing order of marks according to the marks obtained by the candidates.

G.27

The Senate does not permit re-marking or re-examination of scripts. However, students in all Faculties may request a re-scrutiny of their mid-year and end-of-year scripts, provided their academic record is not withheld. Re-scrutiny entails checking that (i) all questions have been marked and (ii) marks have been added up and transcribed correctly. Such a request should be made through the Office of Registrar within two

weeks of the commencement of the University term following the examination concerned.

G.28.1 The Senate will permit students in all Faculties to view their mid-year scripts. However, students in all Faculties may only view their end-of-year scripts provided that their academic record is not withheld. Applications in this respect must be made through the relevant Head of Department and can be made at any stage of the academic year.

G.28.2 The Senate will permit students in all Faculties to obtain a copy of their mid-year and end-of-year scripts, provided that their academic record is not withheld. Applications in this respect must be made through the Office of the Registrar, accompanied by payment of the prescribed fee, and can be made at any stage of the academic year.

G.29

Applications under Rules G.27 and G.28 regarding examinations must be submitted to the Registrar, accompanied by the prescribed fee, within three weeks of the results being released. In exceptional circumstances, the Senate may permit a relaxation of this Rule.

29.1 The fee under G.27 and under G.28 will be refunded if the re-scrutiny effects a change to the student's advantage in the classification of their results.

29.2 The result of the re-scrutiny shall supersede the result of the original examination. Thus, a student who applies for a re-scrutiny may be awarded a lower mark and thereby forfeit any advantage (e.g. permission to write a supplementary examination) accruing from the original mark.

G.30

Unless the contrary should appear from the context of these rules, an examination shall consist of such written, oral or other form of test as the Senate may prescribe in each case.

G.31

The examiners may require students to present themselves for *viva voce* questioning, in addition to the tests prescribed by the Senate under Rule G.30.

G.32

The results of an examination written in a subsequent year on an extended DP Certificate shall normally be calculated by taking into account the same component elements and the same proportions as those used for the examination for which the certificate was earned.

G.33 ...

G.34

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass and who rewrite the examination later than the January/February immediately after the award of the non-continuing pass shall be placed in the class which reflects the final mark which has been achieved.

G.35

The final marks for students rewriting an examination in terms of G.34 above will be calculated in accordance with Rule G.32.

G.36

Except as may otherwise be prescribed in these rules, ordinary examinations shall be held only at the end of each semester; provided that the ordinary examinations for the degree of Bachelor with Honours in any subject may also be held before the beginning of the following academic year, as may be decided by the Senate; provided further that a part-time candidate for the degree of Bachelor with Honours may, on completion of two years as a registered candidate, and with the permission of the Senate, write a special examination before the beginning of the following academic year.

36.1 Ordinary examinations will usually be held during June and November, save that examinations for the BEd (Hons) degree may be held outside of the normally scheduled exam period.

36.2 The Senate will permit the examinations for the Honours degree to be held before the beginning of the academic year only in exceptional circumstances.

G.37

The ordinary examinations may be extended by holding supplementary examinations.

37.1 The results of the supplementary examinations shall be calculated by taking into account the same component elements as those used for the ordinary examinations.

37.2 The conditions under which a candidate may be admitted to supplementary examinations shall be prescribed by the Senate.

37.2.1 Supplementary examinations are offered at all undergraduate course levels, subject to some exceptions (see Departmental and Faculty entries).

37.2.2 Students who attain a final mark of between 40-49% for the course, subject to some exceptions, qualify to sit the supplementary examination.

37.2.3 ...

37.2.4 ...

37.2.5 Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses (or two semester-courses) prescribed for their degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course (or two semester-courses, except in the Faculty of Science – S 24.3) may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course (or two semester-courses).

37.2.6 Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses prescribed for the BPharm degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course.

37.3 Unless otherwise provided for in Faculty rules, candidates admitted to supplementary examinations in terms of Rule G.37.2 above will receive a classified result, in addition to the original mark obtained.

37.4 In all those subjects offered at a given level as a pair of semester-credit courses, where both semester courses are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be

deemed equivalent to a pass in a two-semester aggregate course for that subject.

37.5 Students who do not obtain a pass in both courses, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate course, as the Department may allow.

37.6 Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-course components.

G.38

Special exams will not be granted to any student who fails to write the examination due to having misread the examination timetable, having overslept or for any other reason.

AEGROTAT CASES

G.39

An aegrotat examination may be granted by the Senate to candidates who, by reason of illness duly attested by a medical certificate on the prescribed form, or for other reasons acceptable to the Senate, have been unable to present themselves at an ordinary examination in any subject.

39.1 Applications must be made within one week of the date of the examination missed.

39.2 *Other reasons* above would include the serious illness or death of a near relative at the actual time of the examination. In such a case, evidence of the circumstances should be attached in support of the application.

[Applications must be made via the Rhodes Online Student Service (ROSS)].

39.3 An aegrotat will not be granted for a course in which an aegrotat had been granted and missed for any reason.

39.4 An aegrotat will not be granted for a course in which a supplementary exam had been granted and missed for any reason.

G.40

Candidates who have been admitted to aegrotat examinations in terms of Rule G.39 but who are

unable to write those examinations for similar reasons may be permitted, if their previous work in that subject is deemed by the Senate to be satisfactory, to proceed to the next course in that subject and, on completing that course, to be given credit for both courses. Alternatively, the Senate may, subject to Rule G.39 above being complied with, admit such candidates to subsequent aegrotat examinations. Such subsequent examinations, which may be in written or oral form, are normally required to be held before the end of the following semester.

G.41

In cases where a student has already completed part of an examination, the Dean of the Faculty will consult with the internal examiners and the Head of the Department concerned before deciding whether or not to approve the aegrotat examination. In such cases, the Dean shall have the power

41.1 not to award an aegrotat; or,

41.2 ...

41.3 to award an aegrotat for the assessment/examination, which is an assessment on its own and that was not attempted.

41.2 An aegrotat examination will not be granted to candidates who have entered the examination hall and seen any one of the papers or practicals of an examination and who subsequently report that they were ill at the time of the examination.

G.42

An aegrotat examination will not be granted to a candidate who is unfit to write as a result of having taken drugs or alcohol stimulants.

G.43

No application for aegrotat examinations will be considered unless DP certificates have been obtained for the relevant courses.

EXEMPTIONS

G.44

The Senate may accept, as part of the attendance of a student of the University qualifying for admission to a degree of Bachelor, periods of

attendance as a registered matriculated student at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, or accept examinations passed in any subject at such university or institution, or passed by an external student of the University of South Africa, or other examinations recognised by the Senate for the purpose, as granting exemption from examinations of the University in such subject.

G.45

Students exempted in terms of Rule G.44 shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor unless:

45.1 they have attended approved courses at the University:

45.1.1 in the case of the Faculties of Humanities, or of Science, or of Commerce, or of Pharmacy, for at least two academic years;

45.1.2 in the case of the Faculty of Law for at least the final two years; and,

45.1.3 in the case of the Faculty of Education for at least the final year;

45.2 their periods of attendance at such recognised university or institution, and at the University, are together not less than the complete period ordinarily prescribed for the degree;

45.3 they have passed such examinations of the University as the Senate may prescribe;

45.4 they have paid such fees as the Council may prescribe;

45.5 they have complied with any other requirements for the degree.

G.46

The following rules have been framed in respect of students who claim credit towards a degree of Rhodes University for subjects passed at another university -

46.1 Credit for courses passed at another university subsequent to registration at Rhodes University is subject to approval by the Senate; provided that:

46.1.1 candidates for the BCom and BEcon degrees who have completed their major subjects may be granted credit for not

more than three outstanding courses passed at other universities;

46.2 Credit will not be given for more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree at Rhodes University; inclusive of only one final course of a major subject;

46.3 Candidates who have registered for a degree at Rhodes University for at least three years, who have completed at least one of their major subjects for the degree, and who leave the University, may be given credit for at most one final course of a major subject passed at another university, provided that the Head of the Department at Rhodes University is satisfied that the standard of the other university in the course concerned is equivalent to that of Rhodes University in that course;

G.47

Graduates in the Faculties of Humanities, Science, Commerce, or Pharmacy of the University who wish to proceed to a Bachelor's degree in another of these Faculties and who seek exemptions towards the degree in the second Faculty on the ground of having already passed in courses common to both Faculties are governed by these rules:

47.1 The Senate may give an exemption for not more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree in the second Faculty.

47.2 Exemption may be given only for first courses in any subject (the year in which such courses are required to be taken being immaterial), except in the case of three course subjects, in which exemption may be given for the first and second courses.

47.3 Any course passed for a degree in one Faculty, for which exemption is not granted for the degree in the second Faculty, may not be taken again as a course for the degree in the second Faculty.

47.4 The minimum period of attendance as a student in the second Faculty shall be two years.

G.48

In the case of a student holding the degree of Bachelor of Arts who wishes to proceed to the degree of Bachelor of Music or the degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, the following rules apply:

48.1 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, may grant exemption from not more than two years' work towards the degree of Bachelor of Music to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Music as a major subject.

48.2 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, may grant exemption from not more than two years of work towards the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Fine Art Studies as a major subject.

AD EUNDEM GRADUM STUDENTS

G.49

Persons admitted to a qualification under this Rule must have a minimum of a National Senior Certificate/matric or recognised equivalent. Persons who have graduated at another university who demonstrate that they have met the exit level outcomes, or who are able to give a portfolio of satisfactory evidence that demonstrates informal learning and mastery of competencies at the exit level of the qualifications at the NQF level(s) required for admission to the degree—may be admitted as students to courses of special study and research at the University, depending on their suitability for admission. Such persons may, on completion of such courses, be admitted to a degree of Master, provided that they before being so admitted:

49.1 have paid such fees as may be prescribed;

49.2 have completed the work for the degree, as a registered student of the University, for the prescribed period of the degree;

49.3 have attended at the University such courses as may be prescribed;

49.4 have undertaken research upon a subject approved by the Senate;

49.5 have presented a satisfactory report, dissertation or thesis upon the research undertaken; and

49.6 have complied with such further conditions as may be prescribed by the Senate.

The template, as approved by the Senate, must be populated as part of the application process.

DEGREE OF MASTER (ALL FACULTIES)

G.50

Subject to the provisions of Rule G.49 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Master in the Faculty of Humanities (except the degree of Master of Music and Master of Fine Art), or of Science, or of Commerce, until at least two years after admission to the degree of Bachelor or one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours in such Faculty, or, in the case of the degrees of Master of Education by thesis, Master of Fine Art, Master of Laws and Master of Music, until at least one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor. Special entry criteria for the Master of Education degree, offered by coursework and thesis, are listed in the Faculty of Education Rules. Except with the permission of the Senate, a candidate for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

50.1 Candidates for Master's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may apply up to July 1 and register by August 31.

50.2 Normally, only students holding an honours degree, or equivalent, will be accepted as candidates for Masters degrees. Students with an ordinary degree will be accepted only in exceptional cases.

50.3 Only students who have been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Laws and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Law.

50.4 Only students who have been admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

50.5 Candidates who have obtained the BPharm degree may not present their thesis for a Master's degree until at least 18 months after the date of registration for the MSc or MPharm degree.

G.51

No person shall be admitted as a candidate for the degree of Master unless they have obtained the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and approval of the Dean concerned.

G.52

Candidates for the degree shall be registered for and attend an approved course of study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.50: provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

52.1 When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

G.53

The Faculty shall appoint a supervisor, or supervisors, to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For this Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff. Candidates may be permitted to register in an associated Research Institute without requiring a co-supervisor in a related academic department, provided the Dean approves the research proposal after consideration of a recommendation from a member of a cognate department. At least one of the supervisors for such candidates must be a member of the relevant Faculty Board.

53.1 The Senate has decided that candidates for the degree of Master who are exempted from attendance under Rule G.52 will be required to report in person to their supervisors from time to time as directed by the latter, and that the time in which such a candidate may qualify for the award of the degree will be extended by one year (i.e. they must be

registered candidates for the degree for at least two years); provided that Senate may waive the additional year in the case of candidates who are conducting full-time research under approved conditions.

G.54

The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty concerned, convert the registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by thesis to registration for the PhD degree if it considers that the work is of a standard normally expected of a doctoral student.

G.55

At least two months before the candidates present their theses, they shall give notice on ROSS to the Registrar of their intention to do so.

55.1 Candidates must submit their theses no later than the due date published in the Calendar Diary.

G.56

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted and the number of copies required.

56.1 Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

56.2 The Senate requires a digital submission of the thesis uploaded on ROSS in the first instance, and suitably bound copies of the thesis where an examiner so indicates, to be presented for examination. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies required.

56.3 After the examination process has been completed, the candidate is required to submit an electronic version of the final corrected thesis in PDF format for deposit in the University's digital repository, together with the Final Thesis Submission Form signed by the candidate and supervisor, to the Registrar's Division. Candidates and supervisors who wish to have a digital holding period of between 1 and 2 years before depositing the thesis in the digital repository, or a full embargo, must request this in the Final Thesis Submission Form.

The library offers assistance and training to postgraduate students for PDF conversion.

G.57

A thesis shall be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidates as to the extent to which it represents their own work. This declaration must be approved by the supervisor.

G.58

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

G.59

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not present themselves for the examination for the degree more than twice in the same subject.

59.1 An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners, invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

G.60

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

G.61

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Master of Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY (ALL FACULTIES)

G.62

Subject to the provisions of Rule G.49 a candidate shall not be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy until at least three years after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours (in any Faculty), or of Bachelor of Laws, or of Bachelor of Education, or of Bachelor of Music, or until at least two years after admission to the degree of Master.

G.63

Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in any Faculty shall be registered for and attend an approved course of special study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.62; provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

63.1 Candidates for doctoral degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may apply up to July 1 and register up to August 31 of each year.

G.64

Before registration, candidates for the degree must obtain the approval of the Senate for the subject of special study or research they propose to pursue.

64.1 When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

G.65

The Senate delegates authority to the Faculty Boards to appoint a supervisor or supervisors to advise a candidate and to report back to the Senate, thereby exercising its oversight of the process through Faculty minutes. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purposes of the Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a Faculty of the University and other formally affiliated researchers are regarded as members of staff. Candidates may be permitted to register in an associated Research Institute without requiring a co-supervisor in a related academic department, provided the Dean approves the research proposal after consideration of a recommendation from a member of a cognate department. Normally, at least one of the supervisors for such candidates must be a member of the relevant Faculty Board.

65.1 The candidate shall work in such association with the supervisor as the Faculty Board may direct.

G.66

Candidates shall submit a thesis on the results of their study, which shows evidence of originality

and independent research. This thesis may comprise entirely of a set of sequential chapters or may include academic articles and creative works such as artefacts, compositions, public performances and public exhibitions in partial fulfilment of the thesis requirements. Regardless of the forms of representation, the PhD must demonstrate coherence across the submission and demonstrate high-level research capability that makes a significant and original academic contribution at the frontiers of a discipline or field (*refer to the Higher Degrees Guide*).

G.67

At least two months before candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so.

67.1 Candidates must submit their theses no later than the date published in the Calendar Diary.

G.68

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each thesis. In exceptional circumstances, one examiner may be an internal member of the University.

G.69

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted and the number of copies required.

69.1 Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

69.2 The Senate requires a digital submission of the thesis uploaded on ROSS in the first instance, and suitably bound copies of the thesis where an examiner so indicates, to be presented for examination. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies required.

69.3 After the examination process has been completed, the candidate is required to submit an electronic version of the final corrected thesis in PDF format for deposit in the University's digital repository, together with the Final Thesis Submission Form signed by the candidate and supervisor, to the Registrar's Division. Candidates and supervisors who wish to have a digital

holding period of between 1 and 2 years before depositing the thesis in the digital repository, or a full embargo, must request this in the Final Thesis Submission Form. The library offers assistance and training to postgraduate students for PDF conversion.

- 69.4** Every thesis must be accompanied by a double-spaced typewritten abstract in English of not more than 350 words. In addition, if the thesis is written in a language other than English, it must be accompanied by an abstract in the same language. No illustrative materials, such as tables, graphs, or charts, should be included. The abstract must be approved by the thesis supervisor and, in the case of successful doctoral candidates, will be submitted to University Microfilms International for publication and distribution. The abstract must be bound together with the thesis and be placed immediately after the title page.

G.70

Candidates shall submit a declaration, satisfactory to the Senate, stating to what extent the thesis is their original work, and certifying that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

G.71

If, at the date of the presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time and distribute the content in whatever format it deems fit, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

G.72

The Senate may require candidates, if the examiners so recommend, to submit to a written or oral examination on the subject of their thesis and on the whole field of study which it covers.

G.73

An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Dean may,

on the advice of the examiners, invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

- 73.1** Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not present themselves for the examination for the degree more than twice in the same subject.

G.74

A thesis accepted by the University, and subsequently published in whatever form, shall bear the inscription: "Thesis approved for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", or "Thesis approved in partial fulfilment of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", as the case may be.

G.75

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

GENERAL RULES FOR HIGHER DEGREES

G.76

The Registrar, as delegated by the Senate, may suspend or cancel the registration of any candidates whose progress is considered to be unsatisfactory.

- 76.1** If candidates have not completed their Master's degree within three years from first registration or their PhD degree within five years from first registration or six years if their PhD was upgraded from a Master's degree, their candidacy will lapse unless the Registrar, as delegated by the Senate, is satisfied that an extension is warranted. Furthermore, in line with Rule G.76.1, the following processes were approved by the Senate. The Registrar receives:

- (i) A letter of request by the student; accompanied by
- (ii) Support documentation; and
- (iii) A motivation by the supervisor; and
- (iv) A motivation by the Head of Department; and
- (v) A motivation by the Dean.

- 76.2** Should there be *bona fide* reasons for a break in registration for higher degree research, a candidate may apply for a

suspension of registration. Registration may only be suspended under exceptional circumstances and is rarely done retrospectively. An application must be submitted to the Head of the Department and is subject to the Head of Department's recommendation, the Dean's approval, and the approval of the faculty board and the Senate in the case of a doctoral degree. Any obligation to sponsors or funders should be taken into account when considering suspension of registration. Candidates wishing to discontinue or suspend their registration must give notice to the Registrar (registrar@ru.ac.za) by completing the appropriate application form before February 15 of each year or as soon as possible after the exceptional circumstances occur. Suspension of registration may be granted for one year during the period of study. The suspension of registration cannot be implemented during the first year of study.

GUIDELINES FOR SENIOR DOCTORATES

G.77

When applicants indicate their wish to submit work for a Senior Doctorate, the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, supported by a full motivation, will consider recommending to the Senate the acceptance of the work for examination.

G.78

If Senate approves the acceptance of work for a Senior Doctorate, the candidate must submit for the approval of the Senate, six copies of published work dealing with some subject falling within the scope of the studies represented in the University, or, in the case of the degree of Doctor of Music, a set of musical compositions, in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate. Normally, the

published work should be presented either conventionally bound or in electronic form (in PDF format) on suitably indexed CD-ROM disks together with an explanatory synopsis. Such work shall constitute a distinguished contribution to the advancement of knowledge in that field.

78.1 Copies so submitted shall become the property of the University.

G.79

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each candidate. In exceptional circumstances, one examiner may be an internal member of the University. The Senate delegates the authority to appoint examiners to the Vice-Chancellor to act on its behalf, or nominate a Deputy-Vice Chancellor to act on behalf of the Senate in the approval of examiners and report to the Senate for oversight purposes.

G.80

Every work submitted for the degree must be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidate, satisfactory to the Senate, to the effect that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

Candidates for a Senior Doctorate should initially contact the Registrar.

BREACHES OF RULES

G.81

Subject to the provisions of the Higher Education Act and the Rhodes University Statute, the Senate may *ex post facto* condone any breach of the rules governing a curriculum, if it is satisfied that:

- 81.1** the students concerned are not themselves responsible for the breach of rules;
- 81.2** if the breach is not condoned, the students concerned would be put to undue hardship; and
- 81.3** the Rule broken is not of fundamental importance.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

GENERAL INFORMATION

Bachelor of Business Science

The degree of Bachelor of Business Science is a four-year career-focused degree premised on the application of quantitative methods. The curriculum for this degree aims to provide a thorough grounding in the principles of the candidate's chosen field of expertise to the postgraduate level, supported by ancillary subjects which will equip candidates for the professional and managerial requirements of their chosen field at the highest level. To this end, Rule C.14 provides for five specialised curricula, enabling a student to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Quantitative Management, and Computer Science. Entry into the second and fourth years of study for the degree is by permission of the Faculty Board.

Bachelor of Commerce

This is a three-year degree aimed at providing the graduate with a good academic grounding in the major subject areas of Commerce. The curricula provide for specialisation up to third year level in two or more of any of the following fields: Accounting, Economics, Information Systems, Law, Management, Science, Social Science and Statistics, in any of four curricula as follows:

The General Curriculum allows for a wide combination of subjects in second and third year including at least two major subjects. The curriculum enables students to qualify for or obtain exemption in respect of certain components of various professional qualifications. Further particulars are available from the Student Adviser.

The Accounting Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession or to take the BCom degree with an accounting emphasis. If this curriculum is followed, the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy can be

completed in one further year of study after Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, and Taxation 3 has been passed. The Accounting curriculum is endorsed by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA). Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting.

For students first registered up to and including 2025, the Law Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the legal profession, or to take a BCom degree with a legal emphasis. Following this curriculum, a candidate can obtain enough exemptions from LLB degree subjects to complete the LLB requirements in two further years of study.

The inter-faculty curriculum enables students to include a major subject in another faculty in their BCom degree, and, depending on the subjects chosen, is suitable for candidates interested in personnel management or industrial relations. This curriculum also enables students to include a Science major or any Humanities major in their degree.

Bachelor of Economics

This degree is designed for students who wish to include the maximum number of Economics courses and related subjects in their curriculum. The BEcon degree offers a suitable preparation for candidates interested in economic forecasting and analysis and economic planning, in both the public and private sectors. The following specialised curricula are offered:

The Bachelor of Economics (Environmental Science) is intended for students wishing to pursue careers in the economic aspects of environmental studies. The curriculum is designed to train students in the application of economic principles to environmental studies, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The Bachelor of Economics (Mineral Economics) is intended for students who wish to become economists with a geological background. The curriculum is designed to apply economic principles to the exploitation of mineral resources and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce. Because of timetable constraints, this degree cannot be completed in the minimum period of three years.

Master of Business Administration

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes University Business School is a course-work degree together with a research mini-thesis of 15 000 words. The course-work comprises 124 credits and the mini-thesis 60 credits. The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two and a half years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years.

It is a hybrid mode of delivery, where candidates are required to attend two teaching blocks in Makhanda, with complementary synchronous and asynchronous sessions scheduled virtually.

The Rhodes Business School's essence is "Leadership for Sustainability" and hence leadership and sustainability principles underline all subjects in the MBA curriculum. Emphasis is placed on business continuity, as well as achieving a balance between economic, social and environmental sustainability. The school applies its own unique 4E (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) model in its teaching and learning practice.

Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a NQF Exit Level 8 qualification (for example, a Bachelor Honours Degree, Post-graduate Diploma or four year Bachelor Degree) in any discipline, are proficient in English and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants

for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

Master of Commerce Degree in Financial Markets (by coursework and thesis)

The degree is aimed specifically at a Specialised career in the financial/banking sector. Exposure is given in the coursework to banking and monetary policy, debt and foreign exchange markets, equity and derivative markets, and portfolio theory and management. The coursework component is usually examined during the first year of academic study and the dissertation of approximately 30000 words is expected to be submitted by the end of the second year of study.

The coursework component constitutes 50% of the mark, with the balance being awarded to the dissertation. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

Master of Commerce Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)

The coursework component consists of eight modules covering important aspects of taxation and tax planning at an advanced level. The ninth module comprises an introduction to research methodology. Eight essay assignments on taxation and an assignment on research methodology are submitted for assessment. Two three-hour examinations are written on the coursework component. The dissertation on an appropriate topic would normally not exceed 30000 words. The duration of the coursework component is approximately fourteen months with examinations written on completion of the coursework component. The coursework and examinations together represent 50% of the total mark and the dissertation 50%, with a subminimum of 50% for each. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

Commerce Extended Studies Programme

This programme is intended to supplement the instruction of major subjects within the Commerce Faculty. Students enrolled in the Commerce Extended Studies Programme receive additional literacy and numerical instruction via extended, augmented or developmental courses. Successful completion of the programme is recognized with the awarding of a certificate. Students, after successfully completing the two years of the programme, are awarded with 165 SAQA credits and may proceed to the regular degree streams offered by the Faculty.

Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis

This diploma provides a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to develop a comprehensive understanding of the purpose, role, methods, and techniques to be applied in effective business analysis, business process modelling, business process engineering, management consulting, and either software testing or project management for sustainable business performance.

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

This diploma is endorsed by the SAICA for admission to SAICA's Initial Assessment of Competence (IA C); however, the diploma does not confer any professional rights. Graduates are entitled to complete their SAICA training contracts in three years instead of five.

Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management

The diploma equips graduate students with knowledge and expertise to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full time or part time basis, but part-time candidates may choose to complete in two years.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

The diploma builds upon the knowledge level of taxation achieved in any Bachelor of Commerce degree which includes Taxation 3 as one of its courses. It equips these graduate students with the specialised taxation knowledge and expertise to consult and advise clients in dealing with their tax affairs.

Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis

The diploma provides a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full time or part time basis, but part-time candidates may choose to complete in one and a half years.

Postgraduate Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation

The diploma strives to grow and build the number and quality of working Advancement professionals in Africa who are able to engage systematically and purposefully with their internal and external stakeholders to attract resources and, thus, contribute to the long-term sustainability of these non-commercially minded entities.

Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)

The degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) is offered for students wishing to become computer specialists in a commercial environment. This degree combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce, and is administered by the Faculty of Science. See Faculty of Science Rule S.13.

RULES FOR DEGREES AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Commerce only. Rules C.3 to C.11 apply to all Bachelor's degrees in the Faculty. Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules no candidate shall be admitted to any of the

degrees of Bachelor in the Faculty unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration for degree study for at least the minimum time specified for each degree.

C.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Commerce:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Business Science NQF Level 8 (480 credits)	BBS
Bachelor of Commerce NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	BCOM
Bachelor of Economics NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	BECO
Bachelor of Commerce with Honours NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	BCOH
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Accounting, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.</i>	
Bachelor of Economics with Honours NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	BECH
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Accounting, Anthropology, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Politics, Psychology, Sociology, Taxation, Environmental Science, History, Philosophy, Geology.</i>	
Master of Commerce (by full thesis) NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	MCOM
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Accounting, Applied Statistics, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.</i>	
Master of Commerce (by coursework and thesis) NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	MCOM 1, 2, 4
<i>May be taken in the following subjects: Financial Markets, Taxation</i>	
Master of Economics NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	MECO
Master of Business Administration NQF Level 9 (184 credits)	MBA
Doctor of Philosophy NQF Level 10 (360 credits)	PHD3
<i>May be taken in the following subjects:</i>	

Accounting, Auditing, Computer Science, Economics, Financial Accounting, Industrial Sociology, Information Systems, Management, Management Accounting, Finance, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Applied Mathematics, Organisational Psychology, Taxation.

Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis	ADBA
NQF Level 7 (120 credits)	
Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy	HDAC
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	
Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management	PDEM
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	
Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation	PGTAX
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	
Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis	PGBA
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	
Postgraduate Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation	PGARM
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	

C.2

Candidates for bachelor's degrees in the Faculty may present themselves for examination in the following courses; unless otherwise indicated each course listed is a year course:

C2.1

Accounting 1,2,3
 Anthropology 1,2,3
 Applied Statistics 3
 Auditing 3
 Commercial Law 1
 Computer Science 1,2,3
 *Computer Science 101
 *Computer Science 102
 *Computer Science 112
 Economics 1,2,3 and *3B
 Industrial Sociology 2,3
 Information Systems 2,3
 #Principles of Professional Accountancy
 Latin 1
For students first registered up to and including 2025, Legal Theory 1,2,3
 Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1,2,3
 Management 1,2,3
 Management Accounting and Finance 3
 Mathematical Statistics *102,2,3

*Theory of Finance and *Statistics 1C2 or
 *Statistics 1S1
 Mathematics 1,2,3
 Organisational Psychology 2,3
 Political and International Studies 1,2,3
 \$ Professional Communication
 \$ Professional Communication for Accountants
 Psychology 1,2,3
 Sociology 1,2,3
 Taxation 3
 A course in a modern language

**Each of these is a semester course.*

Principles of Professional Accountancy is normally taken in a student's second year of study and is compulsory for the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum

\$ Professional Communication is a semester course offered by the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies. It is normally taken in a student's second year of study and it is compulsory for all Commerce undergraduate curricula except for the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum in which students are required to complete Professional Communication for Accountants, a one-term course offered by the

Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies in conjunction with the Department of Accounting.

For major subjects in the Faculty see Rule C.11.

C2.2 Any approved course offered in the Faculties of Humanities or Science.

C2.3 Any approved sequence of three courses leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or in the Faculty of Science.

C2.4 Students registering for the degree will be allowed to choose as an elective a course not offered at Rhodes University, provided a strong case can be made for its inclusion. Permission will be granted at the discretion of the Dean.

C.3

For the purpose of the BCom, BEcon and BSc(InfSystems) degrees, a pass in both Accounting 1F and 1G will be deemed to be equivalent to a pass in Accounting 1.

C.4

For the purpose of these Rules, and in Rule G.7 as it applies to Commerce, unless otherwise indicated or clear from the context, “course” will mean a year course.

C.5

The onus is on students to ensure that they register for a curriculum which will lead to a degree or diploma as the case may be. The Dean’s approval of a curriculum does not imply permission to obtain a degree or diploma following a curriculum

different from those contained in these Rules. Choices of subjects offered for a degree or certificate may be limited by the University timetable. Students who wish to take a degree over more than the minimum period of time are urged to consult the Dean or Deputy Dean to ensure that their choice of curriculum is feasible on the University timetable.

C.6

For purposes of the courses required for a specific degree, recognition shall not be given for:

Afrikaans-Nederlands 1 and 2 and also Afrikaans 1 and 2

For students first registered up to and including 2025, Commercial Law 1 and Legal Theory 1

Commercial Law 1 and both of Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law

Psychology 2 and also Organisational Psychology 2

Psychology 3 and also Organisational Psychology 3

Sociology 2 and also Industrial Sociology 2

Sociology 3 and also Industrial Sociology 3

More than one of Statistics 1C2, Statistics 1S1 and Statistics 1P1

C.7

7.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not proceed to any course listed in Group I below unless they have passed, or have been exempted from, the corresponding prerequisite course listed in Group II.

Group I	Group II
Accounting 3	For students following BCom(Accounting) degree: Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy For students not following BCom(Accounting) degree: Accounting 2
Applied Statistics 3	Mathematics 1, Mathematical Statistics 102 and Mathematical Statistics 2
Auditing 3	Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy

Computer Science 3	Computer Science 2 and one of Mathematics 101 (MAM 1) or MAT 1S1 or MST 102 or STA 1S1 or STA 1C2
Industrial Sociology 2	Sociology 1
Information Systems 2	Computer Science 112
<i>For students first registered up to and including 2025, Legal Theory 3</i>	<i>For students first registered up to and including 2025, Legal Theory 2</i>
Management 2	Management 1 and Accounting 1
Management 3	Accounting 1, Economics 1, Management 2, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2
Management Accounting and Finance 3	Accounting 2, Principles of Professional Accountancy and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1
Mathematical Statistics 2	Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102
Mathematical Statistics 3	Mathematics 1, Mathematical Statistics 102 and Mathematical Statistics 2
Organisational Psychology 3	Organisational Psychology 2
Taxation 3	Accounting 2 and Principles of Professional Accountancy

7.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, 1P1 and 1S1 unless they have obtained at least an Admission Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 4 or higher in the National Senior Certificate or a pass in Mathematics at another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto. A level 4 pass on the NSC or equivalent and at least 40% for MAM 101 is required for admission to Mathematical Statistics 102. Candidates seeking admission to the BBS Degree require Mathematics at a rating 6 or above.

7.3 Candidates who have passed Management 1 may register for Management 2 only if they have passed, or are concurrently registered for, Accounting 1.

7.4 ...

7.5 Candidates who have passed Organizational Psychology 2 may be permitted by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department to take Psychology 3. Candidates who have completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organizational Psychology 3 except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in

which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set, in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

7.6 A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2.

7.7 Owing to physical constraints, it may be necessary to limit the numbers of students admitted to Information Systems 2 and 3. Should this become necessary, candidates may be required either to have completed the first year towards a degree or to have obtained at least five one-year courses or ten semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 150 NQF credits before being admitted to Information Systems 2. Should the number of candidates qualifying for admission to Information Systems 2 and 3 exceed the number that can be admitted, admission will be on merit, and those who fail to be thus admitted will be given priority for the following year.

7.8 Save with the permission of the Head of the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, a student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for the course Professional Communication.

7.9 Students wishing to proceed to the final year of the BCom (Accounting) degree and register for Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3 must have obtained a mark of 60% or greater for Accounting 2 and a continuing pass for Principles of Professional Accountancy. Students who obtain a mark of 50-59% for Accounting 2 will only be permitted to register for Accounting 3 and two of: Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3.

C.8

Candidates taking a course in the Faculty of Humanities shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.3, H.4, H.5, H.6, H.13, H.14.

C.9

Candidates taking Mathematics or a course given only in the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy shall be governed by the provisions of the Rules S.4 and S.23.

C.10

10.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than six one-year courses or twelve semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 180 NQF credits in the first academic year and five-year courses or ten semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 150 NQF credits in the second academic year.

10.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than seven semester courses in any year of study in which they are engaged on the final course of a major subject (normally no more than three in any semester, plus Professional Communication). The exception approved by the Senate being Accounting 3 when taken with Auditing 3,

Management Accounting and Finance 3, and Taxation 3.

10.3 For all bachelor's degrees, candidates who have passed fewer than three one-year courses or six semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 90 NQF credits shall be deemed to be in the first year of study for the degree. Candidates who have passed more than three one-year courses or six semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 90 NQF credits, but with fewer than eight one-year courses or sixteen semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 240 NQF credits, shall be deemed to be in the second year of study unless they are registered for the final courses of at least two major subjects for the degree. Candidates who have passed at least eight one-year courses or sixteen semester courses or a combination which is equivalent to 240 NQF credits towards the degree, or who are registered for the final courses in at least two major subjects shall be deemed to be in the third year of study.

10.4 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have passed at least two courses before they may enter on the second course in any subject.

10.5 Last Outstanding Course – Supplementary Examinations:

a) Last outstanding course supplementary examinations will be allowed only for the last year course or two semester courses outstanding for the degree, provided this applies normally to one discipline only, and normally to a course written in the final calendar year of study;

and

b) Provided the student has a Duly Performed Certificate for the course concerned.

10.6 Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any one year will normally be required to write the November examination/s of one of the three major subjects in February of the following year.

C.11

The degree certificates of candidates for three-year Bachelor's degrees who pass in Class I in the third

year course of any subject listed in C.2.1 and C.2.3, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. These subjects shall be regarded as major subjects within the Faculty. For the purpose of this Rule the final mark in these courses shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of their component semester courses.

NB Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3 are only regarded as major subjects when taken in conjunction with Accounting 3.

C.12

Aggregation Rules:

a) Aggregation is permitted between semester papers written in the same academic year and with the corresponding supplementary papers. Aggregation across multiple academic years is permitted, if and only if, having met all other degree requirements, such aggregation would then result in the award of the degree. The mark awarded for an aggregated pass is "ACR".

b) In Accounting 1 students obtaining between 40-49% in Accounting 101, together with a corresponding mark of 51% and above for Accounting 102, and an aggregate mark of 50% or more, are awarded a continuing pass to Accounting 2. Where the student passes Accounting 101 but fails 102 with a mark of between 40-49%, and aggregates to 50% or more a non-continuing pass is awarded.

c) For other subjects administered by the Commerce Faculty (Economics, Information Systems and Management) aggregation is permitted where one semester has been failed at the 45-49% level, provided that the overall average mark for the two semester marks is 50% or more.

d) Where a course consists of 4 modules aggregation is permitted where 3 modules (papers) are passed and the fourth failed with a mark of 40% or more, provided that the overall average mark for the 4 modules is 50% or more.

e) Where a course consists of 4 modules aggregation is permitted where 2 modules (papers) are passed and two failed with marks between 45

and 49%, provided that the overall average mark for the 4 modules is 50% or more.

f) Subminima for other subjects taken by Commerce students may differ from this rule but aggregation always conforms to (a) above.

C.13

All students registered for a degree in the Faculty are required to pass Economics 1 and 2.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF BUSINESS SCIENCE

C.14

14.1 The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Business Science shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

14.2 Candidates who do not pass all the courses for the Degree in the first year of study will be automatically reregistered in the second year as Bachelor of Commerce / Economics students with the approval of the Board of the Faculty.

14.3 Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the Faculty.

14.4 Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth-year course for the degree if they have not passed or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

14.5 Candidates normally require a minimum of 60% in their third year of study in the subject they wish to continue with in their fourth year.

14.6 Candidates wishing to be admitted to the fourth year of study in any discipline must note that the course can only be offered to a limited number of students. Departments reserve the right to select the best students regardless of the degree being studied.

14.7 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who fail the fourth year will, depending on courses passed, be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the degree of Bachelor of Economics.

14.8 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who have passed the

required courses, may elect to be awarded the BCom or BEcon degree. Such candidates may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Business Science, but may be admitted to an Honours degree.

14.9 A paper in Strategic Management in the fourth year is compulsory for all students reading for full Management Honours, as well as those joint-honours students where Management is the dominant component. Other fourth year students may elect to read a paper in Strategic Management, which will count as 20% of their final fourth year mark. The weighting of the Strategic Management course for joint-honours students not reading Management as the dominant component, and in which Management is either a minor component or not taken at the fourth-year level, will be split equally (10%) between the two Departments in which the student is studying.

14.10 All candidates are required to submit a research essay/project in partial fulfilment of the fourth year of study. Where the candidate is taking the 60/40 split between two subjects, the research essay is normally supervised and examined by the dominant department. This paper will represent a maximum of 20% of the course content of the fourth year of study.

Candidates for the degree should note that they may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.14, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule.

NB It is important that candidates plan their curricula fully in advance to ensure feasibility on the lecture timetable.

CURRICULUM 1 (Economics)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 & Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1

5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Management 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3

Year 4

1. Economics Honours
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 2 (Information Systems)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 112 and Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Information Systems 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematical Statistics 2 or Mathematics 2
4. Management 2 or Accounting 2
5. Commercial Law 1

Year 3

1. Information Systems 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Management 3; Accounting 3
3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Information Systems Honours or Joint Honours. (as prescribed in Rule C.16)
2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 3 (Management)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1

2. Computer Science 112 & Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)

3. Economics 1

4. Management 1

5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Management 2

2. Economics 2

3. Accounting 2 or Information Systems 2

4. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2

5. Commercial Law 1

Year 3

1. Management 3

2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3

3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Management Honours, or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2)

2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 4 (Quantitative Management)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1

2. Computer Science 112 and Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)

3. Economics 1

4. Management 1

5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Mathematical Statistics 2

2. Economics 2

3. Two of: Management 2; Information Systems 2; Accounting 2; Mathematics 2

4. Commercial Law 1

5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Mathematical Statistics 3

2. One of: Economics 3; Management 3; Information Systems 3; Accounting 3; Mathematics 3

Year 4

1. Mathematical Statistics Honours, or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2).

2. Strategic Management. (C.14.9)

CURRICULUM 5 (Computer Science)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1

2. Computer Science 1

3. Economics 1

4. Management 1

5. Mathematics 1

6. Statistics 1C2 or Mathematical Statistics 102 (prerequisite for MST 2)

NB: Candidates should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year.

Year 2

1. Computer Science 2

2. Economics 2

3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2

4. Management 2 or Information Systems 2

5. Commercial Law 1

Year 3

1. Computer Science 3

2. One of: Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3

3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Computer Science Honours or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2).

2. Strategic Management (C.14.9)

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

A. The ordinary degree

C.15

15.1 Candidates for the ordinary degree must pass at least twenty-three semester courses, where a year course is equivalent to two semester courses, contained in one of the curricula set out below.

15.2 Candidates offering more than the minimum number of courses for the degree must select the additional courses from those listed in C.2.1.

15.3 Candidates for the degree may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.14.3, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule. Thus, for example, a candidate wishing to include Computer Science 2 in Curriculum 1 must take Computer Science 1 as the option in item 4 of Year 2, but must take the course in Year 1, and the course it displaces in Year 1, in Year 2. Similarly, a candidate wishing to take Information Systems 2 in Year 2 must take Computer Science 112 in Year 1 and any semester course in Year 1 omitted as a consequence, in Year 2 or thereafter.

CURRICULUM 1 (General)

This curriculum is intended for candidates who wish to specialise in one or more of the following fields:

Economics, Information Systems, Management, Statistics.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1 or Psychology 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2 or Mathematics 1

NB See Rule C.15.3 above. Candidates are reminded that: a) they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2. b) they should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year. c) they should register for Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102

should they intend to take Mathematical Statistics 2.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
3. One of: a course listed in (2) above not already taken; Computer Science 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Organisational Psychology 2
4. Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any other year course, or two semester courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)
5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3
2. One of: A course listed in (1) above not already taken; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Organisational Psychology 3

CURRICULUM 2 (Accounting)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Computer Science 112
4. Economics 1
5. Management 1
6. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

Year 2

1. Accounting 2
2. Economics 2
3. Information Systems 2
4. Principles of Professional Accountancy
5. Professional Communication for Accountants

Year 3*

1. Accounting 3
2. Two** of: Auditing 3; Management Accounting and Finance 3; Taxation 3

** Candidates may not take any other course if all four of Accounting 3; Auditing 3; Management Accounting and Finance 3; and Taxation 3 are taken. See also rule C.7.9.*

*** Candidates who intend to take the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must include all three of these subjects in their curriculum.*

For students first registered up to and including 2025:

CURRICULUM 3 (Law)

Year 1

1. Legal Theory 1
2. Accounting 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. One of the following: A course in a modern language; Latin 1; Mathematics 1 or 1E, or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

NB See Rule C.15.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.

Year 2

1. Legal Theory 2
2. Economics 2
3. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
4. Any other year course, or two semester courses, from C.2.1, or C.2.2
5. Professional Communication (Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)

Year 3

1. Legal Theory 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

CURRICULUM 4 (inter-faculty) *

NB Candidates are reminded of the need to plan any proposed curriculum with regard to its viability in terms of the University lecture timetable.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Economics 1
3. Management 1

4. A first-year course leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.

5. One of the following: Commercial Law 1; Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, or Mathematics 1

NB See Rule C.15.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1, Economics 1, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.

Year 2

1. A second-year course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.

2. Economics 2

3. One of the following: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2

4. Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any year course or two semester courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)

5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. The final course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.

2. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

** For the purpose of this curriculum a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science will be any major subject which can be taken for the BA, BSocSc and BSc degrees, excluding Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Management and, for students first registered up to and including 2025, Legal Theory.*

B. The Honours degree

C.16

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree (excepting, for students first registered up to and including 2025, Legal Theory), or in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

C.17

17.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course in the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to the honours course unless they have obtained a good second class pass in the final undergraduate year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

17.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided that:

17.2.1 they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

17.2.2 the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

17.2.3 the Heads of the Departments concerned and the Dean of the Faculty approve such arrangements.

17.2.4 Accounting Honours may not be taken jointly with any other subject.

C.18

Candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after being admitted to the ordinary degree or to the status of that degree and shall pursue a course of advanced study in the chosen subject.

C.19

The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another department concurrently with their honours degree.

C.20...

C.21

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit a student to take an honours course as a part-time student: Provided that:

21.1 the honours classes are attended within the normal timetable of the Department; and

21.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of Senate, not more than two years.

C.22

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

C.23

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates shall not be permitted to present themselves for the examinations for the degree more than once in the same subject.

C.24

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate candidates must write all parts of the examination at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination, provided that a part-time candidate, or a candidate taking the degree over two years, may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study and part at the end of the second year of study.

C.25

Exceptions have been approved by Senate for the following subjects, and in these subjects parts of the Honours examination may be written at the discretion of the Head of the Department at any official examination session of the University pertaining to the period of study prescribed in Rules 6 and 8:

Computer Science,
Economics,
Information Systems,
Management,
Mathematics,
Statistics.

C.26

Candidates will not be admitted to the Honours degree in Accounting (Financial Accounting) unless they have achieved at least the minimum requirements for admission to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy set out in Rules C.34 and C.35. In addition, candidates must achieve a mark of at least 60% for Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Taxation 3 and Management Accounting and Finance 3.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

C.27

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ECONOMICS

C.28

The degree of Bachelor of Economics may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

A. The ordinary degree

C.29

Candidates must pass at least twenty-three semester courses, where a year course is equivalent to two semester courses, as set out in the following curricula.

CURRICULUM 1 (Business Sciences)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, or Mathematics 1
3. Two from: Accounting 1; Commercial Law 1; Computer Science 1; Management 1; Statistics 1S1 and Mathematical Statistics 102; an approved course.

NB: Candidates are reminded that a) they should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year. b) they should register for Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102 should they intend to take Mathematical Statistics 2. c) for courses

required for the award of the degree, credit will not be recognised for Statistics 1C2 and Statistics 1S1. See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
 2. Two from: Accounting 2; Computer Science 2; Information Systems 2 (if Computer Science 112 passed in Year 1); Management 2 (if Accounting 1 passed in Year 1); Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; one other approved non-initial course.
 3. Any year course, or two semester courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2.
 4. Professional Communication
- See Rule C.2.

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One from: Accounting 3; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

CURRICULUM 2 (Environmental Science)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2; or Mathematics 1
3. Earth Science 101 and Geography 102, plus one from: Anthropology 1; Botany 1; Geology 102; Zoology 1
4. Management 1

NB: Candidates are reminded that a) they should register for Computer Science 112 should they intend to take Information Systems 2 in the second year. b) they should register for Accounting 1 should they intend taking Management 2 in the second year.

See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Environmental Science 2

3. One of: Management 2 (if Accounting 1 passed in Year 1); Information Systems 2 (if Computer Science 112 passed in Year 1)

4. One of: Accounting 1; Botany 2; Geography 2; Zoology 2; Computer Science 112 and any one semester course

5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3

2. Environmental Science 3.

CURRICULUM 3 (Social Sciences)

Year 1

1. Economics 1

2. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2, or Mathematics 1

3. Two from: Anthropology 1; History 1; Introduction to Philosophy; Management 1; Politics 1; Psychology 1; Sociology 1; one other approved course.

NB: Candidates are reminded that they should register for Mathematics 1 and Mathematical Statistics 102 should they intend to take Mathematical Statistics 2.

Year 2

1. Economics 2

2. Two from: Anthropology 2; History 2; Industrial Sociology 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Organisational Psychology 2; Philosophy 2; Politics 2; Psychology 2; Sociology 2; one other approved non-initial course.

3. Any year course, or two semester courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2.

4. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B

2. One of: Anthropology 3; History 3; Industrial Sociology 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Organisational Psychology 3; Philosophy 3; Politics 3; Psychology 3; Sociology 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

CURRICULUM 4 (Mineral Economics)

This degree may be required to be taken over more than three years because of timetable clashes which cannot be resolved.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1

2. Chemistry 1

3. Economics 1

4. Geology 1

5. Management 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2

2. Geology 2

3. Management 2

4. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

5. Professional Communication

Year 3

1. Economics 3

2. Geology 3

B. The Honours degree

C.30

The degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree, or in Operations Research, or in a combination of any two of these subjects.

C.31

Rules C.17 to C.25 above shall also apply to the degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes Business School is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	124 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	60 credits.

The degree is offered on a part-time, modular basis over two and a half years or on a full-time, modular basis over one and a half years.

It is a hybrid mode of delivery, where candidates are required to attend two teaching blocks in Makhanda, with complementary synchronous and asynchronous sessions scheduled virtually.

The Rhodes University Business School's essence is "Leadership for Sustainability" and hence leadership and sustainability principles underline all subjects in the MBA curriculum. Emphasis is placed on business continuity, as well as achieving a balance between economic, social and environmental sustainability. The school applies its own unique 4E (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) model in its teaching and learning practice. The school has committed itself to abide by the Principles for Responsible Management Education (PRME). Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least an NQF Exit Level 8 qualification (for example, a Bachelor Honours Degree, Post-graduate Diploma or four-year Bachelor Degree) in any discipline, are proficient in English and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMACTM Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

The coursework component comprises a number of modules, comprising compulsory and elective, which are assessed by a mixture of assignments, texts and/or examinations, depending on the credit weighting of the module, which together count 67% of the degree. Each module comprising the coursework component of the degree must be passed. The research mini-thesis component which counts 33% of the degree must be passed.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE IN FINANCIAL MARKETS CURRICULUM:

The Master of Commerce in Financial Markets (MCom (Financial Markets)) is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	90 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	90 credits

The coursework component comprises a number of modules and industry examinations. In terms of Financial Services Board's requirements for traders and advisors, candidates are required to sit industry examinations set by the South African Institute of Financial Markets (SAIFM) and the Johannesburg Securities Exchange. The coursework modules and industry examinations together count 50% of the final mark.

Coursework modules (with industry examinations added)

ECO 507 - Macroeconomics, Monetary Policy and Financial Markets

Industry examinations: Introduction to Financial Markets; and Regulation and Ethics of the SA Financial Markets

ECO 504 - Debt and Foreign Exchange Markets

Industry examinations:

The South African Money Market;

The Bond Market; and

The Foreign Exchange Market

ECO 505 - Equity and Derivative Markets

Industry examinations:

The Equity Market;

The Derivatives Market

ECO 508 (Paper 1) - Quantitative Finance

ECO 508 (Paper 2) - Financial Econometrics

ECO 506 - Portfolio Theory and Management

An aggregated pass (ACR) may be awarded for the coursework component provided that no more than one paper is failed and that the mark for this paper is between 45% and 49%. Students falling into this category do have the option of repeating the course during the second year of study. No supplementary examinations will be set. Students failing no more than two papers are obliged to repeat these courses

during the second year of study and no aggregation of marks will be allowed in this case. Students failing more than two papers will not be permitted to continue with the programme except with the special permission of the Head of Department. Such permission is not automatic and motivations provided by affected students will be considered on a case-by-case basis. The coursework component of the degree must be passed.

The research mini-thesis comprises a written report and counts 50% of the final mark. The research mini-thesis component of the degree must be passed.

Students registered for the degree must normally be full-time and in-attendance for the first year of study.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE IN TAXATION

The Master of Commerce in Taxation (MCom (Taxation)) is a degree by coursework and research mini-thesis. The curriculum is weighted as follows:

Coursework:	90 credits
Research Mini-Thesis:	90 credits

The coursework component comprises a number of modules and two three-hour examinations which together count 50% of the final mark:

1. Income tax - aspects of the "gross income" definition
2. Income tax - further aspects of the "gross income" definition
3. Income tax – further aspects of the "gross income" definition
4. Income tax - aspects of the "general deduction formula"
5. Income tax - further aspects of "the general deduction formula"
6. Tax planning and anti-avoidance measures
7. Employee benefits and retirement planning
8. The Tax Administration Act
9. Research methodology and design

The two three-hour examination papers can be written in Makhanda or, subject to special arrangements, other venues in South Africa. The coursework component of the degree must be passed.

The research mini-thesis comprises a written report and counts 50% of the final mark. The research mini-thesis component of the degree must be passed.

COMMERCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

Curriculum

Only students who receive permission from the Dean of Commerce may be admitted to the Commerce Extended Studies Programme which extends over four years of study. The first two years of study comprise a foundation phase. Candidates who successfully complete the foundation phase with an aggregate mark of at least 60% join the other students enrolled in three one-year programmes for their final two years of study.

Courses

Foundation Phase Year One

First Semester	Second Semester
1. Accounting 1F	1. Accounting 1F
2. Theory of Finance	2. Theory of Finance
3. Management 101	3. Management 102*
4. Management 101 (Augmented)	4. Management 102 (Augmented)
5. Introduction to Computers	

*Prerequisite

Management 102: obtain 35% in Management 101

Foundation Phase Year Two

First Semester	Second Semester
1. Accounting 1G	1. Accounting 1G*
2. Computer Science 112	2. Computer Science 112
3. Commercial Law 101	3. Commercial Law 102*
4. Economics 101	4. Economics 102

5. Economics 101 5. Statistics 1C2
(Augmented)

**Prerequisites:*

Accounting 1G: Accounting 1F

Computer Science 112: 90% attendance required in Introduction to Computers

Commercial Law 102: passed or valid DP certificate in Commercial Law 101

ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

C.32

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

32.1 they have a National Diploma (NQF6) or a Bachelors Degree (NQF7), and

32.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

C.33

The status of national diploma or bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years as a Business Analyst, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be considered on their own merits. As a rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL. A detailed Portfolio of Evidence (POE) is to be provided in support of the application.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module.

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to develop a comprehensive understanding of the purpose, role, methods, and techniques to be applied in effective business analysis, business process modelling, business process engineering, management consulting, and either software testing or project management for sustainable business performance. This will enable understanding and identifying what, when, who, where, which and how business processes and methods can be changed to operate more

economically, efficiently, effectively and sustainably; communicating and consulting with subject matter experts and key managers so as to analyse, model, and document the change requirements and support the communication and delivery of those requirements.

Modules constituting the AdvDip(Business Analysis) are:

Module 1: Sustainable Business Analysis (Core)

Module 2: Management Consulting (Core)

Module 3: Software Testing (Elective)

Module 4: Project Management (Elective)

Candidates are required to do both core modules and one elective module.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ACCOUNTANCY

C.34

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

34.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and

34.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting. The Department of Accounting reserves the right to limit the number of students accepted into the programme.

C.35

35.1 Candidates who have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor and who subsequently wish to obtain the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must pass or have passed in Information Systems 2, Theory of Finance and Statistics, Economics 1, Commercial Law 1, Principles of Professional Accountancy, Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3, Taxation 3, and such other courses as directed by the Board of the Faculty before being admitted to study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy.

35.2 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite courses they may be exempted from those courses provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty.

C.36

A pass mark of 50% is required in each of the four courses. Candidates must pass all courses simultaneously.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

C.37

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

37.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

37.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

C.38....

C.39

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Alpha Project, 50% or more for at least six of the remaining seven modules listed below and an overall aggregate of at least 50%. In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 45% applies to each module. For the full-time option - if a candidate passes six modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50% or more but does not attain the sub-minimum in one module, they shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module. For the part-time option – if a candidate passes four or more modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50%, they may be awarded supplementary examinations for modules below 50%.

Modules constituting the one-year full-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are: 1. Computerised Accounting for Small Business, 2. Entrepreneurial Law, 3. Entrepreneurship, 4. Financial Management, 5. People Management, 6. Strategic

Marketing, 7. Supply Chain and Project Management and the Alpha Project.

Modules constituting the one-year or two-year part-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are selected from: 1. Business Development and Consulting, 2. Financial Management, 3. Intrapreneurship, 4. Leadership for Sustainability, 5. People Management, 6. Strategic Marketing, 7. Strategic Operations Management, 8. Sustainable Business Modelling, 9. Sustainable Economics and the Alpha Project.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN TAXATION

C.40

Candidates for the Diploma shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

40.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and completed an appropriate undergraduate taxation course and normally achieved a mark of 65%; and

40.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting.

40.3 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite papers they may be exempted from those papers provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty

C.41

Candidates must pass all papers simultaneously in the aggregate. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in any individual paper.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

C.42

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

42.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or an Advanced Diploma in a related discipline (Information Systems, Business Analysis, Project Management) or have admitted to the status of bachelor, and

42.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

C.43

The status of bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years as a Business Analyst, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be considered on their own merits. A rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module and attain at least a 50% aggregate for the coursework and 50% for the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 40% applies to each component of each module. In the case of a candidate passing three modules and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the sub-minimum in one module, he or she shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module. The coursework comprises 67% (80 credits) of the diploma and the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE) 33% (40 credits). The overall mark is a weighted average of coursework and Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. In so doing the number and quality of working Business Analysts in Africa who are able to effectively communicate and apply their understanding of the theory, principles, purpose, role, methods and

techniques of business analysis, business modelling and business process improvement to achieve sustainable business performance will be achieved.

The PGDip(Business Analysis) is a one year, full-time or one and a half year, part-time modular programme, comprising four modules, where students are required to attend four teaching blocks. Between teaching blocks, students are required to complete work-based assignments. A practical 24-hour examination is undertaken at the commencement of the 4th teaching block, covering all four modules. A Project with Portfolio of Evidence (POE), is to be submitted by the end of the second semester for full-time students or at the end of the first semester of the second year for part-time students.

Modules constituting the PGDip(Business Analysis) course are:

Module 1: Sustainable Business Models

Module 2: Business Process Modelling

Module 3: Business Process Analysis

Module 4: Communicating and Consulting

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ADVANCEMENT AND RESOURCE MOBILISATION

C.44

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

44.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or an Advanced Diploma or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

44.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Director of the Rhodes Business School.

C.45

The status of bachelor would be determined on the basis of Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), taking into consideration having at least three years' experience as an Advancement professional, but also consider age, seniority, number of tertiary level courses attended. Each candidate will be

considered on their own merits. As a rule of thumb, only 10% of the class may be admitted under RPL.

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must complete and pass all five modules and the capstone project with a mark of 50% or above. To obtain a distinction for the diploma, a weighted average of 75% must be obtained for all modules together with the capstone project. In the event that an OVERALL weighted average of 50% or above is achieved for ALL modules and the Capstone Project, but a module/s has been failed, then a supplementary examination may be awarded for the failed module/s.

The diploma strives to grow and build the number and quality of working Advancement professionals in Africa who are able to engage systematically and purposefully with their internal and external stakeholders to attract resources and, thus, contribute to the long-term sustainability of these non-commercially minded entities.

The programme seeks to equip participants with core Advancement skills and tools such as those relating to strategy and planning, leadership, good governance, communication and marketing, project development, cases for support, legal requirements, financial management imperatives, and the structuring of an Advancement operation. The programme also seeks to give credence to Advancement principles that can be used to inform integrated and holistic practice by promoting research, as well as the creation and dissemination of knowledge in this area.

The diploma is a programme which is aimed at creating knowledgeable, competent, and innovative Advancement professionals who are able to be responsive to the constant turbulence of their internal and external environments. Furthermore, the Rhodes Business School's essence of "Leadership for Sustainability" underlies all subjects in the curriculum by encouraging thinking around economic, social and environmental sustainability.

The PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) is a two-year part-time coursework programme, targeting working professionals, comprising five compulsory modules. Three of these modules will be run over the course of the first year, with the remaining two occurring in the second year. Modules are assessed by a combination of tests, assignments, and/or exams, as well as a research (capstone) project related to work-based or real-world scenarios in the field of Advancement and resource mobilisation.

Modules constituting the PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) course are:

Module 1: Introduction to Advancement

Module 2: Research for Advancement

Module 3: Advancement Practice

Module 4: Advancement Leadership and Stakeholder Relations

Module 5: Responsibility and Accountability in Advancement

HONOURS DEGREE IN ACCOUNTING

The Honours degree in Accounting can be presented in any one of the following specialisation areas:

Accounting

Auditing

Finance

Management Accounting

In each case papers forming part of the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy will form the basis of the degree, together with a paper in an Introduction to Research Methodology and Design and a research essay. In each specialisation area one or more additional papers are prescribed. Candidates for the Honours Degree shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

- they have a Bachelor's degree in the Accounting curriculum and have completed the appropriate undergraduate course majors and normally

achieved a mark of 60% in each of the major subjects relevant to the Honours degree;

- they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Accounting.

The Department of Accounting reserves the right to limit the number of students accepted into the programme.

HIGHER DEGREES

The Faculty's Rules for the Degree of Master of Commerce, Degree of Master of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, are identical to those set out for Master's and Doctoral degrees in the General Rules.

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Education Faculty offers a range of qualifications within and across four broad education sectors: Formal School Education; Early Childhood Education (ECE); Education, Training and Development Practices (ETDP), and Higher Education Studies (HES).

Teacher education qualifications are aligned to national policy as set out in the Minimum Standards for Teacher Education Qualifications

(MRTEQ) (Government Gazette No. 38487, July 2015).

RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Education only.

The following certificates, diplomas and degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Education.

Name

To be denoted by the letters

Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching
NQF Level 6 (120 credits)

ACEFL

Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)
NQF Level 7 (480 credits)

BEDFP, BDFN1, BDFN2

Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase and Further Education & Training Teaching)
NQF Level 7 (480 credits)

BDNE1, BDNM1

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)
NQF Level 7 (120 credits)

PGCSP

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

PGDHE

Postgraduate Diploma in Sustainability Learning
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

PGDSL

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education Community Engagement
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

PGDCE

Bachelor of Education Honours
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)

BEDH

With specialisations as follows when offered:

Bilingual Education for Diversity & Access,

Curriculum Studies,

Educational Leadership & Management (ELM),

English Language Teaching (ELT),

Information & Communication Technology (ICT) in Education,

Mathematics Education,

Primary Education and

Science Education

Master of Education
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)

MEd

Doctor of Philosophy
NQF Level 10 (360 credits)

PhD

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN FOUNDATION PHASE LITERACY TEACHING

This is an NQF Level 6 qualification which is offered part-time over two years by the Centre for Social Development (CSD).

E.1 Purpose

The purpose of this qualification is to provide candidates with a sound knowledge base for teaching Reading and Writing in Grades R-3, as well as develop their ability to apply their knowledge and skills to classroom teaching in the Foundation Phase (FP), while equipping them to undertake more specialised and intensive learning. The course addresses the needs of:

- Foundation Phase teachers who want to strengthen specialisation in FP literacy teaching and are already qualified to teach in the Foundation Phase, having successfully completed a professional BEd degree or a PGCE, an initial three-year diploma in education offered by former colleges of education, or a National Professional Diploma in Education at NQF Level 5.
- Foundation Phase Heads of Department and Foundation Phase Subject Advisors who are

already qualified to teach in the Foundation Phase and who want to strengthen their specialisation in FP literacy teaching in order to provide expert guidance to teachers about how to teach literacy in the Foundation Phase.

E.2 Admission requirements

E.2.1 BEd degree in Foundation Phase Teaching, or

E.2.2 PGCE in Foundation Phase Teaching or equivalent, or

E.2.3 three-year Diploma in Education with a Junior Primary specialisation or a Junior Primary Teachers' Diploma, or

E.2.4 three-year Diploma in Grade R teaching, or

E.2.5 National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE – Level 5) in Foundation Phase

E.3 Duration and mode of delivery

This part-time qualification consists of 12 modules offered over two years through a blended learning mode.

E.4 Curriculum

Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching (Part-time, 2-year) (ACEFL)					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9120001	ACEFL1	Computer Literacy (RPL option)	1 and 2	5	12
9120002	ACEFL2	CAPS Reading Activities	1	6	10
9120003	ACEFL3	Emergent Literacy	1	6	10
9120004	ACEFL4	Teaching Decoding	1	6	10
9120005	ACEFL5	Teaching Vocabulary	1	6	10
9120006	ACEFL6	Teaching Comprehension	1	6	10
9120007	ACEFL7	Teaching Writing and Handwriting	1	6	10
9120008	ACEFL8	Teaching English First Additional Language in the Foundation Phase 1	2	6	10

9120009	ACEFL9	Teaching English First Additional Language in the Foundation Phase 2	2	6	10
9120010	ACEFL10	Creating a Culture of Reading	2	6	10
9120011	ACEFL11	Inclusive Education	2	6	10
9120012	ACEFL12	Reading Assessment and Remediation	2	6	10
9120013	ACEFL13	Planning and Progression	2	6	10

E.5 Assessment

E.5.1 Candidates must have passed at least four modules before they may enter the second year of the programme.

E.5.2 Candidates may repeat no more than two modules concurrently in their second year of study.

E.5.3 Candidates who fail four or more modules in the first-year of study will normally be excluded.

E.5.4 Candidates who average an aggregated mark of 75% or more in all the modules will be awarded the certificate *with distinction*.

E.5.5 Candidates who have passed up to six modules as short courses may be considered for recognition of prior learning in those modules.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (Foundation Phase Teaching)

(Full-time initial teacher education)

The BEd is a 480-credit qualification at NQF Level 7. It is offered as a four-year full-time initial teacher education qualification by the

Department of Primary & Early Childhood Education.

E.6 Purpose

The BEd (Foundation Phase Teaching) is for candidates wanting to become qualified as professional educators in the Foundation Phase of schooling (Grades R to 3). The BEd degree provides graduates access to post-graduate studies at an Honours level (NQF Level 8).

E.7 Admission requirements

Candidates must fulfil the general rules for admission to the first degree. Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have obtained at least an Admissions Points Score (APS) in Mathematics of 3 (40-49%) or higher or an APS of 4 (50-59%) or above for Mathematics Literacy and an APS of 4 or above for a Home Language and an APS of 4 or above for a First Additional Language in the NSC. One of the languages must be English Home Language or English First Additional Language.

E.8 Duration

A minimum of four years full time study.

E.9 Curriculum

Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) (Full-time 4-year) (BEDFP)					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9110044	BEDFP44	Education Studies 1A	1	5	15
9110045	BEDFP45	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 1A	1	5	10
9110043	BEDFP43	Mathematics for Teaching	1	5	25
9110004	BEDFP4	Teaching Practice 1A (Work Integrated Learning)	1	6	10
*		Language A (Humanities) first-year level	1	5	30
*		Language B (Humanities) first-year level	1	5	30

9110005	BEDFP5	Performance & Multimodalities 1	2	6	15
9110006	BEDFP6	Understanding the Social & Physical World 1	2	6	15
9110046	BEDFP46	Education Studies 1B	2	6	5
9110047	BEDFP47	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 1B	2	6	5
9110008	BEDFP8	Teaching Practice 1B (Work Integrated Learning)	2	6	15
9110041	BEDFP41	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Introduction to First Additional Language	2	6	10
9110042	BEDFP42	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics	2	6	15
9110015	BEDFP15	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills	2	6	10
9110009	BEDFP9	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language English OR	2	6	10
9110010	BEDFP10	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language isiXhosa	2	6	10
*		Language A (Humanities) second-year level	2	6	30
9110048	BEDFP48	Education Studies 2	3	7	15
9110049	BEDFP49	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 2	3	7	15
9110017	BEDFP17	Performance & Multimodalities 2	3	6	15
9110018	BEDFP18	Understanding the Social & Physical World 2	3	6	15
9110020	BEDFP20	Teaching Practice 2 (Work Integrated Learning)	3	6	25
9110027	BEDFP27	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics	3	6	9
9110028	BEDFP28	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills	3	6	9
9110026	BEDFP26	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language English	3	6	9
9110022	BEDFP22	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language English OR	3	6	9
9110023	BEDFP23	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language isiXhosa	3	6	9
9110024	BEDFP24	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	3	6	9
9110025	BEDFP25	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language isiXhosa	3	6	9
9110050	BEDFP50	Education Studies 3	4	7	15
9110051	BEDFP51	Professional & Pedagogical Studies 3	4	7	15
9110039	BEDFP39	Teaching Practice 3 (Work Integrated Learning)	4	7	24
9110036	BEDFP36	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language English	4	7	14
9110037	BEDFP37	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics	4	7	14
9110038	BEDFP38	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills	4	7	12
9110032	BEDFP32	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language English OR	4	7	14
9110033	BEDFP33	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language isiXhosa	4	7	14

9110034	BEDFP34	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language Afrikaans OR	4	7	12
9110035	BEDFP35	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language isiXhosa	4	7	12
* The Humanities Language subjects on offer are Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1 and 2, isiXhosa Language Acquisition 1 and 2, African Language Studies 1 and 2 or Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies 2. For isiXhosa, refer to the Humanities Rules H.10.3.1, H.10.3.2 and H.10.4 to determine which isiXhosa subject to register for.					

E.9.1 Pre-requisites for the selection of Language options in Foundation Phase Studies in second year:

- Candidates intending to select isiXhosa Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for African Language Studies 1.
- Candidates intending to select English Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally have obtained credit for English Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC.
- Candidates intending to select isiXhosa First Additional Language in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR must have passed isiXhosa Language Acquisition 1.
- Candidates intending to select Afrikaans First Additional Language in Foundation Phase Studies must normally have obtained credit for EITHER Afrikaans Home Language or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies 2.

E.9.2 The curriculum for the degree shall include not less than three different Work Integrated Learning opportunities (Teaching Practice) of a total duration of at least 20 weeks.

E.9.3 Candidates are required to be competent in two official languages to be eligible for permanent teacher status. If one of these languages is not an official African language, they must also demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

E.9.4 Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have

- obtained at least 60 first-year credits.

E.9.5 Candidates who are repeating first-year courses will normally be placed on a five-year curriculum.

E.9.6 Candidates may not proceed to the third year of the degree unless they have:

- Obtained a first-year credit in at least one of the following subjects: African Language Studies 1 OR isiXhosa Language Acquisition 1 OR Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1.
- Obtained at least 60 second-year credits.

E.9.7 Candidates who are repeating courses may have to forego their School Based Teaching Practice block in the third year.

E.9.8 Candidates may not proceed to the fourth year of studies unless they have

- obtained at least 60 third-year credits.

E.9.9 Candidates who are repeating courses may have to forego their School Based Teaching Practice block in the fourth year.

E.9.10 Assessment

E.9.10.1 A candidate who fails Teaching Practice (Work Integrated Learning) shall be required to repeat Teaching Practice (Work Integrated Learning).

E.9.10.2 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.9.10.3 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fails the supplementary examination, will be required to repeat the course.

E.9.10.4 ...

E.9.10.5 The degree will be awarded *with distinction* if the candidate achieves a Class 1 pass in the following: Education Studies 3, FPS 3 Home Language, FPS 3 Mathematics, and Teaching Practice 3 (Work Integrated Learning).

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (Foundation Phase Teaching)

(Part-time programme for in-service educators)

A part-time 480 credit NQF Level 7 BEd (FP) is offered by the Centre for Social Development (CSD) for in-service educators who wish to upgrade their initial teacher education qualifications to a degree. This seven-year part-time qualification pathway may include RPL credits and be no less than 180 new credits.

The BEd degree provides graduates with access to post-graduate studies at an Honours level (NQF Level 8).

E.10 Purpose

All the Bachelor of Education degrees offered for Continuing Professional Development purposes are part-time programmes to accommodate in-service teachers. It is expected that candidates enrolling for the degree will be working as ‘underqualified’ teachers or as teacher assistants in schools over the period of time that they are registered for the programme. Teachers registered for the programme would thus develop extensive classroom experience over and above the supervised and assessed work integrated learning during their period of registration. The curriculum is designed to ensure that candidates are provided with the required depth of theory, the required level of supervised and assessed work integrated learning, and the required level of reflection on theory in everyday practice, to attain the minimum level of teaching proficiency required by policy (MRTEQ, 2015) in the specialist phase and teaching subjects for which they register.

E.11 Admission requirements

E.11.1 ECD practitioners, holding a 240 credit NQF Level 5 National Diploma qualification may apply to enter into the part-time programme. These students will be credited with the 120 credits described in years 1 and 2 of the part time mode of delivery of the programme (60 per year) through credit accumulation and transfer from their prior qualification. Such students would enter the part time programme at the start of year 3 and to complete the programme would need to attain a further 360 credits (240 at level 6 and 120 at level 7 according to the current NQF level system). Courses are numbered to show during which year of the seven-year part-time degree curriculum they are offered.

E.11.2 Professionally qualified teachers, holding an initial teaching qualification of 360 credits at level 6 (for example, a former three-year College of Education Diploma or a National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE) 360 credits qualification at former NQF Level 5) may apply to enter into this qualification with recognition of 180 credits (96 at level 5 and 84 at level 6). These students will be credited with the 180 credits described in years 1, 2 and 3 of the part-time mode of delivery of the programme (60 per year) through credit accumulation and transfer from their prior qualification. Such students would enter the programme at the start of year 4 and to complete the programme would need to attain a further 300 credits (180 at level 6 and 120 at level 7 according to the current NQF level system).

E.11.3 ...

E.12 Duration

E.12.1 For candidates admitted under E.11.1, the duration shall not be less than five years of part-time study

E.12.2 For candidates admitted under E.11.2, the duration shall not be less than four years of part-time study.

E.12.3

E.13 Curriculum

Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) (Part-time 5-year) (BDFN2)					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9130035	BDFN201	Education and Professional Studies 3	1	6	10
9130036	BDFN202	English for Teaching 3	1	6	8
9130040	BDFN206	Intro to Mathematics for Teaching	1	5	5
9130041	BDFN207	Foundation Phase Studies 1: First Additional Language	1	6	5
9130087		Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language isiXhosa OR	1	6	5
9130088		Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language English OR	1	6	5
9130089		Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language Setswana OR	1	6	5
9130090		Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language Afrikaans	1	6	5
9130043	BDFN209	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills	1	6	5
9130044	BDFN210	Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics	1	6	5
9130037	BDFN203	African Indigenous Language for Teaching 3 (Mother-tongue and Non-mother tongue)	1	6	7
9130038	BDFN204	Performance and Multimodalities 1A: Art	1	6	5
9130039	BDFN205	Performance and Multimodalities 1B: Physical Education & Movement	1	6	5
9130045	BDFN211	Education and Professional Studies 4 (Understanding the Whole Child in Context)	2	6	10
9130046	BDFN212	English for Teaching 4	2	6	10
9130047	BDFN213	African Indigenous Language for Teaching 4 (Mother-tongue and Non-mother tongue)	2	6	10
9130048	BDFN214	Understanding the Social and Physical World 2	2	6	10
9130049	BDFN215	Mathematics for Teaching	2	5	10
9130050	BDFN216	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language	2	6	10
9130091		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language isiXhosa	2	6	5
9130092		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language English OR	2	6	5
9130093		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language Setswana OR	2	6	5
9130094		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language Afrikaans	2	6	5
9130052	BDFN218	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills	2	6	5
9130053	BDFN219	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics	2	6	5
9130054	BDFN220	Education and Professional Studies 5 (Philosophy of Education)	3	7	20
9130055	BDFN221	Performance and Multimodalities 2A (Music, Dance, Drama and Physical Education)	3	6	15

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

9130056	BDFN222	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language (English)	3	6	10
9130095		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language isiXhosa	3	6	10
9130096		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language English OR	3	6	10
9130097		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language Setswana OR	3	6	10
9130098		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language Afrikaans	3	6	10
9130058	BDFN224	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills	3	6	10
9130059	BDFN225	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics	3	6	10
9130060	BDFN226	Education and Professional Studies 6 (The role of language and mediating learning)	4	7	20
9130061	BDFN227	Foundation Phase Studies 4: First Additional Language (English)	4	7	10
9130099		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language isiXhosa	4	7	10
9130100		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language English OR	4	7	10
9130101		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language Setswana OR	4	7	10
9130102		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language Afrikaans	4	7	10
9130063	BDFN229	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Life Skills	4	7	10
9130064	BDFN230	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics	4	7	15
9130065	BDFN231	Understanding the Social and Physical World 3	4	6	15
9130066	BDFN232	Education and Professional Studies 7 (Assessment of Learning)	5	7	20
9130067	BDFN233	Foundation Phase Studies 5: First Additional Language (English)	5	7	15
9130103		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language isiXhosa	5	7	15
9130104		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language English OR	5	7	15
9130105		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language Setswana OR	5	7	15
9130106		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language Afrikaans	5	7	15
9130069	BDFN235	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Life Skills	5	7	15
9130070	BDFN236	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Mathematics	5	7	15

Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) (Part-time 4-year) (BDFN1)					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9130001	BDNFN50	Education and Professional Studies 4 (Understanding the Whole Child in Context)	1	6	10
9130002	BDNFN51	English for Teaching 4	1	6	10

9130003	BDNFN52	African Indigenous Language for Teaching 4 (Mother-tongue and Non-mother tongue)	1	6	10
9130004	BDNFN53	Understanding the Social and Physical World 2	1	6	10
9130010	BDNFN59	Mathematics for Teaching	1	5	10
9130006	BDNFN55	Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language (English)	1	6	10
9130071		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language isiXhosa	1	6	5
9130072		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language English OR	1	6	5
9130073		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language Setswana OR	1	6	5
9130074		Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language Afrikaans	1	6	5
9130008	BDNFN57	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills	1	6	5
9130009	BDNFN58	Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics	1	6	5
91300011	BDNFN60	Education and Professional Studies 5 (Philosophy of Education)	2	7	20
91300012	BDNFN61	Performance and Multimodalities 2A (Music, Dance, Drama and Physical Education)	2	6	15
91300013	BDNFN62	Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language (English)	2	6	10
9130075		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language	2	6	10
9130076		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language English OR	2	6	10
9130077		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language Setswana OR	2	6	10
9130078		Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language Afrikaans	2	6	10
91300015	BDNFN64	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills	2	6	10
91300016	BDNFN65	Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics	2	6	10
91300017	BDNFN66	Education and Professional Studies 6 (The role of language and mediating learning)	3	7	20
91300018	BDNFN67	Foundation Phase Studies 4: First Additional Language (English)	3	7	10
9130079		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language isiXhosa	3	7	10
9130080		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language English OR	3	7	10
9130081		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language Setswana OR	3	7	10
9130082		Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language Afrikaans	3	7	10
91300020	BDNFN69	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Life Skills	3	7	10
91300021	BDNFN70	Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics	3	7	15
91300022	BDNFN71	Understanding the Social and Physical World 3	3	6	15
91300023	BDNFN72	Education and Professional Studies 7 (Assessment of Learning)	4	7	20

91300024	BDNFN73	Foundation Phase Studies 5: First Additional Language (English)	4	7	15
91300083		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language isiXhosa	4	7	15
91300084		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language English OR	4	7	15
91300085		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language Setswana OR	4	7	15
91300086		Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language Afrikaans	4	7	15
91300026	BDNFN75	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Life Skills	4	7	15
91300027	BDNFN76	Foundation Phase Studies 5: Mathematics	4	7	15

E.14 Assessment

E.14.1 Pre-requisites for the selection of Language options in Foundation Phase Studies in the second year:

- Candidates intending to select isiXhosa Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for isiXhosa Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 1.
- Candidates intending to select Setswana Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for Setswana Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for Setswana (Mother Tongue) 1.
- Candidates intending to select English Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for English Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for English 1, OR have obtained credit for Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1.
- Candidates intending to select Afrikaans Home Language Teaching in Foundation Phase Studies must normally EITHER have obtained credit for Afrikaans Home or First Additional Language in their NSC, OR have obtained credit for Afrikaans 1

E.14.2 Candidates are required to be competent in two official languages to be eligible for permanent teacher status. If one of these languages is not an official African language,

they must also demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

E.14.3 Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education and Professional Studies 4
- Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics
- Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language

E.14.4 Candidates may not proceed to third year of studies unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education and Professional Studies 5
- Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics
- Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language

E.14.5 Candidates may not proceed to fourth year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education and Professional Studies 6
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language

E.14.6 The degree shall be awarded *with distinction* if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass in the following courses:

- Education and Professional Studies 7
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics
- Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home Language

E.14.7 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.14.8 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fails the supplementary examination, shall be required to repeat the course.

E.14.9 Normally candidates may be permitted to write no more than 30 credits worth of supplementary examinations in any given year.

E.14.10 Candidates repeating courses with a total credit value of 30 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE/FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING)

(Part-time, in-service)

A part-time 480 credit NQF Level 7 BED (SP/FET) is offered for in-service educators who wish to upgrade their initial teacher education qualifications to a degree. This seven-year part-time qualification pathway may include RPL credits and be no less than 180 new credits.

The BED degree provides graduates with access to post-graduate studies at an Honours level (NQF Level 8).

E.15 Admission

Professionally qualified teachers holding an initial teaching qualification of 480 credits at level 6 or above (for example, an Advanced

Certificate in Education (120 at former NQF level 6), a former undergraduate Higher Diploma in Education, or a former Further Diploma in Education) may apply to enter into the part-time mode of delivery of this qualification with recognition of 240 credits (96 at level 5 and 144 at level 6). These students will be credited with 240 credits described in years 1, 2, 3 and 4 of the part-time mode of delivery of the programme (60 per year) through credit accumulation and transfer from their prior qualification. Such students would enter the programme at the start of year 5 and to complete the programme would need to attain a further 240 credits (120 at level 6 and 120 at level 7 according to the current NQF level system).

E.15.1 Curriculum

E.15.1.1 Specialisations

The following specialisations may be offered for the BED (SP & FET Teaching):

	Major specialisation	Minor specialisation A	Minor specialisation B
English	English FAL (SP)	English FAL (FET)	School Librarianship (support)
Mathematics	Mathematics (FET)	Mathematics (SP)	Mathematical Literacy (FET)
Mathematics	Mathematics (SP)	Mathematics (FET)	Mathematical Literacy (FET)
Science	Physical Science (FET)	Natural Science (SP)	Mathematics (SP)
Science	Life Science (FET)	Natural Science (SP)	Mathematics (SP)
ICT	ICT in Education (support)	Computer Applications Technology (FET)	Technology (SP)
Life Orientation	Guidance Counselling and Specialised learning support	Life Orientation (FET)	Life Orientation (SP)

E.15.1.2 Core modules for all specialisations

Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase/Further Education and Training) (Part-time 3-year) Core Modules			
Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
Education Studies 5	1	6	15
Teaching Tools and Technologies 5	1	6	10
Professional Studies 5	1	6	10
Education Studies 6	2	7	15
Teaching Tools and Technologies 6	2	7	10

Professional Studies 6	2	7	10
Education Studies 7	3	7	15
Teaching Tools and Technologies 7	3	7	10
Professional Studies 7	3	7	10

Education Studies 5 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

This module introduces students to the study of education in relation to contexts local to the teacher and adolescent learner.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained an examination mark of less than 40%.

Teaching Tools and Technologies 5 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

This module provides a general introduction to the manner in which literacy provides fundamental skills, tools and technologies to be used in teaching.

Students entering the programme after year 1, will submit evidence of competence in order to determine if they need to attend this course.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Professional Studies 5 (NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

This module introduces professional issues relating to teaching in the classroom, school and the South African education system.

Assessment: Class record 100%

E.16 Assessment

E.16.1 Candidates may normally not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education Studies 5
- Major Specialisation subject 5

E.16.2 Candidates may normally not proceed to third year of studies unless they have obtained credit in:

- Education Studies 6
- Major Specialisation 6

E.16.3 The degree shall be awarded *with distinction* if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass in the following courses:

- Education Studies 7
- Major Specialisation 7
- Minor Specialisation A 7

E.16.4 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.16.5 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fails the supplementary examination shall be required to repeat the course.

E.16.6 Normally candidates may be permitted to write no more than 30 credits worth of supplementary examinations in any given year.

E.16.7 Candidates repeating courses with a total credit value of 30 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses.

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)

The PGCE is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 7 offered by the Department of Secondary & Post-School Education.

E.17 Purpose

The PGCE is a 'capping' qualification for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor's degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BEd or an appropriate 360 credit NQF 6 diploma that is recognised by the DHET as per the DHET circular of 5 February 2015. The PGCE provides access to the BEd Honours degree at NQF Level 8.

E.18 Admission requirements

The entrance requirements for the course are:

E.18.1 The candidate has been awarded an appropriate diploma, bachelor's or higher degree.

E.18.2 The candidate selects from the tables below, two different school subjects to teach - one at the Senior Phase level and one at the Further Education and Training level.

E.18.3 ..
E.18.4 ..

UNIVERSITY SUBJECT REQUIREMENTS SENIOR PHASE TEACHING (GRADES 7-9)

School subject	University subject(s) and minimum year level required
Creative Arts	At least two subjects from a range of appropriate Arts subjects, one of which must be at a second-year level e.g. Music, Drama, Anthropology, Classics, Dance Studies, Visual Arts, Design, Theatre Arts.
Coding and Robotics	A combination of any two of the following subjects: Computer Science, Electronics, Information Technology, Information Systems, Applied Mathematics, Chemistry, Physics, Mathematics with one of the following subjects at the second-year level: Computer Science, Information Systems, or Electronics.
Economic and Management Sciences	A combination of any two of the following subjects, one of which must be at a second-year level; Accounting, Management or Economics.
Languages - First Additional Language	English: English 2 AND one of the following: English and Linguistics 1, Applied Language Studies 1, African Literature 1, Literary Theory 1, Communication and Media Studies 1. isiXhosa: isiXhosa (Mother-Tongue) 2 OR isiXhosa (Additional Language) 3 Afrikaans: Afrikaans 2
Languages - Home Language	A second-year level in that language
Life Orientation	A combination of two of the following subjects, one of which must be at second year level; Psychology, Philosophy, Anthropology, Sociology, Social Work, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Politics, Labour Studies, Industrial Studies. Psychology MUST be one of the subjects.
Mathematics	Mathematics 2
Natural Sciences	A combination of at least one subject from Life Sciences AND Physical Sciences, one of which must be at a second-year level; e.g. Botany, Biology, Chemistry, Earth Sciences, Geography, Geology, Physics, Zoology, Physical Geography, Environmental Science, Biological Sciences.
Social Sciences	Geography 2 and History 1 OR History 2 and Geography 1
Technology	At least two subjects from a range of appropriate technology-related subjects, one of which must be at a second-year level e.g. Practical Art, Computer Science, Design Studies, Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics. Each application to be examined and decided on its merits, including consideration of NSC subjects.

*Introductory courses do not meet the requirements

UNIVERSITY SUBJECT REQUIREMENTS FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING (GRADES 10-12)

School subject	University subject(s) and minimum year level required
Accounting	Accounting 3
Business Studies	Management 3

Information Technology	Computer Science 3 OR Computer Science 2 AND Information Systems 3
Computer Applications Technology	Computer Science 2 OR Information Systems 3
Design	A combination of subjects from a range of appropriate technology-related subjects, one of which must be at a third-year level; e.g. Fine Art Practice, Computer Science, Design Studies, Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics, Engineering, Graphic Design, Architecture, Fashion Design, Interior Design. Each application to be examined and decided on its merits, including consideration of matric subjects.
Dramatic Arts	Drama 3
Economics	Economics 3
Geography	Geography 3 or Environmental Science 3
History	History 3
Language - First Additional Language	The particular language at third-year level English: English 3 AND one of the following: Linguistics 1, Applied Language Studies 1, African Literature 1, Literacy Theory 1, Communication and Media Studies 1 OR English 1 + Linguistics 2 isiXhosa: isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 3 OR isiXhosa (Additional Language) 3 Afrikaans: Afrikaans 3
Language - Home Language	The particular language at third-year level e.g. English 3 OR English 2 AND Linguistics 2, Applied Language Studies 2, African Literature 2, Literacy Theory 2, Communications and Media Studies 2 isiXhosa (Mother Tongue) 3 Afrikaans 3
Life Orientation	Psychology 3 AND one of the following subjects; Philosophy, Anthropology, Sociology, Social Work, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Politics, Labour Studies, Industrial Studies at first-year level.
Life Sciences	Combination of any two of the following: Biological Sciences, Biochemistry, Microbiology, Physiology, Biology, and Zoology, with one taken at third-year level at least, is required to specialise in Life Sciences Teaching, provided that first-year modules in Biology or Botany and Zoology are also included.
Marine Sciences	A combination of subjects ranging from the following fields: Environmental Sciences, Economics, Sociology, Geography, Biochemistry, Chemistry, Physics, Microbiology, Physiology, Biology, Botany, Zoology and Ichthyology, with one of the subjects taken at the third-year level provided that second-year modules in Zoology or Botany are also included. Each application would be considered on its individual merit.
Mathematics	Mathematics 3 OR Mathematics 2 AND Mathematics Stats 2/Applied Mathematics 2
Mathematical Literacy	Matric Mathematics and one or more of a range of subjects in the Mathematical field at second-year level: Applied Mathematics, Statistics, Mathematical Modelling, Numerical Analysis, Dynamics and Mechanics. Each application will be considered on merit.
Music	Musicology 3 + Instrument at 2nd year level + Theory of Music (Grade 8) + Piano (Grade 5)
Physical Sciences	Physics 3 AND Chemistry 1 OR Physics 1 AND Chemistry 3
Visual Arts	Art History and Visual Culture 2 AND Fine Art Practice 2 e.g. Drawing, Multimedia, Painting, Sculpture, Printmaking, Ceramic Art, Fibre and Textiles, Heavy Metal and Jewellery Arts.

*Introductory courses do not meet the requirements

*Any PGCE method subject will only be offered if enough students register for that method subject.

E.19 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than

one year full-time study.

E.20 Curriculum

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior Phase & Further Education Training Teaching) (PGCSP)					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
9061100	PGCSP1	Education Studies (PGCSP)	1	7	42
9061102	PGCSP3	Community Engaged Research (PGCSP)	1	7	4
*		Teaching Method 1 (FET)	1	7	24
*		Teaching Practice 1 (FET)	1	7	13
**		Teaching Method 2	1	7	24
**		Teaching Practice 2	1	7	13
9061101	PGCSP2	Computer Literacy (PGCSP)	1	5	0
9061167	PGCSP68	Lang Endorsement (ENG) (PGCSP)	1	5	0
9061168	PGCSP69	Lang Endorsement (XHO) (PGCSP)	1	5	0
9061169	PGCSP70	Lang Endorsement (AFR) (PGCSP)	1	5	0
*At least one/two teaching subject from the following FET range: Accounting, Afrikaans, Life Science, Information Technology, Business Studies, English Home Language, Visual Arts, Geography, Life Orientation, History, Marine Sciences, Mathematics, Music, Physical Science, isiXhosa Home Language, Dramatic Arts, Design, Computer Applications Technology, Mathematics Literacy, Economics, isiXhosa First Additional Language, English First Additional Language, Afrikaans First Additional Language, French First Additional Language, Practical Music; **and/or another teaching subject from the following Senior Phase range: Creative Arts, Coding and Robotics, Afrikaans, Economic & Management Science, English Home Language, Natural Science, Life Orientation, isiXhosa Home Language, isiXhosa First Additional Language, English First Additional Language, Afrikaans First Additional Language, French First Additional Language, Mathematics, Social Science.					

E.20.1 Candidates will be required to do a minimum of 10 weeks of Teaching Practice (Work Integrated Learning).

E.21 Assessment

E.21.1 A candidate who fails Teaching Practice (WIL) shall be required to repeat Teaching Practice (WIL).

E.21.2 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.21.3 A candidate who fails a course with a result of 39% or below, or fails the supplementary examination, shall be required to repeat the course.

E.21.4 A candidate who fails three or more courses shall normally be required to repeat the entire curriculum for the certificate.

E.21.5 The certificate will be awarded *with distinction* if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass for Education Studies, a Class 1 pass in at least one of the Teaching Practice Methods and a Class 1 pass in at least one of the following: Teaching Method 1, Teaching Method 2 or the remaining Teaching Practice Method.

E.21.6 A candidate who fails Education Studies or one of the Teaching Methods, with a result between 40% and 49%, shall be permitted to write a supplementary examination in that course at the beginning of the following year.

E.21.7 A candidate who fails Education Studies or one of the Teaching Method courses at 39% or below, or who fails the supplementary examination in any of these courses, shall be required to re-attend the course.

E.21.8 A candidate who fails two of Education Studies, Teaching Method 1, Teaching Method 2, Teaching Practice Method 1 or Teaching Practice Method 2, shall normally be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the certificate.

E.21.9 A candidate who fails a Teaching Method, shall normally have their results for the corresponding Teaching Practice recorded as pending (PND) until they pass that Teaching Method.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION (for lecturers)

The PGDip (HE) for lecturers is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8 offered by the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL).

E.22 Purpose

The PGDip (HE) aims to facilitate the professional development of lecturers as reflexive practitioners in Higher Education (HE)

by developing their knowledge of HE as a field of study. The course is designed to assist lecturers to enhance their ability to facilitate, manage and assess students' learning as well as provide professional accreditation for HE practitioners.

E.23 Admission requirements

The admission requirements are:

E.23.1 A Qualification at NQF level 8 or above.

E.23.2 A candidate is employed as a lecturer at a higher education institution for the duration of registration.

E.23.3 A candidate must be proficient in both oral and written formal English.

E.23.4 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.24 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

Candidates who require more than two years to complete the qualification need to apply for permission from the Dean of Education.

E.25 Curriculum

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDHE) designed for Lecturers					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
9201018	PGDHE 18	Learning and Teaching in Higher Education	1	8	30
9201019	PGDHE 19	Curriculum Development	1	8	30
9201024	PGDHE 24	Becoming a Reflective Practitioner	1	8	15
9201020	PGDHE 20	Assessment of Student Learning	2	8	30
9201021	PGDHE 21	Evaluation of Teaching and Courses	2	8	15
9201023	PGDHE 23	Portfolio	2	8	-

E.25.1 Candidates are required to register for five modules as outlined in the table above.

In addition, candidates may register for an elective research module, but no additional credit will be given. Research electives include topics such as: Design and Develop eLearning,

Design and Structure Experiential Learning, Supervision of Research in Higher Education, Leadership in Higher Education, Service Learning and Research in Higher Education, Decolonisation or Africanisation of Higher

Education, Integrating Sustainable Development Goals into the curriculum.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION (for Academic Developers)

The PGDip (HE) for Academic Developers is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8 (honours level) offered by CHERTL.

E.26 Purpose

The purpose of the PGDip (HE) for academic developers is to advance academic developers' knowledge of higher education as a field of study and to enable them to conceptualise, design and implement formal and informal academic development initiatives (with a particular focus on academic staff development) appropriate to their specific contexts.

E.27 Admission requirements

The admissions requirements are:

E.27.1 Normally a Level 9 qualification on the HEQSF.

E.27.2 A candidate has to be employed as an academic developer or in a cognate role at a higher education institution

E.27.3 A candidate must be proficient in both oral and written formal English

E.27.4 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.28 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates. Candidates who require more than two years to complete the qualification need to apply for permission from the Dean of Education.

E.29 Curriculum

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDHE1) for Academic Developers					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course name	Year	NQF level	Credits
9201011	PGDHE 11	Higher Education Context	1	8	20
9201012	PGDHE 12	Quality Assurance of Teaching and Learning	1	8	20
9201015	PGDHE 15	Curriculum Development	1	8	20
9201013	PGDHE 13	Academic Development Initiatives	2	8	20
9201014	PGDHE 14	Learning and Teaching in Higher Education	2	8	20
9201016	PGDHE 16	Assessment of Student Learning	2	8	20
9201017	PGDHE 17	Portfolio	2	8	-

E.29.1 Candidates are required to complete six core modules as outlined in the table above.

E.30 Assessment (for all PGDip (HE) programmes)

E.30.1 Each core module of the course is assessed through a coursework assignment. Candidates are required to complete and pass the assignments for all core modules.

E.30.2 A candidate may only proceed to Year 2 if they have passed at least two modules in Year 1.

E.30.3 Candidates will be required to submit an integrated, evidence-based portfolio for final assessment of the qualification.

E.30.4 Candidates may be required to present themselves for an oral defence of their portfolios.

E.30.5 Candidates who obtain between 40% and 49% for their portfolio may be granted an extended Duly Performed (DP) to enable them to re-submit their portfolio for assessment.

E.30.6 The diploma will be awarded *with distinction* if the candidate achieves 75% or more for the portfolio.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING

The PGDip (SL) is a 120-credit interdisciplinary qualification at NQF Level 8 offered by the Department of Secondary and Post-School Education in collaboration with the Department of Environmental Science.

E.31 Purpose

The PGDip (SL) is designed to give students the ability to understand, critique, plan and implement socially-engaged learning processes aimed in turn at supporting society to transition to social- ecological sustainability. The qualification responds to intensifying environmental degradation which puts human health and the sustainability of rural and urban communities at risk. The PGDip seeks to complement graduates' existing technical and academic skills in order to help them navigate the intersecting social, cultural, economic, ecological, political and technological dimensions of a variety of current work contexts. The qualification is relevant in a range of sectors (e.g., environmental officers in local and provincial government; community activists; environmental journalists; climate change educators; educators in the biodiversity sector;

and community development facilitators) and to a range of disciplines including Education, Environmental Science, Journalism, Geography, Fine Arts, Drama, Sociology and Anthropology.

E.32 Admission requirements

E.32.1 A qualification at NQF level 7 or above. A Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) application process is available to candidates who do not have a Level 7 qualification. Requirements are as specified by the Faculty RPL process.

E.32.2 A candidate would normally work, or aspire to work, in a context where sustainability-oriented learning processes are designed and/or implemented.

E.32.3 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.33 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates. Candidates who require more than two years to complete the qualification need to apply for permission from the Dean of Education.

E.34 Curriculum

Postgraduate Diploma in Sustainability Learning (PGDSL)					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course Name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9062001	PGD01	Foundations of Sustainability Learning	1	8	60
9062003	PGD03	Action Research Change Project	2	8	60

E.34.1 A candidate for the Diploma must register for both courses.

E.35 Assessment

E.35.1 Regardless of format, all summative assessments shall be subject to the University's examination rules and shall be submitted during the University's examination period.

E.35.2 Part-time candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in:

- Foundations of Sustainability Learning

E.35.3 To pass Foundations of Sustainability Learning and the Action Research Change Project, a candidate must achieve a final mark (comprising the class record and the exam mark) of at least 50% for each course.

E.35.4 To be eligible to write the Foundations of Sustainability Learning examination, a candidate must achieve a class record of at least 45%.

E.35.5 A candidate who fails the examination for Foundations of Sustainability Learning with a result between 40% and 49% shall be granted a supplementary examination.

E.35.6 A candidate who fails the examination for Foundations of Sustainability Learning with a result of 39% or below or fails the supplementary examination shall be required to repeat the course when it is next offered.

E.35.7 ...

E.35.8 The Diploma shall be awarded *with distinction* to a candidate whose average mark is 75% or above, with a minimum of 70% for each.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT

The PGDip (CE) is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8 offered by the Rhodes University Community Engagement Division (RUCE).

E.36 Purpose

The purpose of the PGDip CE qualification is to develop, strengthen and deepen students' theoretical and practical knowledge in and understanding of the emerging field of Community Engagement (CE) as a core function of higher education together with learning and teaching and research.

The qualification will promote advanced reflection of students through exposure to current knowledge, practice and research methods in CE. This qualification demands a high level of theoretical engagement, intellectual independence and collaboration, self-awareness, as well as the ability to relate knowledge to local, national and international contexts in order to understand and apply the various forms of CE. Student may include to academics, graduates, community partners and Corporate Social Responsibility representatives.).

E.37 Admission requirements

E.37.1 A Bachelor's degree, Advanced Diploma, or equivalent NQF level 7 qualification.

E.37.2 Students who do not meet the minimum requirement may be admitted through Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL), provided they meet the requirements for RPL as stipulated in the Rhodes University RPL Policy and Strategy.

E.38 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than two years of part time study.

E.39 Curriculum

Students are required to register for the following six modules:

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education Community Engagement (PGDCE)					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course Name	Year	NQF level	Credits
		Higher Education & Community Engagement	1	8	15
		Volunteerism & Active Citizenry	1	8	15
		Community Based Service Learning	1	8	15
		Engaged Research: Community Based Participatory Research	1	8	15
		Community Engagement Praxis	2	8	30
		Community Based Participatory Research Project	2	8	30

E.40 Assessment

E.40.1 The PGDip (CE) assessment will be both formative and summative, and will include assessment of foundational, practical and reflective competencies. Some assessment will take place online.

E.40.2 The student can only undertake the CE Praxis and CBPR Project modules in the following year (year 2), after completing and passing the four theoretical modules.

E.40.3 Regardless of format, all summative assessments shall be subject to the University's examination rules and shall be submitted during the University's examination period.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION HONOURS

The Bachelor of Education Honours degree is a 120-credit qualification at NQF Level 8. The Bachelor of Education Honours provides access to a 180-credit NQF Level 9 Master of Education/Professional Master's degree in Education.

E.41 Purpose

The Bachelor of Education Honours is the first postgraduate degree in education. It is intended to prepare students for research-based postgraduate studies in a particular field of education. It serves to consolidate and deepen the student's expertise and theoretical

engagement in educational practice, and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research.

E.42 Admission requirements

The admission requirements for the course are:

E.42.1 A four-year professional teaching degree OR

E.42.2 An appropriate bachelor's degree and a recognised professional teaching qualification OR

E.42.3 A four-year professional teaching qualification as well as an Advanced Diploma in a cognate subfield of Education at NQF Level 7.

E.42.4 A candidate must be computer literate and have reliable access to a computer and the Internet.

E.42.5 The satisfactory fulfilment of the requirements of the selection process.

E.43 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

E.44 Curriculum

A Bachelor of Education Honours Specialisation candidate must obtain credit in the two foundation courses (Educational Issues & Ideas and Research in Education) and a specialisation A and B course. See table below.

Bachelor of Education (Honours)					
<i>Course code</i>	<i>Mnemonic</i>	<i>Course name</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>NQF Level</i>	<i>Credits</i>
9045000		Educational Issues and Ideas	1	8	30
9045001		Research in Education	1	8	30
*		Specialisation A	2	8	30
*		Specialisation B	2	8	30
A Bachelor of Education Honours in ONE of the following areas of specialisation may be taken: Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access, Curriculum Studies, Educational Leadership and Management (ELM), English Language Teaching (ELT), Geography Education, Information Communication Technology (ICT) in Education, Mathematics Education, Primary Education and Science Education.					

E.45 Assessment

E.45.1 All courses are assessed by means of coursework and summative assessments. Coursework (for example, essays, tests and other tasks completed during the year) will comprise a year mark. Summative assessments (for example, written examinations, research reports, seminar presentations, portfolios or a combination of these) will comprise the examination mark. The year mark and the examination mark will normally be weighted equally (50:50) in the calculation of the final mark.

E.45.2 Regardless of format, all summative assessments shall be subject to the University's examination rules and be submitted during the University's examination period.

E.45.3 A pass mark for a course is 50% or more, calculated by aggregating the year mark and the final examination mark as described above.

E.45.4 A sub-minimum of 40% for both the year mark and final examination will normally be required. For example, marks of 40% for the year mark and 60% for the final examination (and vice versa) will normally result in a pass, whereas marks of, for example, 75% and 25% will not.

E.45.5 A candidate must obtain credit in both first-year courses before proceeding to second year studies.

E.45.6 A candidate who fails a course with a result between 40% and 49%, may be granted a supplementary examination. A candidate may only fail one course, and fail it only once, over the duration of the degree.

E.45.7 The degree will be awarded *with distinction* if a candidate achieves an average of 75% across all four courses.

MASTER OF EDUCATION

The Master of Education degree is a 180-credit qualification at NQF Level 9.

The MED provides access to the PhD degree.

See also General Rules (G.49 to G.61) and the Higher Degrees Guide.

E.46 Purpose

"The primary purpose of a Master of Education degree is to prepare researchers who could contribute to the development of knowledge in the field of Education, including knowledge about professional practice at an advanced level. A Master of Education degree comprises a significant research component and could be attained in one of two formats by either:

- completing a single research project, culminating in the production and acceptance of a thesis, or
- successfully completing a course-work programme, requiring a high level of theoretical engagement and intellectual independence, and completing and reporting on a research project, culminating in the acceptance of a dissertation carrying a minimum of 60 credits at level 9.

Master of Education degree students should be able to deal with complex issues in education – both systematically and creatively. They should make sound judgements, using the data and information at their disposal, and be able to clearly communicate their conclusions to specialist and non-specialist audiences, demonstrate self-direction and originality in analysing and solving problems, act autonomously in planning and implementing tasks at a professional level and continue to advance" (Government Gazette no 38487 February 2015, p.45).

E.47 Admission Requirements

E.47.1 The minimum entry requirement is normally:

- the Bachelor of Education Honours degree, OR
- an appropriate 480 credit Level 8 Professional Bachelor's degree (for example, a Bachelor of Psychology degree), OR
- a relevant Honours degree. A postgraduate diploma may also be recognised as meeting the minimum entry requirement for a cognate Master of Education degree programme, as long as it meets the HEQSF research requirements of at least 30 credits.

E.47.2 For admission to the degree of Master of Education by coursework and research in the fields of Educational Leadership and Management, English Language Teaching, Environmental Education, Primary Education, Mathematics Education, Geography Education, Science Education and Information and Communication Technology, the minimum entry requirement is normally

- EITHER the Bachelor of Education Honours degree OR
- an honours degree plus PGCE or PGDip (HE) with, in each case, normally a credit in the underlying discipline at least at the second-year level, and normally at least three years of teaching experience in the field of MED specialisation.

E.47.3 Candidates may be admitted as Ad Eundem Gradum students as set out in the General Calendar rules (G.49).

E.48 Duration

E.48.1 The degree by coursework and half thesis runs over a two-year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years.

E.48.2 Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study.

E.48.3 Candidates in the Faculty of Education are required to submit research proposals within 18 months of registration for consideration by the Faculty Higher Degrees Committee which recommends acceptance or otherwise to the relevant Faculty Board.

E.48.4 In terms of Rule G.76.1, candidates are expected to have completed a Master's degree within three years from first registration. Given these timelines, Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of a candidate if they are not satisfied that an extension is warranted. Consequently, candidates should apply to Senate for the extension of their registration period.

E.48.5 The continued registration of MED candidates is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY RESEARCH

E.49 Curriculum

The degree may be undertaken in any field of educational research, depending on availability of supervisory staff.

E.50 Duration

In terms of Rule G.76.1, candidates are expected to have completed a Master's degree within three years from first registration. Given these timelines, Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of a candidate if they are not satisfied that an extension is warranted. Consequently, candidates should apply to Senate for the extension of their registration period.

E.51 Assessment

E.51.1 The research, in the form of a thesis, must show that

- the candidate is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- the candidate is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate literature;
- the candidate has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.
- The thesis is satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

E.51.2 Save for exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for a thesis in the case of a Master's degree by research only will be 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding appendices).

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

E.52 Curriculum for coursework and half thesis

E.52.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of the year.

E.52.2 The coursework examination must be completed during the first year of study, in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the research in the second year of study.

E.52.3 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The thesis shall represent the other 50%.

E.52.4 With due consideration for the more limited nature of the work, the criteria in E.54 above apply equally to the evaluation of the thesis component.

E.52.5 The length of the thesis shall not exceed 30 000 words of text (approximately 100 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding appendices).

E.53 ..

E.53.1 ...

E.53.2 ..

E.54 Assessment

E.54.1 The overall examination procedure for MEd by coursework and research (half thesis or research projects) shall be as follows:

E.54.2 A candidate must normally obtain a minimum of 60% for the coursework component of the first year of the degree, in order to be allowed to proceed to the research component of the degree.

E.54.3 In order to be awarded the degree, candidates must obtain a minimum of 50% for the research component (half-thesis or research projects) and an aggregated mark of 50% for the coursework component (year mark and examination) and the research component (half-thesis or research projects). Candidates obtaining an aggregate of between 50% and 74% will obtain a pass mark for the MEd degree.

E.54.4 For a distinction to be awarded for the degree, in the case of degree by coursework and half theses, the candidate should have obtained a minimum of 70% for both the coursework, and the half thesis. The combined mark should be 75% or more.

E.54.5 No supplementary examinations for the coursework component will be permitted.

E.54.6 The examination rules of the thesis and half thesis are identical to those set out in the Higher Degrees Guide.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The PhD is a 360-credit course at NQF level 10. *See also General Rules and the Higher Degrees Guide.*

E.55 Purpose

“The defining characteristic of a general doctoral degree in the field of education is that it requires the candidate to demonstrate high-level research competence, and to make a significant and original academic contribution at the frontiers of education or in a sub-field of education. The research, which may be purely discipline-based, or multidisciplinary, or applied research, must be undertaken at the most advanced academic level, culminating in the production, defence and acceptance of a thesis. Coursework may be conducted as a preparation for, or in support of the research, but may not contribute towards the credit value of the degree. The quality of the research should satisfy peer reviews and merit publication. The graduate should also be able to supervise the research of others in his/her area of specialisation” (Government Gazette no 38487 February 2015).

E.56 Duration

E.56.1 In terms of Rule G.76.1, candidates are expected to have completed a PhD within five years from first registration or six years if their PhD was upgraded from a Master’s degree. Given these timelines, Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of a candidate if they are not satisfied that an extension is warranted. Consequently, candidates should apply to Senate for the extension of their registration period.

E.56.2 The continued registration of PhD candidates is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

E.57 Curriculum

E.57.1 The degree may be undertaken in any field of educational research, depending on availability of supervisory staff.

E.57.2 A PhD can take either a traditional form or it can be presented in the form of peer-reviewed articles and papers in partial fulfilment of the degree.

E.58 Assessment

E.58.1 The guideline for the upper length of a PhD thesis (excluding appendices) is 80 000 to 100 000 words. Candidates are cautioned against exceeding this length without careful

consideration in consultation with their supervisor(s) on how the length might be viewed by their examiners.

E.58.2 The examination rules are set out in the **Higher Degrees Guide**.

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES RULES

RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The Rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Humanities only.

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Humanities:

Name	to be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Arts	BA
Bachelor of Arts with Honours	BA(Hons)
Bachelor of Fine Art	BFA
Bachelor of Music	BMus
Bachelor of Journalism	BJourn
Bachelor of Social Science	BSoc Sci
Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	BSoc Sci(Hons)
Master of Arts	MA
Master of Fine Art	MFineArt
Master of Music	MMus
Master of Social Science	MSoc Sci
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Literature	DLitt
Doctor of Music	DMus
Doctor of Social Science	DSoc Sci
Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language*	DipESL(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching*	DipELT(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Heritage Management	PgDip Heritage Mgt
Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies*	DipIS(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Economic Journalism	PGDEJ
Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration*	DipLGA(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology*	DipPsychol(PG)
Higher Diploma in Psychology*	HDipPsychol
Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism	DipJourn(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	DipMedMgmt(PG)

** All these degrees and diplomas are not necessarily offered every year.*

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

H.1

The degree of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Social Science may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an Honours degree.

H.2

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.48 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their satisfactory completion of the National Senior Certificate, or other examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent, for at least three years.

H.3

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain credit in not less than ten courses; they may present themselves for examination in not more than four of these in the first year of study, and not more than four in the second year of study; provided that:

3.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject;

3.2 Candidates with unweighted Admission points higher than 50 will normally be granted permission to take a fifth course in their first year of study;

3.3 Candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional course in the second year of study provided that the Dean of the Faculty is satisfied that the candidate has an above average academic record.

3.4 ...

3.5 In any given semester the final course of a major subject may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses, unless approved by the Dean of the Faculty.

H. 4

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in two courses, including at least one of the subjects specified in Rule H.5 or H.19; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have passed the final course of a major subject; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

H.5

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

GROUP A

Afrikaans

Anthropology

Art History & Visual Culture

Chinese Studies

Classical Studies

Drama

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

English (Literary Studies in)

Fine Art Practice

French

German Studies

Greek

History

Industrial and Economic Sociology

Instrumental Music Studies

Iintetho Zobomi*

isiXhosa

Journalism and Media Studies

Latin

Modern Fiction*

Music Culture and History

Music Theory and Analysis

Organisational Psychology

Philosophy

Politics

Psychology

Sociology

Sound Technology

*One year, minor course

NB: Please note that not all subjects lead to a 3-year major.

GROUP B

Group B comprises all other subjects offered by the Faculties of Commerce, Law or Science for credit towards any undergraduate Bachelor's degree at Rhodes University. Candidates taking any course in the Faculty of Commerce, Law or Science shall be governed by that Faculty's rules pertaining to that course.

NOTE: Students are advised to take in their first-year curriculum only courses which lead to possible majors.

H.7

A candidate must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects, which are taken at the third-year level (NQF level 7). At least one such major subject (and 180 NQF credits overall) must be chosen from Group A.

NOTE: Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any

one year will normally be required to write one in February of the following year.

H.8

A candidate must obtain credit in at least four non-initial courses. All second- and third-year courses and Modern Fiction count as non-initial courses.

H.9...

H.10

Save in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, candidates

10.1.1 who have obtained a National Senior Certificate or equivalent qualification with German as a subject shall not be permitted to register for the course German Studies 1, as the language component starts at beginners' level.

10.1.2 who are German mother-tongue speakers shall not be permitted to register for German Studies courses, as the language components are at foreign language level.

10.2 who are French mother-tongue speakers will not be allowed to register for French 1.

10.3 who have passed isiXhosa at the National Senior Certificate HL with at least a 50% mark in shall not be permitted to register for the IsiXhosa Language Acquisition course at any level except under exceptional circumstances and on the discretion of the relevant Head of Department in consultation with the Dean of the Faculty.

10.3.2 ...

10.4 who have passed isiXhosa as 2nd or 3rd additional language at the National Senior Certificate level or other equivalent examination may be permitted to proceed to the second level course in IsiXhosa Language Acquisition on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the Head of the School of Languages.

H.11 ...

H.12

12.1.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Sociology 1 before proceeding to Industrial and Economic Sociology 2.

12.1.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 may take Sociology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has passed Sociology 2 may not take Industrial and Economic Sociology 3 except with permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a satisfactory level of performance must be achieved.

12.2 ...

12.3.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Psychology 1 before proceeding to Organisational Psychology 2.

12.3.2 A candidate who has passed Organisational Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organisational Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

H.13

13.1 Only 120 first-year students gain entry into Journalism and Media Studies 2. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance, portfolio of journalistic work completed by students, tutors reports and biographical questionnaires. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second try, unless permission is granted by the Head of School.

13.2 A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take

Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. No such candidate shall be permitted to re-register for the course or rewrite the examination, unless permission is granted by the Head of School. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science degree

H.14...

H.15...

H.16...

H.17 Credit shall not be given for:

17.1 ...

17.2 ...

17.3 Psychology 2 and Organisational Psychology 2 or for Psychology 3 and Organisational Psychology 3.

17.4 Sociology 2 and 3 and also for Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 and 3.

17.5 ...

H.18

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class I in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Social Science degree:

H.19

Candidates may present themselves for examination in subjects chosen from at least two of Groups A, B or C and, except under exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the

curriculum must be in conformity with the conditions applying to each Group.

At least five courses, including at least one major subject must be chosen from Group C:

GROUP C:

Anthropology; Economics; Industrial and Economic Sociology; Journalism and Media Studies; Organisational Psychology; Politics; Psychology; Sociology.

NOTE: If Economics is chosen as a major subject the other major must be chosen from Group A or B (as listed in H.5 above).

1. ...

2. *Candidates who do not satisfy the Faculty of Commerce entry requirements for first time entering students may not be registered for more than one of Management 1, Accounting 1, Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.*

H.20 Students majoring in TWO Group C subjects, must be registered for a Bachelor of Social Science degree.

H.21 ...

H.22...

The Humanities Extended Studies Programme

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Humanities to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of BA, BSoc Sci or BJourn. A limited number of credit-earning courses are offered from which a curriculum suited to the needs of each student admitted to the Extended Studies Programme will be drawn up at Registration by the Dean, in consultation with appropriate Heads of Departments. Because of the nature of the programme, the number of students admitted to it in any one year will be limited.

The structure of the first-year programme shall normally consist of:

Academic and Computer Literacies (non-credit bearing) *plus* 2 full courses from the following two options:

Anthropology and Journalism & Media Studies OR Politics and Sociology, plus the Extended Studies support course*.

* ES support courses are non-credit bearing courses

THE HONOURS DEGREE

The Rules that follow apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) and Bachelor of Social Science (Honours) degrees.

H.23

The Honours degree may be taken in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

NOTE: The Faculty offers Interdisciplinary Honours degrees in African Studies, Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Relations and any other inter-departmental and inter-faculties programs. See the entry under "Interdepartmental Studies" in the Calendar.

H.24

24.1 A candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree, or has been admitted to the status thereof or, being a graduate of another Faculty, has passed such examinations as are deemed by the Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the Honours degree, or has completed all the requirements thereof except the requirement regarding attendance, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.31-H.35 inclusive, be admitted to the course for the Honours degree.

24.2 For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the said requirements and pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

24.3 As an alternative to sub-paragraph (1), a candidate who has been registered at Rhodes University for a minimum of two years prior to the application, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.26 and H.27 and H.31, be admitted to the course for the Honours degree from the beginning of the third academic year of study for the ordinary degree. This is subject to the following conditions:

24.3.1. That such a candidate has passed with distinctions at least two of their majors both at first

and second years, inclusive of the subject of their Honours application

24.3.2 That such a candidate shall apply for admission to an Honours degree, and the application is subject to special permission being granted to such a candidate by the Dean in consultation with the Head of the relevant academic Department of Faculty

24.3.3 That such a candidate who registers for this special Honours shall deregister from the general degree the moment his or her acceptance to study for an Honours degree is confirmed.

24.3.4 This rule shall not apply to students transferring from other academic institutions.

24.4 ...

24.5 ...

H.25

25.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the Honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department or Departments concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an Honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take Honours.

25.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided

25.2.1 that they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

25.2.2 that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

25.2.3 that the Board of the Faculty approves such arrangements.

25.3 Except for the Honours degree in African Studies and the Honours degrees in Development Studies, Gender Studies, and any other related programs, candidates may normally not present themselves for examination in more than two subjects.

25.4 If more than 60% of the Honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will

be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

H.26

Candidates taking the Honours degree under Rule H.23 will be required to study and complete their Honours degree within two years of registering for it.

H.27 Candidates that are registered for the Honours degree under rule 24.3. are subject to the same assessment rules that apply to any conventional Honours degree program of the Faculty, except that they will normally be expected to complete the degree in two years and that this program shall be taken only by part-time students.

27.1 ...

27.2 ...

27.3 ...

H.28

The periods referred to in Rule H.24 are the periods of full-time study required of an Honours degree candidate. Such candidates may not take up any fulltime employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another Department concurrently with their Honours degree.

H.29

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit students to take an Honours course as a part-time student: provided that

29.1 they attend the Honours classes within the normal timetable of the Department, and

29.2 the Honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, not more than two years.

H.30

Candidates taking the Honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

H.31

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Honours degree in terms of Rule H.24.3, unless they have obtained credit in not less than eight courses

H.32

32.1 Other than for the candidates admitted under Rule 24.3, all candidates shall not be admitted to any joint Honours degree, unless they have obtained at least a NQF Level 7 credit in each of two of the subjects they wish to take for Honours degree.

32.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Honours degree in African Studies unless they have a major in at least one of the following: African Languages, Anthropology, Economics, History, Industrial and Economic Sociology, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology or Sociology. Students will normally be expected to offer at least two papers in the Honours programme conducted by a Department in which they majored.

H.33

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the Honours degree unless they have obtained credit in such compulsory ancillary courses as may be prescribed for that course.

H.34...

H.35

Candidates must write all parts of the examination, other than the translation test (if required) at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination: provided that part-time candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of their examination at the end of their first year of study and part at the end of their second year of study.

NB. Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, a research essay must be

handed in before or at the same time as the other examinations are written. Normally a research essay of a maximum of 15 000 words shall be regarded as the equivalent of one paper.

H.36

A candidate who has been admitted to the course for the Honours degree in terms of Rule H.24.3, and has failed to satisfy the examiners, may, subject to permission from the Dean of the Faculty, be permitted to re-register for outstanding courses offered for the ordinary degree.

H.37

Candidates who have obtained the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism may be accepted as candidates for the Honours or Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the candidate has passed such examinations as could be deemed by Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the relevant degree. Candidates wishing to enrol for the Master's degree may be required to complete one or more papers from the Honours degree and must satisfy the General Rules governing the Master's degree in the Faculty of Humanities.

FINE ART**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART**

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only. Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

Curriculum for BFA degree**H.38**

A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in all of the following:

FIRST YEAR

Fine Art Practice 1A

Fine Art Practice 1B

Art History & Visual Culture 101

Art History & Visual Culture 102

ONE other course which falls under Humanities, Commerce or Science

SECOND YEAR

Fine Art Practice 2A

Fine Art Practice 2B

Art History & Visual Culture 201

Art History & Visual Culture 202

ONE other course which falls under Humanities, Commerce or Science

THIRD YEAR

Fine Art Practice 3

Art History & Visual Culture 301

Art History & Visual Culture 302

FOURTH YEAR

Fine Art Practice 4

Art History & Visual Culture 4

H.39 ...**H.40 ...****H.41 ...****H.42 ...****H.43**

The degree certificate of candidates who pass in Class 1 of the final examination shall be endorsed with Distinction in Fine Art Practice and/or Art History & Visual Culture, as the case may be.

H.44**FINE ART OPTIONS FOR DEGREES OTHER THAN BFA**

NOTE: Non-BFA students may study Fine Art Practice without Art History & Visual Culture, but can only take Fine Art Practice as a minor in this case (at a first-year level or to a second-year level). To major in Fine Art Practice, students must have a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture. Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture independently without also

studying Fine Art Practice - either as a major or for only one or two years.

* Non-BFA students may take Fine Art Practice 1A, with or without Fine Art Practice 1B, and with or without Art History & Visual Culture. Non-BFA students may continue to Fine Art Practice 2A, with or without Fine Art Practice 2B, and with or without Art History & Visual Culture, but would not be able to proceed to Fine Art Practice 3 without a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture.

* Non-BFA students may only major in Fine Art Practice if they also major in Art History & Visual Culture.

* Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture without studying Fine Art Practice, either as a major or for one or two years.

H45 ...

H46 ...

H47 ...

H48 ...

H.49

DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART

The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a mini thesis. The exhibition of studio work that the candidate submits for examination will be artwork produced since admission to the degree. It should be supplemented by a presentation of sketchbooks and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development. The mini thesis should be between 12 000 and 15 000 words and should be on a topic related to the candidate's studio work. The two components form an integrated submission and are assessed as such. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The completed mini thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three days before studio work is submitted for examination.

A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the studio work and mini thesis is given to each candidate.

49.1 MASTER OF ARTS (ART HISTORY)

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of Art History and Visual Culture. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Master's degrees by thesis apply.

49.2 MASTER OF ARTS (CURATION)

The degree is by Curatorial Practice and thesis and caters specifically for candidates looking to develop their capacities and understanding of theories and practices of curating. A candidate is required to curate an exhibition (rather than producing an exhibition of own work) in an art museum, gallery or suitable alternative space and to develop a thesis of between 25 000 and 30 000 words exploring the curatorial theme, logistic approach, and exhibition strategy. The final mark for the degree comprises 50% for the exhibition and 50% for the thesis. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The completed thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three days before the exhibition is submitted for examination. A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and thesis is given to each candidate.

H.50

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanities rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

H.51

A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in all of the following:

Curriculum for BMus degree

First year

Instrumental Music Studies 1
Music Culture and History 1 (Ethnomusicology 101 + Musicology 102)
Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102
Sound Technology 1S1 OR one Humanities or Science course

Second year

Instrumental Music Studies 2
Music Culture and History (Musicology 201 + Ethnomusicology 202)
Music Theory and Analysis 2
Sound Technology 1S1 or 2 OR one Humanities or Science course

Third year

Instrumental Music Studies 3
Students choose two of the following courses:
IMS 3, MCH 3, MTA 3 or STC3.

Fourth year

Students must do FIVE papers or the equivalent of 120 credits in accordance with the Music 4 rules. All choices are subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

H.52

BA, BSoc Sci and BSc degrees with Music as a major

Normally not more than FIVE music subjects may be taken in the BA/BSoc Sci or FOUR in a BSc degree (see the relevant Faculty Rules).

First year courses

Students may choose from the following:
Instrumental Music Studies 1
Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102
Music Culture and History 101 and/or 102
Sound Technology 1

Second year courses

Students may choose from the following:
Instrumental Music Studies 2
Music Culture and History 201 and/or 202
Music Theory and Analysis 2
Sound Technology 2

Third year courses

Students may choose one of the following:
Instrumental Music Studies 3
Music Culture and History 3
Music Theory and Analysis 3
Sound Technology 3

H.53

MUSIC HONOURS (BA OR BSC)

Curriculum and syllabi are identical to BMus Fourth Year

NB: All Instrumental Music Studies students are required to take part in at least one approved ensemble: RU Chamber Choir, Opera / Vocal Ensemble, Jazz Ensemble, Flute Ensemble, Guitar Ensemble, String Ensemble, etc. for the duration of their course of study. Please note that tuition in and examination of the ensemble component (or second instrument) of Instrumental Music Studies is in addition to these requirements. Attendance of a minimum of three quarters of the rehearsal schedule is obligatory.

H.54

DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

See also the General Rules for Master's degrees.

A Master's degree may be awarded by submission of:

- (i) a thesis,
- (ii) a portfolio of compositions*,
- (iii) two public recitals*(60%) and mini-thesis (40%)
- (iv) two public recitals (60%) and short composition portfolio (40%)

See also the General Rules for the Degree of Master.

**Any culture or style may be included.*

H.55

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

See also the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of these Rules, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the PhD degree is required to submit for the approval of the Senate a thesis, a set of compositions, or a set of performances linked to a thesis.
2. A set of compositions must consist of at least three substantial original compositions (not less than 70 minutes in duration), the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee.
3. Where compositions are submitted, the candidate must also submit an explanatory statement (not less than 25 000 words) referring to important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestration devices used. This document should detail the portfolio's theme or contextualising thread. Recordings of compositions are required.
4. Where performances are included, three performances are required (60 – 70 min duration) and a mini- thesis (50 000 words) (examined as a linked project).

H.56 ...

H.57 ...

H.58 ...

H.59 ...

H.60 ...

H.61 ...

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM

H.62

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

H.63

63.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in at least eleven courses which must include the following:

63.1.1 Journalism and Media Studies 1, 2, 3 and 4; isiXhosa for Journalism and

63.1.2 all the required courses in a subject to be selected from those major subjects listed in Rule H.7 or Rule S.8 of the Faculty of Science Rules, or Human Kinetics and Ergonomics or Information Systems, or Management.

63.1.3 ...

63.2 The remaining courses must be selected from those Humanities courses listed in Rule H.5; provided that:

63.2.1 Candidates who select a major subject from Rule S.8 must select ancillary courses as prescribed in Rule S.23.

63.2.2 ...

NB (1) *Only 120 students who successfully completed Journalism and Media Studies 1 gain entry into Journalism and Media Studies 2. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance, portfolio of journalistic work completed by students, tutors' reports and biographical questionnaires. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. Candidates wishing to return at a later stage must reapply before the 1st day of Term 4 of the previous year. If a student withdraws*

from the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course for certified reasons of illness or trauma or is excluded s/he will not be allowed to repeat completed modules or exams, unless permission is granted by the Head of School. These candidates will need to inform the School of their intention to return by the end of the first week of January. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second attempt, unless permission is granted by the Head of School

(2) A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 3 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree. Entry into Journalism and Media Studies 4 is predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 60% for both the Media Studies and Production component of the Journalism and Media Studies 3 course.

Candidates accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 4, and who are registered for a Bachelor of Arts degree, may change their registration to Bachelor of Journalism subject to the rules for a Bachelor of Journalism degree being met.

H.64 ...

H.65

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major from the subjects listed in Rule S.8 must complete three courses from the following basic subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science,

Economics, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Psychology, Zoology, Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Microbiology.

NOTE: Students intending to major in any of the subjects listed in Rule S.8 are referred to the prerequisite subjects listed in Rule S.23.

H.66

66.1 ...

66.2 ...

66.3 Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and credit in at least one course in one further subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Journalism 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.63; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least eight credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.63 and are engaged in the study of Journalism 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

66.4 ...

66.5 Candidates shall not be permitted to enter the course Journalism 4 until they have obtained at least nine credits including both third year major courses.

H.67

The degree certificates of candidates shall be endorsed "with distinction" if they obtain an average mark equivalent to a Class I pass for the modules of their Journalism and Media Studies 4 course taken together.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN JOURNALISM

H.68

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies (PgDip) if they have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in

Journalism and Media Studies from Rhodes University will not be admitted to courses already covered within that student's major; or

H.69

Candidates for the Diploma will be admitted on the recommendation of the Head of School. The School reserves the right to limit the enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism to 12 students for any one academic year.

H.70

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain credit in all prescribed courses. (For further curriculum information, refer to the Journalism and Media Studies departmental entry.)

H.71

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.72

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT (FULL-TIME)

This postgraduate diploma is offered every year.

H.73

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty of the University or from other recognised universities.

H.74

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least seven of the eight core modules below with an overall aggregate pass of at least 50% for the combined eight modules:

1. Media Management Contexts, Policy and Institutions
2. Media Management and Leadership
3. Human Resources Management
4. Managing Media Markets, Audiences and Advertising
5. Financial Management and Media Economics
6. Managing Media Content
7. Managing New Media and Convergence

8. Managing Media Distribution and Circulation

H.75

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.76

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT (PART-TIME, DISTANCE)

Candidates may be admitted to the two-year, part-time and mostly online course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of a bachelor in any faculty of the University or from other recognized universities. Consideration will be given to admit students based on the Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) provided that these students have been in the media industry for at least five years and have a diploma and/or advanced certificate in a cognate discipline (e.g. Diploma in Journalism or Advanced Certificate in Journalism; Marketing and Communications, etc.). The numbers of RPL students each year will be capped at 10% of the total student cohort of that year of online students.

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in all of the four modules offered in the first year to progress to the second and final year, where the candidate must pass at least an additional three other modules and the academic portfolio. A pass mark for each module is an aggregated 50% composed of the course and examination marks. A pass mark for the overall course is also an aggregated 50% of the marks of the modules and portfolio.

The duration of the Diploma shall be no less than two academic years.

The Diploma may be awarded with a distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

H.77

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies if they have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

H.78

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least four of the five courses and obtain an overall aggregated of at least 50 percent in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The examination consists of five papers from the following typical course listing:

1. International Relations
2. African Political Economy
3. Peace and Conflict in Africa
4. Diplomacy
5. Political Economy
6. African Politics
7. Africa in World Politics
8. International Law

H.79

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.80

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT ADMINISTRATION

This Postgraduate Diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.81

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

H.82

82.1 A candidate for the Diploma must pass in at least two of the three non-practical components as well as pass the practical component, and obtain an

overall aggregate of at least 50%, in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The basic components of the Diploma are:

- Basics of Local Government
- Local Government finance and administration
- The role of Local Government in development and transformation
- Practical in Local Government

82.2 A pass will be obtained in the practical component by means of submission of a report by the candidate and by assessment of the performance of the candidate in the three-month placement.

H.83

The duration of the Diploma course shall be not less than one academic year.

H.84

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING

This Postgraduate Diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.85

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching if they have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor EITHER with a language major and at least one credit in English or Linguistics OR with an Education major and at least three language credits, one of which must be English or Linguistics.

H.86

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. There will be four components to the assessment of the Diploma course, each contributing equal amounts to the final grade:

Paper 1: General linguistics

Paper 2: Teaching methodology and language testing

Paper 3: Psychology of second language learning and teaching AND Language in society and education

Class record: Based on the course-work during the year.

H.87

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.88

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

MASTER'S DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.50 to G.61 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Master. The thesis must show that the candidate

(a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

(b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature; and

(c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.

In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation. Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for masters' degrees in the Faculty of Humanities is 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

MASTER'S DEGREE BY COURSEWORK

1. Master's by coursework candidates will be required to register full-time in attendance for at least one year except for the Master's in English Second Language, and the Master's in Journalism and Media Studies.
2. The coursework section should be spread over one year with the examinations for that section written in November of that academic year, except in the case of students in Journalism and Media Studies.

3. The thesis shall be submitted not later than one year after the initial examination.
4. The coursework degree shall normally comprise three papers of three hours' duration together valued at 50% of the total final mark. The thesis shall represent 50% of the total.
5. The length of a thesis in the Master's degree by coursework should normally not exceed 30 000 words, but should not under any circumstances exceed 50 000 words (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes illustrative material and appendices). The word limit for the extended writing project for the Master's Degree in Creative Writing is 80 000.
6. The topics to be covered by the examination and the research project must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The research proposal, including those for the MFA, must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.
7. The examination procedure shall be as follows:
 - 7.1 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the papers as a whole as well as for the thesis to qualify for an overall pass.
 - 7.2 Candidates obtaining between 50%–74% will obtain a pass mark for the Master's degree.
 - 7.3 A distinction may be awarded for a Master's degree taken by coursework and thesis if the aggregate mark for both components of the course is > 75%.
 - 7.4 Candidates will not be permitted to rewrite any papers in the examination section. No supplementary examinations will be permitted.
 - 7.5 The examiner(s) may recommend that the thesis be revised and resubmitted for examination.
 - 7.6 The formal examination plus a thesis are to be regarded as sub-components of an overall assessment. The scripts of the candidate and the thesis should go in the end to external examiners, who should

have before them the internal examiners' marks for the scripts but not the internal examiner's mark for the thesis. The external examiners should be required to pass judgment on the candidate's overall performance in the formal examination plus the writing of the thesis.

- 7.7 Where the coursework degree has a research report which constitutes 35% or less of the marks, a distinction is awarded if the candidate obtains 75% or above in the coursework component and a 2A or better in the research report and the aggregated final mark is 75% or above.
8. Candidates may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework and thesis in Journalism and Media Studies if they
 - 8.1 have obtained a four-year degree (BJourn) or an Honours in Journalism and Media Studies or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate foundation for a Master's Degree in Journalism and Media Studies, or
 - 8.2 have been admitted to an Honours Degree in a different discipline, but have in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies; provided that
 - 8.3 a candidate will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies;
 - 8.4 a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours Degree;
 - 8.5 a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,
 - 8.6 satisfy the General Rules governing the Master's Degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.
9. A Master's Degree by coursework and thesis is also offered in Interdisciplinary Studies (refer to the Interdepartmental entry).

NOTE: The Board of the Faculty of Humanities has approved the following procedures for a Master's by examination in the Department of Psychology only:

The formal examinations are regarded as Part One of the examination and the department should appoint an external examiner for those papers and publish the results of the examinations. When the student completes the thesis, which is regarded as Part Two of the examination, this may go to an entirely different examiner who may see the thesis only. The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of Department and the internal examiners, based on the external examiner's report on the formal examination scripts and the external examiner's report on the thesis. Where there is clear conflict between Part One and Part Two, the candidate's examination scripts and the thesis are to be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

DOCTORAL DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.62 to G.75 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy:

The thesis must show that the candidate:

- (a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- (b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;
- (c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree;
- and (d) has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

FACULTY OF LAW

GENERAL INFORMATION

Bachelor of Laws

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses required for the LLB degree, as well as additional courses for degree curricula in other faculties. The Faculty offers the LLB in three streams, and admission is determined in accordance with set criteria.

Students are admitted in accordance with University and Faculty enrolment planning and the availability of space and resources.

1. A four-year LLB stream (the primary stream for admission)

Students who meet the admission requirements for the LLB on the basis of their NSC (or equivalent school exit level examinations) may be admitted to the LLB in their first year of study to follow the four-year curriculum.

Students who are registered in any one of the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce and who successfully complete the Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law courses as part of their first-year curriculum may, after their first year of study and in terms of Rule L.3.2, apply for admission to the LLB to follow the four-year LLB curriculum.

2. A three-year LLB for graduate students

Students may enter this stream after having completed any Bachelor's degree without law subjects, in terms of Rule L.3.3.

3. A five-year combined Law and Humanities OR Law and Commerce OR Law and Science LLB stream [not available for any students who register after 2025, and will be phased out in 2028]

Students enter this stream with the intention of following an undergraduate programme in Law and Humanities OR Law and Commerce OR Law and Science leading to a BA/BSocSc or BCom or BSc and thereafter a two-year LLB. The objective of a broad-based education is achieved in this stream by including courses which ensure that the student has

a thorough grasp of at least one discipline outside of Law. Students register for a BA, BSocSc, BCom or BSc in their first year of study and continue with that degree with Legal Theory as a major subject. Having obtained the first degree, students then apply for admission to the LLB, to be completed over two years, in terms of Rule L.3.4. To do so they must have passed a sufficient number of law courses in the first degree, which is usually the case if they have majored in Legal Theory.

Master of Laws, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Laws

A thesis on an approved topic must be submitted. The rules are the same as those for similar degrees in the other faculties.

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all faculties. The rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Law only.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Law:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Laws	LLB
Master of Laws	LLM
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Laws	LLD

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS

L.1

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules and in Rule L.9 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they:

- 1.1 have been registered for at least four years;
- 1.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.4 below;
- 1.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least one moot in their final year of study (old curriculum) or in a moot in each of their third and fourth years of study (new curriculum).

L.2

2.1 The period of study for the degree shall normally be four years for candidates who are full-time students of the University

2.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in three years, provided that they have no more than forty semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of three years.

2.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in two years, provided that they have no more than thirty-two semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of two years.

2.4 ...

L.3

3.1 Candidates who meet the admissions criteria for the LLB may be admitted to the LLB in their first year of study. In order to apply for admission, students must obtain a National Senior Certificate (NSC) Bachelor's Pass status or its equivalent, and normally obtain a minimum of a 45 admission point score (APS) across 6 subjects, two of which are languages, and one Mathematics or Mathematics Literacy.

Applicants must obtain at least 60% for English Home Language or 70% for English First Additional Language, and 50% for Mathematics or 60% for Mathematics Literacy in the NSC.

Students wishing to pursue Economics as one of their non-law courses, must obtain 50% in Mathematics in the NSC.

A limited number of places is available to pursue this route to the LLB. Motivations accompanying the applications will be used to differentiate between applicants of equal academic standing, and preference will be given to black South African and disabled applicants who meet the admission requirements.

3.2a Candidates who do not meet the admission criteria for the LLB under Rule L.3.1 may, subject to enrolment planning and the availability of resources, register for Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law as part of their curriculum in another Faculty.

3.2b Candidates referred to in Rule L 3.2a above who do not have a degree may be admitted to the second year of study for the LLB degree (the four-year curriculum), provided that they have passed each of the law courses offered in their first year of study (Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law) with an average of at least 70% as well as

having obtained an overall average of 70% for three non-law courses studied in that year. (Students who do not meet these criteria must follow the five-year route.) Candidates who have completed more than one year of study must not only meet the first-year criteria, but must also have obtained an overall average of at least 70% for the subjects registered in the previous year of study.

3.3 Candidates who have a degree without any law courses or with insufficient law courses, may be admitted to the second year of study for the LLB degree (the three-year curriculum), provided that they obtained at least 70% for their major subjects. Where a candidate has not met this requirement, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown and subject to enrolment planning and the availability of Faculty resources.

3.4 Candidates who registered up to 2025 for Legal Theory and who have a degree with Legal Theory as a major may be admitted to the third year of study for the LLB degree (the two-year curriculum). Normally, and subject to enrolment planning and the availability of places, candidates who obtained at least 70% in their Legal Theory major and at least 70% in their other major will be admitted, as will candidates from other universities who obtained an average of at least 70% for all subjects in their previous programme of study. Where a candidate has not met these requirements, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown and subject to the availability of Faculty resources. Preference will be given to those candidates who obtained their first degree at Rhodes University. This stream will be phased out in 2028.

L.4

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.8 candidates must pass all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

OLD CURRICULUM (for students registering before 2026)

First year

- (1) In the First Semester: Foundations of Law
- (2) In the Second Semester: Introduction to Law
- (3) In the Second Semester: Law of Persons

(4) Three non-legal 30-credit courses at first-year level, to be selected from Politics, Psychology, History, Philosophy, Classics, English, Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, African Languages, Journalism, Sociology, Anthropology, Economics, and subject to any timetable constraints.

Second year

(1) In the First Semester:

Constitutional Law A
Law of Contract A
Law of Life Partnerships
Law of Property A
Legal Interpretation

(2) In the Second Semester:

Constitutional Law B
Law of Contract B
Law of Property B
Legal Pluralism

(3) One 30-credit non-legal course as from the list referred to in (4) of the first-year curriculum above at second-year level.

Third year

(1) In the First Semester:

Civil Procedure A
Company Law A
Criminal Procedure A
Criminal Law A
Jurisprudence

Law of Sale and Lease

(2) In the Second Semester:

Criminal Law B
Company Law B
Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements
Law of Evidence A
Law of Partnerships and Trusts
Public International Law

(3) In both First and Second Semesters, counted as one semester course: Legal Skills

(4) In either First or Second Semester, counted as one semester course: Legal Practice

Final year

(1) In the First Semester:

Administrative Law (first half)
Civil Procedure B
Criminal Procedure B
Labour Law
Law of Delict (first half)

2 Electives offered in the First Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below.

(2) In the Second Semester:

Administrative Law (second half)
Law of Evidence B
Law of Delict (second half)
Ethics and Professional Responsibility
Law of Succession and Administration of Estates
2 Electives offered in the Second Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below.

NEW CURRICULUM (for students registering from 2026)

First year

(1) In the First Semester:

Foundations of Law
Law of Persons
Legal Skills A

(2) In the Second Semester:

Introduction to Law
Family Law
Legal Skills B

(3) Two non-legal 30-credit courses at first-year level, to be selected from Politics, Psychology, History, Philosophy, Classics, English, Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, African Languages, Journalism, Sociology, Anthropology, Economics, and subject to any timetable constraints.

Second year

(1) In the First Semester:

Constitutional Law A
Legal Interpretation
Criminal Law A
African Customary Law

Law of Property A

(2) In the Second Semester:

Constitutional Law B
Criminal Law B
Law of Delict

Law of Property B

(3) One 30-credit non-legal course as referred to in the first-year list above at second-year level.

Third year

(1) In the First Semester:

Law of Contract A

Criminal Procedure

Law of Evidence

Jurisprudence

Company Law A

(2) In the Second Semester:

Law of Contract B

Civil Procedure

Law of Succession & Administration of Estates

Public International Law

Legal Accounting and Costs

Company Law B

(3) In the Second Semester: a moot

Final year

(1) In the First Semester:

Administrative Law (first half)

Law of Sale and Lease

Labour Law

Law of Insolvency

2 Electives offered in the First Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below

(2) In the Second Semester:

Administrative Law (second half)

Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements

ICT Law

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

2 Electives offered in the Second Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.6 below.

(3) In the First Semester: a moot.

(4) In either First or Second Semester, counted as one semester course: Legal Practice

L.5

...

L.6

6.1 Final-year candidates may select their elective courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.4, from the following list, which applies to old curriculum students in 2026:

In the first semester:

Alternative Dispute Resolution (limited registration)

Copyright and Trade Marks

International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law

International Trade Law

Banking Law

Legal Accounting

In the second semester:

Competition Law

Constitutional Litigation

Environmental Law

Information and Communications Technology Law

Law of Tax and Estate Planning

In both the first and second semesters:

Research Paper (counted as two semester courses). LLB candidates are permitted to complete a Research Paper in a topic of their choice, subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor and the approval of the Dean.

Research Paper: International Moot (counted as one semester course)

Participation in the African Human Rights Moot Court Competition or any other International Moot Competition may qualify a candidate to register for a research paper provided that the research material for the moots is presented in a coherent written form form in terms of the Faculty requirements for this assessment.

6.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered every year and the semester in which electives are offered may also be varied. The availability of options, and the semester in which they will be taught, will depend upon enrolment numbers and teaching arrangements in the Faculty of Law. Student numbers may be restricted in any particular elective.

6.3 Candidates may not take more than three electives in any one semester. This will only be permitted where one of the chosen electives is a research paper. Students who elect to do coursework electives only are normally required to do two electives per semester.

6.4 ...

6.5 Candidates who have passed a university course in Taxation may not register for Tax and Estate Planning.

6.6 ...

6.7 A candidate may not register for more than one research paper elective, except where a candidate,

in addition to registering for a two-semester research paper, participates in an International Moot Court Competition and elects to present a research paper on that participation. A student is only allowed to present one such moot-based research paper, irrespective of the number of times that the student participated in International Moot Court Competitions.

L.7

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

L.8

Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than nine courses in a semester (including courses being repeated).

L.9

9.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from any course or courses in the LLB curriculum, provided that they have passed any equivalent course or courses at Rhodes University or elsewhere, and have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

9.2 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of sub-paragraph 9.1, but who are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of Rule L.2, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean; provided that in their final year they include at least eight semester courses prescribed for that year.

L.10

10.1 To proceed to the second year, candidates must have earned at least 50 law credits and at least 45 non-law credits in their first year of registration.

10.2 To proceed to the third year, candidates must pass all courses except three semester courses or their equivalent, and must comply with Rule L.8.

10.3 To proceed to the final year, candidates must have passed all the courses prescribed in the first year of study, must further have passed all other courses except four semester courses or their equivalent, and must comply with the provisions of Rule L.8.

10.4 For the purposes of Rule G.7 as it applies to the Faculty of Law, students in the first year of registration may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study in that they have

earned less than 40 law credits in their first year of registration. Students in the other years of registration may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study in that (i) they have failed 65% or more of the courses for which they were registered in that academic year, or (ii) they have failed fewer than 65% of the courses for which they were registered in that academic year but cannot complete in regulation time (N) plus 2 years.

L.11

The Board of the Faculty of Law will permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in accordance with the following rules:

11.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 40%. Two exceptions are in Foundations of Law and The Law of Persons (new curriculum, LLB first year), where a supplementary examination may be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of no less than 35%.

11.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than four semester courses or their equivalent in any one academic year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

11.3 Candidates who fail Legal Practice, Legal Skills (old curriculum), Legal Skills A and B (new curriculum), and a Research Paper are not eligible for supplementary or agrotat examinations.

L.12

Candidates in their final year who have passed all the semester courses for the degree, save four, may, with the permission of the Dean, register at another university for a similar course or courses to those outstanding for the award of the degree, and may, on successful completion, be granted exemption for such course or courses. For purposes of this rule, year courses count as two semester courses. In the alternative, the student may be granted extended DPs for such courses.

L.13

13.1 Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

13.2 Candidates in their final year of study who, after the November supplementary examinations, have one or two courses outstanding for their degree, will be eligible for an oral examination in those courses, subject to any policy determined by the Faculty.

L.14

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LAWS

L.15

The provisions set out in the General Rules apply.

L.16

16.1 All postgraduate admissions in the Faculty of Law are subject to the availability of resources and supervisory capacity.

16.2 To be admitted to the Master's degree, candidates must have obtained at least a 65% average across their entire LLB degree.

16.3 Where a candidate has not met the requirement set out in Rule L.16.2, the Dean of Law has the discretion to admit that person, on good cause shown, and subject to supervisory capacity.

16.4 Admission to the PhD degree is at the discretion of the Dean of Law, on good cause shown, and subject to supervisory capacity.

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Faculty of Pharmacy at Rhodes University is dedicated to achieving excellence in an environment of interdisciplinary co-operation, mutual respect, consistent with the mission of the University and with the mission of the profession of Pharmacy.

MISSION

The mission of the Faculty is to promote pharmaceutical care through education, research, scholarship, creative endeavour and service.

Thus its priorities are to:

- Prepare its students for entry into the practice of pharmacy as informed, caring and ethical citizens and professionals;
- Prepare pharmaceutical scholars and researchers through professional undergraduate, graduate and post-doctoral studies of distinction;
- Conduct postgraduate education to advance the knowledge, expertise and competence of pharmacists and pharmaceutical scientists;
- Analyse and apply knowledge about pharmaceutical products and services, their use in society through basic and applied research and to advance, communicate and preserve that knowledge;
- Analyse and apply knowledge in areas that may involve health education and/or promotion, public health, management, accountability, leadership, policy analysis, and other relevant areas;
- Promote, facilitate and conduct educational courses, research, and interventions to extend the knowledge of drugs and medicines in addition to the rational and cost-effective use of medicines.

The course for the BPharm degree is of four years duration. The degree meets the academic requirements as laid down by the South African Pharmacy Council and entitles holders who are either South African Citizens or permanent residents to apply for registration as a pharmacist in South Africa after completing an internship and

subsequently serving one year of community service in the public or other designated sector.

The University is prepared to consider recognising prior learning by granting credits to students who have passed such courses or equivalent courses at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for this purpose, subject to the provisions of Rule G.46 of the General Rules.

Performance in a course is assessed in terms of:

- (a) the results of prescribed written, practical and/or oral examinations, and/or
- (b) assessment of such essays, exercises, tests, reports, presentations, assignments and/or practical work as may be prescribed for a course.

The registration in the Faculty of Pharmacy of any student who is convicted for the illegal use or possession of any illicit drug or medicinal substance in a court of law (in any country) may be terminated by the Vice-Chancellor after consultation with the Dean of the Faculty of Pharmacy.

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Pharmacy shall be the end of the second week of the first term.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Pharmacy:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Pharmacy	BPharm
Master of Science	MSc (Pharm)

Master of Pharmacy	MPharm

Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PHARMACY

The BPharm degree is registered on the NQF as a level 8 qualification.

P.1

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended and successfully completed approved courses for at least four years subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student.

P.2

Normally candidates shall not be admitted to the courses for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy unless they have:

2.1 obtained either the National Senior Certificate with Bachelor status, or obtained a matric exemption certificate from the Board.

2.2 obtained at least a rating of 7 for Mathematics, Life Sciences and Physical Sciences to receive a firm offer.

2.3 Mathematical Literacy will not be considered.

2.4 if a candidate has 45 points and above, they may receive a firm offer if spaces become available. If between 40 and 44 points then admission will be at the Dean's Discretion. Normally candidates who have 39 points or less are likely to be rejected.

2.5 candidates who have obtained a matric exemption of the Joint Matriculation Board must normally have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics, Physical Science and Biology on the Higher Grade.

P.3

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of BPharm unless they have:

3.1 passed all courses of the following curriculum (with the consent of the Board of the Faculty, courses may be taken in years other than those specified);

3.2 candidates who have obtained at least a rating of 5 in Computer Science in the National Senior Certificate or a pass in Computer Science deemed to be the equivalent of the above in another

examination, may be permitted to take Computer Science 101 instead of Introduction to ICT;

3.3 passed electives chosen, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, from the electives listed under Rule P.9 or other courses approved by the Senate for this purpose;

P.4

4.1.1 Candidates in first year may not take Chemistry 102 or Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1 if they have not passed Chemistry 101, unless they have been awarded a Supplementary exam for Chemistry 101.

4.1.2 Candidates who fail the subminimum for Chemistry 101 may be permitted to take Chemistry 1R and will not be permitted to register for Chemistry 102 or Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1.

4.1.3 Candidates in first year who fail Cell Biology and are not awarded a Supplementary exam may not continue with Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1.

4.1.4 Candidates in first year who fail either Introduction to ICT or Mathematics for Life Sciences with the option of a Supplementary exam may continue with second semester subjects unless they have also failed Chemistry 101 or Cell Biology without the possibility of a Supplementary exam.

4.2 Normally students repeating second-year courses with a total value exceeding 50 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying 50 or fewer credit points from their second year may be admitted to appropriate third-year courses.

4.3 Normally students repeating third-year courses with a total value exceeding 60 or more credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying 60 or fewer credit points from their third year may be admitted to appropriate fourth-year courses.

4.4 Normally students may only register for courses in Pharmacy Practice 4, Pharmacology 4, Elective courses offered by the Faculty of

Pharmacy, and Pharmacotherapy in the year they can complete the BPharm degree

4.5 Students transferring from other universities may not normally take courses from the second year of the BPharm curriculum unless they have passed courses deemed to be equivalent to those listed in the first-year BPharm curriculum.

4.6 Normally, candidates will not be permitted to register for any course more than twice.

P.5

5.1 Before admission to a course, a candidate must have passed all prerequisites for that course except as provided for in 5.2 below.

5.2 In exceptional circumstances on the recommendation of the Dean, Senate may permit a candidate to repeat ONE prerequisite course concurrently with the courses for which it is designated a prerequisite provided that

5.2.1 the student has passed all other prerequisite courses, and that

5.2.2 such permission will not normally be granted in respect of courses which themselves lead to more advanced courses in the same subject area.

5.3 This will be conditional on obtaining a pass in its prerequisite courses.

P.6

6.1 Students must have attempted the main examination to qualify for a supplementary exam.

6.2 A student who obtains a final mark of 40 - 49% in a subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

6.3 Normally final year students are permitted to write Supplementary examinations in November of their final year.

6.4 Where relevant the Dean will consider awarding last outstanding credit supplementary examinations after the November results are released.

P.7

7.1 Courses in the Faculty of Pharmacy are measured in terms of credit points. Each credit point is based on the notional hours that an average student would require to master the content and develop skills in a subject. In this respect in the

BPharm curriculum one credit point is equivalent to 10 notional hours.

7.2 Candidates must have the permission of the Dean to undertake a work-load exceeding 120 credit points in the first and second year of study, and 135 credit points in the third and fourth year of study.

7.3 For the purpose of General Rule G.46.2, credit in courses to a total of 360 credit points must be obtained at the University towards the degree.

P.8

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with an average of not less than 3,0 merit marks per credit in all courses of the second year and subsequent years shall be endorsed "with distinction". Merit marks are calculated by multiplying the credit point rating of the course by the numerical value of the class of pass obtained by the student, for that course. For this purpose, a Class 1 pass (75–100%) is valued at 4 points, Class 2A (70–74%) at 3 points, Class 2B (60–69%) at 2 points, and Class 3 (50–59%) at 1 point. The merit mark is multiplied by the number of credits per course, and the total divided by the total number of credits.

P.9

9.1 All candidates must complete elective courses to the value of 30 credit points to be admitted to the degree.

9.2 This could be two elective courses (each worth 15 credit points) or one elective worth 30 credit points. Electives may be offered and taken in the Faculty of Pharmacy or in a different Faculty, after consultation with the Dean, if it is relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the BPharm timetable.

9.3 For the purposes of 9.2 a one semester elective course within the Faculty will count 15 credit points and a two-semester elective course will be worth 30 credit points.

9.4 The elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy will be dependent on relevance to the Pharmacy profession, staff availability and expertise.

9.5. With the permission of the Dean and subject to the provision of rules P.4 and P.7 candidates may take one elective course in the second or third year of study provided it is a course offered by another faculty and can be accommodated in the study timetable.

P.10

All candidates must complete the Research Methodologies course to the value of 30 credit points to be admitted to the degree.

P.11 ...

P.12

Pharmacy students are required to register with the South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC) in their first year of study. In subsequent years students

will pay an annual fee to remain registered as BPharm students with the SAPC.

In addition, students must ensure they have professional indemnity insurance.

P.13

As part of the BPharm curriculum students must complete a minimum of 400 hours of work-based learning (WBL) during the BPharm degree. This allows pharmacy students practical experience and work integrated learning opportunities within the work environment.

P.14

Students must have completed a Level 3 First Aid course before they commence their internship.

Bachelor of Pharmacy curriculum

Code number	Course Title	Prerequisite (P) or Co-requisite (C)	First semester			Second semester			Total credit points
			L	T	P	L	T	P	
FIRST YEAR									
CEL 101	Cell Biology 101	See Departmental entries in Faculty of Science prospectus for first semester subjects	5		1				15
CHE 101	Chemistry 101		5		1				15
CSC 1L	Introduction to ICT		4	1	1				15
MAT 1S	Mathematics for the Life Sciences		5	1					15
CHE 102	Chemistry 102	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P)				5		1	15
PC 1112	Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P)				5			10
PC 1102	Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1	Cell Biology 101 (CEL 101) (P)				5		1	20
PC 1012	Foundations of Pharmacy					5			15
SECOND YEAR									
PC 250	Anatomy Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology	Cell Biology (CEL 101) (P), Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1 (PC 1102) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

PC 221	Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology	Cell Biology (CEL 101) (P), Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P), Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) (P), Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1 (PC 1112) (P), Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (C)	3			3		0.25	20
PC 222	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P), Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) (P), Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology (PC 221) (C), Pharmaceutics 2 (PC 231) (C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 231	Pharmaceutics 2	Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) (P), Foundations of Pharmacy (PC 1012) (P), Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) (P), Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (C), Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1 (PC 1102) (P), Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathophysiology (PC 250) (C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
PC 241	Pharmacy Practice 2	Foundations of Pharmacy (PC 1012) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	25
THIRD YEAR									
PC 322	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (P) Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (C)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 332	Pharmaceutics 3	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 (PC 222) (P), Pharmaceutics 2 (PC 231) (P), Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathophysiology (PC 250) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 342	Pharmacy Practice 3	Pharmacy Practice 2 (PC 241) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
PC 351	Pharmacology 3	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 (PC 322) (C), Anatomy Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology (PC 250) (P), Pharmaceutical Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology (PC 221) (P)	4		0.5	4		0.5	30
STA 1P1	Statistics for Pharmacy		5	1					15
FOURTH YEAR									
PC 4521	Pharmacology 4	Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (P), Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 (PC 322) (P), Pharmacy Practice 4 (PC 4431) (C)	5		0.5				15
PC 4331	Pharmaceutics 4	Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 (PC 322) (P), Pharmaceutics 3 (PC 332) (P), Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (P)	5		1				15
PC 4431	Pharmacy Practice 4	Pharmacy Practice 3 (PC 342) (P), Pharmacology 3 (PC 351) (P), Pharmacology 4 (PC 4521) (C)	5		1				15

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

	Elective courses in Pharmacy (may include one Elective course in another Faculty)								2 x 15
PC 491	Research Methodologies								30
PC 4012	Pharmacotherapy	Pharmacology 4 (PC 4521) (P), Pharmacy Practice 4 (PC 4431) (P), Pharmaceutics 4 (PC 4331) (P)				7		1	30

**DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE
AND MASTER OF PHARMACY**

See General Rules and entry under Master's Degrees, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Science only

S.1

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Science:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Science	BSc
NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	
Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	BSc(InfSys)
NQF Level 7 (360 credits)	
Bachelor of Science with Honours	BSc(Hons)
NQF Level 8 (120 credits)	
Master of Science (by full thesis)	MSc
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	

May be taken in the following subjects:

Applied Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Biochemistry, Bioinformatics, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Electronics, Entomology, Environmental Biotechnology, Environmental Science, Ergonomics, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics & Ergonomics, Hydrology, Ichthyology & Fisheries Science, Marine Biology, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Water Resource Science, Zoology

Master of Science (by coursework and thesis)	MSc
NQF Level 9 (180 credits)	

May be taken in the following subjects:

Applied Mathematics, Bioinformatics, Computer Science, Economic Geology, Environmental Biotechnology, Exploration Geology, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics

Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
NQF Level 10 (360 credits)	

May be taken in the following subjects:

Applied Mathematics, Applied Statistics, Biochemistry, Bioinformatics, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Entomology, Environmental Biotechnology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics & Ergonomics, Hydrology, Ichthyology & Fisheries Science, Marine Biology, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Water Resource Science, Zoology

Doctor of Science	DSc

This is a Senior Doctorate awarded for a body of work completed after a PhD. See G.77 for additional details.

UNDERGRADUATE DEGREES

S.2

S.2.1 Many undergraduate subjects in the university are now offered as pairs of semester-long courses; some subjects are offered as year-

long courses, and some are offered as single semester-long courses. Passing any of these courses earns NQF credits at specific exit levels and these accrue towards the total credits required for a degree.

S.2.2 In the rules and tables that follow, subjects are denoted sometimes by their full names, and sometimes by mnemonics and numbers (for example, the subject Physics 1 (or PHY 1) is a semesterised year-course that consists of two semester-courses PHY 101 and PHY 102. The first digit of the number denotes the level (academic year) at which the subject is offered, the second digit is either numeric, denoting a course that proceeds to a higher academic level or a letter denoting a service course describing the intended audience with no progression to a higher academic level, and a third digit denoting the semester in which the course is normally offered. A two-digit number denotes a year-long course. For example, MAT 1S1 is a service course offering Mathematics to students primarily registered for courses offered by the Science faculty at the first-year level and in the first semester, while MAT 1F is a service course offered at the first-year level but over the whole year and is offered to students in the Bachelor of Science Extended Studies Programme.

By contrast, MAM 101 is a Mathematics course offered at the first-year level in the first semester that leads onto MAM 102 and then in later years MAM 2, MAT 3 and/or MAP 3.

S.2.3. Candidates should consult the timetable to determine in which semester a course will be offered in any particular year.

S.2.4 Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following Science and non-Science subjects:

Science subjects

The following subjects are offered by departments within the Faculty of Science. Course-specific details can be found in the departmental entries. Normally, some subjects are offered in the first semester (S1), second semester (S2) or are offered throughout the year (Y). Subminimum requirements for supplementary examinations and aggregation of two semester-courses are also provided.

Department of Biochemistry & Microbiology							
Subject code	Mnemonic	Subject name	Semester	NQF level	NQF Credits	Supplementary subminimum	Aggregation subminimum
5004201	BCH 201	Biochemistry 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5004202	BCH 202	Biochemistry 202	S2	6	20		
5004301	BCH 301	Biochemistry 301	S1	7	30		
5004302	BCH 302	Biochemistry 302	S2	7	30		
5601201	MIC 201	Microbiology 201	S1	6	20		
5601202	MIC 202	Microbiology 202	S2	6	20		
5601301	MIC 301	Microbiology 301	S1	7	30		
5601302	MIC 302	Microbiology 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Botany							
5902101	CEL 101	Cell Biology 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
6002102	BOT 102	Botany 102	S2	5	15		
6002201	BOT 201	Botany 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
6002202	BOT 202	Botany 202	S2	6	20		
6002301	BOT 301	Botany 301	S1	7	30		

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

6002302	BOT 302	Botany 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Chemistry							
5001101	CHE 101	Chemistry 101	S1	5	15	40% Theory examination	40% with at least 40% for the theory examination
5001102	CHE 102	Chemistry 102	S2	5	15		
50011R1	CHE 1R1	Chemistry 1R1	S2	5	15	No supplementary examinations offered	
50011R2	CHE 1R2	Chemistry 1R2	S1	5	15		
5001201	CHE 201	Chemistry 201	S2	6	20	40%	40%
5001202	CHE 202	Chemistry 202	S1	6	20		
5001301	CHE 301	Chemistry 301	S1	7	30		
5001302	CHE 302	Chemistry 302	S2	7	30		
Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching & Learning							
51011B0	CSC 1S	Computer Skills for Science	Y	5	15	40%	None
6601100	ISCM 1F	Introduction to Scientific Concepts & Methods	Y	5	30		
Department of Computer Science							
5101101	CSC 1L1	Introduction to ICT	S1	5	15	40%	None
5101112	CSC 112	Problem Solving with Computers	S2	5	15		
51011P3	CSC 101	Computer Science 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
51011P4	CSC 102	Computer Science 102	S2	5	15		
5101201	CSC 201	Computer Science 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5101202	CSC 202	Computer Science 202	S2	6	20		
5101301	CSC 301	Computer Science 301	S2	7	30		
5101302	CSC 302	Computer Science 302	S1	7	30		
Department of Environmental Science							
2602201	ENV 201	Environmental Science 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
2602202	ENV 202	Environmental Science 202	S2	6	20		
2602301	ENV 301	Environmental Science 301	S1	7	30		
2602302	ENV 302	Environmental Science 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Geography							
26011G1	EAR 101	Earth Science 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
2601102	GOG 102	Geography 102	S2	5	15		
2601201	GOG 201	Geography 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
2601202	GOG 202	Geography 202	S2	6	20		

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

2601301	GOG 301	Geography 301	S2	7	30		
2601302	GOG 302	Geography 302	S1	7	30		
Department of Geology							
5201102	GLG 102	Geology 102	S2	5	15	40%	40%
5201201	GLG 201	Geology 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5201202	GLG 202	Geology 202	S2	6	20		
5201301	GLG 301	Geology 301	S2	7	30		
5201302	GLG 302	Geology 302	S1	7	30		
Department of Human Kinetics & Ergonomics							
2207101	HKE 101	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
2207102	HKE 102	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 102	S2	5	15		
2207201	HKE 201	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
2207202	HKE 202	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 202	S2	6	20		
2207301	HKE 301	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 301	S1	7	30		
2207302	HKE 302	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Science							
6201201	ICH 201	Ichthyology 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
6201202	ICH 202	Ichthyology 202	S2	6	20		
6201301	ICH 301	Ichthyology 301	S1	7	30		
6201302	ICH 302	Ichthyology 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Mathematics							
54011T0	TOF 1F	Theory of Finance Foundation	Y	5	15	40%	None
54010Z0	TOF 1C1	Theory of Finance for Commerce	S1	5	15	40%	None
54010IS	MAT 1S1	Mathematics for Science	S1	5	15	40%	None
54011L1	MAT 1F	Mathematics Foundation	Y	5	15	40%	None
540101A	MAM 101	Mathematics 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
540101B	MAM 102	Mathematics 102	S2	5	15		
5401203	MAM 201	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5401204	MAM 202	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 202	S2	6	20		
5401311	MAT 311	Mathematics 311 Algebra	S1	7	18	40%	

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

5401313	MAT 313	Mathematics 311 Real Analysis	S1	7	18		40% but 50% is required for two of the four prescribed subjects for MAT 3 or MAP 3
5401315	MAT 315	Mathematics 315 Topics in Mathematics	S2	7	18		
5401316	MAM 311	Mathematics MAM 311 Complex Analysis	S2	7	18		
5411311	MAP 311	Applied Mathematics 311 Numerical Analysis	S1	7	18		
5411312	MAP 312	Applied Mathematics 312 Dynamical Systems	S2	7	18		
5411314	MAP 314	Applied Mathematics 314 Partial Diff Equations	S1	7	18		
Department of Physics & Electronics							
57011Z1	PHY 1S1	Physics for Science	S1	5	15	40%	None
5701Z2	PHY 1E2	Electronics Literacy	S2	5	15	40%	None
5701101	PHY 101	Physics 101	S1	5	15	40%	40%
5701102	PHY 102	Physics 102	S2	5	15		
5701201	PHY 101	Physics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5701202	PHY 202	Physics 202	S2	6	20		
5701301	PHY 301	Physics 301	S1	7	30		
5701302	PHY 302	Physics 302	S2	7	30		
Department of Statistics							
55041D0	STA 1C2	Statistics for Commerce	S2	5	15	40%	None
7001121	STA 1P1	Statistics for Pharmacy	S1	5	15	40%	None
5504101	STA 1S1	Statistics for Science	S1	5	15	40%	None
5504102	MST 102	Mathematical Statistics 102	S2	5	15	40%	None
5501201	MST 201	Mathematical Statistics 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5501202	MST 202	Mathematical Statistics 202	S2	6	20		
5501311	MST311	Mathematical Statistics 311	S1	7	15		
5501312	MST321	Mathematical Statistics 321	S1	7	15		
5501313	MST312	Mathematical Statistics 312	S2	7	15		
5501314	MST322	Mathematical Statistics 322	S2	7	15		
5506311	AST311	Applied Statistics 311	S1	7	15		
5506312	AST321	Applied Statistics 321	S1	7	15		
5506313	AST312	Applied Statistics 312	S2	7	15		
5506314	AST322	Applied Statistics 322	S2	7	15		
Department of Zoology & Entomology							

5801101	ZOO 102	Zoology 102	S2	5	15	40%	40%
5801201	ZOO 201	Zoology 201	S1	6	20	40%	40%
5801202	ZOO 202	Zoology 202	S2	6	20		
5801301	ZOO 301	Zoology 301	S1	7	30		
5801301	ZOO 302	Zoology 302	S2	7	30		
6101201	ENT 201	Entomology 201	S2	6	20		
6101202	ENT 202	Entomology 202	S1	6	20		
6101301	ENT 201	Entomology 301	S2	7	30		
6101302	ENT 302	Entomology 302	S1	7	30		

Non-science subjects

Non-science subjects comprise all other undergraduate subjects currently offered in the Faculties of Commerce and Humanities and introductory courses in Law.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE

S.3

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they have attended approved courses for at least three years subsequent to their first registration as students.

S.4

S.4.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless either they have met the minimum admission requirements for Bachelor's degree programmes requiring a National Senior Certificate (NSC) or they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have achieved English (Home language or Additional language) at a rating of 5 or above and at least a rating of 4 in Mathematics in the NSC, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, or they have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Extended Studies Programme.

S.4.2 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall not be admitted to any of the full

curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless they have obtained a pass in Life Sciences or Physical Sciences at a rating of 5 or above in the NSC, or equivalent subjects in another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent thereto.

S.5

Notwithstanding any exceptions to Rule S.4 approved by Senate, candidates will not normally be admitted to various courses in Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics or Statistics unless they have achieved a rating of 5 or above in Mathematics in the NSC or have completed Mathematics 1F. It should be noted that these restrictions may apply to some courses that are co-requisites (subjects required to be completed by the end of the degree) to certain major subjects (see Rule S.22.5); ineligibility to register for a co-requisite may thus preclude certain major subjects from being selected for a candidate's degree.

S.6

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.4 may be admitted under the auspices of the Science Extended Studies Programme (see Rules S.39 to S.41).

S.7

Candidates for the BSc degree must obtain not less than 360 NQF credits in various approved subjects with at least 120 credits at the NQF level 7.

S.8

S.8.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit for all the required courses up to the NQF level 7

in at least two subjects to be known as major subjects.

S.8.2 Some major subjects are offered only at the second and third-year level, that is, at the NQF levels 6 and 7, respectively.

S.8.3 A candidate for the degree must have at least one major subject as a Science subject (see S.2).

S.8.4 Candidates may elect to take not more than one non-Science subject as a major subject (see S.2). In this case the only other non-Science subjects permitted are those that are prerequisites (subjects required prior to registration of a subject) or co-requisites for that major. Registration for a non-Science major subject shall be subject to the rules of the Faculty in which the department which offers the subject is placed. In the case of Music at most 150 NQF credits shall be allowed for courses in Music Theory & Analysis, Music Culture & History, and Instrumental Music Studies.

S.8.5 Students electing to take both major subjects from the list of Science subjects may take non-Science subjects, but are limited to those offered within a single non-Science department and to at most 60 NQF credits.

S.8.6 Students electing to major in Management may only do so in a Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) degree as the co-requirements includes more than the permitted number of non-Science subjects for a Bachelor of Science degree.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (INFORMATION SYSTEMS)

This degree is intended for students who wish to become computer specialists in a commercial or technical environment, and comprises courses offered by departments in the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

S.9

Except as provided in Rules G.39 to G.41, candidates shall not be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless they have attended approved courses for at least three years subsequent to their first registration.

S.10

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the full curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless either they have met the minimum admission requirements for Bachelor's degree programmes requiring a National Senior Certificate (NSC), or have a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have achieved English (Home language or additional language) at a rating of 5 or above, a rating of 5 or above for Physical Science, and at least a rating of 6 in Mathematics on the NSC, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent.

S.11

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.10 may be admitted under the auspices of the Science Extended Studies Programme (see Rules S.39 to S.41).

S.12

S.12.1 A candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) must obtain at least 360 NQF credits in courses as set out in the following curriculum:

First and second years

1. Computer Science (CSC 1 and CSC 2)
2. Information Systems (INF 2)
3. Economics (ECO 1) OR Management (MAN 1) but see S.12.3
4. Accounting (ACC 1)
5. Statistics (STA 1S1 or STA 1C2, or MST 102 as a prerequisite for MST 2)
6. Mathematics (MAT 1S1 or MAM 101, or MAM 1 as a prerequisite for MST 2)
7. Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2)

8. Business problem solving with computers (CSC 112) (must be taken in the first year as it is the prerequisite for Information Systems)

9. Two further semester-courses in Management or Economics or Mathematics or Statistics or Mathematical Statistics or some other Science subject approved by the Dean.

Third year

1. Computer Science 3

2. One of the following: Accounting 3, Applied Mathematics 3, Applied Statistics 3, Economics 3, Information Systems 3, Management 3, Mathematical Statistics 3, Mathematics 3.

S.12.2 Candidates will be advised at registration as to how the first two years of these degrees are to be structured, taking into account timetable constraints and their previous performance or experience in Computer Studies and Mathematics. Normally candidates will be required to register for Computer Science, Accounting, Economics, Management, MAM 101 and CSC 112.

S.12.3 Candidates for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) who fail CSC 2 in their second year at Rhodes will be required to change registration to a degree in the Faculty of Commerce.

S.12.4. Candidates who wish to move from the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) to the degree of Bachelor of Science and wish to major in both Computer Science and Information Systems will be permitted an additional 60 NQF credits obtained for Accounting, Management or Economics from their Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) degree.

Rules common to the BSc and BSc(InfSys) degrees

S.13

If a candidate for the BSc and BSc(InfSys) degree selects *more* than the minimum number of courses required for a degree, the additional courses may be in any of the subjects offered in the faculties of Science, Commerce and Humanities and introductory courses in Law.

S.14

S.14.1 At the start of the year students will normally register for both components of each semesterised subject, unless they make it clear that they intend on obtaining credit for only one of the semester-courses, or to complete an outstanding component of a semesterised subject.

S.14.2 Students will be allowed to register for semester-courses held in the second semester in subjects for which they have not previously been registered (provided that they have met the prerequisite requirements for such courses). Such registrations will be at the discretion of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of the Department concerned.

S.14.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Science shall be the end of the second full week of the semester in which the course begins.

S.14.4 Candidates who fail to perform adequately in the first semester component of a semesterised subject may have their registrations for the second semester component of that subject cancelled at the discretion of the Head of Department. This decision may sometimes be reversed, on appeal through the Head of Department to the Dean of the Faculty.

S.14.5 Candidates are strongly advised to include at least six second-year level semester-courses in their curricula. If candidates include only four second-year level semester-courses, they will be required to include three first-year level semester courses in order to ensure the correct number of NQF credits for the degree.

S.15

S.15.1 In all those subjects offered at a given NQF level as a pair of semester-courses, if both semester-courses are not passed outright, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair may be deemed equivalent to credit in a year-long aggregate course for that subject, as the Department may allow. See Rule S.16.2.

S.15.2 Students who do not obtain credit for both components, but who meet the requirements for an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing course (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing course (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

S.15.3 Candidates cannot obtain credit for an aggregated course in addition to credit for one of its semesterised components.

S.16

S.16.1 Credit for any course normally requires that a student score an overall mark of at least 50%. At the discretion of the Board, non-continuing credit may occasionally be awarded for an overall mark of at least 48%.

S.16.2 Credit for an aggregated course of a semesterised subject requires that a student has met any adequate performance sub-minima imposed for each constituent.

S.16.3 Subjects for which aggregated credit may be granted are shown in the table that accompanies Rule S.22.

S.16.4 If an aggregated pass is not achieved, credit for any constituent semester-course passed can still be earned towards the degree as a whole.

S.16.5.3 Aggregation of first-semester and second-semester courses is only normally possible with sequential academic semesters.

S.16.6 Aggregate year-courses may be obtained only for two semester-courses comprising a single subject, with the following exceptions:

<i>Aggregated year course</i>	<i>Comprising of a semester-course in each of</i>
Botany 1	Cell Biology (CEL 101) and Botany (BOT 102)
Geography 1	Earth Science (EAR 101) and Geography (GOG 102)
Geology 1	Earth Science (EAR 101) and Geology (GLG 102)
Zoology 1	Cell Biology (CEL 101) and Zoology (ZOO 102)

Note: Aggregated year-courses may not be earned for both Geography 1 and Geology 1; at most three

semester-courses may be earned for EAR 101, GOG 102, GLG 102. Similarly, aggregated year-courses may not be earned for both Botany 1 and Zoology 1; credit for at most three semester-courses may be earned for CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 102.

S.17

For the purposes of Rule G.7 as it applies to the Faculty of Science, students may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed:

S.17.1 by the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this university or any other university to have obtained at least 60 NQF credits, which is equivalent to two year-courses or four semester-courses or an equivalent combination thereof; or

S.17.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained at least 120 NQF credits, which is equivalent to four year-courses or eight semester-courses or an equivalent combination thereof, and are prerequisite courses for at least two NQF level 6 courses; or

S.17.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained at least 180 NQF credits, which is equivalent to six year-courses or twelve semester-credits or a combination thereof of which at least 60 credits of which should be at least NQF level 6; or

S.17.4 at the end of every calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses for which they were registered with the Dean's approval; or

S.17.5 to have completed the undergraduate degree within a period of five years; or

S.17.6 (for students enrolled on the Science Extended Studies Programme) by the end of the first year of study to have passed all courses offered as part of the programme and to have achieved an average of 60% in the Extended Studies Programme courses (CSC 1S, MAT 1F, ISCM 1F)

read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

S.18

S.18.1 A candidate is not permitted to obtain certain overlapping combinations of subjects. The table below lists, for each of certain subjects and courses, those other courses for which credit will not also be given:

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Credit may not be obtained in more than one of:</i>
Accounting	ACC 1; ACC 1F/ACC 1G
Computer Science	CSC 101; CSC 1L1
Computer Science	CSC 1L1; CSC 1I2
Computer Science	CSC 1S; CSC 1L1
Statistics	STA 1S1; STA 1C2; STA 1P1
Mathematical Statistics	MST 3; AST 3
Physics	PHY 101; PHY 1E1
Psychology	ORG 2; PSY 2
Psychology	ORG 3; PSY 3
Maths	MAT 1S1; MAM 101
Maths	MAT 1S1; MAT 1F

S.19

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained at least 90 NQF credits at the NQF level 5 as specified in Rule S.2 or S.13; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study when they have obtained at least 150 NQF credits (120 at NQF level 5 and at least 30 at NQF level 6 as to continue with the subject into third year), otherwise they shall be in their second year of study.

S.20

S.20.1 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than the equivalent of eight semester-courses in the first year of study for a BSc, and in not more than the equivalent of ten semester-courses in the first year of study for a BSc(InfSys); provided that the Senate may permit candidates for a BSc to present themselves for examination in two additional semester-courses approved by the Senate.

S.20.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than the equivalent of eight semester-courses in their second year of study and not more than the equivalent of six semester-courses in their final year of study; provided that candidates in their final year of study may be permitted by Senate to present themselves at supplementary examinations for which they are eligible under Rule G.37, so as to obtain credit for two additional semester-courses in subjects in which they have previously failed.

S.21

S.21.1 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates may not enter the second year of any subject unless they have obtained credit for first-year level courses equivalent to 90 NQF credits, and may not enter the third year of any subject until they have obtained credit for courses equivalent to 150 NQF credits.

S.21.2 Notwithstanding Rule S.22.1, candidates may not register for second year courses in the second semester if they have not previously been registered as second year students in the first semester.

S.22

S.22.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses.

S.22.2 There may be prerequisite required course(s) that must be obtained before a candidate may register for a particular course. Similarly, a co-requisite is a required course that must be obtained before a candidate may be awarded the degree.

S.22.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher-level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this regard should be made to the Dean of the Faculty at registration.

S.22.4 A candidate who has passed the final course of a major subject, but has failed in a prescribed co-requisite, may rewrite the examination in that

course without being required to rewrite the examination in the related major subject.

S.22.5 The accompanying table summarises for each major Science subject and includes those

constituent prerequisite(s) and co-requisite(s) courses required for the subject.

Major subject

Courses needed in each of

Applied Mathematics

MAM 1; MAM 2; MAP 3

Applied Statistics

MAM 1; MST 102; MST 2; AST 3

Biochemistry

CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3

Botany

CEL 101; BOT 102; ZOO 102; CHE 1; BOT 2; BOT 3

Chemistry

CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; 1 semester course in first year mathematics and one semester from first year CSC, MAM, MST, PHY or STA
CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3, one of first year MAM 101 or MAM1 or MST102

Computer Science

CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1; ENT 2; ENT 3

Entomology

GOG 1; 1 of BOT 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1, ECO 1, ANT 1; ENV 2; ENV 3

Environmental Science

EAR 101; GOG 102; GOG 2; GOG 3

Geography

EAR 101; GLG 102; GLG 2; GLG 3; CHE 101 and one from CHE 102, first year physics or first year MAT or MAM

Geology

HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3

Human Kinetics & Ergonomics

CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1; ICH 2; ICH 3

Ichthyology

MAM 1; MAM 2; MAT 3

Mathematics

MAM 1; MST 102; MST 2; MST 3

Mathematical Statistics

CEL 101; CHE 1; MIC 2; MIC 3

Microbiology

PHY 1; MAM 1; MAM 2; PHY 2; PHY 3

Physics & Electronics

CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1; ZOO 2; ZOO 3

Zoology

S.23

S.23.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses, and may not obtain credit for any subjects until they have obtained credit in all prescribed ancillary courses for such subjects.

S.23.2 There may be prerequisite (ancillary) requirements that must be met before a candidate may register for a particular course, and similar requirements that must be met before a candidate may obtain credit for a given course. Credit requirements will usually be stricter than registration requirements, which might stipulate “adequate performance” in an ancillary subject (or

even at a lower level in the same subject) rather than “credit”.

S.23.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher-level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this regard should be made to the Dean of the Faculty at Registration.

S.23.4 S.23.5 The accompanying tables summarise, for each major subject, those constituent credits and ancillary subjects in which credit must be obtained, and, for specific constituents, the prerequisite credits needed for registration.

The following notes apply to the courses marked with the appropriate superior numbers in the tables

below. For further details, candidates should consult the departmental entries elsewhere in the Calendar.

1. *Permission may be given to register for this course concurrently with the course for which it is a required ancillary; however, it is expected that students will attempt the course in their first year.*
2. *A candidate who has passed Organisational Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3, but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Organisational Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.*
3. *MAT 1S1 has replaced MAT 1P which was taught in 2012 and earlier.*
4. *MAT 1S1 and MAT 1F are equivalent single-semester credit courses. The difference is that MAT 1F is an extended course that is taught over two semesters and MAT 1S1 is taught over one.*

S.24

S.24.1 Students who have failed a course but who have reached the necessary subminimum of 40% (see S.2), which corresponds to a final course mark of between 40 and 49%, may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be admitted to supplementary examinations.

S.24.2

S.24.3 A candidate who sits a supplementary examination shall have the higher mark and classification earned in the two examinations recorded for that semester course, and any computation of an aggregate course mark shall be based on the higher marks earned for the constituent examinations.

S.25

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with a Class 1 (at least 75%) in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. For the purpose of this rule, the final mark in a major subject shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of the semester-course components.

POSTGRADUATE DEGREES

Degree of Bachelor of Science with Honours

S26

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for an honours degree unless they have been awarded the ordinary degree, or have been admitted to the status thereof; or have completed all the requirements therefore, except the requirements regarding attendance. Attention is drawn to the provisions of Rule G.49 of the General Rules.

S.27

S.27.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally, candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year of the subject in which they wish to take honours.

S.27.2 The continued registration of honours candidates beyond the first semester may be dependent on a satisfactory review of their progress.

S.28

A candidate who has satisfied the requirements of Rule S.27 by completing an ordinary degree in a faculty other than Science may, with the approval of Senate, be admitted to the status of BSc, and allowed to study for the degree of BSc(Hons).

S.29

S.29.1 A candidate shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the requirements of Rule S.26, and pursue a course of

advanced study in a subject approved by the Senate.

S.29.2 A non-Science subject (as defined in Rule S.2) may also be offered for the honours degree; except that a candidate for an honours degree in such a subject may be required to obtain permission to transfer registration to the Faculty in which the subject is normally offered, and to proceed to an honours degree in that Faculty, depending on the combination of papers to be offered.

S.30

S.30.1 The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study.

S.30.2 Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit candidates to take honours courses over two years as full-time or as part-time students; provided that they attend the honours classes (including practicals) within the normal timetable of the Department, and that the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, no more than two years.

S.30.3 Students who originally register to take the honours degree over two years may, if progress is satisfactory, be allowed to change registration to complete the degree in the first year as full-time students. Full-time students who originally register to take the degree over one year may be advised by the Head of Department to take the degree over two years, or may opt to change registration to part-time. Any such changes must be effected no later than the end of the second week of the second semester.

S.30.4 Full-time candidates may withdraw from an Honours course during the second semester, but may not alter their registrations otherwise. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, candidates who withdraw may be permitted to register for the course in the following year, but will be required to complete all requirements for examination (including practical and project work) as though they had not previously been registered.

S.30.5 Any project work that forms part of the examinable material of an Honours degree must be

completed and submitted before the final examinations are written.

S.31

A candidate may not take up any full-time employment while engaged in the course. However, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, with the approval of Senate, part-time employment is permitted.

S.32

An honours candidate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend concurrently and write the examination of two undergraduate semester-courses in the same or another department.

S.33

S.33.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, or as provided in Rule S.33.2, the subject of an honours degree shall be one which the candidate has completed as a major subject for the ordinary degree.

S.33.2 Candidates for Honours degrees in some subjects not offered as major subjects in the ordinary degree shall normally have credit in cognate major subjects as provided as follows:

S.34

Candidates may, with the approval of the Senate, present themselves for examination in more than one subject; provided that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination. If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

S.35

Candidates who fail an honours examination paper may be permitted by the Senate to re-present themselves, at most once, for that examination paper, and for this purpose they shall be required to re-attend the course prior to such re-examination.

S.36

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must write all parts of the examination at one time, and shall not be exempted from any part of such examination; provided that students who are required to take the degree over two years may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study, and part at the end of the second year of study.

Degrees of Master of Science, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Science

See General Rules and individual departmental entries.

S.37

The continued registration of MSc and PhD students (and, in particular, past the first year) is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

S.38

Applications to upgrade from MSc to PhD registration must be made on the official form and must normally be submitted within the first 18 months of registration.

The Science Extended Studies Programme

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Science to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Science (Information Systems), or are identified as requiring additional support in certain key subject areas. The Science Extended Studies Programme extends over a year, during which specially

designed courses are offered, which earn credit towards a full degree.

S.39

S.39.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme unless they are in possession of a National Senior Certificate or a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom.

S.39.2 Candidates are normally expected to have achieved at least a level 4 in Mathematics in the NSC, and to have achieved at least a level 4 in either Biology or Physical Science at the NSC.

S.40

S.40.1 A student admitted to the full Science Extended Studies Programme will register for a first-year curriculum that will earn 60 NQF credits if completed: Computer Skills for Science 1S (CSC 1S), Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods (ISCM 1F), Mathematics 1F (MAT 1F).

S.40.2 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme is required to obtain ISCM 1F, CSC 1S and/or MAT 1F before later being admitted to other full courses.

S.40.3 A student admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme is expected to obtain at least 360 NQF credits before being awarded a BSc degree.

S.40.4 Attention is drawn to Rule S.17 and Rule S.22.

S.41

A candidate admitted to the Science Extended Studies Programme may be permitted by the Dean to change registration to a regular curriculum during the first two weeks of the academic year.

ACCOUNTING

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

EB Horn, BCom (Stell), BCompt (Hons)
(UNISA), MCom (Taxation) (Rhodes), CA(SA)

KPMG/CU Peat Memorial Professor of Accounting

EM Stack, MCom (Taxation), DCompt (UNISA)

Associate Professor

KW Maree, MCom (Rhodes), CA(SA)

Senior Lecturers

L Khomo, PGDip (Acc Sc) (UNISA), CA(SA)

S Mabaso, HDipAcc (Wits), MCom (Taxation)
(Rhodes), BTh (TEEC), BTh Honours (Old
Testament) (UNISA), CA(SA)

E Mason, BCom (Rhodes), BCom (Hons)
(UNISA), CA(SA), CGMA, ACMA

A Mgidlana, BCom (NMU), ADA (UFH), PGDA
(UFH), BCom (Hons) (Taxation) (UFH), CA(SA)
H Mrubata-Mhlebi, PGDA (UCT), CA(SA)

W Ndou, BCom, PGDip (Acc), MCom(Taxation)
(Rhodes), CA(SA)

A Ntshongwana, PGDA (UWC), CA(SA)

B Ntusikazi, BAccSc (UP), PGDA (UNISA),
CA(SA)

R Poole, MCom (Taxation) (Rhodes), CTA(SA)

S Pretorius, PGDip (Acc) (Rhodes), MCom
(UCT), CA(SA)

T Tekolo, BCom (Hons) (NWU), CA(SA)

D Waters, PGDip (Acc) (Rhodes), CA(SA)

Lecturer

MR Hockley, BCompt (Hons) (UNISA)

The following subjects and courses may be studied for degree and higher diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Accounting are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Humanities (in Social Science).

BACHELOR'S DEGREE COURSES

Accounting 1 consists of two one-semester courses ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ACC 1, provided that the courses constituting

Accounting 1 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12). Credit in ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 aggregated at the required level is a pre-requisite for admission to ACC 2.

Accounting 1F (ACC 1F) consists of ACC 101 taken over a full year and Accounting 1G (ACC 1G) consists of ACC 102 taken over a full year. Only students who have credit in ACC 1F may register for ACC 1G. Credit in ACC 1F and ACC 1G is equivalent to credit in ACC 1.

ACC 102 has a greater focus in company accounting than ACC 112.

A candidate who fails ACC 101 shall be permitted to proceed to ACC 102 or ACC 112 provided the required sub-minimum in ACC 101 has been obtained. A pass in either ACC 102 or ACC 112 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass ACC 101 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

First-year courses

Accounting 101 (ACC 101)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: The accounting cycle; presentation and disclosure of financial statements; adjustments; accounting for receivables and payables; inventories; cash and cash equivalents.

DP requirements: Attend 80% of all lectures; attend 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all assignments; write both formal tests and the examination; obtain a mark of at least 35% in each of the two formal tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and the examination counts 60%.

Supplementary examination: 35-49%

Accounting 102 (ACC 102)

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: sub-minimum of 35% in ACC 101

Course description: Accounting for non-current assets; partnerships; companies; statements of cash flow.

DP requirements: Attend 80% of all lectures; attend 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all assignments; write both formal tests and the examination; obtain a mark of at least 35% in each of the two formal tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and the examination counts 60%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Accounting 112 (ACC 112)

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: sub-minimum of 35% in ACC 101

Course description: Accounting for non-current assets; partnerships; companies; statements of cash flow.

DP requirements: Attend 80% of all lectures; attend 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all assignments; write both formal tests and the examination; obtain a mark of at least 35% in each of the two formal tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40% and the examination counts 60%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Accounting 1F (ACC 1F)

This course consists of ACC101 taken over a full academic year.

Accounting 1G (ACC 1G)

This course consists of ACC102 taken over a full academic year, but may only be taken by students who have passed Accounting 1F.

Second-year courses**Principles of Professional Accountancy (ACC 2PA)**

Second-year, full-year course (NQF Level 6, 30 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 aggregated at the required level

Course description: Fundamental Principles of: Management Accounting, Corporate Finance, Taxation, Governance & Risk Management, and Business Ethics.

DP requirements: Write all tests and the June examination; attend all tutorials and submit all tutorial hand-ins by the due date; attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend all compulsory supplementary instruction and alternative support sessions; complete and submit all compulsory assignments and quizzes by the due date; achieve an average of at least 35% for all first semester assessments, including the June exam; achieve 35% minimum overall course mark for the year excluding the November examination.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 50%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Accounting 2 (ACC 2)

Second-year, full-year course (NQF Level 6, 30 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 aggregated at the required level

Course description: Intermediate financial accounting, including individual company financial statements and tax; introduction to management accounting and specialised financial accounting topics.

DP requirements: Write all tests and the June examination; attend all compulsory tutorials; attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend all compulsory supplementary instruction and alternative support sessions; complete and submit all compulsory assignments and quizzes (if any) by the due date; achieve 35% minimum mark for test 1, test 2 and June exam; achieve 40% minimum mark for test 3, test 4 and overall course mark for the year excluding the November examination; achieve 40% minimum overall mark for assignments and quizzes (if any).

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 50%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Third-year courses

Accounting 3 (ACC 3)

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 60 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ACC 2

Course description: Presentation of financial statements including the effects of accounting policies, estimates and errors together with selected IFRS Accounting Standards including, but not exclusively, Group Accounting, Revenue, Leases and Financial instruments together with the effects of related income taxes.

DP requirements: Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 50%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Auditing 3 (AUD 3)

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 45 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ACC 2 and ACC 2PA

Course description: Nature, definition and objective of an audit. The auditor: qualities, qualifications, duties and responsibilities. The South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA) Code of Professional Conduct. The Companies Act and the Auditing Profession Act. The King Code of Corporate Governance. The audit process. Internal controls. Compliance and substantive auditing of the major business cycles. Completing the audit. Audit reports. Computer auditing.

DP requirements: Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 50%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management Accounting and Finance 3 (MAF 3)

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 45 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ACC 2, ACC 2PA, TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

Course description: Cost terms, concepts and techniques for inventory valuation; tools and techniques for planning, control and performance management including budgeting, standard costing and financial statement analysis, techniques to assist decision-making such as relevant costs and revenues; concepts, terms and techniques used to assist with maximizing value of stakeholders with the three financial management decisions, namely investment decisions, financing decision and dividend decisions.

DP requirements: Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 50%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Taxation 3 (TAX 3)

Third-year, full-year course (NQF Level 7, 45 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ACC 2 and ACC 2PA

Course description: Principles of income tax. Theoretical and practical application of the Income Tax Act, the Value-Added Tax Act, the Tax Administration Act and other relevant tax Acts to financial and commercial transactions. Anti-avoidance provisions in tax-related matters.

DP requirements: Write all tests, exams, attend tutorials and participate in continuous assessments, and integrated assignment; achieve 35% minimum year-to-date mark after June exams.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% (inclusive of the June examination) and the November examination counts 50%.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

POSTGRADUATE STUDIES IN ACCOUNTING

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

Accounting 4

Advanced financial accounting (including advanced group accounting) with specific emphasis on International Financial Reporting Standards published by the International Accounting Standards Board. The Accounting 4 curriculum includes advanced work on all topics covered in Accounting 3.

Auditing 4

The topics included in the first course with more emphasis on analysis and application, together with issues of a topical and important nature.

Management Accounting and Finance 4

Management accounting and finance at a post graduate level requires a student to apply critical thinking, in an integrated manner to the various topics covered. The aim of course is to equip students to prepare, analyse and interpret information to be used by management for planning, control and decision making.

Taxation 4

Advanced application of the Income Tax Act, Value-Added Tax Act, Estate Duty Act, Tax Administration Act and other relevant Acts, court decisions, SARS rulings and Interpretation Notes to financial and commercial transactions.

Accounting Honours course

- Paper 1 Accounting 4
- Paper 2 Management Accounting and Finance 4
- Paper 3 Auditing 4
- Paper 4 Taxation 4
- Paper 5 A research essay on a topic approved by the Head of the Department
- Paper 6 Introduction to Research Methodology and Design.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

The programme comprises modules on advanced aspects of taxation, each module assessed by a written assignment; the Taxation 4 paper (see

above); an introductory module on research methodology and design; a research essay on an approved topic and a summative examination on the coursework component.

Master's Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)

The programme comprises a coursework component assessed by written assignments, two coursework examinations and a mini thesis. The requirement for admission is an Honours degree or the equivalent of a Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy with a CA(SA) qualification, with a good academic record.

Master's Degree in Financial Accounting, Auditing, Management Accounting & Finance or Taxation

Full thesis, addressing a research question approved by the Head of Department and the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Commerce.

Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Financial Accounting, Auditing, Management Accounting & Finance or Taxation

Full thesis, addressing a research question approved by the Head of Department and the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Commerce. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year.

ENTRY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE POSTGRADUATE PROGRAMMES

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

Normally an average of a minimum of 58% across all 4 subjects, with a sub-minimum of 55% in each of Accounting 3, Auditing 3, Management Accounting and Finance 3 and Taxation 3 with the examinations for all four subjects written in a

single examination session in the academic year immediately preceding the year of registration for PDipAcc. Supplementary/re-examination results will not be considered in reviewing the application.

Accounting Honours Course

As for the PDipAcc, with a minimum mark of 60% in each of the four third-year subjects.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

Bachelor of Commerce with an undergraduate exit-level credit in Taxation with a minimum of 65%.

ANTHROPOLOGY

Head of Department and Senior Lecturer

P Taruvinga, BA, MA (UZ), PhD (UCT)
Professor

S Aswani, BA (Miami), MA, PhD (Hawaii)

Associate Professor

ML Cocks BSocSc, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc
(Rhodes), PhD (Wageningen)

Senior Lecturers

GG Darong, BA (St Joseph's Theological
Institute), BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc, PhD (UKZN),
PGDip (HE) (Rhodes)

D Santos, BA (Hons), MRes, PhD (Goldsmiths,
London)

Lecturers

MAC Dlamini, BSocSc, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc,
PhD (UKZN)

M Pitso, BA, BSc (Hons), MA, PGCHE (UP)

Professors Emeriti

CJ De Wet, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Stell), PGDip
(Social Anthropology) (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes)

RCG Palmer, BA (Hons) (Durham), MA, DPhil
(Sussex)

Research Associates

PS Bernard, PhD (Rhodes)

VA Masterson, PhD (Stockholm)

PC Henderson, PhD (UCT)

Anthropology is a three-year major subject, which may be studied for degree curricula in the faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. One or two courses in Anthropology are allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculty of Law.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Anthropology 101 (ANT 101)

Introduction to Anthropology 1

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: The course provides insight into the four subfields of the discipline (Archeology, Biological, Linguistics, and Socio-cultural), its origins, development, and its place in contemporary society. It introduces students to the history of the discipline and its methods as a social science that studies human societies in all of their complexity and diversity. This is done through critical engagement with the emergence of the

discipline and fieldwork experiences. Semester 1 focuses on Biological Anthropology and Archeology.

DP requirements: 80% attendance of tutorials and 40% pass of coursework.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Anthropology 102 (ANT 102)

Introduction to Anthropology 2

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 50% or Above in ANT101

Course description: The course provides insight into the four subfields of the discipline (Archaeology, Biological, Linguistics, and Socio-cultural), its origins, development, and its place in contemporary society. It introduces students to the history of the discipline and its methods as a social science that studies human societies in all of their complexity and diversity. This is done through critical engagement with the emergence of the discipline and fieldwork experiences. Semester 2 focuses on Linguistic and Social Cultural Anthropology.

DP requirements: 80% of tutorials and 40% pass of coursework.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Anthropology 2 (ANT 2)

Anthropological Perspectives

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Anthropology 101 and 102

Course description: The concerns of Anthropology are explained in greater theoretical, analytical and methodological depth, with a focus on specialist regional, ethnographic and thematic topics. These may include the following depending on the expertise of available staff:

- Theory Through Ethnography
- Anthropology of Youth and Childhood
- Heritage, Sustainability and Development
- Theoretical Approaches to Human Origins
- Anthropology in/of Africa

- Oceania: Pacific Island Anthropology

DP requirements: 80% attendance of tutorials, and 40% pass of coursework.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

Anthropology 3 (ANT 3)

Anthropology: Applied and Research

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: Anthropology 2

Course description: The anthropological theories and concepts that have been introduced during the first two years of study are further advanced through discussion of thematic case studies and a mini-research project.

The thematic case/area studies expose students to diverse ethnographic perspectives. These may include the following depending on the expertise of available staff

- Medical Anthropology
- Ecological Anthropology
- Maritime Anthropology
- Applied Anthropology
- Indigenous Knowledge Systems
- Music as Communication and Social Practice
- Anthropology of Play
- Post Human Perspectives
- Contemporary Theory in Practice
- Heritage, Sustainability and Development
- Forensic Anthropology/Archaeology

DP requirements: 80% attendance of lectures and 40% pass of coursework module.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40%

Examination

Supplementary exam: Semester mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Postgraduate Diploma in Heritage Management [PGDip (HM)]

Full-year course/Part-Time offered over two years using block release approach

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: Any undergraduate degree. Admission to the course is also possible via the Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) option.

Course description: The course introduces heritage theory and practice, while critically considering local, regional and international dialogues on heritage management. The diploma analyses definitions of heritage and considers innovative approaches to heritage management through the following modules:

- Module 1: Key Principles of Heritage and Heritage Management Theory: 2 assignments (20%)
- Module 2: Heritage in Focus: 2 assignments (20%)
- Module 3: Heritage in Practice (Institutional placements (13%) and
- Research project (47%).

Students are required to take up internship placements or workplace reflections at heritage institutions, as well as develop a thesis (15000-20000 words) on a selected topic.

DP requirements: 80% attendance of lectures 40% pass of coursework.

Candidates must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% to qualify for the award of the Diploma.

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: Completed undergraduate degree with Anthropology 3 or a cognate discipline as a major, with a minimum of second-class pass (60%). Students from cognate disciplines will be required to take courses in Introduction to Anthropology and Anthropological Methods, which may either be non-credit (no assessments required) or for credit (full assessments required).

Course description: The Honours program consists of taught modules and a research dissertation. The modules offered may vary depending on availability of staff. Students will select courses from a range of offerings which may include the following, depending on staff availability.

- Bio-cultural Diversity Studies
- Transcultural Approaches to Wellness and Wellbeing
- Politics of Performance

- Anthropology of Gender and Sexuality
- Maritime Anthropology
- Biological Anthropology
- Heritage in Focus
- Heritage in Theory and Practice
- Applied Medical Anthropology: Disability Studies
- Applied Medical Anthropology: HIV and Communicable Diseases
- African Feminist Anthropology
- Forensic Anthropology/Archaeology
- Heritage and Sustainable Development

A research thesis of 15000-20000 words, incorporating original fieldwork on a topic chosen by the candidate and approved by the Departmental Research Committee and the Rhodes University Ethics Committee.

DP requirements: 80% attendance of lectures, 40% pass of coursework. Students must receive a minimum of 50% for their research dissertation to be awarded the degree.

Joint Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: Completed undergraduate degree with Anthropology 3 or a cognate discipline as a major, with a minimum of a second-class pass (60%).

Course description: Combining Anthropology with another subject is encouraged to foster interdisciplinary interaction across faculties. If hosted by Anthropology, requirements are completing course modules and a research thesis, which can be interdisciplinary.

DP requirements: 80% attendance of lectures and 40% pass of coursework.

If hosted by Anthropology, students must receive a

minimum of 50% for their research dissertation to be awarded the degree.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: Completed Honours degree in Anthropology or a cognate discipline, with a minimum result of 60%. Approval of preliminary research proposal. Students from cognate disciplines will be required to take courses in Introduction to Anthropology and Anthropological Methods, which may either be non-credit (no assessments required) or for credit (full assessments required).

Course description: A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within any anthropological field.

A research thesis of 35000-50000 words, incorporating original fieldwork on a proposal submitted by the candidate and approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee and Rhodes University Ethics Committee.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: Completed Master's degree in Anthropology or a cognate discipline.

Course description: A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within any anthropological field.

A research thesis of 80000-100000 words, incorporating original fieldwork on a proposal submitted by the candidate and approved by the Higher Degrees Committee and Rhodes University Ethics Committee.

BIOCHEMISTRY, MICROBIOLOGY AND BIOINFORMATICS

Associate Professor and Head of Department

J de la Mare, BSc , BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes), MRSSAf

Associate Professor and Head of Biochemistry

BS Wilhelm, BSc , BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), B.Tech:Ed (TWR), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer, and Head of Microbiology

SE Ledwaba, BSc (UL), MSc, PhD (UNIVEN)

Professor, Bioinformatics and Head of

Bioinformatics

O Tastan Bishop, BSc (Bogazici), MSc (Bogazici), PhD (Max Planck)

Professor, Microbiology

J Dames, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UKZN), MSc, PhD (Wits)

Professor, Microbiology

RA Dorrington, BSc Agric (Stell), BSc (Hons), MSc , PhD (UCT)

Professor, Biochemistry and SARChI Chair in Molecular and Cellular Biology of the Eukaryotic Stress Response

AL Edkins, BSc , BSc (Hons) , MSc (Rhodes), MSc Forensic Sci (King's College London), MRes, PhD (Glasgow), FAAS, FCCSI, FRSSAf

Professor, Biochemistry

BI Pletschke, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (NMU), PG Dip (HE) (Rhodes), FAAS, MRSSAf

Associate Professor, Biochemistry

H Hoppe, BSc (UJ), BSc (Med) (Hons) (UCT), PhD (UP)

Associate Professor, Microbiology

C Knox, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Wits)

Lecturer, Bioinformatics

O Sheik Armamuddy, BSc (Hons) (Mauritius), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

CG Whiteley, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Natal), MRSC, CChem

Visiting Professors

GL Blatch, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UKZN), PhD (UCT), FRSSAf

SG Burton BSc (Hons) (Rhodesia), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

DM Lang, BSc, PhD (Konstanz)

KL McPhail, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

RE Sipler, BSc (UMD), PhD (Rutgers)

A Whitehouse, BSc (Sheffield), PhD (Oxon)

TG Bornman BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (NMU)

M Upton BSc, PhD (Newcastle Upon Tyne)

Research Associates

GF Matcher BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

TM Musyoka BSc (Kenyatta), MSc (Nakasaka), PhD (Rhodes), PGDip (R&D Pharm Prod) (Nagasaki)

S Parker-Nance, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (NMU), PhD (Rhodes)

Professional Associates

G Hawley-McMaster, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

M Brooks, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

The Department offers courses in Biochemistry, Microbiology and Bioinformatics.

See the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/bm/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

BIOCHEMISTRY

Biochemistry (BCH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Biochemistry, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: CHE 1, BCH 2, BCH 3: See Rule S.23. In addition, students wishing to major in Biochemistry are encouraged to obtain CEL 101, MIC 202. Students who aim to major in Biochemistry and progress to postgraduate studies in Bioinformatics are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Microbiology, Computer Science, Chemistry or Mathematics.

Second-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two second-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 201 is held in the first semester and BCH 202 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BCH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BCH 201 or BCH 202. A sub-minimum of 40% in BCH 201 is required before a student may register for BCH 202. In addition, MIC 202 is strongly encouraged for students wishing to major in Biochemistry.

DP requirements per semester course: a class record of at least 40%, attendance of at least 80% of lectures, all practical sessions and submission of all assignments. A Leave of Absence (LOA) will usually only be granted for one practical and one test per semester, unless there are exceptional circumstances, and assessments and assignments will be rescheduled wherever possible.

BCH 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 1

Course description: Aqueous biochemistry & buffers, building blocks in biochemistry: amino acids & proteins, nucleotides DNA & RNA, carbohydrates, lipids & membranes; scientific writing; metabolism; membrane transporters.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Examinations 40%

Supplementary exams: 40-49%.

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with BCH 202. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for BCH201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

BCH 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 1, sub-minimum of 40% for BCH201

Course description: Biochemical techniques: This course is taught in the context of protein purification and analysis and includes: protein purification strategies; cell disruption and centrifugation; chromatography; spectroscopy; electrophoresis; and immunological techniques.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Examinations 40%

Supplementary exams: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with BCH 201. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for BCH202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Third-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two third-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 301 is usually held in the first semester and BCH 302 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately, and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BCH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Biochemistry 2 (BCH 2) is required before a student may register for BCH 301 or BCH 302. In addition, MIC 202 is strongly encouraged for students wishing to major in Biochemistry.

DP requirements for each semester course: a class record of at least 40%, attendance of 80% of lectures, all practical sessions and submission of all assignments. A Leave of Absence (LOA) will usually only be granted for one practical and one test per semester, unless there are exceptional circumstances, and assessments and assignments will be rescheduled wherever possible.

BCH 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: BCH 2

Course description: Biochemistry of information flow: the structure of chromosomes and plasmids; DNA replication and repair; transcription and regulation of gene expression; protein synthesis, molecular biology techniques, recombinant DNA techniques and heterologous protein production and applications in forensics, diagnostics, pharmaceuticals, industry and agriculture. Medical biochemistry: signal transduction in the context of hormones and neurotransmission. Protein trafficking and organelle formation: the formation of eukaryotic cell organelles and their protein compositions. Protein-protein interactions: research methods to detect protein interactions.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Examinations 40%

Supplementary exams: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with BCH 302. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for BCH302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

BCH 302

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: BCH 2, sub-minimum of 40% for BCH301

Course description: Advanced metabolism, enzyme kinetics and mechanisms; advanced enzyme kinetics; advanced theory and application of computational methods and tools for the visualisation and modelling of enzymes.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Examinations 40%

Supplementary exams: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with BCH 301. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not

obtain credit for BCH302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Biochemistry Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: The course consists of course-work modules and lectures on selected advanced topics such as drug discovery, cell culture and fluorescence techniques, research methods, advanced enzyme technology and biotechnology, biocatalysis; a literature review, essays and a research project.

DP requirements: attendance of all lectures and journal clubs, submission of all assignments and sitting of all tests.

Assessment: This course is assessed through written tests, continual assessment of a research project, comprehension test and oral examinations.

Supplementary exam: None

MICROBIOLOGY

Microbiology (MIC) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Microbiology, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101 (or an aggregate pass in ZOO 1 or BOT 1), MIC 2, MIC 3. See Rule S.23. In addition, students wishing to major in Microbiology are strongly encouraged to obtain BCH 201.

Students who aim to major in Microbiology and progress to postgraduate studies in computational biology or genomics are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Biochemistry, Computer Science, Chemistry or Mathematics.

Second-year level courses in Microbiology

There are two second-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 201 is held in the first semester and MIC 202 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course, MIC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component.

Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) and Cell Biology (CEL 101) (or aggregated passes in either Botany (BOT 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) are required before a student may register for MIC 201. A sub-minimum of 40% in MIC 201 is required for registration in MIC 202. In addition, BCH 201 is strongly recommended for students wishing to major in Microbiology.

DP requirements for each semester course: a class record of at least 40%, attendance of 80% of lectures, all practical sessions and submission of all assignments. A Leave of Absence (LOA) will usually only be granted for one practical and one test per semester, unless there are exceptional circumstances, and assessments and assignments will be rescheduled wherever possible.

The courses comprise of the following modules, not necessarily in the given order, with each module lasting about three weeks.

MIC 201 (Microbes and their environment)

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 1, CEL 101 or ZOO 1 or BOT 1

Course description: Introduction to the major groups of microbes, including bacteria, fungi, viruses, archaea, and parasites. Emphasis is placed on the structure, function, physiology, nutrition, and life cycles of the different groups of microbes. The effects of microbes on the natural and built environment and on plant, animal and human health will also be examined.

The course includes practical experience in the isolation and culture of microbes and a field trip.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Theory Examination 40%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with MIC 202. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for

MIC201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

MIC 202 (Molecular biology and microbial genetics)

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% MIC 201

Course description: Introductory molecular biology, bacterial genetics, prokaryote gene regulation, recombinant DNA technology. The course will include a practical introduction to basic molecular techniques such as DNA isolation and characterisation, bacterial transformation, gene regulation, and recombinant DNA technology.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Theory Examination 40%

Supplementary exams: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with MIC 201. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for MIC202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Third-year level courses in Microbiology

There are two third-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 301 is held in the first semester and MIC 302 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course MIC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Practical reports, tutorials and class tests collectively comprise the class record, which forms part of the final mark.

Microbiology 2 (MIC 2) is required before a student may register for MIC 301 or MIC 302. A sub-minimum of 40% in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. In addition, BCH 201 is strongly recommended for students wishing to major in Microbiology.

DP requirements for each semester course: a class record of at least 40%, attendance of 80% of lectures, all practical sessions and submission of all

assignments. A Leave of Absence (LOA) will usually only be granted for one practical and one test per semester, unless there are exceptional circumstances, and assessments and assignments will be rescheduled wherever possible.

The courses are comprised of the following modules, not necessarily in the given order, with each module lasting about three weeks:

MIC 301 (Eukaryotic cell biology and immunology, host-pathogen dynamics and stem cell biology)

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: MIC 2

Course description: Eukaryotic cell biology and concepts in immunology, host-pathogen dynamics and stem cell biology and tissue engineering. The practical component of this course focuses on recombinant DNA techniques, genetic manipulation of bacteria and immunoassays.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Theory Examination 40%

Supplementary exams: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with MIC 302. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for MIC301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

MIC 302 (Applied Microbiology)

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% MIC 301

Course description: Exploiting microorganisms for industrial and commercial purposes. Topics covered include industrial microbiology, microbial ecology, antimicrobial drug discovery and development, and agricultural microbiology. The course includes practical experience in fermentation techniques, bioreactor design and drug discovery projects. A field trip to local industries is included.

Assessment: Class record 60%, Theory Examination 40%

Supplementary examinations: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with MIC 301. There is an examination sub-minimum of 40%. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for MIC302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Microbiology Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: The course consists of modules on scientific writing, agricultural microbiology, One Health approaches, advanced genomics and microscopy techniques. The course is assessed through essays, assignments, tutorials, journal clubs and seminars with written tests. Each candidate is required to submit a research report on a specific project in the areas of molecular virology, cell biology, mycology, bacterial pathogenesis or marine biotechnology during the course, and this together with all assessment marks, will be considered part of the final examination.

DP requirements: attendance of all lectures and journal clubs, submission of all assignments and sitting of all tests.

Assessment: This course is assessed through coursework, class tests, oral examinations and comprehension examinations.

Supplementary exam: None

BIOINFORMATICS

MSc in Bioinformatics

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

General background

Bioinformatics and computational molecular biology is the systematic development and application of information technologies and data mining techniques for analysing biological data obtained by experiments, modelling, database searching and instrumentation to make novel observations and predictions about biological function. This course will be taught in an interdisciplinary manner and focusing on the interface between the computational sciences and the biological, physical and chemical sciences. Graduates who complete this course will be skilled

in the assimilation of biological information through the use and development of computational tools for a range of applications including simple pattern recognition, molecular modelling for the prediction of structure and function, gene discovery and drug target discovery, the analysis of phylogenetic relationships, whole genome analysis and the comparison of genetic organisation.

Eligibility

Candidates who hold a BSc Honours degree with subjects from the life sciences (especially Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology), Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics and Statistics and who have basic computer literacy, may apply for admission.

Course structure:

The Master's programme will be offered over 12 months and incorporates a number of course work modules and a research project. The course work modules will involve an integration of formal lectures, self-learning computer-based tutorials and practicals. In addition, problem solving tutorials would be designed to guide the student through current information-based problems and involve the assimilation and reduction of biological information. A number of the tutorials and practical components will be assessed and contribute towards a course work year mark. The examination of the course work component would be through oral and open-book theory examinations. The course work component will be externally examined.

A number of research projects will be offered, depending on the interests of the academic staff associated with the program.

The projects will be assessed by seminar presentations of the proposed and final work, and as a written thesis that will be externally examined.

Course work modules

The course work consists of modules and lectures on introductory and advanced topics including computer operating systems and programming (e.g. Linux, Python and MatLab), basic statistics, databases, basic and advanced genomics, comparative genomics, metagenomics and structural bioinformatics (e.g. homology modelling, protein-ligand, protein-protein interactions, protein engineering).

Assessment

The course work modules will be assessed by internal grading of tutorials and practicals, and by internal and external grading of work assignments, mini- projects and examinations. The project report and thesis will be graded internally and externally. The overall course work mark and the thesis mark will each contribute equally to the final mark. Successful completion of the course will be subject to a final mark of at least 50%, provided that a candidate obtains at least 50% for the course work, with a sub-minimum of at least 40% from each module (with at least 40% in the examination) and at least 50% for the project report, project presentations and thesis.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

BIOTECHNOLOGY INNOVATION CENTRE

Professor and Head of Department

A Boshoff, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UPE), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor and Director. South African Research Chair in Biotechnology Innovation and Engagement

JL Limson, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD, PGDHE (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

E Prinsloo, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UPE), MSc (UPE), PhD (NMMU), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

R Fogel, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

PD Rose, BSc (Hons)(UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

Honorary Professor

AK Cowan, PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

J Jordaan, PhD (Rhodes)

DT Govindaraj PhD (Katholieke Universiteit Leuven Belgium)

MM Takundwa, PhD (University of Namibia)

Professional Associate

H Roman, PhD (Rhodes)

P Allison, BSc (Hons)(UKZN)

Biotechnology is offered at the Honours, Master's and PhD levels.

General Background

The Rhodes University Biotechnology Innovation Centre (RUBIC) is the academic home of the discipline of Biotechnology, providing a trans-disciplinary research and learning environment in the areas of Biomedical Biotechnology and in Environmental/Industrial Biotechnology. In addition to teaching and research, the Biotechnology Innovation Centre is engaged in technology transfer of Biotechnology research and the public engagement and communication of the field. For further details, see the Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/biotechnology>.

BIOTECHNOLOGY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credits)

Entrance Requirements: MIC 3, BCH 3 or equivalent

Course description: This course is offered as a professional qualification for students interested in careers in the biotechnology sector. Biotechnology is a multi-disciplinary field of study at the intersection of the biological, chemical and physical sciences. As a prerequisite, candidates normally have either Microbiology or Biochemistry (or equivalent subjects) as one of their major BSc subjects. The course consists of lectures, seminars and essays covering a series of topics in Biotechnology such as alternative energy, wastewater treatment, biosensor technology, stem cells, tissue and protein engineering, industrial bioprocess design and strategy and advanced topics in environmental biotechnology and management. The course also includes enrichment modules and seminars in bio-entrepreneurship, intellectual property management, biotechnology communication and current trend analysis. The coursework is followed by a research project of original investigation conducted in one of the research laboratories of the supervisor.

DP requirements: Completion of all assessments & participation in enrichment modules.

Assessment: Class record 33.3%, Project 33.3%, Examinations 33.3%

Supplementary exam: None

BIOTECHNOLOGY MASTERS AND PHD

Degrees in Biotechnology at the Master's and Doctoral level are offered by research to suitably qualified graduates. MSc (NQF level 9, 180-credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360-credits) students conduct research under the supervision of one of the staff or in collaboration with affiliates in other departments at Rhodes as well as affiliates in the public and private research and industrial

sector. Academic programmes including research seminars, conference presentations and advisory committees (constituted for masters and doctoral candidates) further support research activities. All postgraduates are offered voluntary short courses to enrich their learning and enhance their preparedness for the job market in areas including business plan development and biotechnology

communication and public engagement. Finally, the Biotechnology Innovation Centre provides the innovation space for graduates interested in the future technology transfer and commercialisation of their postgraduate research.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

BOTANY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

CI Peter, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (UKZN)

Professor

BS Ripley, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor and Deputy Dean

S Vetter, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (UCT)

Senior Lecturers

EL Newman, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Stellenbosch)

T Pillay, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

Herbarium Curator

AP Dold, ND (PE Tech), MSc (Rhodes)

Research Associates

A Adebawale, PhD (UKZN)

D McMurtry, ND: Horticulture (Pretoria Tech)

R Prevec, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Natal), PhD (Wits)

K Simpson, MBioSci, PhD (Sheffield)

C Swart, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

S Abraham, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Rhodesia)

S Raubenheimer, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

CEJ Botha, PhD (Natal)

Botany (BOT) is a six-semester subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA and BJourn. Botany is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV 3), Entomology (ENT 3), Ichthyology (ICH 3), Microbiology (MIC 3) or Zoology (ZOO 3).

To major in Botany, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: CHE 1, CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 102, BOT 201, BOT 202, BOT 301, BOT 302. See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Botany semester courses are allowed for other degree/ diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

For further details see the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/botany/>

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN BOTANY

There are two first-year semester-long courses in Botany. CEL 101 is held in the first semester and BOT 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BOT 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Supplementary examinations may be awarded in either course, provided that a candidate achieves at least 40%. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Adequate performance for CEL 101 (at least 40%) is required before a student may register for BOT 102. Each course is comprised of modules of two to four weeks, with 5 lectures and 1 practical per week.

CEL 101: Cell Biology

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits) jointly taught by the Departments of Botany and Zoology & Entomology. See details for CEL 101 in the entry for the Department of Zoology & Entomology.

BOT 102: Plant Evolution and Ecology

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% for CEL 101

Course description: This course examines the mechanisms of evolution through natural selection and the resultant plant diversity. Whole plant function and adaptations are then used to introduce

plant ecology, which deals with the characteristics and processes found at different levels of organisation from the individual to ecosystems. Ecological concepts are illustrated with their applications in conservation and environmental management.

DP requirements: Attend all practicals, lectures, tests. Hand in all assignments. 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for November: Students with a course mark of 40% or higher may aggregate BOT 102 with CEL 101 to obtain credit for Botany 1. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for BOT102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN BOTANY

There are two semester-long second-year courses in Botany. BOT 201 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BOT 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in each semester. Supplementary examinations are offered for both courses. When the intention is to major in Botany, Botany (CEL 101, BOT 102), Zoology (ZOO 102) and Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BOT 201 or BOT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or ZOO 102 concurrently with BOT 2 or BOT 3. Adequate performance (at least 40%) in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. These courses each comprise several modules and weekly practicals. Students registered for BOT 201 will also be required to assemble a plant collection, and students will participate in field trips in BOT 201 and BOT 202.

BOT 201: Plant diversity and reproduction

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: BOT 1, BOT102 or an aggregated credit with ZOO1 Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102.

Course description: The course begins with a module on the diversity of Angiosperms focusing on the diversity of plant structures and life forms of the spectacularly diverse South African flora. This module also introduces the basic principles of modern taxonomy and systematics. The second half of the course deals with plant reproduction and introduces some of the many modes of reproduction in Angiosperms before focusing on the interaction between plants and their pollinators. Practical and field trips train students in key skills important for botanists, ecologists and environmental scientists, such as collecting and identifying plants, using the herbarium, and collecting and analysing ecological data.

DP requirements: Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments and plant collection. 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

Supplementary exam: 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with BOT 202, provided the exam subminimum of 40% has been met. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for BOT102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

BOT 202: Plant function

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% for BOT 201

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102

Course description: The course starts with a module on carbon and nitrogen metabolism in plants, which examines pathways of energy production and utilisation and the regulation of

metabolism. This is followed by a module on disturbance-driven ecosystems, which covers aspects of trophic ecology, plant-herbivore interactions, plant adaptations to fire and herbivory, and rangeland-ecology. The final module deals with invasion biology, which explores the nature, extent, impact and management of biological invasions. A joint ecology field trip with other life science departments introduces hypothesis testing, research design, data collection and analysis.

DP requirements: Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments. 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

Supplementary exam: 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with BOT 201, provided the exam subminimum of 40% has been met. If a student has a final course mark of 50% or more but fails to achieve the examination subminimum, they will not obtain credit for BOT 202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN BOTANY

There are two independent semester-long third-year courses in Botany. BOT 301 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course BOT 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each semester. Supplementary examinations will be offered for both courses. Students are also required to undertake a year-long mini-research project, culminating in a written project and research seminar.

BOT 301: Plants in a changing world

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: BOT 2

Course description: The course begins with an intensive two-week session on project development to enable students to commence their research projects with a firm foundation of research planning, project design and data analyses. A module on functional ecology in a changing world covers plant life histories, functional traits and the responses of vegetation to global change. A module on climate change and ecophysiology includes aspects of plant physiology in response to the environment where these plants grow, in particular the physiological consequences of stress. Both modules are linked to climate change issues and highlight how an understanding of southern African ecological systems has contributed to these fields globally.

DP requirements: Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments including project components. 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 20%, Examination 50% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

Supplementary exam: 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with BOT 302, provided the exam subminimum of 40% has been met. If a student has a final course mark of 50% or more but fails to achieve the examination subminimum, they will not obtain credit for BOT 301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

BOT 302: Ecology and Evolution

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% BOT 301

Course description: This course comprises three modules. A module on applied community ecology examines plant-soil-environment interactions, with specific focus on how competition shapes plant communities. A module on plant speciation covers

various topics along the speciation continuum. The module starts with divergent selection and local adaptation that initiates speciation, and ends with reinforcement and the evolution of reproductive isolation that completes speciation. The course concludes with a module focusing on the idea of relentless evolution working constantly on every generation in a population.

DP requirements: Attend all practicals, lectures, tests and field trips. Hand in all assignments including project components. 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 20%, Examination 50% (exam sub-minimum: 40%)

Supplementary exam: 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with BOT 301, provided the exam subminimum of 40% has been met. If a student has a final course mark of 50% or more but fails to achieve the examination subminimum, they will not obtain credit for BOT 302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

BOTANY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: The Botany Honours degree focuses on plant ecology and evolution in the context of global change. Plants form the basis for all life on earth, but the conditions for plant growth are rapidly changing due to climate change, elevated atmospheric CO₂ concentrations, biological invasions and land transformation. The last decades have seen widespread vegetation change, including woody encroachment of savannas and ecosystem shifts caused by invasive species. Climate change and increased atmospheric CO₂ also alter plant- animal interactions and their

outcomes, including plant-pollinator relationships and the susceptibility of invasive plants to biological control. The course includes a field trip, seminars, tutorials and a research project, and is intended to provide the student with the opportunity for in-depth study in particular aspects of the subject. Botany Honours may serve as relevant training for subsequent employment or as a step between an undergraduate degree and a research degree. Modules include functional ecology, savanna ecology, pollination biology, and climate change eco physiology.

DP requirements:

Assessment: Class record 35%, Project 35%, Examination 30% (examination subminimum: 40% for each paper and 50% average mark for all papers; project mark subminimum: 50%)

Supplementary exam: None

JOINT HONOURS

Joint Honours courses may be followed subject to approval by both departments, where topics from the Botany Honours course may be taken in combination with courses in some other Departments (for example, Geography, Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology or Zoology).

MSC AND PHD DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department or associated Institutes. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

RHODES BUSINESS SCHOOL

Director and Associate Professor

FO Skae, MCom(Rhodes), MBA(Dunelm)

Professors

MME Mohapeloa, BA(UPE), MBA(Mancosa), DBA(TUT)

NJ Pearse, MSocSci(UCT), PhD(Rhodes)

Adjunct Professor

AL Moodly, BA(Rhodes), HDE(Rhodes), BEd(UNISA), MEd(UNISA), MBA(Business School Netherlands), DEd(UNISA)

Senior Lecturers

LM Greyling, MSc(RAU), MSc(UCT), MBA(Rhodes)

EP Knoesen, Cert Dir BA(Hons)(UPE), MBA(NMMU)

MM Mtotywa, BSc(Hons)(UPE), MBL(UNISA), PhD(UPE), PhD(Rhodes)

KL Rafferty, HDE(JCE), BSc(Wits), MBA(Rhodes)

Lecturer

TVQ Moleko, BCom(Rhodes), MBA(NMU)

Visiting Professors

AA Granger, BA(Rhodes), BCom(UNISA), LLB(Rhodes), ACII, CeMap, Dip PFS, CIP CFPCM CFP Chartered FCSI (Financial Planning), FRSA

RJ Khoza, BA(Hons)(UNIN), MA(Lancaster), EngD(Warwick), LLD(hc)(Rhodes)

ME King SC, BA, LLB(Wits), LLD(hc)(Wits), Hon LLD(Law)(Leeds)

ML Maluleka, PDDipFinPlanning(UFS), MBA(Milpark), DBA(UKZN)

G Sieff, BA(UCT), BSc(Hons)(UCT), MA(Sydney), MBA(Sydney), PhD(UJ)

Visiting Fellows

BD Howard, BJourn(Rhodes)

C Marx, MCom(UJ), CFA

CG Tyler, BCom(Rhodes)

CF Williams, MBA(UCT)

Senior Research Associate

SA Bodhanya, BSc(Natal), MBA(Nyenrode), PhD(UKZN)

Teaching Faculty

Besides the staff of the Business School presenting the various MBA and Postgraduate Diploma

modules, associate faculty are appointed mostly from other departments of Rhodes University and adjunct faculty from outside of the university with relevant academic and/or industry experience.

ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to develop a comprehensive understanding of the purpose, role, methods, and techniques to be applied in effective business analysis, business process modelling, business process engineering, management consulting, and either software testing or project management for sustainable business performance. This will enable understanding and identifying what, when, who, where, which, and how business processes and methods can be changed to operate more economically, efficiently, effectively, and sustainably; communicating and consulting with subject matter experts and key managers so as to analyse, model, and document the change requirements and support the communication and delivery of those requirements.

The AdvDip(Business Analysis) is a one-year programme, comprising three modules of 40 credits (two core modules and one elective), which is delivered either contact or distance learning modes.

Modules constituting the AdvDip(Business Analysis) course and their respective aims are:

- Sustainable Business Analysis (Core): Business Analysis Process, Modelling, Analysing and Applying as well as Sustainability.
- Management Consulting (Core): The Consulting Process, Strategy and Business Consulting, Business Analysis Consulting and Skills, and communication intelligence for the management consultant.
- Software Testing (Elective): Fundamentals and Concepts of Testing; Testing Techniques and Tool Automation, Strategic Test Management, as well as Application and Tool

Automation.

- Project Management (Elective): Fundamentals and Concepts of Project Management; Project Selection and Strategy; Project Planning, as well as Integrating Processes.

Candidates are required to do both core modules and one elective module.

Qualifying:

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module. A supplementary may be awarded for a maximum of two modules subject to the candidate averaging 50% for the three modules.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

The target candidates are graduate students seeking a qualification to equip them to start their own business and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business. The Diploma is offered on a one-year full-time or two-year part-time basis (which may be accelerated to one-year). The part-time programme is offered to graduates who are currently employed in a full-time capacity but realise the value of in-depth management education to enhance their career prospects.

Course Structure:

The Diploma comprises seven modules (of 12 credits each) and an Alpha project (36 credits).

Full-time option: this course runs within the normal Rhodes University academic calendar with daily lectures through the university term calendar and examinations during the university examination timetable.

Part-time option: this course is conducted via one-week teaching blocks through the year. Two to Three blocks require attendance at Rhodes University, with one block conducted virtually. Tests and examinations are written during the teaching blocks.

Qualifying:

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Alpha Project, 50% or more for at least six of the remaining seven modules listed below, and an overall aggregate of at least 50%. In

addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 45% applies to each module. For the full-time option - if a candidate passes six modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50% or more but does not attain the sub-minimum in one module, they shall be awarded a supplementary examination for that module. For the part-time option – if a candidate passes four or more modules and attains an overall aggregate of 50%, they may be awarded supplementary examinations for modules below 50%.

Examination exemption:

It is possible, however, subject to a maximum of three modules, for a candidate to be exempted from writing the examination for a module, with a credit being awarded for the module, if the candidate obtains at least 70% for all individual assignments and for all tests for the module, with two internal moderators concurring regarding the marks awarded for both forms of assessment and a review of the written work by the external examiner.

Modules (12 credits each) constituting the full-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are:

- Computerised Accounting for Small Business
- Entrepreneurial Law
- Entrepreneurship
- Financial Management
- People Management
- Strategic Marketing
- Supply Chain and Project Management

Modules (12 credits each) constituting the part-time PGDip (Enterprise Management) are selected from (7 in total):

- Business Development and Consulting
- Financial Management
- Intrapreneurship
- Leadership for Sustainability
- People Management
- Strategic Marketing
- Strategic Operations Management
- Sustainable Business Modelling
- Sustainable Economics

The Project (36 credits) and module descriptions are:

- **Alpha Project (Full-time option)**

This is a group project, which requires students run a micro-business for the duration of the academic year. The Alpha project is evaluated via a series of written reports, comprising a business plan, evidence of establishing the micro-business (e.g. minutes of meetings, social media campaigns, website) and a reflective report with a portfolio of evidence. The project includes these support activities:

BizzSupport - incorporates a focus on community led businesses/enterprises/cooperatives with social impact to offer business support services and document case studies from these entities.

Lean Bootcamp for StartUps - Design Thinking using business model canvas for Lean Startup, namely, Value Proposition, Customer Discovery, Empathy Map, Systems Mindwash and context using the HMW (How might we...?) statement. Design and develop a minimum viable product (MVP) and then test the prototype for market validation.

- **Alpha Project (Part-time option)**

Normally, this group project entails analysing a business case and providing an integrated review and response to the challenges and opportunities raised. The project is evaluated via a group prepared 8 000-word report and online virtual presentation in addition to an individual self-reflection report.

- Alternatively, the Alpha Project will be a change based project where the students are expected to analyse their work context to identify an area that requires change. The students are required to ideate, plan and implement the required change. Thereafter they are required to gather feedback and reflect on the results of the change. The students are expected to submit regular reports on the key milestones through the duration of the project. The students are assessed via an 8000-word report and online virtual presentation.

Modules: all modules are normally assessed via assignments and/or in-class task and/or tests under examination-type conditions and/or three-hour examinations

- **Business Development and Consulting:** Focus on the important role that consultants play in developing new business opportunities. There are three components to this module, run at three different intervals. This first investigates the role of the business consultant and the consulting frameworks that support successful consulting engagements. The second investigates the role played and the importance of knowledge management within the developing organisation. The third examines communication theory and the critical role played by effective, ethical communicators within a business, both from a consulting as well as a general perspective. Assignments for each component are applied and unique to each students' business environment.

- **Computerised accounting of small businesses:** Focus on providing aspirant entrepreneurs with basic accounting principles, development of appropriate accounting systems for a small business, and preparing post the cash book for bank reconciliation. The course uses software to help students to design and use the Debtors and Creditors system, design and use the Inventory system and teach on how to extract information, such as reports and financial statements, to analyse small business's performance. A touch on the basics of tax in a small business, thus enabling the keeping of accurate records of financial transactions and managing assets and liabilities on a sound basis.

- **Entrepreneurial Law:** Focus on forms of business ownership, dispute resolution, business structures, law of contract, labour law, special contracts, copyright, trademarks and insolvency.

- **Entrepreneurship:** Focus on fundamentals for new product and services development to sustain a company's long-term competitive advantage targeting StartUp and Small enterprise. Capitalising on R & D units, and a small business who take risks and embrace technology and innovative approaches. This explores how these complex activities must be integrated using a procedural framework that acknowledges barriers and other obstacles

whilst incorporating contributions made by networks, resources, technologies in developing products and services that are saleable.

- **Financial Management:** Focus on aspects specific to entrepreneurs and intrapreneurs, inter alia, alternative sources of capital, bootstrapping, financial contracting issues, insurance, private equity, taxation, valuing a business and key decision-making concepts and tools including ratio analysis, breakeven analysis, budgets and working capital management.
- **Intrapreneurship:** Focus on growth using new products and new markets to sustain a firm's long-term competitive advantage targeting medium to large companies capitalising on innovation. Harnessing of R & D special projects, to embrace technology and innovative ways to explore complex activities to help firm rejuvenation and growth strategies.
- **Leadership for Sustainability:** Focus is on considering the changes to the organisational "playing field" resulting from increased awareness and demands for sound corporate governance and social and environmental accountability and how an understanding of these changes can assist in leveraging competitive advantage. Key themes that will be introduced are concepts of sustainable development within the South African, regional, and international contexts, governance and corporate social responsibility, plus local and international drivers and considerations for business organisations.
- **People Management:** Focus from the perspective of the owner/manager of an SME, manage organisational behaviour, exercise leadership, carry out various human resource functions, and comply with the South African labour relations framework and supporting legislation.
- **Strategic Marketing:** Focus is on the place a marketing plan has within the overall business plan. It examines the marketing strategies most appropriate under a range of different market and product life-cycle circumstances. The approach offers a template for developing a case study-based marketing plan that meets the needs of the firm's aims and objectives within the context of a viable product and market for any aspiring entrepreneur.
- **Strategic Operations Management:** Focus on process types and process flows in manufacturing, performance measurement, benchmarking and re-engineering, production planning, quality management, lean thinking, and world-class manufacturing, sustainable supply chain management and procurement, risk assessment, life-cycle analysis, and systems.
- **Supply Chain and Project Management:** Focus on supply chain management, supply strategies, organisation of the supply chain, managing inventories, quality management, total cost of ownership, integrated logistics management, distribution management, and managing the global supply chain. Introduction to project management, project lifecycle phases, stakeholders' communication, cost, quality, time management, risk management, tools and techniques as well as a focus on special Projects for StartUps/SME/ Co-ops.
- **Sustainable Business Modelling:** Focus is on developing an in-depth understanding of the value creation process of a business as an integrated model.
- **Sustainable Economics:** Focus is on presenting an insight into the theoretical and applied Economics concepts required to engage successfully as a manager or business leader in a sustainable economy. The module relies on two principal theoretical frameworks, namely Resource-Based Theory and Bourdieu's Theory on Capital. Key topics covered include scarcity, supply and demand, elasticity, competition and the regulation of markets, externality, poverty and inequality, the macroeconomic perspective, economic growth, inflation, money and banking, and the government's role. Also explores environmental economics.

The School reserves the right to teach the modules in any order.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS ANALYSIS

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide a qualification for Business Analysis professionals that will enable them to strategically, operationally and critically address relevant methods, processes, systems and techniques that should be applied to achieve sustainable business performance. In so doing, the number and quality of working Business Analysts in Africa who are able to effectively communicate and apply their understanding of the theory, principles, purpose, role, methods and techniques of business analysis, business modelling and business process improvement to achieve sustainable business performance will be achieved.

The PGDip(Business Analysis) is a one year, full-time or one and a half year, part-time modular programme, comprising four modules, where students are required to attend four teaching blocks. Between teaching blocks, students are required to complete practical assignments. A practical 24 hour examination is undertaken at the commencement of the 4th teaching block, covering all four modules. A Project (40 credits), with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE), is to be submitted by the end of the second semester for full-time students or at the end of the first semester of the second year for part-time students.

Modules constituting the PGDip(Business Analysis) course and their respective aims, taught in this order, are:

- Sustainable Business Models (13 credits): Provide a strategic context to Business Analysis and develop capability to effectively engage with the entity's stakeholders to design and implement sustainable business models, processes and systems.
- Business Process Modelling (21 credits): Undertake critical evaluation of business process methodologies and tools and develop capability in utilising them to achieve sustainable business performance.
- Business Process Analysis (25 credits): Undertake critical evaluation of business process improvement approaches and develop capability to deploy and harness them to achieve sustainable business performance.
- Communicating and Consulting (21 credits): Undertake critical evaluation of all the soft skills requirements, aptitude, and characteristics to be an effective Business Analyst.

Qualifying:

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must pass each module and attain at least a 50% aggregate for the coursework and 50% for the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE).

In addition, a sub-minimum requirement of 40% applies to each component of each module. In the case of a candidate passing three modules and attaining an overall aggregate of 50% or more but failing to attain the sub-minimum in one module, they shall be awarded a supplementary examination in that module. The Coursework comprises 67% (80 credits) of the diploma and the Project with supporting Portfolio of Evidence (POE) 33% (40 credits). The overall mark is a weighted average of Coursework and Project with supporting POE.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ADVANCEMENT AND RESOURCE MOBILISATION

The diploma strives to grow and build the number and quality of working Advancement professionals in Africa who are able to engage systematically and purposefully with their internal and external stakeholders to attract resources and, thus, contribute to the long-term sustainability of these non-commercially minded entities.

The programme seeks to equip participants with core Advancement skills and tools such as those relating to strategy and planning, leadership, good governance, communication and marketing, project development, cases for

support, legal requirements, financial management imperatives, and the structuring of an Advancement operation. The programme also seeks to give credence to Advancement principles that can be used to inform integrated and holistic practice by promoting research, as well as the creation and dissemination of knowledge in this area.

The diploma is a programme which is aimed at creating knowledgeable, competent, and innovative Advancement professionals who are able to be responsive to the constant turbulence of their internal and external environments. Furthermore, the Rhodes Business School's essence of "Leadership for Sustainability" underlies all subjects in the curriculum by encouraging thinking around economic, social and environmental sustainability.

The PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) is a two-year part-time coursework programme, targeting working professionals, comprising five compulsory modules. Three of these modules will be run over the course of the first year, with the remaining two occurring in the second year. Modules are assessed by a combination of tests, assignments, and/or exams, as well as a research (capstone) project related to work-based or real-world scenarios in the field of Advancement and Resource Mobilisation.

Modules constituting the PGDip (Advancement and Resource Mobilisation) course are:

- Introduction to Advancement (10 credits): Development of advancement practices over the decades, to illustrate the contextual considerations in managing advancement practices in the 21st Century. Particular emphasis will be on reflecting on advancement and resource mobilisation in the African context and on the essence of advancement as a profession in this context. The relationship of different schools of ethics to advancement will also be explored.
- Research for Advancement (15 Credits): Role of research in thinking dynamically and reflecting critically on advancement

practices and principles; developing case studies, research reports and articles that contribute to the creation and dissemination of knowledge in the area of Advancement and Resource mobilisation in the local context.

- Advancement Practice (30 Credits): Key knowledge and understanding needed for non-commercial organisations to effectively manage their fundraising process and opportunities. Working within an advancement framework, the module aims to create a fundamental shift in thinking around organisational and institutional mission, objectives and delivery – and how to attract the donor resources in support of this. This module is designed to strengthen the capacity of participants to increase their organisation/institution's potential for long-term financial sustainability. There is a strong focus on the relationship management aspect of fundraising, instead of the transaction. This module also explores issues around strategy and leadership as well as the relationship building blocks of identification, cultivation, solicitation and stewardship.
- Advancement Leadership and Stakeholder Relations (10 credits): Conceptual understanding of effective and responsible leadership and stakeholder management in relation to the field of advancement. Theories and models pertaining to leadership will be explored with particular reference to their applicability to advancement and resource mobilisation on the African continent. The module will also aim to develop a framework for external stakeholder engagement and mapping.
- Responsibility and Accountability in Advancement (20 credits): Role of governance and benchmarking in advancement practices and principles. The module also provides the foundation for students to understand proper legal requirements, financial management, monitoring and evaluation practices, maintenance of stakeholder relations, and

sustainability considerations for improved advancement practices.

- **Capstone Project** (35 credits): Integrated and applied project aimed at synthesising learning from all the modules of the programme, within an organisational / institutional setting. Thus, the capstone project is a culminating project aimed at assessing critical and integrative thinking skills and ability to generate coherent knowledge in the field of Advancement and Resource Mobilisation.

Qualifying:

To qualify for the Diploma, candidates must complete and pass all five modules and the capstone project with a mark of 50% or above. To obtain a distinction for the diploma, a weighted average of 75% must be achieved for all modules together with the capstone project. In the event that an OVERALL weighted average of 50% or above is achieved for ALL modules and the Capstone Project, but a module/s has been failed, then a supplementary examination may be awarded for the failed module/s.

MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

The Rhodes MBA is a course-work degree comprising 15 courses (made up of 12 core courses and 3 electives) and a research project of 12 000 words. The programme is offered in a modular format, either part-time over two years or full-time over one and a half years. Students are required to attend teaching blocks held in Makhanda: one per year for part-time students, and two in the first year for full-time students. In addition, students typically complete work-based assignments throughout the programme. The final six months in both cases, is dedicated to the completion of the research project. Additional contact sessions are scheduled virtually.

Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a NQF level 8

qualification (e.g. an Honour's Degree, four-year Bachelor's Degree or Postgraduate Diploma) in any discipline, are fluent in English, and have had at least three years relevant practical experience. All applicants are required to sit the NMAT by GMAC™ Admission Test, or GMAT if the NMAT is not available in their country of residence. Furthermore, those applicants for whom English is a foreign language are required to sit an appropriate English language test.

Curriculum and Module Descriptions:

The MBA is integrated according to our unique 4E Model (Economy, Ethics, Ecology and Equity) and is focused on embedding sustainability and leadership concepts and contexts within a range of management functions and disciplines.

- **Academic Skills:** academic knowledge, academic writing, academic assessment, writing skills. (NQF9: four (4) credits, one assignment).
- **Business Development and Consulting (elective):** consulting to the business in a way that adds value by presenting innovative ideas and projects that can help the organisation be sustainable. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, three assignments).
- **Diversity, Equity & Inclusion (elective):** DEI in corporate strategy and decision-making, culture, innovation, and performance. (NQF9: seven-and-a-half (7.5) credits; one assignment).
- **Ethical Organisation and Governance:** business ethics, corporate citizenship, corporate social responsibility and investment, corporate governance, and integrated thinking. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment: Integrated Project).
- **Exponential Organisations (elective):** ExOs and their disruptive potential; principles and strategies employed by ExOs to achieve rapid growth and scalability; frameworks to assess organisational structures, business models, and technological advancements necessary for exponential growth. (NQF9: seven-and-a-half (7.5) credits; one assignment).

- Financial and Quantitative Skills: this course is only required for those candidates who have not had any formal accounting qualification or prior accounting work experience. This course is also recommended for candidates wanting to review accounting principles (zero (0) credits).
- Finance and Management Accounting: six capitals framework, working capital decisions, capital investment appraisal, measuring and dealing with risk, sources of finance, cost of capital, ratio analysis, dividend decision, cost-volume-profit analysis, measuring relevant costs and revenues for decision making, cost assignment, activity-based costing, the budgeting process, standard costing and variance analysis. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, two assignments).
- Integrated Thinking and Reporting (elective): evolution of reporting; sustainability and integrated reporting; stakeholder engagement; integrated thinking and innovation; responsible decision-making; value creation. (NQF9: seven-and-a-half (7.5) credits; one assignment).
- International Option: It is possible to attend an approved programme at an international institution, in lieu of two modules offered. There are certain conditions attached to this option, covered in the School rules.
- People Management: the human resource management function and its role, role of managers in managing people, strategic human resource management (HRM), labour legislation, organisational behaviour, sustainable organisations and implications for HRM, stakeholder engagement, researching critical people management issues, change management. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment).
- Quantitative Decision-Making for Business and Research: organising and summarizing data statistically, presenting and interpreting data, inferential statistics, significance testing, time series analysis and forecasting, marketing research practice (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one test or assignment, one examination).
- Research Methods: the research proposal, research paradigms, research methods, data collection methods, quantitative and qualitative data analysis. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, four assignments).
- Research Project: A research project of approximately 12 000 words focusing on a theme related to leadership for sustainability and consisting of (1) a systematized review of the literature (6 000 to 8 000 words), (2) a related artefact for organisations, and (3) a self-reflexive essay (2 000 to 4 000 words). (NQF9: forty-five (45) credits).
- Responsible Leadership: Leadership theory and principles, Leadership styles, Systems theory and how it applies to Responsible Leadership, Servant leadership, Philosophy of African leadership and Sustainable Leadership (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment).
- Strategic Management: strategic intent, strategy maps, the business environment, SWOT analysis, core competency analysis, strategic objectives and the Balanced Scorecard, corporate level strategies, business level strategies, Business Model and value creation. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment: Integrated Project).
- Strategic Marketing: the marketing concept, market segmentation,, marketing research, distribution strategy, product strategy, pricing strategy, promotional strategy, services marketing, relationship marketing, social marketing, responsible consumption, emerging markets and digital marketing. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, two assignments).
- Strategic Operations Management: process types and process flows in manufacturing, performance measurement, benchmarking and re-engineering, production planning, quality management, lean thinking and world class manufacturing, sustainable supply chain management and procurement, risk

assessment, life-cycle analysis, and managing by projects. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one assignment)

- Sustainability: sustainability concepts and definitions, corporate social responsibility, triple/quadruple bottom line, triple top line, integrated reporting, climate change, trends in sustainability and its management. (NQF9: ten (10) credits, one assignment, one examination).
- Sustainable Economics: macro and microeconomics. Factors and policy that influence the firm and decision-making, monetary policy, nature and trends of the South African economy and challenges confronting it, indicators of economic activity. Managerial and environmental economics and its application to problem solving and decision-making, pricing, costs & profits, pricing for greater profits, decision-making in uncertainty, organizational design and firm decision-making (NQF8: ten (10) credits, two assignments).
- Sustainable Entrepreneurship (elective): characteristics of an entrepreneur, generating entrepreneurial and intrapreneurial ideas, feasibility studies, growth and turnaround strategies, business plans, social entrepreneurship, international business. (NQF8: ten (10) credits, one assignment).
- Value creation through AI (elective): transformative potential of artificial intelligence (AI) in business context; applications across industries, evaluating ethical, legal, and societal implications; strategic frameworks to integrate AI into organisational processes, enhancing efficiency and decision-making. (NQF9: seven-and-a-half (7.5) credits; one assignment).

Note: *The School reserves the right not to offer a particular elective module.*

PRE-MBA COURSE

For certain candidates, acceptance onto the MBA programme will be dependent on their attendance at a Financial and Quantitative Skills course. This course is also open to anyone who wishes to refresh their knowledge of finance and accounting.

Qualifying:

To qualify for the Degree, candidates must pass each module and the research project. A distinction will be awarded if the final mark is greater than or equal to 75%, provided that a sub-minimum of 70% is obtained for each of the coursework (weighted 75%) and research project (weighted 25%). The course-work component will comprise the weighted average mark of all the modules making up the course-work, according to their credit load.

MASTER OF COMMERCE DEGREE

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the full thesis research degree of MCom under the supervision of staff of the Business School. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the Business School to supervise the project. Further details for this degree is given in the General Regulations.

DOCTORAL DEGREES

Candidates are required to hold a Master's level qualification at NQF level 9 in a relevant discipline (for example, Commerce, Management, Leadership or Business Administration). This would include course-work Master's degrees such as an MBA degree. In the case of a coursework masters, the applicant must have achieved an aggregate mark of 65% or more for the degree. In reviewing the application, the School will consider the following:

- Research capability: Proven ability to conduct independent research. This would be reflected in good research performance and output during

the Master's programme. Evidence of publishing research findings would be a distinct advantage.

- Attendance: While the PhD degree is usually offered on a part-time basis and not in attendance, candidates are expected to regularly attend the online PhD seminars that are arranged from time to time.

- Capacity and alignment: Matching supervisor and student research interests, along with supervision capacity.
- Access to data: Applicant has access to a potential site for conducting field work.

Further details for this degree are given in the General Regulations.

CHEMISTRY

Senior Lecturer, Physical Organic and Inorganic Chemistry and Head of Department

NF Molefe, PhD (UFS)

Senior Lecturer, Physical Chemistry and Deputy Head of Department

T Tshiwawa PhD (Rhodes)

Professor, Physical Organic Chemistry

KA Lobb, PhD (Rhodes), FRSC

Associate Professor, Green Chemistry

R Klein, BSc (Hons) (UCT), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Miami)

Senior Lecturer, Academic Development

JD Sewry, MSc (Rhodes), HDE (UNISA)

Lecturer, General & Analytical Chemistry

T Geswindt, PhD (US)

Instrument Scientist (NMR)

K Ramollo, PhD (Wits)

Associate Professor Emeritus

GM Watkins, PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

Distinguished Fellow of Rhodes University,
Professor Emeritus PT Kaye, BSc (Natal), BSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil (Oxon),
FRSC, FRSSAf

N Torto, BSc (Hons)(Manchester), MSc (Botswana), PhD (Lund), FRSC

MS Khene, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), PGDHE (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Z Tshentu, PhD (NMMU)

Chemistry (CHE) is a six-semester subject, which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn. To major in Chemistry a candidate is required to obtain a pass in CHE 1; CHE 2; and CHE 3; as well as two semester-long courses, normally comprised of one full first-year course in Mathematics (MAM 1), or two semesters of any of Physics (PHY 1S1, PHY 101 or 102), Mathematics (MAM 101 or MAT 1S1) and Statistics (STA 1S1, STA 1C2, MST 102). Students are advised to discuss their choice of the above courses with the Head of the Chemistry Department. Two, or in some cases four, Chemistry semester courses are allowed for other

degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education. In particular, both CHE 101 and CHE 102 are required (or the equivalent aggregated course CHE 1) for admission to BPharm 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory section of each course separately. Each undergraduate year is offered as a pair of semester-long courses. All semester- courses are subject to a sub-minimum in the theory paper/s. See the departmental webpage for further details, particularly the content of courses and their requirements.

<http://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN CHEMISTRY

4 lectures, 1 tutorial and 3 hours of practical weekly.

Note: Students in Chemistry in 101 are expected to have a knowledge of chemistry at the standard of Physical Science in the National Senior Certificate.

There are two semester courses in Chemistry in first-year: CHE 101 is offered in the first semester and CHE 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately or, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CHE 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in the theory papers of each course separately and 40% of the overall for each course. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the department.

Continuation requirements

Candidates obtaining less than 20% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in the June examination are not permitted to continue with any Chemistry course in that year. A mark of at least 40% in the theory paper of CHE 101 is required for entry into CHE 102. Candidates who achieve this standard, but fail to

obtain at least 50% overall, may join the CHE 102 course in July, but must write the CHE 101 supplementary examination paper. The higher of the two marks for the CHE 101 papers will count (see Rule S.25.5). Candidates who obtain between 20% and 39% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in June cannot continue into CHE 102. They must transfer to the remedial course, Chemistry 1R1, to revise the topics from CHE 101 for re-examination in November but will continue with the CHE 102 practical course. In the following year, candidates with CHE 101 or 1R1 (but not for CHE 102) must register for CHE 1R2 in the first semester and if they pass the course requirements satisfactorily in June, will obtain CHE 1R2, which is equivalent to CHE 102. Those students who fail the CHE 1R2 examination in June will proceed into the mainstream CHE 102 in the second semester, and rewrite the CHE 102 paper in November.

CHE 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: The course consists of an introduction to chemistry, including chemical symbols and numeracy, atomic structure and bonding, chemical and physical equilibrium and an introduction to organic chemistry and biological molecules.

DP requirements: Writing all tests and submitting all assessments, as well as AT LEAST 90% attendance at all practical and tutorial sessions is a requirement for Due Performance (DP).

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%. The Overall mark for each course comprises a class mark (40%) and an end-of-semester Theory examination mark (60%). The class mark consists of a combination of practical assessments, short tests, tutorial tests, and a mid-semester departmental test.

Supplementary Exam: 40-49%. This exam is written in November.

Subminimum for June: 40% Theory and 40% CHE 101 to aggregate with CHE 102

CHE 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Pass CHE 1R1 or at least 40% for CHE 101

Course description: This course builds on the foundations developed in the previous course, with emphasis on properties of inorganic systems, atmospheric and environmental chemistry, organic functional group chemistry, biological building blocks, reaction rates, chemical thermodynamics, and electrochemistry.

DP requirements: Writing all tests and submitting all assessments, as well as AT LEAST 90% attendance at all practical and tutorial sessions is a requirement for Due Performance (DP).

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%. The Overall mark for each course comprises a class mark (40%) and an end-of-semester Theory examination mark (60%). The class mark consists of a combination of practical assessments, short tests, tutorial tests, and a mid-semester Departmental test.

Supplementary Exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% Theory and 40% CHE 102 to aggregate with CHE 101

CHE 1R1

This semester course is equivalent to CHE 101 (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: A minimum of 20% in the Theory paper for CHE 101.

Course description: See CHE 101

DP requirements: 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials; write all tests and assessments

Assessment: November exam: 60%; Practical mark (from Chem 101) 25%; Class tests: 15%

Supplementary exam: No supplementary exam is normally given

Subminimum for November: 40% theory

CHE 1R2

This semester course is equivalent to CHE 102, but is offered in the first semester (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Pass CHE 1R1 or CHE 101, or a minimum of 20% for CHE 102 in the previous exam

Course description: See CHE 102

DP requirements: 90% attendance at lectures and tutorials; write all tests and assessments

Assessment: June exam: 60%; Practical mark (CHE 102 practicals completed previous semester) 25%; Class tests: 15%

Supplementary exam: No supplementary exam is normally given.

Subminimum for June: 40% theory

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN CHEMISTRY

These courses comprise 5 lectures and 4.5 hours of practical work weekly with an additional one-hour tutorial every week. There are two independent semester courses in Chemistry at second year. CHE 201 is offered in the first semester and CHE 202 in the second semester. Credit for both courses may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CHE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in the theory paper of each course separately and 40% of the overall for the course. Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for either CHE 201 or CHE 202.

CHE 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 1 and pass or concurrent registration in Mathematics or Statistics

Course description: This course comprises Sampling and Sample Handling, Statistical and Classical Methods in Chemistry, Principles of spectroscopic methods: UV, IR, ^1H - and ^{13}C - NMR, MS, Atomic absorption/ emission; Electroanalytical techniques; and Chromatography.

Practical components are aligned with theory and deal mostly with Analytical Chemistry. A second-year project is also undertaken as part of the practical component, usually as a group project throughout the semester.

DP requirements: a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed **all** assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

Assessment: Class record 40%, Theory examination A 30%, Theory examination B 30%.

The class record comprises a mid-semester Departmental test, a number of class assessments and marks from the practical courses.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% theory and 40% overall to aggregate with CHE 202. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for CHE201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

CHE 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 1 and a pass in one of the Mathematics or Statistics courses.

Course description: This follows on from foundations in Chemistry 1, dealing with intermediate Organic Chemistry, particularly fossil fuels, feedstocks and organic reactions, reactions of unsaturated systems, cycloalkanes, and aromatic compounds, as well as an introduction to stereochemistry, and an introduction to polymer chemistry. In the latter half of the semester students study chemical thermodynamics, chemical kinetics of complex reactions, and intermediate-level inorganic chemistry.

Practical Components deal with techniques and skills in physical chemistry, organic and polymer chemistry.

DP requirements: a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed **all** assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

Assessment: Class record 40%, The theory examinations count 60%. The class record comprises a mid-semester Departmental test, a number of class assessments and marks from the practical courses.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% theory and 40% overall to aggregate with CHE 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for CHE202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN CHEMISTRY

These courses consist of 5 lectures and 6 hours of practical per week, and a practical-based research internship. Tutorials of 1 hour are held weekly. The internship may usually be taken either in the first or second semester but is recorded as part of the second semester class mark. There are two independent third-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 301 is held in the first semester and CHE 302 in the second semester. Credit for both semester courses may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CHE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in the theory paper of each course separately.

Chemistry 2 (CHE 2), as well as two semester-long courses, normally comprised of one full first-year course in Mathematics, or a semester each of Mathematics, and/or Physics and/or Statistics are required before a student may register for CHE 301 or CHE 302. Note also that the university timetable may prevent certain first year courses from being taken concurrently with Chemistry 3. See also Rule S.23.

CHE 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 2

Course description: Topics covered in third year build on the second year with Advanced Organic Chemistry, Synthesis and Retrosynthesis; Green Chemistry; Quantum Mechanics and Molecular Modelling; Linear Free Energy; Photochemistry; Nanotechnology. Practicals are for Physical and Organic chemistry.

DP requirements: a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed and submitted **ALL** assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

Assessment: Class record 40%, The theory examinations count 60%. The class mark comprises the mid-semester departmental tests, combined coursework continuous assessment tasks, and a mark for both the organic and physical chemistry practical course modules.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% in each of the theory papers to aggregate with CHE 302. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for CHE301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

CHE 302

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: CHE 2 and a pass or previous registration in CHE 301

Course description: Transition Metal Chemistry; Crystallography; Organometallic Chemistry; Statistical Kinetics and Energetics. Practicals are in Research internship and Inorganic chemistry.

DP requirements: a student must have attended AT LEAST 80% of all lectures and performed and submitted **ALL** assigned tutorials, essays and practical work satisfactorily

Assessment: Class record 40%, Theory examination A 30%, Theory examination B 30%. The class mark comprises the mid-semester departmental tests, combined coursework continuous assessment tasks, and a mark for the inorganic chemistry practical course module as well as the mark for the research internship.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% in each of the theory papers to aggregate with CHE 301. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for CHE302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

CHEMISTRY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Students who achieve a satisfactory standard in Chemistry 3 (normally 65% or above) may be accepted for the Honours course (normally 75% is required for consideration in a Joint Honours with another department). The Honours course consists of lectures on advanced topics selected from around 20 modules offered each year as electives, together with four compulsory core modules: Symmetry and Group Theory, Advanced Synthetic

Techniques, Spectroscopy, and one of the Industrial Chemistry modules.

A review essay is completed in the first semester, and a research project (conducted over most of the year in one of the department's research groups) is submitted as a mini-thesis and presented at the end of the year.

Further details are available on the website at <https://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

Assessment: Class record (review essay and research project) 40%, Theory examination 6% in June and 54% in November. The theory consists of a combination of continuous assessment and end-of-year examinations. Further details are available on the website at <https://www.ru.ac.za/chemistry>

Supplementary exam: None

Subminimum for November Exam: A subminimum of 50% in each of the research project and November theory examination, respectively, must be attained to pass Chemistry Honours.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

CENTRE FOR HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH, TEACHING AND LEARNING (CHERTL)

Associate Professor and Head of Department

JE Vorster, BA(Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

AI Hlengwa, NDip, BTech(Technikon Natal),
MEd(Melbourne), PhD(Rhodes)

N Pallitt, BA(Hons), MA, PhD, PGDip(HE)(UCT)

Lecturers

A Adams, NDE(Bellville College of Education),
BA(Hons), MA(UWC), HD HET(CPUT),
PhD(Rhodes)

M Booï, BA(Hons)(NMU), MA(Rhodes)

N Kramm, BA(Hons), MA(Stell)

K Vorster, BA, BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

Extended Studies Unit

Lecturers

N Babeli, BSS, BSoc Sci (Hons), MSS(Rhodes)

Z Dana, BA (Hons), MA(Rhodes)

OS Gotori, BCom(Rhodes), PGDip(ASS)
(UNISA), CA(SA)

S Mawonga, BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

A Matiwané, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

R Powell, BSc, BSc(Hons), MSc(UKZN), PhD
(Rhodes)

J Reynolds, BA(Hons), MA, PGDHE (Rhodes),
DELTA (Cantab)

Junior Lecturer

A Magadza, NDip, HNDip (KPTC)

Honorary Professors

V Bozalek, BA(Wits), MSc Sci(UCT)
PhD(Utrecht)

K Luckett, PGCE(Oxon), PGC(Cantab), BEd,
BA(UCT), MA(Natal), DPhil(Stell)

Research associates

R Chiappa, BA(Hons)(USACH), MEd,
PhD(Washington)

S Clarence, BA(Hons)(UKZN), MA(York),
PhD(Rhodes)

C Knowles, BA(UPE), HDE(UCT), MA,
PGDip(HE)(Rhodes)

MAL Blackie, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons),
PhD(UCT), PhD(Stell)

K Maton, BA(Hons), MPhil, PhD(Cantab)

E Muthama, BEd(Hons), PGDipEd, MEd(UCT),
PhD(Rhodes)

MT Moyo, BA(UniZulu), BA(Hons)(UKZN),
MCom(UniZulu), PhD(Rhodes)

In addition to functioning as an academic department offering qualifications, the Centre is also a resource for the University in support of the achievement of its mission and vision. To this end, it is involved in the promotion and assurance of quality in relation to teaching and learning and the development of academic staff as professional educators. Educational Technology Specialists in the Centre provide support for and manage RUConnected (Learning Management System). The Educational Technology team further supports learning technologies to enable blended and online teaching and learning. The team supports academics by providing academic development opportunities to enable blended and online course design and technology integration. The Educational Technology Specialists also undertake research about the use of educational technologies in Higher Education, contribute to policy development and provide advice on online education for applications for accreditation of new programmes.

The Centre also incorporates an Extended Studies Unit which is responsible for the development, co-ordination and teaching of four-year degrees in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science.

The Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning specialises in the study of the field of higher education. The Centre offers programmes leading to a range of qualifications in higher education including:

- Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (Lecturers)
- Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (Academic Developers)
- Master of Education
- Doctor of Philosophy

CHERTL staff also undertake research into higher education.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

Commerce Extended Studies Programme

This programme is intended to supplement the instruction of major subjects within the Commerce Faculty. Students enrolled in the Commerce Extended Studies Programme receive additional literacy and numerical instruction via extended, augmented or developmental courses. Students, after successfully completing the two years of the programme, are awarded with 165 SAQA credits and may proceed to the regular degree streams – BCom, BEco - offered by the Faculty.

Courses include:

Foundation Phase Year One	
First Semester	Second Semester
Accounting 1F	Accounting 1F
Theory of Finance	Theory of Finance
Management 101	Management 102
Management 101 (Augmented)	Management 102 (Augmented)
Introduction to Computers	
Foundation Phase Year Two	
First Semester	Second Semester
Accounting 1G	Accounting 1G
Computer Science 112F	Computer Science 112F
Commercial Law 101	Commercial Law 102
Economics 101	Economics 102
Economics 101 (Augmented)	Statistics 1C2

The Extended Studies Unit offers the following courses:

Accounting 1F, Accounting 1G, Introduction to Computers and Computer Science 11F.

Accounting 1F and 1G

Accounting 1F and 1G are equivalent to Accounting 101 and 102 (see Calendar entry for Department of Accounting), but each is presented in Extended mode over a full year:

Accounting 1F (ACC 1F)

First-year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: See Accounting 101

DP Requirements: attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend at least 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all tutorial assignments (these must be handed in on time, complete and of an acceptable standard); write all formal tests and obtain an average mark of at least 35% of all the formal tests; obtain at least 35% in the June examination.

Assessment: first semester class record counts 3%; June examination counts 12%; second semester class record counts 25%; November examination counts 60%

Supplementary examination: Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the supplementary examination.

Accounting 1G (ACC 1G)

First-year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: Acc 1F

Course description: See Accounting 102

DP Requirements: attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend at least 80% of the tutorial sessions; hand in 100% of all tutorial assignments (these must be handed in on time, complete and of an acceptable standard); write all formal tests and obtain an average mark of at least 35% of all the formal tests; obtain at least 35% in the June examination.

Assessment: first semester class record counts 3%; June examination counts 12%; second semester class record counts 20%; November examination counts 65%

Supplementary examination: Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the supplementary examination.

Introduction to Computers

Introduction to Computers is a fully foundational course. Students undertaking this course will be prepared for Computer Science 112, which is a prerequisite course for Information Systems 2, which is important for any student completing a Commerce degree.

Introduction to Computers (INT ICT)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: introduction to the computing environment; use of the Internet; use of email; introduction to information systems including their importance and use in society; impact of computing on society; ethics in computing; introduction to word processing, spreadsheets and databases.

DP Requirements: attend at least 80% of all lectures; attend at least 80% of the practical sessions; hand in 100% of all practical assignments (these must be handed in on time, complete and of an acceptable standard) and maintain an average mark of at least 40%; write all formal tests and obtain an average mark of at least 40% for all the formal tests.

Assessment: Class record (calculated from the results of practicals and test assessments) counts 40%, final examination (theory and practical components assessed in one examination, written in a computer laboratory) counts 60%.

Supplementary examination: Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the Supplementary examination.

Computer Science 112F

Computer Science 112F is equivalent to Computer Science 112 (See Calendar entry for Department of Computer Science), but presented in Extended mode over a full year:

Computer Science 112F (CSC 112F)

First-year, full-year course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: See Computer Science 112

DP Requirements: attend at least 80% of the class and practical sessions; maintain an average of at least 40% for practicals and achieve an average of at least 40% for tests.

Assessment: first semester class record counts 10%; June examination counts 10%; second semester class record counts 10%; November examination counts 70%.

Supplementary examination: Students who attain between 40% and 49% for their final mark may sit the supplementary examination.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Faculty of Science Extended Studies Programme extends over four years, the first year of which comprises a foundation phase.

Courses include:

Foundation Phase Year	
First Semester	Second Semester
Computer Skills for Science	Computer Skills for Science
Mathematics 1F	Mathematics 1F
Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods	Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods

The Extended Studies Unit offers the following courses:

Computer Skills for Science, Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods.

Computer Skills for Science

Computer Skills for Science comprises necessary computing skills for Science students including basic computer concepts, the Internet, Microsoft Office, Web designing, developing the fundamentals of programming and understanding basic information systems theory:

Computer Skills for Science (CSC 1S)

First-year, year-long course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: The course covers basic computer concepts, the Internet, Microsoft Office, web designing, developing the fundamentals of programming and understanding basic information systems theory. The course, which has six contact periods per week, is taught solely in the computer laboratories in an interactive, hands-on manner. Four of the weekly contact periods are used for teaching new material, and two are practical periods used to consolidate course content.

DP Requirements:

- Achieve 40% for practicals
- Achieve at least 40% for the class mark.
- Attend 80% of the class and practical sessions.

No extensions will be granted for tests, but you may be given an average at the end of the second semester if you have been granted a leave of absence. Practical, assignments and tests missed without leave of absence will gain a mark of zero (0). It is in your best interests to ensure that you hand in all your practical assignments and write all tests, otherwise, you will endanger your chances of

achieving the minimum requirements as stated above.

Assessment: June class record 20%, June exam 20% (practical and theory), November class record 30%, November examination 30%

Supplementary exam: A 40-49% for the final course mark will result in a student being allowed to write a supplementary examination.

Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods

Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods is an integrated and multidisciplinary course where students are exposed to scientific concepts and methods commonly encountered in science:

Introduction to Science Concepts and Methods (ISCM 1F)

First-year, year-long course (NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This is an integrated and multidisciplinary course where students are exposed to scientific concepts and methods commonly encountered in science. Academic staff from disciplines such as Botany, Chemistry, Geography, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, and Physics contribute to the course, in the form of lectures and practicals. Two lecturers (a science lecturer and an academic literacy lecturer) ensure continuity within and between concepts throughout the year. This is done through interactive lectures and tutorials that augment the content provided by the mainstream discipline lecturers and integrate scientific and academic literacies into the offerings of each concept. The course has 16 contact periods per week.

DP requirements:

- Write all tests
- Submit all assessments on time (late work 5% deducted per day, after 3 days a mark of zero)
- Attend 90% of lectures, and 100% of tutorials and practicals
- Achieve at least 40% for the class mark

If a student is sick, or for some other major reason they cannot complete a tutorial, test, lecture or assignment, they need to submit a Leave of Absence (LOA) form. The student will still be required to complete assignments and write make-up tests.

Assessment: June class record 20%, June examination 20%, November class record 30%, November examination 30%

Supplementary exam: A 40-49% for the final course mark will result in a student being allowed to write a supplementary examination.

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES EXTENDED STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Faculty of Humanities Extended Studies Programme extends over one year and accommodates students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of BA, BSocSc or BJourn. There are two streams, with different combinations of a pair of augmented mainstream courses available. Students, in consultation with Extended Studies lecturers, select the stream they want to join.

Courses include:

Foundation Phase Year	
First Semester	Second Semester
Academic and Computer Literacies	Academic and Computer Literacies
Any two courses from: Anthropology, Journalism and Media Studies, Politics and Sociology. PLUS the corresponding Extended Studies support course for each course selected: Anthropology Extended Studies, Journalism and Media Studies Extended Studies, Politics Extended Studies and Sociology Extended Studies.	A continuation of the same two courses selected from: Anthropology, Journalism and Media Studies, Politics and Sociology. PLUS a continuation of the same corresponding Extended Studies support course for each course selected: Anthropology Extended Studies, Journalism and Media Studies Extended Studies, Politics Extended Studies and Sociology Extended Studies.

The Extended Studies Unit offers the following courses:

Academic and Computer Literacies.

Academic and Computer Literacies

Academic and Computer Literacies is a two-semester course designed to equip students with supportive academic skills. Academic Literacy introduces students to writing, reading, referencing and research skills; Information Literacy introduces students to finding appropriate literature in the library and online; and Computer Literacy aims to build confidence and familiarity with computers. This course will equip students with computer skills required at university and beyond. As part of their practical work, students will predominantly work with a computer for purposes of developing and fostering computer skills. Students undertaking this course will be prepared to face some of the computer literacy challenges facing students entering tertiary education with or without computer skills.

Academic and Computer Literacies (ACL 1)

First-year, year-long course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: Develop and foster computer skills using a variety of home and office applications including word processing, spreadsheets, PowerPoint and databases.

DP Requirements:

- Achieve 40% for practicals
- Achieve at least 40% for the class mark.
- Attend 80% of the class and practical sessions and submit all assignments.

No extensions will be granted for due assignments without a valid leave of absence.

Assessment: June class record 9%, June exam 21% (practical and theory), November class record 49%, November examination 21%

Supplementary examination: A 45-49% for the final course mark will result in a student being allowed to write a supplementary examination.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION [PGDIP (HE)]

The purpose of the Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDip (HE)) is to facilitate the professional development of lecturers as reflexive practitioners in higher education by developing their knowledge of Higher Education (HE) as a field of study. The programme is designed to enhance participants' competence in facilitating, enabling and assessing students' learning. It

provides professional accreditation for HE practitioners. Shifts in higher education around globalisation and transformation imperatives have increased expectations that academics should negotiate new challenges and identities. These international changes have particular nuances in the South African context where historical disadvantage, social justice and transformation need to be redressed. This course aims to strengthen lecturers' ability to respond meaningfully to these challenges and to meet the learning needs of their students.

The Centre offers two Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education (PGDip (HE)) programmes:

- one for university lecturers
- one for academic developers

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION [PGDIP (HE)] FOR ACADEMICS

The Diploma is registered as a NQF level 8, 120 credit qualification on the HEQSF. Rhodes University is a registered provider for the course and the qualification is awarded by the Rhodes Education Faculty. Participants must complete normal registration procedures through the Faculty of Education at the beginning of each year.

Structure of the Diploma

In order to obtain the qualification participants are required to meet the outcomes of five compulsory modules.

Becoming a Reflective Practitioner in Higher Education: 9201024 (15 credits)

The purpose of this module is to provide an overview of the PGDip (HE) and to introduce participants to the field of higher education studies (HES). Higher Education is contextualised so that participants are able to reflect on and articulate their beliefs about teaching and their understanding of how students learn in their disciplines. They are introduced to criticality, reflexivity and praxis as core practices in the course.

Learning and Teaching in Higher Education: 9201018 (30 credits)

The purpose of this module is through participants' reflection and critical practice, to deepen their understanding of the nature of learning in higher education and to gain a practical understanding of the ways in which to facilitate students' access to knowledge in the disciplines.

Curriculum Development: 9201019 (30 credits)

The purpose of this module is to develop participants' theoretical understanding of the different approaches to curriculum development in higher education and to enable them to design, interpret and implement curricula that are aligned to the HEQSF.

Assessment of and for Student Learning: 9201020 (30 credits)

The purpose of this module is to deepen participants' theoretical understanding of assessment and to enable the informed implementation of assessment principles and processes into their practice.

Evaluation of Teaching and Courses: 9201021 (15 credits)

The purpose of this module is to engage with the theories and principles of evaluation in higher education, thus enabling participants to evaluate their own practice as educators.

Assessment of the course

The course as a whole will be assessed by means of an integrated teaching portfolio. Participants will be required to submit an assignment on completion of each module. The submission of these assignments constitutes a DP requirement for the course. The objective of the assignments is to provide formative assessment to support the participants in the building of the teaching portfolio and meeting the outcomes of the qualification, appropriate to the purpose, exit level outcomes and HEQSF level of the PGDip (HE) qualification.

A candidate may only be allowed to proceed to Year 2 if they have passed at least two modules in Year 1.

Participants are required to submit their electronic portfolios in November of the second year of their

studies in order to graduate in April of the following year. The portfolio will be subject to internal, as well as external, examination. A defence of the portfolio may be required.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION [PGDIP (HE)] FOR ACADEMIC DEVELOPERS

The Diploma is registered as a NQF level 8, 120 credit qualification on the HEQSF. Participants must complete normal registration procedures through the Faculty of Education at the beginning of each year. The purpose of this Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education is to advance academic developers' knowledge of higher education as a field of study and to enable them to conceptualise, design and implement formal and informal academic development initiatives appropriate to their contexts and the challenges facing contemporary South African higher education.

Structure of the course

In order to obtain the qualification participants are required to meet the outcomes of six compulsory modules (20 credits each). The total credits for the course are thus 120 credits.

The Higher Education Context: 9201011 (20 credits)

The purpose of the module is to enable participants to analyse the higher education context (at international, national, departmental and disciplinary levels) in order to understand specific institutional academic development needs (including the developmental needs of academic staff) in their contexts.

Teaching and Learning in Higher Education: 9201014 (20 credits)

The purpose of this module is to develop participants' knowledge of the nature of student learning in higher education and to enable them to contribute to driving a teaching and learning agenda in their institutions.

Curriculum Development: 9201015 (20 credits)

The purpose of this module is to enable participants to conceptualise the role of academic development (and their role) in relation to the design and quality assurance of HEQSF-aligned curricula (at all levels) in their institutions.

Assessment of Student Learning: 9201016 (20 credits)

The purpose of this module is to enable participants to conceptualise the role of academic development (and their role) in relation to the design, implementation and quality assurance of student learning in their institutions.

Development, Enhancement and Assurance of Quality Teaching and Learning: 9201012 (20 credits)

The purpose of this module is to enable participants to critically examine the notion of quality assurance in higher education. In addition, the module will help participants to use evaluation processes to enhance, develop and assure the quality of teaching and learning appropriate to their contexts.

Conceptualising and Designing Contextually Appropriate Academic Development Initiatives: 9201013 (20 credits)

The purpose of this module is to integrate ideas and strategies conceptualised over the course of the Diploma thus far. In particular the module focuses on participants designing principled and theoretically sound academic development initiatives appropriate to their institutional contexts

Assessment

Participants will be required to complete module tasks as well as an integrated final assignment for each module which will require them to document the design and implementation of strategies for academic/higher education development initiatives for their institution. This assignment will include inter alia discussion of theories and principles underpinning the proposed initiatives. The objective of the assignments is to provide formative assessment to support the participants in the building of an integrated teaching portfolio and meeting the outcomes of the qualification appropriate to the purpose, exit level outcomes and HEQSF level of the PGDip (HE) qualification.

A candidate may only be allowed to proceed to Year 2 if they have passed at least two modules in Year 1.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN HIGHER EDUCATION COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT [PGDip (CE)]

Rhodes University Community Engagement (RUCE) division offers the PGDip (CE) which is accredited through the Faculty of Education at Rhodes University. This postgraduate professional development qualification is the first of its kind to be offered in South Africa. It is intended to educate and prepare academia, community engagement (CE) practitioners/administrators, civil society organisation representatives, post-graduate students seeking a career in community engagement, Corporate Social Responsibility personnel, and other relevant role players to: i) better understand their individual and collective roles and responsibilities in a reimagined higher education context that is required to contribute to the social and economic development of communities in South Africa and ii) imbue students with attributes to cope with a complex, dynamic and uncertain world and contribute to society as socially responsible active citizens.

The qualification is at NQF Level 8 and equals 120 credits. It is offered over a duration of 2 years. Participants must complete normal registration procedures through the Faculty of Education at the beginning of each year.

Structure of the PGDip(CE)

The PGDip (CE) comprises four theoretical modules, and two practice based modules: a Community Engagement Praxis project, and a Community Based Participatory Research Project. All six modules are compulsory. There are no elective modules. However, students can choose between a volunteerism or community-based service-learning project as their CE praxis exercise in Module 5.

The modules of the programme are offered over the two years as follows:

Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education Community Education PGDip(CE)					
Course code	Mnemonic	Course Name	Year	NQF Level	Credits
		Higher Education & Community Engagement	1	8	15
		Volunteerism & Active Citizenry	1	8	15
		Community Based Service Learning	1	8	15
		Engaged Research: Community Based Participatory Research	1	8	15
		Community Engagement Praxis	2	8	30
		Community Based Participatory Research Project	2	8	30

The student must pass the four theoretical modules in the first year (one module per term) to proceed to the CE Praxis and CBPR project modules, which can be combined in the following year. The sequence of the modules is according to the above table.

Module 1: Higher Education & Community Engagement (15 credits)

The aim of this module is to provide students with knowledge on CE as a core function of higher education in South Africa and critically prepare them for participation in CE. The module sets the foundation for the rest of the course and connects students to the other modules as the building blocks of higher education community engagement. It asks pertinent questions on the purpose of higher education against a background of the history and current imperatives of higher education; on CE as a core function of higher education and its relationship to teaching, learning and research; the contribution of CE to the developmental and transformative roles of universities in democratic South Africa; the kind of students that universities need to produce and on the nature of community-university partnerships. This module provides students with the relevant theoretical knowledge, values, skills and attributes, which will establish the path for reflection and integration of theory and praxis in the other modules.

Module 2: Volunteerism & Active Citizenry (15 credits)

The purpose of this module is to develop and enhance students' understandings of volunteerism, its value and its role in developing active and engaged citizens by grounding volunteerism in theory and praxis. Good quality volunteer programmes are an essential component of realising the CE goals/purpose of higher education and opens up a broad spectrum of opportunities to community and university stakeholders. This module exposes students to the theories and practicalities in volunteerism and active citizenry. It supports the development of good quality volunteerism programmes in HEIs that promote opportunities for other students to contribute to solving social issues and promote personal and institutional social responsibility. This module provides opportunities for critical self-awareness and self-development as students interact with other students and the wider university community.

Module 3: Community Based Service Learning (15 credits)

Service-learning has gained increasing attention from different disciplines across universities. It helps students to grow as citizens, and communities benefit from an active and eager-to-learn-group working within their organisations towards a mutually agreed upon goal; universities in turn enhance their social responsiveness. Critical service-learning proposes a synergy between academic learning and service activities with local communities. This module focuses on the relationship between discipline-based knowledge

in higher education and its contribution to community development through students' engagement with the community. Creating a space where both learning and service take place in mutually beneficial and transformative ways poses a unique set of challenges for learning and teaching. The What, Why, How module is designed to support the development of innovative, impactful and transformative community-based service-learning courses, as well as cultivating critically reflexive engaged lecturers and building the knowledge of community partners on service-learning.

Module 4: Engaged Research: Community Based Participatory Research (15 credits)

Engaged Research is research that is responsive to societal challenges and contributes directly to the public good by influencing social change. Engaged Research methodologies and approaches focus on participatory or collaborative engagement with the community during the research process with the aim of co-creating new knowledge and bringing about change, being locally responsive and globally engaged. This module focuses on engaged research in the form of community based participatory research, which has the aim of co-creating knowledge collaboratively with community partners. The module provides participants with an understanding of the theoretical and conceptual roots of, methodology and approaches to community based participatory research. Students will receive guidance on the design and implementation of an engaged research project.

Module 5: Community Engagement Praxis (30 credits) and

Module 6: Community Based Participatory Research Project (30 credits):

Module 5 and Module 6 are praxis modules. Their purpose is to provide students with the opportunity to integrate theory with practice; engage with community partners and contribute to their own learning and the learning of community partners through practical projects. Students are supported to implement EITHER a community-based service-learning course (Module 5) OR a volunteering project (Module 5) AND a community based participatory research project (Module 6). The

praxis modules are developmental in nature, that is, students' participation in the CBPR project should be a progressive continuation of the CE Praxis module.

Assessment

The PGDip(CE) assessment will be both formative and summative, using a range of methods to assess foundational, practical and reflective competencies. The summative assessment will primarily take the form of individual written tasks which range from essay-type assignments to a research report. Oral assessments will be utilised in the form of a seminar for the theoretical and praxis modules.

Whilst Modules 1-4 (15-credit modules) have only one summative assessment task each, a minimum of one formative assessment task will be integrated into these processes to provide formative feedback to students.

Module 5: CE Praxis module (30 credits) assessment will include a report and a seminar.

Modules 6: CBPR project Module (30 credits) will be assessed formatively (in the form of short reports) and summatively, in the form of a comprehensive research report.

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

(Coursework NQF level 9, 90 credits; Thesis NQF level 9, 90 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY RESEARCH

(Thesis NQF level 9, 180 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information.

COMPUTER SCIENCE

Professor and Head of Department

GC Wells, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Bristol), MICS

Professor

KL Bradshaw, BSc(Inf Sys), BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

Associate Professors

N Dlodlo, MSc (Leningrad Eng and Econ Institute), PhD (LIMU)

DL Brown, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (UWC), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

J Connan, BSc, MSc (Stell)

YM Motara, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

ZS Shibeshi, BSc, MSc (AAU), PhD (Rhodes)

SD Chindipha, BSc (Malawi), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

JM van Staden, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

MJ Marais, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

Professors Emeriti

PD Terry, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab), FICS

EP Wentworth, PhD (UPE), FICS

A Terzoli, Laurea in Physics (Univ of Pavia)

Associate Professor Emeriti

RJ Foss, BSc (Natal), MSc (UNISA), PhD (Rhodes)

P Machanick, BSc (Natal), MSc (Wits), PhD (UCT)

Visiting Professor

BVW Irwin, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes), CISSP

Senior Research Associate

BW Watson, BMath, BMath (Hons) (Waterloo), PhD (Eindhoven), PhD (UP)

Research Associate

A Herbert, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Computer Science (CSC) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BSc (InfSys), BCom, BJourn, BA and BEcon.

To major in Computer Science, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CSC 1, CSC 2, CSC 3, either MAM 101 (or MAM 1) or MST 102. See Rule S.23.

Candidates who aim to major in Computer Science are advised to register for the ancillary course in Mathematics or Statistics in their first or second year

of study; permission will not normally be granted to repeat a prerequisite course concurrently with CSC 301 and CSC 302.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the fields of Computing and Information Systems in general is drawn to the degree of BSc (Information Systems), in which Computer Science and Information Systems are the usual major subjects, supported by other appropriate courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The courses offered in Computer Science focus on the technology, engineering, algorithmic and professional topics of computing, such as programming, software development, operating systems, databases, networking, translators, artificial intelligence, distributed computing, information security, and formal computer science theory. Management and organisational aspects of computing are handled more specifically in courses offered by the Department of Information Systems, and aspects such as computer and digital electronics and hardware are complemented by courses offered in the Department of Physics and Electronics. In all courses students are required to perform practical work on the computer, the marks for which might count towards the final assessment. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/computerscience> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

There are four first-year courses in Computer Science, each contributing a semester-course towards a degree.

CSC 101 is offered in the first semester only, and leads on to CSC 102 in the second semester. This is the conventional first year combination, which prepares students for further study in the subject. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CSC 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Computer Science must obtain both CSC 101 and CSC 102. *A minimum of a level 5*

rating in Mathematics on the NSC or an equivalent Mathematics qualification is a prerequisite for admission to CSC 101.

CSC 1L1 (Introduction to ICT) is offered in the first semester, and is intended as a terminal course.

CSC 112 is offered in the second semester and is the prerequisite for Information Systems 201.

A candidate is not allowed to obtain CSC 1L1 and CSC 1S, offered by the Science Extended Studies Programme.

A candidate may also not obtain CSC 101 and CSC 1L1, or CSC 1L1 and CSC 112.

CSC 1L1: Introduction to ICT

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: CSC 1L1 is intended as a non-continuing course for students who require computing principles and skills to support their activities in other disciplines. Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, publishing and presentations, spreadsheets, other software packages, networks, the Internet, and social issues. Practical submissions and class tests collectively contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 50% practical average

Assessment: Class record 25%, Examinations 75%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 112 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

CSC 112: Business Problem Solving with Computers

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: CSC 112 is the first course for students who intend to continue to INF 201, and is offered in the second semester. The course introduces

students to a modern computing environment with an understanding of ethical considerations, and teaches skills that enable the application of computers to typical business problems. These skills include internet-based skills for web page creation and knowledge discovery, as well as problem solving and knowledge retrieval skills using tools such as spreadsheets. Business problem solving and IS Theory are introduced, and contextualised by an overview of the place of IT in a typical organization.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 50% practical average

Assessment: Class record 25%, Examinations 75%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 112 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

CSC 101: Problem Solving and Introductory Programming

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: At least a level 5 rating in Mathematics on the NSC or an equivalent Mathematics qualification

Co-requisite: Either MAM 101 (or MAM 1) or MST 102

Course description: This course presents basic problem-solving techniques with an emphasis on logical, algorithmic and computational processes, using a relevant programming language. Students are introduced to programming concepts, including: output, input, variables, types, operators and operands, debugging, iteration, modules, functions, selection, strings, lists and files.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 40% practical average

Assessment: Class record 20%, Examinations 80%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 101 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination. A minimum of 40%

for CSC 101 (without any failed sub-minima) is required to aggregate with CSC 102 for a continuing pass in Computer Science.

CSC 102: Intermediate Programming

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: CSC 101 or at least 40% for CSC 101 if obtained in same calendar year

Co-requisite: Either MAM 101 (or MAM 1) or MST 102

Course description: This course further develops programming skills, and deals with algorithms, object-oriented principles and practices, the software development life cycle, and more advanced language features, in the scope of a relevant programming language.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 40% practical average

Assessment: Class record 20%, Examinations 80%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

A minimum of 40% for CSC 102 (without any failed sub-minima) is required to aggregate with CSC 101 for a non-continuing (NCR) pass in Computer Science.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

There are two second-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 201 is offered in the first semester and CSC 202 in the second semester. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CSC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Practical submissions and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Computer Science 1 (CSC 101 and CSC 102) is required before a student may register for second year courses.

The second year of Computer Science is devoted to foundational computing and system design concepts.

CSC 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CSC 101 and CSC 102

Course description: Machine organization and low-level programming; advanced data structures and data abstraction; object-oriented principles; advanced programming concepts. The practical work covers low and high-level imperative programming and design principles.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 40% practical average

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examinations 70%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination. Aggregation with CSC 202 requires 40% in CSC 201 (without any failed sub-minima).

CSC 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CSC 201 or 40% for CSC 201 if obtained in same calendar year

Course description: Theoretical foundations of computing; database theory and query languages; the theory and practice of operating systems; and software development practices. The practical work covers the use of software engineering techniques, operating systems, and database design and query.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 40% practical average

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examinations 70%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination. Aggregation with

CSC 201 requires 40% in CSC 202 (without any failed sub-minima).

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

There are three third-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 302 and CSC 303 (not offered in 2026) are normally held in the first semester and CSC 301 in the second semester, but the department reserves the right to alter this ordering, according to timetable constraints. Each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% for CSC 301 and CSC 302 will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course CSC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component.

A major in Computer Science requires both CSC 301 and CSC 302, or an aggregate course for CSC3. Practical submissions and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science (CSC 2) and in either MAM 101 (or MAM 1) or MST 102 is required before a student may register for CSC 301 or CSC 302. Credit in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 303. The student should also be in his/her third year of study.

The third-year of Computer Science is devoted to systems programs, web programming, functional programming, networking and machine learning.

CSC 301

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: CSC 2

Pre-requisite: Either MAM 101 (or MAM 1) or MST 102

Course description: Web and Internet technologies; theory and implementation of computer languages. Practical work reinforces these aspects of application development and systems programming.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 40% practical average

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examinations 70%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination. Aggregation with CSC 302 requires 40% in CSC.301 (without any failed sub-minima).

CSC 302

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: CSC 2

Pre-requisite: Either MAM 101 (or MAM 1) or MST 102

Course description: Data communications and computer networks; functional programming; machine learning.

DP requirements: 40% test average and 40% practical average

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examinations 70%

Supplementary exam: 40–49%

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each summative examination. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for CSC 302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination. Aggregation with CSC 301 requires 40% in CSC 302 (without any failed sub-minima).

CSC 303

This course will not be offered in 2026.

Course description: Data analytics, parallel patterns, and machine learning.

COMPUTER SCIENCE HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: Programming and computing ability equivalent to CSC 3 and mathematics equivalent to pre-requisite for CSC 3.

Course description: The course consists of a selection of six taught modules, a compulsory module in project management and a large research project. Each taught module focuses on the advanced treatment of one of the following topics (the list is not exhaustive and not all topics are offered in every calendar year): advanced functional programming;

image processing; networks and data communications; distributed and parallel processing; computer security; machine learning; artificial intelligence; data analytics; general purpose parallel computing using GPUs; advanced computer architecture; microcomputer hardware and interfacing; software and hardware engineering in low resource settings; systems analysis and design methodologies; computer modelling; and formal aspects of computer science. With the approval of the Head of Department, the course may include a module from Electronics, Information Systems, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, or any other cognate Department.

DP requirements: Each module's DP requirements are set by the respective lecturer. For the course DP, a student must obtain a DP in all chosen modules and must pass at least half of the modules written in the mid-year examinations.

Assessment: 6 x 10% modules, 10% Project Management module, 30% Project

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum: A sub-minimum of 40% is required in each module's summative examination. A student

obtaining less than this sub-minimum will be deemed to have failed the respective module irrespective of their final combined mark for the module. A student must normally pass all modules and the project.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Current areas of specialisation are data analytics, machine learning, image processing, computer security, functional programming, parallel and distributed processing, computer modelling and simulation, real-time distributed multimedia, networking, computer science education, and ICT for development. The coursework MSc specialising in Information Security is not currently being offered.

More information on research can be found on the departmental web site.

DRAMA

Associate Professor and Head of Department

H Gehring, BA, HDE (UFS), MA (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

A Parker, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

N Sibanda, BA (Hons) (University of Zimbabwe), MA, PhD (UKZN)

Lecturers

S Mokuku, MA (Wits)

R Murray, PhD (Rhodes)

M Ndebele, MA (Wits)

Professors Emeriti

AF Buckland, BA, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

GE Gordon, BA (Hons) (Natal), MA (CNAA, Great Britain)

J Finestone-Praeg, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Drama is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Drama courses are designed to give wide experience in and appreciation of the creative and technical skills associated with theatre. The courses on offer are: acting, creative writing, movement, design, physical theatre, stage management, theatre-making, and voice. On a personal level, drama encourages growth, self-esteem and confidence by developing communication, interpersonal and collaborative skills. All courses have a theoretical component including literary, critical and performance studies. Professional theatre practitioners are periodically invited to contribute to the production and learning programme. As the department is relatively small, there are ample opportunities in theatre-making and choreography as well as in performance and stage management. Students are required to take part in the production, community and learning activities of the department.

The department also hosts two acclaimed theatre companies: the First Physical Theatre Company and the Ubom! Eastern Cape Drama Company.

The department participates extensively in the National Arts Festival, Regional Schools' Festivals, the National Schools' Festival, and runs MEQOQO Playback Theatre Collective.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Drama 1 (DRA 1)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entry Requirements: None

Course Description:

Theatre Studies

A study of significant developments and current directions in the theatre using play texts, contextual studies, oral traditions, theories of performance, and visual documentation.

Theatre Practice

Voice and Communication Skills, Theatre Making and Physical Theatre.

DP Requirements: Students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary Exam: Final mark 40 - 49%.

No supplementary examinations for practical examinations.

Drama 2 (DRA 2)

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entry Requirements: Drama 1

Course Description:

Theatre Studies

A study of significant developments in theatre and performance, including historical and critical studies, play texts and current theatre trends

Theatre Practice

Voice and Communication Skills, Physical Theatre, Acting, Theatre for Young Audiences and Costume Design for Performance.

DP Requirements: Students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary Exam: Final mark 40 - 49% (no supplementary examinations for practical examinations)

Drama 3 (DRA 3)

Third-year, full-year course
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entry Requirements: Drama 2

Course Description:

Theatre Studies

The thematic study of significant developments in twentieth century theatre including historical studies, developments in the related arts, playtexts, contemporary theories of theatre, theatre design, and dance theatre.

Theatre Practice

Students are required to undertake TWO of the following electives: Acting, Applied Theatre, Choreography on Site, Directing for the Theatre, Physical Theatre, Theatre Design, Theatre Technology and Writing for Performance or any other practical approved by the Head of Department.

Not all electives are offered in any one academic year.

DP Requirements: students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary Exam: Final mark 40 - 49% (no supplementary examinations for practical examinations)

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Candidates are required to complete FIVE papers in consultation with the Head of Department. Paper 1 is compulsory and ensures that every student completes at least 50% theory. A student chooses a further FOUR papers, in any combination, from those offered in any one year. *Not all papers are offered in any one academic year. The weighting of papers is subject to change.*

GROUP A

Paper 1 Performance Studies (compulsory)

Final Assessment: One extended research essay and a course record mark

Paper 2 Dramatic Literature

Final Assessment: Two research essays and a course record mark.

GROUP B

Paper 4 Applied Theatre

Paper 5 Directing

Paper 6 Choreography

Paper 7 Physical Performance

Final Assessment: A practical examination, three research essays and a course record mark.

GROUP C

Paper 8 Acting

Paper 9 Performance Design and Scenography

Paper 10 Writing for Performance

Final Assessment: A major practical project; a research essay, and a course record mark.

Paper 11 Any other paper approved by the Head of the Department.

Not all papers are offered in any one academic year.

DP Requirements: students must attend 70% of all theatre studies classes. Students must attend ALL practical classes.

Supplementary Exam: Final mark 40 - 49%.

No supplementary examinations for practical examinations.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

There are three possible options by which the Master's degree may be taken:

1. combination of coursework, thesis project and half thesis, or
2. combination of coursework, practical thesis project, and research report or
3. by thesis only.

The options are determined in consultation with the Head of Department.

Master's by coursework

Creative Practice Specialisations:

Candidates will select one specialisation from the following: Applied Theatre, Choreography, Contemporary Performance, Writing for Performance, Directing, Interdisciplinary Performance Practice or another specialisation in consultation with the Head of Department.

Note: Not all specialisations are offered in any one year.

Performance Research

This core course is required for all first-year Master's students. Topics include areas relevant to research practice in the performing arts, such as practice as research, reflective writing, performative writing, research methodologies, applied case studies, interdisciplinary theatre interventions, integrated and interactive collaborations, and research ethics.

Candidates are required to submit two research papers (8000–10000 words), in their first year of study.

Thesis Project

The candidate can select one of the following options:

1. Thesis Project to be completed at the end of the first year followed by a half thesis (30,000 words) in the second year.
2. Thesis Project to be completed in June of the second year of study followed by a Research Report in support of the research practice (12000 - 15000 words).

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

The PhD in Drama is offered by a thesis, which may be practice-based.

ECONOMICS AND ECONOMIC HISTORY

Professor and Head of Department

JD Snowball, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor and Deputy Head of Department

SA Khumalo, MCom, DCom (UFH)

Professor

MJ Aziakpono, MSc (Ibadan), PhD (UFS)

Professors Emeriti

GG Antrobus, MSc (Agric) (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

AP Faure, MA (US), DPhil (US), PhD (Stell)

GCG Fraser, MCom (Rhodes), PhD Agric (Stell)

H Nel, BCom, HEd (UOFS), DCom (UPE)

Associate Professors

TE Mutambara, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

MJ Rogan, MA, PhD (UKZN)

K Sibanda, MCom, DCom (UFH)

Associate Professor Emeritus

GR Keeton, BA (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

NS Cattaneo, MSc (Rhodes)

DCA Fryer, MSc (Natal)

TJ Friederichs, MCom, PhD (Rhodes)

W McCallum, MPhil (Stell)

S Phakathi, MSc (UKZN), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

SA Bom, MCom (UFH)

N Malimba, MCom (NMU)

DV Tarentaal, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

STRUCTURE OF COURSES AND RULES

Economics is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Economics are allowed as courses for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education and Law. Post graduate studies in Economics are available through Honours, Master's and Doctoral degrees.

Economics 1

Economics 1 consists of TWO semester courses (1 per semester)

CODE	COURSE	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 101	Microeconomics	1
ECO 102	Macroeconomics	2

Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 1, provided that the courses constituting Economics 1 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12).

Economics 2

Economics 2 consists of TWO semester courses (1 per semester)

CODE	COURSE	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 201	Microeconomics	2
ECO 202	Macroeconomics	1

Credit may be obtained in either of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 2, provided that the courses constituting Economics 2 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12).

Economics 3

Economics 3 consists of FOUR half-semester modules from the following list

CODE	MODULE	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 312	International Trade Theory & Policy	1
ECO 313	Public Finance	2
ECO 314	South African Economy	2
ECO 315	Econometrics	1
ECO 316	Money, Banking & International Finance	2

ECO 317	Environmental Economics	1
ECO 318	Mathematical Economics	1
ECO 319	Any other paper approved by the Department	

Credit may be obtained in any four of the modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 3, provided that the four modules constituting Economics 3 are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two modules, with credits being obtained in the remaining two modules; or that a sub-minimum of 40% is obtained for one module, with credits being obtained for the remaining three modules (see Rule C.12).

Economics 3B consists of TWO half-semester modules (normally one per semester) from the list under Economics 3. Students registered for both Economics 3 and Economics 3B would take 6 courses (three per semester) in total.

Credit may be obtained in any of the two modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course ECO 3B, provided that the two modules constituting Economics 3B are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12).

Econometrics is strongly recommended for students planning to do Honours. The Department reserves the right to offer second- and third-year courses in either Semester 1 or Semester 2 and to withdraw any of the third-year courses.

Admission Prerequisites

Course	Admission prerequisite
ECO 201,202	Economics 1 or ECO 101 & ECO 102
ECO 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318	Economics 2 or ECO 201 & ECO 202

In addition to the above admission prerequisites, students are normally only allowed to register for third-year courses after successful completion of a total of 14 semester courses.

Economics Honours

Economics Honours consists of a research project plus SIX courses from the following:

Compulsory Courses

Code	Course	Semester offered
ECO 401	Research project	1&2
ECO 418	Microeconomics	2
ECO 403	Macroeconomics	1

Elective Courses

FOUR courses are selected from the following list

*Code	Module	Semester offered
ECO 402	Mathematical Economics	1
ECO 404	Econometrics	1
ECO 405	Monetary Economics	1
ECO 406	Growth and Technology	1
ECO 407	Financial Economics and Derivatives	2
ECO 408	Political Economy and Labour	1
ECO 409	Development Economics	2
ECO 410	Environmental and Resource Economics	2
ECO 411	Development of Capitalism in South Africa: history, theory and policy	
ECO 412	Trade and Industrial Policy	2
ECO 415	Public Finance	
ECO 416	Industrial Organisation	
ECO 417	Any other paper approved by the Department	

**Internal departmental codes only*

NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year. Economics Honours can only be taken fulltime.

ONE compulsory course and TWO elective courses will normally be taken in each semester. Examinations are written in June and November. The research project is completed over the whole year and should be handed in by the 1st of October in order to be examined in November. A student is permitted to take a paper from another department to the maximum weight of 0,2 of the total credits. Students who have not done Econometrics at the third-year level, are allowed to take ECO 315 in lieu of one of the elective Honours courses.

INTERDISCIPLINARY HONOURS DEGREE IN DEVELOPMENT STUDIES

The Department offers courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar) including Development Studies. Students should consult the Head of Department concerning available courses.

MASTER'S DEGREE IN ECONOMICS

Master's degree by research thesis

This option is available to students wishing to pursue a clearly defined field of research and where such students have the ability to work independently.

The requirement for admission is an Honours degree in Economics, normally with an average mark of at least 65%.

Master of Commerce (Financial Markets) by Coursework and Thesis

This degree is aimed specifically at a specialised career in the financial/banking sector. A minimum registration of 5 students is normally required for the degree to be offered.

The requirement for admission is an Honours degree or a four-year degree, with a strong background in Economics. A satisfactory pass in econometrics and/ or mathematical economics at

the Honours level is required. Professional experience will be taken into account.

The courses are structured over a minimum of two years, with the above career in mind and all courses are compulsory. The degree consists of:

*Code	Course	Semester offered
ECO 501	Half-Thesis (Year 1&2)	2)
ECO 507	Financial Institutions, Regulation and Monetary Policy	1
ECO 508	Paper 1: Quantitative Finance	2
ECO 508	Paper 2: Financial Econometrics	1
ECO 504	Debt & Foreign Exchange Markets	1
ECO 505	Equity & Derivative Markets	1
ECO 506	Portfolio Theory & Management	2
ECO 509	Financial Markets Industry Exams	1&2

**Internal departmental codes only*

DOCTORAL DEGREE

A PhD degree may be taken by research thesis. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record, an acceptable research proposal and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

COURSE CONTENTS

Economics 101 (ECO 101) – Microeconomics

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: Fundamental economic concepts; comparative economic systems; demand, supply and market equilibrium; elasticities of

demand and supply; consumer behaviour; production and costs; price and output determination under competitive and monopolistic conditions. The South African economy, structure and development.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due dates and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 102 (ECO 102) – Macroeconomics

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: National income accounts; index numbers; determination of national output, income and employment; money and banking; quantity theory of money; money, prices and output; unemployment; inflation; introduction to international economics.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due dates and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 201 (ECO 201) - Microeconomics

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 101 and ECO 102, or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated.

Course description: The economist's view of human nature; preferences, budgets, and consumer equilibrium; income and substitution effects; the Chicago school; production, technology and costs. Fundamentals of market structure; general equilibrium and second best; asymmetric

information; the South African labour market; oligopoly and oil; product differentiation (automobiles and airlines); globalisation.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due dates and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

ECO 202 - Macroeconomics

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 101 and ECO 102, or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated.

Course description: Measurement of macroeconomic variables; classical macroeconomics; the role of aggregate demand; money, interest and income; policy effects in the ISTR model; aggregate supply and aggregate demand; output, inflation and unemployment; the balance of payments and exchange rates; monetary and fiscal policy in the open economy; the Mundell-Fleming model; cases of imperfect and perfect capital mobility. Money and monetary policy; the role of the Central Bank; changing nature of monetary control; the budget and fiscal policy (functions of fiscal policy, expenditure issues, revenue issues, and debt and the deficit); internal balance (unemployment and inflation); external balance (the balance of payments); and the growth debate in South Africa.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit all essays on or before the due dates and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 312 (ECO 312) - International Trade Theory and Policy

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

Course description: International trade theory: the classical (Ricardian) model and extensions; neoclassical trade theory and income distribution; technology theories of trade; the Linder theory; new trade theory based on economies of scale and imperfect competition; economic growth and international trade. Trade policy: the instruments of trade policy and their effects; the arguments for protection; economic integration; trade and development; South Africa's trade policy and the World Trade Organization.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, write and submit all mini-tests, assignments, tutorials on or before the due dates and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 313 (ECO 313) - Public Finance

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

Course description: Economic basis for investment activity; public versus private goods; externalities; government intervention in the market; financing of government expenditures; effect of taxation on the economy; the budget deficit; theory and structure of taxation; provincial expenditure and intergovernmental fiscal relations.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit the term paper on or before the due date and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 314 (ECO 314) - South African Economy

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

Course description: South African economic since democracy. Overview of economic policy challenges facing South Africa against a backdrop of the economic legacy of apartheid. Examination of factors influencing economic policy decision-making, debate about policy appropriateness and available alternatives.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit the essay on or before the due date and write the test.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 315 (ECO 315) - Econometrics

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

Course description: The nature and scope of econometrics; basics of probability and statistics; the linear regression model: the two-variable model, estimation and hypothesis testing; multiple regression estimation, goodness of fit and hypothesis testing; functional forms of regression models: how to measure elasticity and the growth rate, reciprocal models; regression on dummy explanatory variables; regression analysis in practice: multicollinearity and heteroscedasticity; autocorrelation and spurious regression in economic time series data.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit the assignment on or before the due date and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40%

is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 316 (ECO 316) - Money, Banking and International Finance

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

Course description: Money and interest rates; the demand for money; interest rate behaviour; transmission mechanism; rational expectations theory (traditional, new classical and new Keynesian models); financial instruments and markets; central banking and depository institutions; foreign exchange markets and the balance of payments accounts (monetary, portfolio balance, price adjustments approaches to the external balance); national income and current account; the exchange rate systems and international monetary system, and macroeconomic policy in the open economy; contemporary issues; macroeconomic policy in South Africa.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit the assignment on or before the due date and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 317 (ECO 317) - Environmental Economics

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated.

Course description: Scope and development of environmental economics; a model of the economy and the environment; the economics of pollution; the economics of climate change; measuring economic impacts on the environment; resource

economics; sustainable development; issues and applications.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials, submit the essay on or before the due date and write the test.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Economics 318 (ECO 318) - Mathematical Economics

Third-year, quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: ECO 201 and ECO 202 or ECO 2 with ECO 201 and ECO 202 aggregated

Course description: Analytic and mathematical models in economics; linear models; Leontief input-output analysis; optimisation - single and several variables with constraints; consumer theory; demand theory; expenditure minimisation; production theory; profit maximisation; equilibrium and its basic welfare properties; dynamical models of economic processes.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%, attend all tutorials and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the examination counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

ECO 401 - Research Project

(NQF Level 8, 30 credits)

A research project of limited scope (in the form of a journal article) on an approved topic in economics to be selected by 28 February, handed in by 1 October, involving either a theoretical analysis or an application of economics. Empirical work is strongly recommended. A presentation of the results is to be made at the Departmental postgraduate conference. Candidates are encouraged to present a paper at an economics conference.

ECO 402 – Mathematical Economics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Analytic and mathematical models in economics; linear models; Leontief input-output analysis; optimisation - single and several variables with constraints; consumer theory; demand theory; expenditure minimisation; production theory; profit maximisation; equilibrium and its basic welfare properties; dynamical models of economic processes; constrained optimisation, integration and applications.

ECO 403 - Macroeconomics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Overview: South African policy formation since apartheid; The New Monetary Consensus and Financial Globalisation; Uneven development and hegemony in the global economy; the Keynesian critique of Classical economics; The long run; Embedded liberalism and neoliberalism; Sound money and functional finance; Keynes in the 1920s and developmentalism; Social democracy and the Rehn-Meidner model.

ECO 404 - Econometrics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Dynamic econometric modeling: distributed lag and autoregressive models, Granger causality; Time series econometrics: stationarity, unit root tests, cointegration, forecasting with ARIMA and VAR models; Simultaneous equation systems: simultaneous equation bias, the identification problem, indirect and two-stage least squares; Qualitative response models: LPM, logit and probit models; Panel data modeling: fixed versus random effects approaches.

ECO 405 - Monetary Economics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

The monetary sector; money and credit; monetary theory (classical, Keynesian, portfolio models and post Keynesian); the demand for money; the transmission mechanism; the money supply process; theory and application of the definition of money; monetary policy; monetary control in South Africa; monetary vs inflation targeting.

ECO 406 - Growth and Technology

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Technology and macroeconomic growth models; technical change and the economic system; the sources of innovation; the new manufacturing technologies; international differences in growth and technology; national systems of innovation; foreign direct investment and multinational corporations in developing countries; technology and industrial policy: government intervention in the market; South Africa: a case study.

ECO 407 - Financial Economics & Derivatives

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Financial markets and the economy; portfolio theory; interest rate theory; capital market theory and the valuation of assets (the capital asset pricing model and arbitrage pricing); pricing of bonds and equities; the cost of capital, corporate finance and investment; money, bond and equity markets. Types of futures contracts; pricing of futures and the futures market; options; pricing of options including the Black- Scholes model; the regulation of financial markets; banking supervision and financial market efficiency.

ECO 408 - Political Economy and Labour

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

A preliminary organising framework: US and South African segmentalism and Swedish solidarism; Economic determinism, class and social exclusion; Welfare regimes; Collective bargaining structures, class conflict, and macroeconomic considerations; Education and training systems and the ideological state apparatus; Workplace issues: voice, systems of pay, corruption; A revised organising framework: Smith and Marx.

ECO 409 - Development Economics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

The meaning and measurement of development; theories of economic development: mainstream and alternative perspectives on development; structural adjustment programmes; the post-Washington

consensus; globalisation; role of the state in development; the role of institutions in development; sustainable development; development in the 21st Century; the developmental state; South African economic policy in relation to development.

ECO 410 - Environmental and Resource Economics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

The application of economic principles to the valuation of environmental services and of degradation; the Environmental Kuznets Curve; Climate Change adaptation and mitigation; natural resource valuation issues; economic sustainability; the development of Environmental Economics and of Ecological Economics.

ECO 411 - The development of capitalism in South Africa: history, theory and policy

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

History: Global, historical and comparative dimensions; sectoral trends and history; Theory: Liberal and early revisionist perspectives; other radical alternative perspectives; Policy: Evolution of economic policies; Social policy in historical context; Policy, power and politics - economic policy challenges of the post-apartheid period: Economic policy options; Politics, ideology and power relations.

ECO 412 - Trade and Industrial Policy

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Historical background on the role of the state in development; Trade theory under imperfect competition and the case for a strategic trade and industrial policy; Industrial policy and the role of the manufacturing and services sectors in development; The articulation between macroeconomic and industrial policies; Economic concentration, competition policy and industrial development; Public procurement; Intellectual property rights; Technology, foreign direct investment and industrial policy; The WTO, the Doha Round and the shrinking of development policy space; Regional integration, industrial policy and South-South economic cooperation.

ECO 416 - Industrial Organisation

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Origins of industrial organisation: the principle of total costs, the active firm, transaction costs and the firm; Market entry barriers: product differentiation, absolute cost advantage, economies of scale, imperfections in capital markets, other barriers; Market concentration: market share, concentration ratios, Herfindahl index; The theory of contestable markets; The market structure-conduct-performance (SCP) paradigm; Porter's five forces model; the Schumpeterian hypothesis; Behavioural theory of the firm; Evolutionary theory of the firm; Anti-trust laws/competition laws; Competition policy in South Africa; Alternative theories.

ECO 418 - Microeconomics

(NQF Level 8, 15 credits)

Introduction to game theory, oligopoly and bargaining; bounded rationality and private information; moral hazard and performance incentives; risk sharing and incentive contracts, rents and efficiency, ownership and property rights; production, information costs and economic organisation; auction theory; intertemporal microeconomics; outlook on industrial organisation and on recent developments in microeconomics.

ECO 504 - Debt and foreign exchange markets

Economics of the money market, its instruments, its functions and development; role of interest rates and monetary policy role of the central bank via the two interbank markets; risk-free rates and the relationship between money market rates and other interest rates; the microstructure of money market; international aspects. The bond market, its instruments, development, importance and international aspects; economics of the bond market; theory of pricing; term structure theories; emergence of the corporate sector in the bond market; role of the Bond Exchange of South Africa; microstructure of the bond market. The foreign exchange market; exchange rate theory and determinants; exchange rate systems; exchange rate

policy in South Africa; participants, including importers, exporters, speculators, the foreign sector; microstructure of forex market; derivatives - hedging tools, such as the forex and currency swaps, forwards, futures.

ECO 505 - Equity and derivative markets

Equity market - primary and secondary markets; role of the regulator and the JSE as manager of the market; participants, mechanics of the market; microstructure of the equity market; theories of valuation of shares; efficiency of equity market; behaviour of prices; international aspects of the market. The financial derivatives market - forwards, futures, options, swaps, hybrids such as swaptions, other such as weather and credit derivatives; valuation of derivatives; role of the exchange (Safex) and the regulator; use of markets - investors, hedgers, speculators, arbitrageurs; microstructure of the derivatives market.

ECO 506 - Portfolio theory and management

Macroeconomic analysis as it applies to financial markets; asset class analysis and strategic asset allocation as the first level of analysis; sector / industry analysis and security analysis; aspects of security analysis: financial statement analysis and ratio analysis; behavioural finance. Concepts, terminology and definitions in portfolio management; portfolio theory; modern approaches to portfolio management including resample efficiency; types of portfolio managers; asset classes; types of financial portfolios; life staging; portfolio monitoring including performance and risk attribution, statutory environment of the portfolio manager in South Africa.

ECO 507 - Financial institutions, financial regulations and monetary policy

This course is aimed at acquainting the student with the theories underlying the role of the financial system and institutions, financial regulation and monetary policy. The course is made up of three modules - financial institutions, financial regulation and monetary policy. The first module, financial institutions, covers asymmetric information and uncertainty, adverse selection and

moral hazard, principal-agent theory, financial sector and macroeconomic performance, institutional aspects of financial sector development and private sector banking, operation and management of banks. The financial regulation module focuses on the theories and practice of financial regulation, drawing on South African experience. The third module focuses on the core theories underlying monetary policy formulation, analysis and implementation. The topics covered in this module are: central banking and monetary policy (goals, tools, targets, conflicts, independence and time consistency of policy); monetary aggregation; empirical models of money demand and money supply; theories of the interest rate; the monetary transmission mechanism; the international monetary system; and the practice of monetary policy formulation and implementation in South Africa, other developed and emerging market economies.

ECO 508 - Quantitative techniques in financial markets

The overall aim of this course is to acquaint students with modern quantitative techniques used in solving financial problems in a dynamic and complex financial environment. The course is made up of two modules - financial mathematics and financial econometrics.

Paper 1: Quantitative Finance

This course contains an introduction to selected mathematical principles that can be applied to the valuation of plain vanilla and exotic contingent claims on assets traded in various markets. Topics covered include asset price dynamics in a deterministic and stochastic setting, the risk-neutral pricing technique and the application of the finite differencing method to contingent claim valuation.

Paper 2: Financial Econometrics

The financial econometrics component focuses on the application of statistical and econometric methods in financial analyses. The module covers: univariate linear time series models (AR, MA, and ARIMA, Box Jenkins approach, forecasting using ARIMA models); multivariate models (simultaneous equation models and vector autoregressive models); long-run relations models (unit root testing, cointegration, and the error

correction model); volatility modelling and forecasting (ARCH, GARCH, EGARCH etc.); and simulation (Monte Carlo simulation, bootstrapping).

ECO 509 - Financial Markets Industry Exams

The Financial Services Conduct Authorities (the regulator of financial exchanges) require financial exchanges in South Africa to meet certain minimum education standards for traders, advisors and compliance officers. A number (now seven) of the courses required have been included in this module. Candidates who successfully complete the exchange courses will be recognised by the Johannesburg stock exchange (JSE) as traders and advisors. Successful candidates will receive certificates issued by the South African Institute of Financial Markets (SAIFM). Their names will be

entered in the registers maintained by the SAIFM and the exchanges. The SAIFM is a body set up by the financial exchanges and administers the exams required by the financial exchanges. The relevant exams are as follows:

- Introduction to Financial Markets
- Regulation and Ethics of the SA Financial Markets
- The South African Money Market
- The Bond Market
- The Foreign Exchange Market
- The Equity Market
- The Derivatives Market

For more information, see the departmental website: <http://www.ru.ac.za/economics/>

PRIMARY AND EARLY CHILDHOOD EDUCATION

Associate Professor and Head of Department

I Schudel, BSc(UCT), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

Professor and South African Numeracy Chair

M Graven, BSc(Ed), BSc(Hons)(Wits),
MPhil(Cantab), PhD(Wits)

Professor

C Grant, HDE(Edgewood), BA(UNISA), BEd,
MEd(Natal), PhD(UKZN)

Associate Professor

B Brown, BSc(Wits), BSc(Hons), MSc(UNISA),
MEd(Rhodes), PhD(UCT)

Senior Lecturer

T Lovemore, BEd(NMMU), BEd(Hons)(Stell),
MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturers

S Chikiwa, Dip in Ed(UZ), BEd(MSU),
MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

P Hellemann, BA, BAH, PGCE, MA,
PhD(Rhodes)

A Jones, HDE(PECE) BEd(Hons)(NMMU),
MEd(Rhodes)

N Kitsili, BA, PGCE, BEd(Hons), MEd (Rhodes)

P Magangxa, PTD(Masibulele College of Ed),
FDE(Rhodes), BSoc Sci(Fort Hare), BEd
Hons(PU), Hons in Interdisciplinary Studies(Fort
Hare), MEd(NMU)

T Booysen, BEd(NMMU), BEd(Hons),
MEd(Rhodes)

W Hokonya, DipEd, DipEd SNE(UZ), BA(ZOU),
MEd(ZOU), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Research Associates

S-A Robertson, BA, DPM, HDE, BEd,
MEd(General Educational Theory and Practice),
MEd(ELT), PhD(Rhodes)

A Westaway, BA, BA(Hons), MEd(Rhodes),
PhD(Fort Hare)

L Westaway, BPrimEd, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

Research Associate

N Msomi, BSocSci, PGCE, BSocSci(Hons), MA,
PGDipHE, PhD(Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

PD Wilmot, BA, HDE (PG Sec), BEd, MEd,
PhD(Rhodes)

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION

(Foundation Phase Teaching) [Full-Time,
Initial Teacher Education]

YEAR 1

Education Studies 1A

(NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

Course description: This introductory course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging, and critically reflecting on and in the field of education.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49 %

Sub-minimum: 40%

Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1A

(NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

Course description: This introductory course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general educational practices and to develop an understanding around student and teacher identity. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Mathematics for Teaching

(NQF Level 5, 25 credits)

Course description: This course aims to, help students to develop a background in mathematical thinking that will be needed for later courses in teaching mathematics.

Assessment: Class record 40% Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Teaching Practice 1A

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This is a service learning course that involves engaging with Foundation Phase learners

Assessment: Class record 100%

YEAR 2**Educational Studies 1B****(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)****Entrance requirement:** Education Studies 1A

Course description: This introductory course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging, and critically reflecting on and in the field of education.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: 40%**Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1B****(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)****Entrance requirement:** Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1A

Course description: This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language English****(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. It is an introductory course that aims to prepare prospective teachers to teach Home Language English competently.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language isiXhosa****(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. It is an introductory course that aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach Home Language isiXhosa competently.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Introduction to First Additional Language****(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

Course description: This course provides a framework for understanding the teaching and learning of first additional language in the Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills****(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)**

Course description: The course aims to develop students' understanding about Life Skills education as well as Life Skills content knowledge and the curriculum. It develops students' teaching pedagogies and methodological approaches in relation to personal and social development and beginner knowledge.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%**Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics****(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)**

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course provides a sound framework for understanding mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. It aims to prepare mathematics teachers who have strong pedagogical content knowledge related to number sense development and who are competent in the appropriate pedagogical practices.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Performance and Multimodalities 1

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This course offers the students opportunities to engage in visual art and physical education. Students are equipped and introduced to the above components to enable them to have content knowledge that supplements the teaching of Life Skills in Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Understanding the Social & Physical World 1

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This course offers the students opportunities to engage in science and technology knowledge. It provides in-depth subject matter knowledge for teaching Life Skills in the Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Teaching Practice 1B

(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirement: Teaching Practice 1A

Course description: This service learning course consists of micro-teaching in school. The emphasis is on building an understanding of the school system and how to teach.

Assessment: Class record 100%

YEAR 3

Education Studies 2

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: Education Studies 1B

Course description: This course offers an opportunity to engage with many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging in and critically reflecting on the field of education.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Professional and Pedagogical Studies 2

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: Professional and Pedagogical Studies 1B

Course description: This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language

English

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 HL English

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Home Language (HL) English course and it seeks to develop English HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language

isiXhosa

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 HL isiXhosa

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 IsiXhosa Home Language (HL) course and it seeks to develop isiXhosa HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners.

It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language English

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language Afrikaans

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting Afrikaans FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in Afrikaans FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language isiXhosa

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 1 Introduction to First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 Mathematics

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course provides a sound framework for understanding mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. It aims to prepare mathematics teachers who have strong pedagogical content knowledge related to number sense development and spatial relations and who are competent in the appropriate pedagogical practices.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49 %

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1 Life Skills

Course description: The course aims to develop students' understanding about Life Skills education as well as Life Skills content knowledge and the curriculum. It develops students' teaching

pedagogies and methodological approaches in relation to creative arts and beginner knowledge.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examinations 40%

Performance & Multimodalities 2

(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: PMM 1

Course description: This course equips students with content and skills of the creative arts in education (drama, dance and music) with regards to Foundation Phase teaching. Students are equipped and introduced to the above creative art components to enable them to have content knowledge that supplements the teaching of Life Skills in Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 100 %

Understanding the Social & Physical World 2

(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: USPW 1

Course description: This course gives students the opportunity to engage with geography and history content knowledge. It develops students' subject matter knowledge in the above-mentioned components in order to teach Life Skills in the Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Teaching Practice 2

(NQF level 6, 25 credits)

Entrance requirement: Teaching Practice 1B

Course description: This course provides students with the opportunity to engage with learners at various schools. The aim of the course is to understand the school context and to implement the pedagogies and methodologies the students have learnt in their Education Studies and Professional and Pedagogical Studies courses as well as their method courses.

Assessment: Class record 100%

YEAR 4

Education Studies 3:

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: Education Studies 2

Course description:

This course offers an opportunity to engage with many of the important issues in education. The aim of the course is to provide students with a framework for understanding, engaging in and critically reflecting on the field of education.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Professional and Pedagogical Studies 3:

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: Professional and Pedagogical Studies 2

Course description: This course offers the students an opportunity to engage with general education methodologies and pedagogic approaches that can be utilised across all subjects in the school curriculum; and creates a link between Education Studies and the teaching method courses. Furthermore, it considers what it means to be a professional and how to develop professional relations with colleagues, parents and learners.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language English

(NQF Level 7, 14 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 English HL

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 Home Language (HL) English course and it seeks to develop English HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language isiXhosa

(NQF Level 7, 14 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 isiXhosa HL

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 isiXhosa Home Language (HL) course and it seeks to develop isiXhosa HL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa HL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language English

(NQF Level 7, 14 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 English FAL

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 English First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting English FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in English FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language Afrikaans

(NQF Level 7, 12 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 Afrikaans FAL

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 Afrikaans First Additional Language (FAL)

course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting Afrikaans FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in Afrikaans FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: First Additional Language isiXhosa

(NQF Level 7, 12 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 isiXhosa FAL

Course description:

This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course draws from the FPS 2 isiXhosa First Additional Language (FAL) course and it seeks to develop FAL beginner teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting isiXhosa FAL teaching that is accessible, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics:

(NQF level 7, 14 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 2 Mathematics

Course description: This course is aligned to the school curriculum. The course provides a sound framework for understanding mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. It aims to prepare mathematics teachers who have strong pedagogical content knowledge related to number sense development and early algebra and who are competent in the appropriate pedagogical practices.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills:
(NQF level 7, 14 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 2 Life skills

Course description: The course aims to develop students' understanding about Life Skills education as well as Life Skills content knowledge and the curriculum. It develops students' teaching pedagogies and methodological approaches in relation to Grade R and teaching across the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum: Class record 40%, Examination 40%

Teaching Practice 3
(NQF level 7, 24 credits)

Entrance requirement: Teaching Practice 2

Course description: This course provides students with the opportunity to engage with learners at various schools. The aim of the course is to understand the school context and to implement the pedagogies and methodologies the students have learnt in their Education Studies and Professional and Pedagogical Studies courses as well as their method courses.

Assessment: Class record 100%

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION HONOURS
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

See Faculty of Education section and Department of Secondary and Post-School Information for more information.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION BY
COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH**

(Coursework NQF level 9, 90 credits; Thesis NQF level 9, 90 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

**MASTER OF EDUCATION BY
RESEARCH**

(Thesis NQF level 9, 180 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY
(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information.

SECONDARY AND POST-SCHOOL EDUCATION

Professor and Head of Department

ZMM Jojo, JSTC, BEd(UNITRA), FDE(RAU), MEd, PhD(UKZN)
Professor and Dean of Education, Chair of Environment and Sustainability Education

E Rosenberg, BA(Hons)(Rhodes) MMed Sci (UOFS), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

Distinguished Professor and SARCH Chair: Global Change and Social Learning Systems ‘Transformative Social Learning and Green Skills Learning Pathways’

H Lotz-Sisitka, BPrimEd (JP)(UPE), BEd, DEd(Stell)

Associate Professors

C Simuja, BSc Computing(London Metropolitan), MSc Informatics(Malawi), PGDHE, MPhil, PhD(Rhodes)

J Sibanda, DipEd, BEd, MEd(UZ), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

K Jawahar, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PGCE, MEd, PhD(UKZN)

I Kulundu-Bolus, BA, PGDIP, BA(Hons), MA, PhD(Rhodes)

Z Songqwaru, STD(Cape), ACE, BEd(Hons), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturers

M Barnes, BA, BA(Hons), MA, PGCE(UCT)

NS Nkosi, BEd, BEd(Hons), MEd(Wits)

O Chiramba, DipEd(UZ), BEd(MSU), BEd(Hons), MEd, PhD(Wits)

Professors Emeriti

M Schäfer, BSc, HDipEd (Wits), BEd, MEd, (Rhodes), PhD(Curtin)

K Ngcoza, JSTC(Cape College), BSc, BEd, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

Y Engeström (Helsinki)

A Sannino (Tampere)

Senior Research Associates

K Erwin, BSocSci(Hons), MPhil(Cantab), PhD(UKZN)

S Vermeylen, Doctoraal(International Relations & Human Rights Law)(UU)(Robert Schuman), LL(MBrussels), MBA(Nottingham), PhD(Surrey)

T Smits, MA(Antwerp and Vienna), PhD(Antwerp)

N Mporfu, BA, MEd (Solusi), PhD(UP)

K Kotschy, BSc(Hons), HDE, MSc, PhD (Wits)

Research Associates

L Price, MSc(UZ), PhD(Rhodes)

D Samson, MSc(UPE), PGCE, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

C Chikunda, MEd(UZ), PhD(Rhodes)

P Ramsarup, MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in English Language Teaching Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)

[Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]

For the details of this qualification, refer to THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA (ISEA) section.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION in Mathematics Education (SP and FET Phase Teaching)

[Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]

For the details of this qualification, refer to RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP) section.

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching)

Our aim in the professional preparation of our candidates is to develop critically reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context. The course consists of the following major components:

Educational Studies (NQF 7, 42 credits)

This course offers an overview of many of the important issues in education. The aim is to provide students with a framework for understanding the field of education using sociological, philosophical and psychological lenses. The course explores aspects such as: classroom interaction and various classroom dynamics which includes micro-teaching in small peer groups; historical and

contemporary aspects of South African education; environmental education and sustainability; human development, barriers to learning, mediating learning, curriculum processes, different pedagogical approaches, assessment, values, teachers' rights and responsibilities, organisational dimensions of schooling and educational technology.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Teaching Method Courses (NQF level 7, 24 credits)

A broad range of teaching method courses is offered. These are aligned to national curriculum policy. Each course aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach a subject or learning area competently in a variety of situations. Students acquire a critical understanding of the curriculum and its philosophical underpinnings, and learn how to implement it in a practical and reflective manner. Students are encouraged to become innovative and inspirational teachers.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

Teaching Practice (NQF level 7, 13 credits)

Students get a taste of a range of different schools, and spend the equivalent of a school term as fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such, they become involved in the academic, cultural, sporting and administrative activities of a particular institution, and so experience a full immersion into what it means to be a practicing professional.

Assessment: Observation, mentor teacher evaluation report, portfolio 100%

Community Engaged Research (NQF level 7, 4 credits)

This course provides students with an introduction to educational research that incorporates service-learning and situational learning components of the PGCE. The aim is to provide candidates with an opportunity to learn about context and to learn in context.

Endorsements

Endorsements are obtainable in the following: Computer Literacy, Educational Technologies and Languages. Teacher education certificates must give some indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as a medium of instruction. Opportunities are provided during the year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS) (NQF Level 8, 120 credits)

These courses fall across both the Department of Primary and Early Childhood Education and The Department of Secondary and Post-school Education

The BEd Honours qualification consists of two foundation courses in Year One and a specialism made up of two specialism courses in Year Two. The degree is normally offered on a two-year part-time basis. It is intended to prepare candidates for research-based postgraduate studies in a particular field of education. It serves to consolidate and deepen candidates' expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research. The qualification is offered alternately in Makhanda and Okahandja, Namibia.

FOUNDATION COURSES (Year 1)

The foundation programme comprises a 30-credit course called "Educational Ideas and Issues" and a 30-credit course called "Research in Education".

Educational Ideas and Issues (NQF level 8, 30 credits)

This compulsory course provides opportunities to analyse and evaluate educational ideas and issues relevant to a South and Southern African context using philosophical, psychological and sociological lenses. It will examine, inter alia, issues of equity (in relation to, for example, language, gender, culture and socio-economic status), the role of language in mediating learning, and issues relating to knowledge and knowing. Students' critical engagement with these issues and ideas will be underpinned by theories of teaching

and learning (including, but not limited to, Piaget, Vygotsky, Bruner), debates around issues of quality in education, and in-depth consideration of the above in terms of curricular design and implementation. The course will also include philosophical, psychological and sociological perspectives on the role of values, creativity and democracy in education. Wherever possible, candidates will be required to consider these perspectives in relation to their own educational experience and context.

Assessment: 50% coursework and 50% exam

Sub-minimum: 40%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Research in Education (NQF level 8, 30 credits)

In this compulsory course, students will “develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of that discipline [Education]” (HEQSF, 2013). The purpose of this course is to develop a critical understanding of educational research. This foundation year course prepares the student theoretically and develops their understanding of research, for the research-based specialism offered in Year 2 of the degree.

Assessment: 50% coursework and 50% exam

Sub-minimum: 40%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

SPECIALISM COURSES (Year 2)

Below is a list of the specialisms. Each specialism is worth 60 credits and all are at NQF Level 8. The specialisms may not all be offered in any given year and are dependent on staff availability, timetabling and viable class sizes. Students have to have passed the foundation programme in order to gain entry into the specialisms. Specialisms are assessed through coursework (50%) and an exam equivalent (50%). The sub-minimum for each course is 40% and 40-49% is needed to qualify for a supplementary exam. The specialisms are:

**Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access
(NQF level 8, 60 credits)** For the description of these courses, refer to THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA (ISEA) section.

Curriculum Studies (NQF level 8, 60 credits)

This specialism provides an overview of the core functions, characteristics and underpinnings of curriculum and pedagogy from a national and international perspective. It challenges students to critically analyse and evaluate their lived experiences of curriculum implementation, curriculum policy and the emergent and ongoing issues associated with curriculum. Students will review contemporary curriculum research in Southern Africa and engage in debate about decolonising and Africanising the curriculum.

Educational Leadership & Management (NQF level 8, 60 credits)

This specialism introduces students to the field of Educational Leadership and Management (ELM) and particularly distributed approaches to leadership which include the leadership of teachers, learners and parents. The specialism takes a strong cultural historical orientation to developing and researching leadership and students are challenged to develop more nuanced, contextually situated understandings of leadership through a small-scale qualitative research project.

English Language Teaching (60 credits, NQF level 8)

This research-based specialism introduces English Language educators to the broad field of English Studies and its three disciplines: *Language, Literature and Culture, Communication and Media*. The specialism is designed to encourage students to engage critically with theoretical, philosophical, and research-based studies of the English Studies field, and the implications for teaching, research, curriculum design and assessment, both within schooling and higher education contexts.

Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in Education (NQF level 8, 60 credits)

This research-based specialism is aimed at providing students with a wide range of knowledge, concepts and applications of ICT in education as well as fundamental research skills suited to researching the use of ICT in educational

settings. It also aims to provide students with the opportunity to realise the social, ethical and legal issues pertaining to the use of ICT and appreciate how the sharing of knowledge using ICT influences decision-making.

Maths Education

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

This specialism introduces mathematics educators to the systematic, research-based and critical study of mathematics education. It will consolidate and deepen students' expertise in the teaching and learning of mathematics and develop their capacity to undertake research into the practice of mathematics education. Students will engage in advanced reflection on current thinking, practice and research methods relating to mathematics teaching in particular phases and content areas.

Primary Education

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

This specialism is for primary school teachers, heads of departments, principals, subject advisors or education development officers. Its purpose is to orientate participants to contemporary debates and issues related to teaching and learning in primary schools. Participants will critically engage with the complex interrelationship between discourses on quality education, and the issues that mediate and impact quality teaching and learning. The specialisation culminates with a research project into quality teaching and learning practices in primary schools.

Science Education

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

This research-based specialism aims to enhance the study of science teaching and learning. It focuses on issues that are directly or indirectly related to science teaching and learning such as the active involvement of learners in practical activities, investigations and real-life experiences, science curriculum knowledge and discourse, as well as science literacy/multiliteracy. Other aspects of the specialism include human rights, inclusivity and issues of diversity as they relate to Science Education as well as the importance of Education

for Sustainable Development and valuing of indigenous knowledge systems.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING

The PGDip (SL) is designed to give students the ability to understand, critique, plan and implement socially-engaged learning processes aimed in turn at supporting society to transition to social-ecological sustainability. The qualification responds to intensifying environmental degradation which puts human health and the sustainability of rural and urban communities at risk. The PGDip(SL) seeks to complement graduates' existing technical and academic skills to help them navigate the intersecting social, cultural, economic, ecological, political and technological dimensions of a their work contexts. The qualification is relevant in a range of sectors (e.g. environmental officers in local and provincial government; community activists; environmental journalists; agricultural extension workers; educators in the biodiversity sector; and community development facilitators) and to a range of disciplines including Environmental Science, Journalism, Education, Geography, Fine Arts, Drama, Sociology and Anthropology.

COURSE STRUCTURE

The PGDip (SL) is offered part-time over two years. The qualification is taught by lecturers from a range of disciplines and jointly coordinated by the Environmental Learning Research Centre within the Department of Secondary & Post-School Education and by the Department of Environmental Science.

The overall credit value of the diploma is 120 credits (60 credits in year 1, 60 credits in year 2). All courses are at NQF Level 8.

The PGDip (SL) is composed of two 60-credit courses in Year 1 and Year 2 respectively (see course details below). Each year, students are required to attend four compulsory, in-person, teaching blocks (each running from Monday to Friday) and complete individual and group assignments in between teaching.

Core Courses (compulsory)**FOUNDATIONS OF SUSTAINABILITY LEARNING [60 credits]**

- Module 1.1: Sustainability Concepts and Critique [10]
- Module 1.2: Systems Thinking: History, Context and Future [10]
- Module 1.3: Interdisciplinarity, Knowledge and Human Learning [10]
- Module 1.4: Participation, Solidarity and Sustainability Ethics [10]
- Module 1.5: Introduction to Social Learning Processes [10]
- Module 1.6: Introduction to Interdisciplinary Social Science Research [10]

ACTION RESEARCH CHANGE PROJECT [60 credits]

- Module 2.1: Describing Sustainability Learning Contexts [10]
- Module 2.2: Envisioning Change for Sustainability [10]
- Module 2.3: Enacting Change for Sustainability [10]
- Module 2.4: Evaluation as Learning [10]
- Module 2.5: Elective A (see note below) [10]
- Module 2.6: Elective B (see note below) [10]

Note on Elective Modules

Students select ONE module from Elective A options, and ONE from Elective B.

The suite of available 2nd year electives will vary from year to year, influenced by the class profile and lecturer availability. Examples of possible electives include:

- Creative practices in Sustainability Learning
- Citizen Science in Sustainability Learning
- Reflective Social Practice for Sustainability Learning
- Climate Change Education & Governance
- Indigenous Knowledge Systems, Heritage and Sustainability
- Stakeholder Engagement for Sustainability Learning
- School and Community Partnerships for Sustainability

ASSESSMENT

The PGDip (SL) combines formative and summative assessment and a range of assessment methods and tasks. Over two years of part-time study, students will be required to:

- submit 10 individual assignments, including a short research report,
- complete 2 group assessment tasks,
- present 1 seminar and 1 conference-type presentation, and
- write 1 two-hour examination.

For all courses, the pass mark is 50%.

The only course that is partly assessed with a written exam is Foundations of Sustainability Learning in Year 1. Sub-minimum: 40% (i.e to enter the examination for that course, students must attain an average of at least 40% for the year's assignments).

Supplementary exam: 40 – 49%

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

(Coursework NQF level 9, 90 credits; Thesis NQF level 9, 90 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY RESEARCH

(Thesis NQF level 9, 180 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

See Faculty of Education section for more information.

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Associate Professor and Head of Department

S Ruwanza, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Zimbabwe), MSc, PhD (Stell), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Distinguished Professor and SARCHI Chair in Interdisciplinary Science in Land & Natural Resource Use for Sustainable Livelihoods

CM Shackleton, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Wits)

Professor and Deputy Dean

G Thondhlana, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Zimbabwe), PhD, PGDHE (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

J Cockburn, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), MSc (NWU), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer

N Gwedla BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)
LX Dlamini BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (UKZN), PhD (cotutelle; UFS & UB-France)

Honorary Professor

SE Shackleton, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Research Associate

C Grant-Biggs, PhD (UP)

HC Biggs, PhD (UP)

Research Associates

K Coetzer-Hanack PhD (Wits)

M Powell, MSc (Rhodes)

S Shwababa, PhD (UFS)

GNR Cundill, PhD (Rhodes)

Environmental Science (ENV) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BEcon, BJourn and BA, subject to the conditions specified below.

The Department takes an inter/transdisciplinary approach to sustainable environmental management and aims to attract students from a variety of academic disciplines. Candidates who wish to major in Environmental Science should, however, structure their degrees around a specific sub-discipline of Environmental Science, for example biological resources, earth resources, water resources, environmental policy, environmental economics, or people and the environment. Their choice of additional subjects at the second and third level should thus reflect a specific focus.

To major in Environmental Science, a candidate is required to obtain credit for the following first year level courses: EAR 101 and GOG 102, and one of ANT 1, BOT 1, ECO 1, GLG 102 or ZOO 1; followed by ENV 201 and ENV 202 at second year level, and then ENV 301 and ENV 302 at the third-year level. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/environmentalscience/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

Recommended curricula

The following are examples only. Not all the options and possible subject combinations are covered, and curricula are subject to timetable constraints. Students with particular interests are encouraged to discuss other possible course combinations with the Head of Department.

Where both semesters of a year course are recommended, the subject is indicated by its year number only, e.g. ENV 2 instead of ENV 201 and 202. GOG 1 is used instead of EAR 101 and GOG 102.

Curricula could, for example, be structured around one of the following sub-disciplines:

● Biological resources

Year 1: CHE 1, CEL 101, BOT 102, ZOO 102, EAR 101, GOG 102, STA 101.

Year 2: ENV 2, two of BOT 2, ENT 2, ICH 2, MIC 2 or ZOO 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; and one of BOT 3, ENT 3, ICH 3, MIC 3 or ZOO 3 depending on the choice of second year subjects.

● Earth resources

Year 1: CHE 1, CEL 101, BOT 102, EAR 101, GOG 102, GLG 102, MAN 101.

Year 2: ENV 2, GLG 2, GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 3, GOG 3 or GLG 3.

● Water resources

Year 1: CHE 1, CEL 101, ZOO 102 or BOT 102; EAR 101, GOG 102, GLG 102, MAN 101.

Year 2: ENV 2; one of GLG 2 or GOG 2; and one of BOT 2, ZOO 2 or ENT 2.

Year 3: ENV 3; GLG 3 or GOG 3.

● **People and the environment**

Year 1: ANT 1, CEL 101, ZOO 102, BOT 102, EAR 101, GOG 102, STA 101.

Year 2: ENV 2, ANT 2, ECO 1, GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 3, ANT 3 or ECO 3.

● **Environmental Economics**

See the BEcon calendar entry under the Faculty of Commerce.

Note: These are illustrative curricula only and students must ensure that they have the correct number of NQF credits to meet their respective faculty needs.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

There are two second-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 201 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course can be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ENV 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required 40% sub-minimum in each component (i.e. the class mark and for written examination combined) and obtains DP. However, students who wish to major in Environmental Science must obtain credit for both ENV 201 and ENV 202. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Geography (EAR 101 and GOG 102) and either Anthropology (ANT 1), Botany (CEL 101 and BOT 102), Economics (ECO 1), Geology (GLG 102) or Zoology (CEL 101 and ZOO 102) are required before a student may register for ENV 201 or ENV 202. These students shall register for EAR 101 and GOG 102 concurrently with ENV201 and ENV 202. Adequate performance in ENV 201 (i.e., obtains the required 40% sub-minimum and DP) is required before a student may register for ENV 202.

ENV 201 (Foundations of Environmental Science)

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: EAR 101 and GOG 102, and one of ANT 1, BOT 1, ECO 1, GLG 102 or ZOO 1.

Course description: ENV 201 provides the conceptual foundation for all other courses in Environmental Science, and covers the following topics: integrated perspectives on environmental issues; ecosystem services and human well-being, characteristics of complex adaptive social-ecological systems, introduction to inter/transdisciplinary and local ecological knowledge; ecosystem services and human well-being; complexity; social-ecological systems; planetary boundaries and sustainability; social systems; economic valuation of natural resources; ecological systems. Practicals: interaction between social, economic and ecological components of the environment. Students will be required to undertake compulsory field site visits during one weekend as part of their practicals.

DP requirements: The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the class mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination but with final course mark (class record and exam mark) of 50% or more will be eligible to write the supplementary examination..

Assessment: Class record 70%, Examinations 30%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with ENV 202 but cannot proceed to ENV 3 without passing both ENV 201 and ENV 202

Class attendance: at least 80%

ENV 202 (Global Environmental Challenges and Policies)

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% ENV 201

Course description: The ENV 202 course is designed to cover a selection of current major global issues and challenges in environmental science. The purpose of the course is to apply interdisciplinary skills, systems approaches and perspectives to analyse and understand environmental issues and policies of global and local concern. Critical analysis and consideration of counter-viewpoints, from a systems perspective, is central. This will be done at different spatial and temporal scales. The skills covered in Environmental Science 201 are particularly relevant, especially those relating to systems analysis, team work, and interdisciplinarity as well as rigorous and in-depth critical analysis and thinking. Practicals: a variety of different classroom and field exercises pertaining to the issues covered in lectures.

DP requirements: The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the class mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examination. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination but with final course mark (class record and exam mark) of 50% or more will be eligible to write the supplementary examination..

Assessment: Class record 70%, Examinations 30%
Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with ENV 201

Class attendance: at least 80%

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

There are two third-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 301 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course can be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ENV 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required 40% sub-minimum in both components (i.e. the class mark and exam mark) and obtains DP. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Students will be required to plan, execute and write up a mini-research project starting in the first term and spanning the whole academic year.

There is one compulsory weekend field trip during the first semester. Environmental Science 2 (ENV 201 and ENV 202) is required before a student may register for ENV 301 or ENV 302. Concurrent registration is not allowed for second-year and third-year courses in Environmental Science. In addition, candidates must have satisfied the prerequisites for ENV 201 and ENV 202.

ENV 301 (Integrated environmental management for sustainability)

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: ENV 2 (both ENV 201 and ENV 202)

Course description: This course focuses on sustainable natural resource management in practice. The aim is to develop applied professional skills, coupled with rigorous analysis, to promote more effective environmental thinking and management. The emphasis is on conceptual frameworks to evaluate, understand and study environmental impacts and resource use patterns. (Concepts include political ecology, integrated landscape management, adaptive management, participatory natural resource management, adaptive co-management, etc.). The course also focuses on environmental methods for collection, analysis and interpretation of data to support

environmental management and decision-making. The aim is to develop applied professional skills, coupled with rigorous analysis, to promote effective environmental management. Each topic is illustrated by up to date examples. Practicals: the practical application of the course will be incorporated into the year-long mini- research project. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

DP requirements: The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the course mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examination. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination but with final course mark (class record and exam mark) of 50% or more will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Assessment: Class record 70%, Examinations 30%
Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with ENV 302

Class attendance: at least 80%

ENV 302 (Environmental monitoring and monitoring systems)

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% ENV 301

Course description: This course builds on the foundations laid in ENV 2 in terms of systems thinking, interdisciplinarity and the scientific analysis of environmental challenges and on the integrated management approaches covered in ENV 301. The focus is on the design and implementation of environmental monitoring systems appropriate at different spatial and temporal scales integrating across the biological, social and economic components of an environmental system. Examples will include industrial, terrestrial and aquatic systems and different types of monitoring approaches. The course also covers sustainability assessments,

strategic environmental assessment, environmental management programme reports, ISO 14000 and environmental impact assessment. Practicals: the practical application of the course will be incorporated into the year-long mini-research project. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

DP requirements: The following DP requirements are applied within the Department of Environmental Science. (1) Attend all practicals and 80% of the lectures; (2) hand in all assignments for marking on the due date. Any assignments handed in late without prior permission from the lecturer concerned will be penalised by a deduction of 5% per day or part thereof; and (3) a sub-minimum of 40% in the year mark. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examination. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination but with final course mark (class record and exam mark) of 50% or more will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Assessment: Class record 70%, Examinations 30%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with ENV 301

Class attendance: at least 80%

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: The Honours course in Environmental Science is designed as an interdisciplinary programme. It consists of four modules selected from a list of available options along with a short course in Statistics. Additionally, candidates undertake an independent research project. The course may be done full-time over one academic year, or, rarely, part-time over two academic years with the agreement of the Head of Environmental Science. Tuition emphasis is on self- learning guided through lectures, tutorials, seminars and practical work. Students are encouraged to work in interdisciplinary teams and to address practical, “real life” issues in their projects and seminars. A limited number of students are selected annually on the basis of academic excellence, previous experience, and qualifications in environment- related fields, group diversity and staff availability. Candidates must be

in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, majoring in at least one of the following: Anthropology, Botany, Economics, Environmental Science, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology or Zoology. Preference will be given to applicants with undergraduate Environmental Science qualifications and/or with applicable practical experience. For internal (RU) applicants, adequate performance and participation in ENV 3 is necessary.

Students may be required to attend blocks of lectures and practicals before the official commencement of the first term (typically the last week of January or first week of February) and during vacations. This usually takes the form of a compulsory field trip of 5-10 days. Candidates should consult the Head of Department in this regard before registering for the course.

Students may consider registering for a joint course with other relevant departments.

DP requirements: (1) Sub-minimum of 40% for the research project; (2) attend the honours fieldtrip; and (3) attend 80% of all honours programme activities (seminars, classes, community engagement).

Assessment: Assessments comprise Foundation module tests, a year-long research project, including a written and verbal research proposal, a final research paper, a paper presentation, and a popular article. Students select three modules, weighted 12.5 % of their overall course value (see below for module descriptions). Module coordinators set assignments such as essays, tests, reports, and verbal presentations as assessment tasks. All modules have exams, or assignments that replace exams, in the semesters they are offered.

Supplementary exam: None

Modules

The Foundations course must be taken by all students. For the optional modules, candidates must select three from the list of available modules, with at least two Environmental Science modules. The list changes from year to year, and not all are available to part-time candidates. Some modules are offered by Departments collaborating with Environmental Science and candidates should discuss their options with the course-coordinator

and Head of Department and, where applicable, with the staff member offering that module. Modules offered by Environmental Science may include: Land Degradation Neutrality; Biodiversity, Non-timber Forest Products and Rural Livelihoods; Environmental Modelling; Environmental Impact Assessment; Urban Forestry; Conservation and Livelihoods in Protected Areas; Urban Ecology; Food Security, Interdisciplinarity, Knowledge and Power and Restoration Ecology. The Geography department offers GIS for students who have completed GOG 3. The Institute for Water Research offers Environmental Water Quality. Modules offered by Economics Department: Environmental and Resource Economics. Additional suitable environmental related modules may be available in other departments at the time of registration, and prospective candidates should consult with the Head of Department and Honours Coordinator regarding the availability and choice of such modules. Students will also undertake a research project related to their selected courses.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits), MA (180 credits at NQF level 9) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc, MA and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. An Environmental Science Master's degree is by dissertation. It has four distinguishing characteristics:

- the research and dissertation deal with integrative ecological, social and economic systems; it incorporates the concept of sustainability, e.g., sustainable use and management of the environment and sustainable consumption and living;
- it addresses issues affecting people's quality of life and their livelihoods;
- it is interdisciplinary, i.e. it is not confined to a single academic discipline, and is often linked to a broader programme with several related projects.

The following candidates are eligible to register:

- applicants in possession of an Honours degree in Environmental Science; if Rhodes University Honours graduates, adequate performance and participation in the Honours year is necessary;
- applicants with Postgraduate Diploma in Sustainability Learning or similar (NQF level 8), but with an acceptable Environmental Science background;
- applicants with a good Honours degree in any other discipline which has covered either biological, physical, human or economic aspects of the environment;
- environmental practitioners with an appropriate Bachelor's degree in an environmental discipline, plus a minimum of two years relevant practical experience, at the

discretion of the Head of Department and Senate;

- environmental practitioners without a Bachelor's degree, but with 5-10 years in-depth experience and proven achievements and skills in an environmental field, may be admitted as Ad Eundem Gradum students at the discretion of the Head of Department and Senate.

Students also have the option of attending appropriate undergraduate and Honours modules during their period of registration. Part-time students should aim to spend two to four months on campus at the early stage of registration and another two to four months during the final writing-up stage.

FINE ART

Lecturer and Head of Department

L Anguria, BAFA, MAFA, PhD (Wits)

Professor

R Simbao, BFA (Stell), MWS, MPhil (Toronto), AM, PhD (Harvard)

Associate Professors

M de Jager, BAFA, MAFA (Wits), PhD (Kingston, London)

S Folarànmi, BA, MFA, MPhil, PhD (Ifè)

Senior Lecturers

C Dixie, BAFA (Wits), MFA (UCT)

T Goniwe, MFA (UCT), MA, PhD (Cornell)

N Western, BAFA, MAFA (Wits)

Lecturers

J Erasmus, BFA (Rhodes), MAFA (Wits)

M Khoza, BAFA, MAFA (Wits)

S Makandula, BFA (Rhodes), MFA (UCT)

R Munnick, BTech, MTech (NMU)

Professor Emeritus

D Thorburn, BFA, MFA (Rhodes), TPP (New Mexico)

The Department of Fine Art, which is part of the Faculty of Humanities, provides comprehensive tuition in the practical, theoretical and historical aspects of the visual arts. Our courses ensure a solid grounding for those wanting to pursue careers as professional artists, but are equally valuable to those with an interest in arts education and a wide variety of creative industries - including arts administration, community arts, design, and curation. Most undergraduate students enrol for a BFA, a professional 4-year honours-equivalent degree. But our courses are also open to BA students, and students from other Faculties, who may benefit from the creative problem-solving, visual literacy, and/or practice-based research methodologies foregrounded in our course offerings.

Fine Art Practice courses are those in which students engage with art making, and the professional practice aspects of art making. Art History & Visual Culture courses do not involve the making of art but are studies in the theory and history of visual representations.

Bachelor of Fine Art students must major in both Fine Art Practice and Art History & Visual Culture and should thus enrol for Fine Art Practice and Art History & Visual Culture concurrently.

Non-BFA students may study Fine Art Practice without Art History & Visual Culture but can only take Fine Art Practice as a minor in this case (at a first-year level or to a second-year level). To major in Fine Art Practice, students must have a corresponding major in Art History & Visual Culture.

Non-BFA students may study Art History & Visual Culture independently without also studying Fine Art Practice - either as a major or for only one or two years.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

FINE ART PRACTICE

Fine Art Practice 1A (FAP 1A)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Applicants who have at least one art subject at Grade 12 level with 60%+ in this subject will be considered for admission to Fine Art Practice 1A on this basis. Applicants without a Grade 12 art subject, or with 59% and lower for this subject, will be required to submit an art portfolio and will be accepted at the discretion of the HoD. Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP1A and FAP1B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV1) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP1A as a standalone credit, with or without FAP1B, and with or without AHV1.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 1A serves as an introduction to practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. The course comprises a series of directed projects, covering both 'traditional' and 'new' media.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in mid-year and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

Supplementary exam: None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Fine Art Practice 1B (FAP1B)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Acceptance into FAP1A is a prerequisite for entry into FAP1B (see Entrance Requirements for FAP1A above). Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP1A and FAP1B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 1 (AHV1) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP1A as a standalone credit, with or without FAP1B, and with or without AHV1. However, FAP1B cannot be taken as a standalone credit – it can only be taken concurrently with FAP1A.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 1B is an introduction to the professional practice aspects of art-making, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. It introduces students to a range of professional practice skills, including drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in mid-year and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

Supplementary exam: None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Fine Art Practice 2A (FAP2A)

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: At least FAP1A. Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP2A and FAP2B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2) (see below). Non-BFA

students may take FAP2A as a minor credit, with or without FAP2B, and with or without AHV2.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 2A extends and develops students' practical, art-making skills across the media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. For the most part, the course follows an elective-based structure: students choose between two projects offered concurrently, thus testing and honing their preferences for working in particular media.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in mid-year and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

Supplementary exam: None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Fine Art Practice 2B (FAP2B)

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: At least FAP1A; preferably FAP1A and FAP1B. Bachelor of Fine Art students should take both FAP2A and FAP2B, as well as Art History & Visual Culture 2 (AHV2) (see below). Non-BFA students may take FAP2A as a minor credit, with or without FAP2B, and with or without AHV2. However, FAP2B cannot be taken as a standalone credit – it can only be taken concurrently with FAP2A.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 2B extends and develops students' professional practice skills, and is specifically for Bachelor of Fine Art students. Projects enable students to hone their expertise in areas such as drawing, story-boarding and project planning; proposal writing and design; documentation and cataloguing; portfolio development, and so forth.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Continuous assessment (provisional assignment marks, interim portfolio review in mid-year and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

Supplementary exam: None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Fine Art Practice 3 (FAP3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: At least FAP2A; preferably FAP2A and FAP2B.

Course description: Fine Art Practice 3 enables students to work more concertedly in particular media, in the broadly defined media areas of Painting, Sculpture, Printmedia, Digital Arts and Photography. Students are also encouraged to work across media as this suits their purposes. The course aims to develop students' technical skills alongside their professional practice, and self-reflexivity as creative practitioners.

DP requirements: Submission of all course projects, 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods, submission of all work for mid-year and final exam assessment.

Assessment: Continuous assessment (interim portfolio review in mid-year and final portfolio review at the end of the year).

Supplementary exam: None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

Fine Art Practice 4 (FAP4)

Fourth-year, full-year course

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: FAP3

Course description: Fine Art Practice 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4). The course is largely self-directed, and lecturers facilitate and support students' development of a cohesive body of work, culminating in a solo exhibition.

DP requirements: 80% attendance of compulsory timetabled periods.

Assessment: A work-in-progress assessment in mid- year, and summative assessment at the end of the year.

Supplementary exam: None. Opportunities for resubmission throughout the year are intrinsic to the structure of the course.

Sub-minimum for June: N/A

ART HISTORY & VISUAL CULTURE

Art History & Visual Culture 101 (AHV101)

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: None

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 101 introduces the subject of 'art history and visual culture', developing practical skills in reading and looking as well as the politics of visibility and representation within a South African context.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework

Supplementary assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%
The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Art History & Visual Culture 102 (AHV102)

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: None.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 102 engages with classical or historical African art, the colonial realities of Western art history and an introduction to contemporary art while developing critical skills in the visual analysis of arts and visual culture.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework

Supplementary assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Art History & Visual Culture 201 (AHV201)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: At least one of AHV101 and AHV102.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 201 examines the concept of authorship in artistic practice, decolonial theory and African aesthetics.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework

Supplementary assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Art History & Visual Culture 202 (AHV202)

Second-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40 % or more for AHV201.

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 202 examines the history of photography in Africa and the global south; artistic modernisms in Africa, Asia and Latin America, and biography as a theoretical framework and a methodological approach.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework

Supplementary assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Art History & Visual Culture 301 (AHV301)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: AHV2

Course description: The course explores theories and methods in visual art history, centered around Feminisms, Black Feminisms and Queer Theory. It seeks an understanding and application of selected theories/methods in visual art history as well as a decolonial reading of these theories/methods in the global-south context.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework

Supplementary assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Art History & Visual Culture 302 (AHV302)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40 % or more for AHV301.

Course description: The course explores artistic performative practices and strategies, African Folklore/animation and the visibility in film and television. It foster visual development, performativity, identity and conservation of Africa's oral traditions

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework

Supplementary assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%. The student will be granted a supplementary assessment related to their coursework.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Art History & Visual Culture 4 (AHV4)

Fourth-year, full-year course

(NQF level 8, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: AHV3

Course description: Art History & Visual Culture 4 is undertaken by Bachelor of Fine Art students as a core component of their final year, alongside Fine Art Practice 4. It comprises two research seminars in African Architecture, politics of display and an independently researched long essay. The course aims to consolidate students' critical, writing and researching skills through a sustained research enquiry.

DP requirements: Submission of all course assessment tasks, 80% attendance of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 100% Coursework and continuous assessment

Supplementary assessment: None. Opportunities for resubmission are intrinsic to the structure of the course

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours in Art History & Visual Culture

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed NQF level 7 degree, normally with Art History & Visual Culture (or similar) as a major.

Course description: This course comprises a series of papers, as well as an independently researched long essay (of approximately 10 000-15 000 words).

Master's Degree in Art History

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed NQF level 8 honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Art History, Fine Art or similar.

Course description: Students write a thesis of up to 50 000 words on a topic within the broadly-defined field of Art History, approved by the Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Examination is by thesis only. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's rules governing Master's degrees by thesis apply.

Master's Degree in Curation

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed NQF level 8 honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Art History, Fine Art or similar.

Course description: The degree is by Curatorial Practice and thesis and caters specifically for candidates looking to develop their capacities and understanding of theories and practices of curating. A candidate is required to curate an exhibition (rather than producing an exhibition of own work) in an art museum, gallery or suitable alternative space and to develop a thesis of between 25 000 and 30 000 words exploring the curatorial theme, logistic approach, and exhibition strategy. The final mark for the degree comprises 50% for the exhibition and 50% for the thesis. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the

Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The completed thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three days before the exhibition is submitted for examination. A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and thesis is given to each candidate.

Master of Fine Art

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed NQF level 8 honours degree, or honours-equivalent degree, normally in Fine Art or similar.

Course description: The degree is by Practice as Research and mini-thesis. The candidate produces an exhibition or installation of original work as well as a mini thesis of 12 000 – 15 000 words positioning this artwork in relation to an existent body of work or theory. The two components form an integrated submission. The proposed area of investigation must be approved by the Supervisor and the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The completed mini thesis must be submitted to the Registrar's Division at least three days before the exhibition is submitted for examination. A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the exhibition and mini thesis is given to each candidate.

Doctoral Degree in Art History

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed NQF level 9 master's degree, normally in Art History or similar; plus recent writing samples. Students who have completed a MFA rather than a MA may qualify for entrance into the degree if they demonstrate strong abilities in relevant history and theory.

Course description: Students write a thesis on an approved topic within the broadly-defined field of Art History. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's Rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply.

Doctoral Degree in Fine Art

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed NQF level 9 master's degree, in Fine Art/Visual Art or similar; plus a portfolio of recent work.

Course description: Students produce a body of creative practice and a thesis, conceptualised and developed as an integrated, practice-based research endeavour. The General Rules and the Faculty of Humanity's Rules governing Doctoral Degrees apply.

GEOGRAPHY

Professor

I Meiklejohn, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD, HDE (Natal)

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

S Strydom, BSocSci, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

Senior Lecturer

S Memela, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (UKZN), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

P Irvine, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

G McGregor, BA, BA (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Professors Emeriti

W Ellery, PhD (Wits)

R Fox, PhD (Strathclyde), PGDHE (Rhodes)

C Lewis, BA (Wales), PhD (Ireland)

J Daniel, MA (Cantab), PhD, UED (Natal)

K Rowntree, MSc (Bristol), PhD (Strathclyde)

Visiting Professors

P Assmo, PhD (Göteborg)

J Boelhouwers, BSc (Utrecht), MSc (Natal), PhD (Western Cape)

I Foster, BScHons (London), PhD (Exeter)

K Hall, BScHons (Swansea), MPhil (Reading), PhD (Free State), DSc (UKZN)

T Kepe, B Agric (Fort Hare), MSc (Guelph), PhD (Western Cape)

E Nel, BAHons (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes), MA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

B Cobbing, MSc (Rhodes)

J Heemstra, BA (Hobart)

& William Smith Colleges), MA (Oxford Brookes)

D Pyle, PhD (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes)

B van der Waal, BSc (North West), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Geography (GOG) is a six-semester subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn and BSocSc.

To major in Geography, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: EAR 101, GOG 102, GOG 201, GOG 202, GOG 301, and GOG 302. See Rule S.23. At the discretion of the Head of Department students may replace one third level course with an acceptable alternative course

deemed to be its equivalent.

EAR 101 and GOG 102 are prerequisites for students majoring in Environmental Science (ENV), details of which are given in a separate entry.

Students are expected to participate in Departmental excursions. Costs are kept as low as possible. Honours students are encouraged to attend the South African Student Geographical Conference, which is held at a different university each year. See the Departmental Web Page (<http://www.ru.ac.za/geography>) for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOGRAPHY

Geography 1 consists of two first-year semester courses, namely Earth Science 101 (jointly taught by the Geography and Geology Departments) and Geography 102 (Exploring Global Human Geographies), which are typically taught in the first and second semesters, respectively. Students who take both Geography 1 and Geology 1 will have to take an additional semester course in an appropriate subject during the first semester to ensure that they have enough NQF credits for their degree. Each semester course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course GOG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students wishing to major in Geography must normally obtain both semester-courses components separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

These courses provide a sound foundation for the student majoring in Geography and for those only taking Geography for one year. Practical work, including fieldwork, and tutorials are integral to both courses that reinforce themes covered in lectures and ensure that academic and geographic literacy are developed within the curriculum. At least 50% for Geography in the National Senior Certificate (or equivalent) is recommended for entry into Earth Science.

Students may not register for Geography 102 unless they have met the subminimum requirements in both the Geography and Geology component of at least 50% in Geography in the National Senior Certificate (or equivalent).

EAR 101

First-year, first-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 NSC Geography, or Maths, or Physical Science, or Biology.

Course description: Introduction to Earth Systems. This course introduces the processes that have shaped the Earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The interrelationships between the Earth, the atmosphere, and living organisms form key themes through the course. EAR 101 comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

DP requirements: Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%
Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% for aggregation with GOG 102 and 40% for each discipline (i.e. Geography and Geology)

GOG 102

First-year, second-semester course (15 credits at NQF level 5)

Entrance requirements: 40% EAR 101 or over 50% for NSC Geography. Students majoring in Geography or Environmental Science require EAR101.

Course description: Exploring Global Human Geographies. This course examines key concepts and understanding within Human Geography that serve as an introduction to the sub-discipline. Space and place are considered fundamental to understanding human societies and structures. Key themes include: modes of production and consumption; demography and migration; inequalities and development; globalisation; and exploration of urban and rural spaces within historical, political, economic, social and spatial contexts. GOG 102 comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

DP requirements: Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% for aggregation with EAR 101. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GOG102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOGRAPHY

There are two independent second-year courses in Geography. GOG 201 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course GOG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component.

Practical work is an integral part of both courses and is related to the relevant lecture courses and the development of research techniques.

Both GOG 102 and EAR 101 are required before a student may register for GOG 201 or GOG 202.

GOG 201

Second-year, first-semester course (20 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: EAR 101 50% and GOG 101 50% (or GOG 1 60%)

Course description: Space and place in Southern Africa 1. This course examines the key processes that determine the physical and human geography of southern Africa. Concepts, theories and examples from other regions will be used where appropriate to help us understand the southern African experience. Contemporary issues such as environmental change and associated problems of human development will be examined. Selected human and physical geographical perspectives are used to understand the rural and urban landscapes. The complementary course for GOG 201 is GOG 202, and it comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

DP requirements: Over 80% lecture attendance;

attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40%

Subminimum for June: 40% for aggregation with GOG 202. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GOG201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

GOG 202

Second-year, second-semester course (20 credits at NQF level 6)

Entrance requirements: EAR 101 50%, GOG 101 50% (or GOG 1 60%)

Course description: Space and place in Southern Africa 2. This course examines the key processes that determine the physical and human geography of southern Africa. Concepts, theories and examples from other regions will be used where appropriate to help us understand the southern African experience. Contemporary issues such as environmental change and associated problems of human development will be examined. Selected human and physical geographical perspectives are used to understand the rural and urban landscapes. The complementary course for GOG 202 is GOG 201, and it comprises five lectures/tutorials, plus one three-hour practical per week.

DP requirements: Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% for aggregation with GOG 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GOG202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOGRAPHY

There are two independent third year courses in Geography. GOG 301 is offered in the second semester and GOG 302 in the first semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be

deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GOG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Normally, both GOG 201 and GOG 202 are required before a student may register for either or both of the third year semester courses GOG 301 and GOG302.

GOG 302

Third-year, first-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: GOG 201 50% and GOG 202 50%

Course description: Applied Spatial Technologies in Geography. The aim of this course is to provide students with the theoretical background and related practical competencies in Geospatial thinking utilising Geographic Information Systems and Remote Sensing. The course comprises five lectures/tutorials/practical preparation sessions and a three-hour practical per week, while a compulsory field weekend may be a component of the course.

DP requirements: Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% for aggregation with GOG 301. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GOG302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

GOG 301

Third-year, second-semester course (30 credits at NQF level 7)

Entrance requirements: GOG 201 50% and GOG 202 50%

Course description: African Geographical Studies.

In this course students will develop a critical understanding of Africa from a Geographical perspective through topics that relate to the Continent's complex social, built and physical environments, environmental processes, resources, as well as social, cultural, economic, and political systems. The specific content of the course will depend on the research and teaching interests of the academic staff who are available at the time and

will vary from year to year. The course comprises five lectures/tutorials and a three-hour practical per week, while a compulsory field weekend may be a component of the course.

DP requirements: Over 80% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments and practicals.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% for aggregation with GOG 302. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GOG301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

HONOURS DEGREES

The Department offers BScHons, BAHons or a BSocScHons degree in Geography and Environmental Water Management, depending on undergraduate qualifications and curricula. Humanities students are reminded of the alternative route to Honours. See Rules H.25(3) and H.25(4).

Each Honours degree is a year-long course (120 credits at NQF level 8)

Students are required to read four modules, submit a research project proposal, a research project, and present at least two seminars during the year. To pass the Honours degree, a candidate must achieve a pass (i.e. a minimum of 50%) for all four courses and their research project. At the start of the academic year, all students will have to attend an orientation programme, which may include a compulsory field trip. Other field trips, which may be scheduled during a vacation, are also compulsory for several individual Honours modules and students will normally be expected to attend the annual Geography Students Conference. For all programmes, the modules offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints. Other appropriate modules may be taken if approved by the Head of Department. Entry into any module will be dependent on being able to provide evidence of appropriate prior knowledge to the Head of Department.

Part of the Honours degrees may be taken in conjunction with modules in other departments. Where approximately 50% of a student's courses

are examined in another department, a joint degree is awarded (for example, Honours in Geography/Environmental Science). Any combined degree must be agreed to by both Heads of Department concerned.

HONOURS IN GEOGRAPHY

Students are required to take a core, integrative, module (Research Philosophy and Methodology), and select three other courses from those offered by the staff of the Department, Visiting Professors, Visiting Lecturers and Research Associates. Our courses reflect the interests of the staff members and normally include a selection from the following: Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); GIS Internship; Critical Urban Geographies; Geography and Spatial Planning; Hydrology; Environmental Water Quality; Freshwater Ecology; Earth Observation in a Changing World, Advanced Climatology & Climate Change, Participatory Approaches to Water Management, and Inclusive Development for Resilient Infrastructure. Course selection depends on the prerequisite knowledge and experience in the respective field at the undergraduate level. Specific specialisations in Geography may be taken (if the personnel and teaching programme allows it) in Landscape Processes and Management, or Spatial Development, where their curricula will be tailored by the course coordinator.

HONOURS IN ENVIRONMENTAL WATER MANAGEMENT

Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, normally majoring in at least one of Geography, Environmental Science or Hydrology. Other candidates with appropriate professional experience in water resource management may be considered. This degree aims to equip students with the conceptual understanding and practical knowledge that are needed to make an effective contribution to the sustainable management of catchment systems and their associated water resources. Students are required to take a core, integrative course (Research Philosophy and Methodology) and the course Integrated Catchment Management. Students must also select two other courses. Recommended elective courses include:

Environmental Water Quality; Hydrology; Freshwater Ecology; Extended GIS (Geographical Information Systems); Earth Observation in a Changing World; Advanced Climatology & Climate Change, or other appropriate courses approved by the Course Coordinator. Course selection depends on the prerequisite knowledge and experience in respective field at the undergraduate level and the research project must be related to Environmental Water Management and approved by the Course Coordinator.

Entrance requirements: 65% average for final year undergraduate studies, with a major in Geography or an equivalent subject (with 65% average). Entry into the GIS and Earth Observation modules requires a pass of 65% for GOG 302 (or an equivalent).

DP requirements: 100% lecture attendance; attendance and completion of ALL tutorials, assignments, practicals and Departmental academic activities; involvement in

demonstrating and tutoring in the Department undergraduate programme.

Subminimum for Coursework and Exams: 45% in each course.

INTERDISCIPLINARY HONOURS DEGREES

The Geography Department offers courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar) including Development Studies and Industrial Society. Students should consult the Head of Department concerning available courses.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA, MSocSc (each is 180 credits at NQF level 9) and PhD (360 credits at NQF level 10), under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

GEOLOGY

Professor and Head of Department

SA Prevec, MSc (McMaster) PhD (Alberta)
PGDHE (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

SH Büttner, MSc (TU Darmstadt) PhD (Goethe
Frankfurt) PGDHE (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

E Grosch, PhD (UCT)

Lecturer

S Mavuso MSc (Wits)

Professors Emeriti

RE Harmer, PhD (UCT)

RE Jacob PhD (UCT)

JS Marsh, PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

AE Moore, PhD (UCT)

R Gess, PhD (Wits)

N McLoughlin, PhD (Oxon)

RN Scoon, PhD (Rhodes)

Geology (GLG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BEcon (Mineral Economics).

Geology is a recommended co-major with other Science majors such as Chemistry, Physics, one of the Mathematical Sciences, Life Sciences, Geography, and Environmental Science. A BSc in Geology and Economics is also offered. To major in Geology, a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: GLG 1 (comprising EAR 101 and GLG 102), GLG 2, GLG 3. CHE 101 is also required and at least one other appropriate first year semester course chosen from amongst those offered in the departments of Chemistry, Mathematics or Physics. Students are strongly advised to include additional courses in these subjects in their curriculum. Two, or in some cases four, semester-courses in Geology are allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Fieldwork is a necessary part of Geology courses and a field course fee is payable annually for GLG 2 and GLG 3 and per semester for GLG 102.

For further details see the Departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/geology/>, particularly on the contents of courses.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOLOGY

Geology 1 consists of two first-year courses, namely Earth Science 101 (jointly taught by the Geology and Geography departments) and Geology 102 which are taught normally in the first and second semesters respectively. Students who take both Geography 1 and Geology 1 will have to take an additional semester course in an appropriate subject during the first semester to ensure that they have enough NQF credits for their degree. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GLG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Earth Science 101 (EAR 101) is taught jointly by the Departments of Geology and Geography, and focuses on the topic: "Introduction to Earth Systems". This course introduces the processes that have shaped the Earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The interrelationships between the Earth, the atmosphere and living organisms forms a key theme through the course. No prior background in geology or geography is required.

EAR 101 is a suitable semester-course for non-Science majors. Students may not register for GLG 102 unless they have obtained at least 40% or greater in EAR 101, and have met the sub-minimum requirements in both the EAR 101 theory and practical papers. The GLG 1 credit is required before a student can proceed to any second-year course in Geology.

EAR 101

This is a first-year, second-semester course (NQF

level 5, 15 credits) jointly taught by the Departments of Geography and Geology. See specific details in the Department of Geography.

GLG 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: EAR 101 40% or better.

Course description: GLG 102 provides a more detailed introduction to the basic principles of geology and to the geology of South Africa. Practical work focuses on the recognition and interpretation of geological maps. Short (one-day) local field excursions are also conducted.

DP requirements: Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests). A class mark minimum of 40%.

Assessment weighting: Class record 50%, Examinations 50%.

Supplementary exam: An overall course mark (class record + exam) of 40-49% is required to qualify for a supplementary exam, with a minimum class record mark of 50% and a clean class record in terms of DP warnings required. **Sub-minimum for aggregation (ACR GLG 1):** at least 40% in GLG 102 and in EAR 101. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GLG102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOLOGY

There are two second-year courses in Geology: GLG 201 held in the first semester and GLG 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GLG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports may contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

The GLG 1 credit is required before a student may

register for GLG 2 courses. Attendance in GLG201 and a valid DP certificate are required for a student to register for GLG 202. Credits in CHE 101 and at least one other appropriate first year semester course in Chemistry, Mathematics or Physics are required. Permission may be granted to repeat these courses concurrently with GLG 201 and GLG 202.

GLG 201 and 202

Second-year, first and second-semester courses (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: For GLG 201: GLG 1 or GLG102 credit and attendance of CHE 101. For GLG 202: adequate performance (i.e. a valid DP certificate) in GLG 201 required.

Course descriptions: These courses consist of lectures and associated practical work through introductory courses in mineralogy, geochemistry and petrology (igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic), as well as in structural geology, palaeontology, and hydrogeology. The course includes a compulsory field course in appropriate mapping and stratigraphic techniques.

DP requirements: Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests). A class mark minimum of 40% in each semester.

Assessment weighting: Class record 50%, Examinations 50%.

Supplementary exam: An overall course mark (class record + exam) of 40-49% is required to qualify for a supplementary exam, with a minimum class record mark of 50% and a clean class record in terms of DP warnings required.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: at least 40% in each semester course for aggregation to obtain an ACR GLG 2. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GLG201 or GLG202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN GEOLOGY

There are two third-year courses in Geology. GLG 301 is held in the first semester and GLG 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate

mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course GLG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports may contribute to the class mark, which forms part of the semester mark.

Entrance requirements: A student may not register for GLG 301 before (a) first obtaining at least one second-year semester credit in Geology and having adequately performed in the other (ie a valid DP certificate); (b) first obtaining credit in the compulsory ancillary first year courses in Chemistry, Physics or Mathematics.

GLG 301 and 302

Third-year, first and second-semester courses (NQF level 7, 30 credits).

Course descriptions: These courses include advanced-level modules in igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic petrology, structural geology and palaeontology, which follow on from the introductory courses in GLG 2. In addition, courses in economic geology (the geology of ore deposits) and stable isotope geochemistry may be offered. The programme includes a compulsory field course, historically held in the September term break.

DP requirements: Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests). A class mark minimum of 40% in each semester.

Assessment weighting: Class record 50%, Examinations 50%.

Supplementary exam: An overall course mark (class record + exam) of 40-49% is required to qualify for a supplementary exam, with a minimum class record mark of 50% and a clean class record in terms of DP warnings required.

Sub-minimum for aggregation: at least 40% in each semester course for aggregation to obtain an ACR GLG 3. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for GLG301 or GLG302 but will be eligible to write the

supplementary examination.

GEOLOGY HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: The Honours course comprises a theoretical component (lectures, tutorials, seminars, essays) with related practical work, a field school and a research project. Depending on staff availability the topics covered in the course may be drawn from a selection of the following: research and analytical techniques, geochemistry, mineralogy, igneous petrology, metamorphic petrology, sedimentology, basin analysis, structural geology, palaeontology, Earth history, geotectonics, ore-forming processes, geohydrology, and exploration techniques. Honours students should consult with appropriate members of staff for guidance regarding the research project and are encouraged to formulate their own projects. The results of the research project are submitted in the form of a comprehensive report.

DP requirements: Appropriate class attendance and submission of all assessed work (e.g. practical reports, tests, project report). Adequate engagement with the research project.

Assessment weighting: Class record 35%, research project 35%, examinations 30%.

Supplementary exam: None.

MSC AND PHD DEGREES

The Department pursues an active programme of research into a wide range of problems in Earth Science, leading to the award of the MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) or PhD degree (NQF level 10, 360 credits). Students with Honours degrees are encouraged to participate in these research programmes and prepare theses on their research work.

In addition, the department usually offers a professionally oriented postgraduate programme leading to the award of Master's degrees in Exploration Geology or Economic Geology, through part time coursework and thesis. These degrees are currently not offered.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Prospective candidates may request further details on any of these programmes from the HoD. A detailed booklet on postgraduate courses is available on request.

MSc in Exploration Geology (currently suspended)

(NQF level 9, 120 credits)

This advanced course is open to candidates holding the BSc (Hons) degree, or equivalent four-year degree. Three years' relevant professional experience is an additional requirement. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates who hold a good BSc degree and have at least five years' relevant work experience.

The course is designed to cover the most important theoretical and practical aspects of the exploration for, and evaluation of, mineral resources. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by the staff of the Department supported by inputs from experts drawn from industry and other universities. Field-work visits to areas of economic mineralization, and report writing, form integral parts of the course.

The course is offered on a part-time basis only. Coursework is divided into 4 modules presented over 2 years: 2 devoted to the characteristics, origin and distribution of the major ore deposit types and

the appropriate exploration methods for discovery and development; the remaining 2 are devoted to exploration techniques, resource assessment, mineral economics and project evaluation. The ore deposit modules have an associated field exercise of two weeks. The ore deposit module is offered in the early part of the year (usually February-April); the techniques module in the third quarter (usually August).

Requirements for the award of the degree include the completion of four coursework modules, and the submission of a dissertation on a topic selected in consultation with the course Director. Coursework is evaluated based on written assignments, reports and verbal presentations throughout the course. Award of the degree requires an aggregate mark of at least 50% on all assessed components.

MSc in Economic Geology (currently suspended)

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

This course is designed for graduates holding the qualification of BSc (Hons) or equivalent and lays greater emphasis upon a research thesis than the degree in Exploration Geology. Previous professional experience is preferred but not a prerequisite for admission. The requirements for the degree are the completion of two of the modules offered for the MSc Exploration Geology, and the submission of a thesis based on original field or laboratory work on economic geology.

HISTORY

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

J Thumbran, BEd, BHCS (Hons) (UP), MA (Tilburg), PhD (Minnesota)

Associate Professor

E Msindo, BA (UZ), MPhil, PhD (Cantab)

Senior Lecturers

T Madimu, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UZ), PhD (Stell)

Lecturers

Z. Mbinda (BA), BA(Hons), MA (UCT)

CJ Paterson, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Professors Emeriti

G Baines, BA, HED (UCT), BA (Hons) (UNISA), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

A Kirkaldy, BSoc Sci, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA, PhD (UCT)

P Maylam, BA (Hons) Rhodes, MA, PhD (Queens)

J Wells, BA (Colorado College), MA (Yale), PhD (Columbia)

History is a three-year major subject which may be studied in a degree in the Faculty of Humanities. The department offers a set of semesterised courses. A student majoring in History is normally expected to obtain 30 credits in History courses for the first and second-year levels of study and 60 in the third year, but in some instances that requirement can be waived (see below for specific rules).

General rules

1. At every level, marks for semester courses are aggregated. Students achieving an aggregate of 50% or more will be deemed to have passed every course at that level except that at third-year level students who either fail more than one course or obtain a mark of less than 40% in a course will not be granted an aggregated pass.
2. All final examinations are written at the end of the semester in which the course is offered (i.e. June or November).
3. Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for second-level courses in History, without having taken either of the first-level

courses, or they may register for third-level courses without having taken any first or second-level courses.

4. In some instances, with the permission of the two heads of department concerned, a student majoring in History may be allowed to take a course in another department as part of the History major. This course must be in a history-related field.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

History 101 (HIS101)

First-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Africa and the making of the World 1: From the earliest times to c. 1900

DP requirements: 90% lecture and tutorial attendance, coursework submission

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

History 102 (HIS 102)

First-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Africa and the making of the Modern World 2: From Colonisation to Independence

DP requirements: 90% lecture and tutorial attendance, coursework submission

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

- a) Students who fail either History 101 or History 102 but achieve an overall aggregate of 50% or more in both courses, will be deemed to have passed both courses.
- b) Students may register for History 102 at the beginning of the second semester, without having taken History 101. Should they wish to major in History, they will be required to pass History 101 before proceeding to History 201.

History 201 (HIS 201)

Second-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Course description: Twentieth Century World History

DP requirements: 90% lecture and tutorial attendance, coursework submission

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

History 202 (HIS 202)

Second-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Course description: Themes in Southern African History

DP requirements: 90% lecture and tutorial attendance, coursework submission

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

- a) Students intending to major in History must have passed History 101 and 102 (individually or on aggregate) in order to enter History 201 or History 202.
- b) Students who fail History 201 may register for History 202 but will need to pass both courses before being admitted to third-year History courses.
- c) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for History 201 and/or History 202 without having previously taken either first-year courses in History.

History 3

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Students normally read for two term courses in each semester, giving a total of 30 credits at NQF level 7 for each semester, or 60 credits for the year. The Department cannot guarantee that all these options will be available in a particular academic year.

History 301: The Making of Modern South Africa
Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 302: Gender in southern African history

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 304: Popular Culture, Politics and Protest

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 305: History of modern South Asia

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 306: Africa in crisis

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 307: US imperialism in the modern world

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 309: History of African intellectuality

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 310: Introduction to Public History

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 311: South African Environmental History

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 312: Themes in Zimbabwean History

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 313: Contested Pasts: History and Memory

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 318: A specialised course which may be offered in any field depending on student demand and/or the interests of staff members or visiting lecturers.

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 319: The University in South Africa: Past and Present

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 320: The History of the Corporation in South Africa

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

History 321: Africa and its Maritime Worlds

Third-year term course (15 credits at NQF level 7)

- a) Majoring students who have failed either History 201 or History 202 and have not achieved an aggregate pass will not be admitted to third-year courses until they have passed both second-year courses.
- b) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the Head of Department, register for one or more third-year courses without any History prerequisites.

Course description: Varies from year to year, see course handbook.

DP requirements: 90% lecture and tutorial attendance, coursework submission

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40% (student must pass three out of four term courses, one course may be between 40-49% for aggregation purposes)

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: Students may read for Honours in either History or as part of a combined Honours degree in History and one other subject (see Rule H.24) or under one other programme. The course is normally entered in the fourth year of study, unless the student opts, with the permission of the Head of Department, to begin the course in the third year in terms of the alternative route (see Rule H.25.3).

Course description: Students will normally write three papers and a research essay. The three (or four) papers will be written on topics chosen from a range of courses offered by the department. These courses may vary from year to year according to the particular interests of staff and students. The research essay should be a maximum of 15 000 words in length (excluding end matter).

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A recognised Honours qualification in History or in a field which the Department feels will enable the student to cope with the demands of a Master's degree in History. Under special circumstances, *ad eundem gradum* applications may be considered.

Course description: Either a written full thesis or a Master's by coursework and a thesis. Master's by coursework and thesis will only be offered at the discretion of the Department. Students who wish to write a thesis should note that their research topics must be approved in advance by the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. Students will work under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. A student may select a co-supervisor from another department or faculty at the discretion of the Head of Department. The choice of subject or research is not restricted to those based on archival research.

Students who wish to take the Master's degree by coursework and thesis will offer the following:

- a) Three topics for advanced individual study to be selected from fields not previously studied for the Honours degree. These will be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of the Department.
- b) A research thesis in a cognate field. Candidates must complete and present their thesis within six months of the completion of the written papers.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A recognised Master's degree in History or in a field which the Department feels will enable the student to successfully undertake the writing of a PhD thesis in History

Course description: A written thesis under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. A student may select a co-supervisor from another department or faculty at the discretion of the Head of Department.

HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

AI Todd, BA, BA (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

Professor

CJ Christie, BA (HMS)(UPE), BSc (Med)(Hons) (UCT), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

JP Davy, BA, BA (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

S Wells, MSc (Dipl Ing), PhD (D- Ing) (TU Berlin)

Lecturer

MC Mattison, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn, and BA. HKE as a major is designed to provide students with an interdisciplinary academic approach to the analysis of performance and human health, in sport, at work, and other domains of life.

Each year (HKE 1, HKE 2, and HKE 3) comprises modules from the bio-physical domain, the physiological domain, and the cognitive domain; as well as a module that focuses on the integration and application of the three domains. The subject aims to equip students with an understanding of human responses to the environment they interact with. The professional aspects of the programme prepare students for careers or further education in diverse fields including Ergonomics, Sports Science, and Public Health.

To major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, a candidate is required to obtain credits in the following courses: HKE 1, HKE 2, HKE 3. See Rule S.23.

For further details see the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/hke/>, particularly on the content of courses.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

HKE 1 comprises two first-year courses: HKE 101 is held in the first semester and HKE 102 in the second semester. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is

required to progress from HKE 101 to HKE 102. An aggregate mark for the two semester-courses of at least 50% allows the candidate to obtain the year-course HKE 1, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each semester. HKE 1 is required before a student may register for HKE 2. A variety of tutorials and laboratory practicals, during which human responses to varying environmental demands are evaluated, complement the theoretical basis of all these courses. Supplementary examinations are offered in either course, provided that a candidate achieves the minimum standard specified by the Department.

HKE 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Introduction to Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Introduction to the Biophysical Domain (Anthropometry, Anatomy and Biomechanics) and Anatomy and Biomechanics of the Upper Extremities

DP requirements: 100% attendance of tests and laboratory practicals, minimum 75% lecture attendance, 75% tutorial attendance (even with valid leave of absence, only a maximum of three laboratory practicals and three tutorials may be missed), 100% submission of all assignments, semester class mark of at least 40% for admission to the examination.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

Supplementary exam: Semester mark of 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: Semester mark of at least 40% for aggregation with HKE 102

HKE 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Minimum of 40% for HKE 101

Course description: Cardiovascular and Respiratory Physiology, Sensory Perception, Integration and Application.

DP requirements: 100% attendance of tests and laboratory practicals, minimum 75% lecture

attendance, 75% tutorial attendance (even with valid leave of absence, only a maximum of three laboratory practicals and three tutorials may be missed), 100% submission of all assignments, class record of at least 40% for admission to the examination.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

Supplementary exam: Semester mark of at least 40%

Sub-minimum for November: Semester marks 40-49% for aggregation with HKE 101

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

HKE 2 comprises two second-year courses: HKE 201 is held in the first semester, and HKE 202 in the second semester. HKE 1 is required before registering for HKE 2. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 201 to HKE 202. An aggregate mark for the two semester-courses of at least 50% allows the candidate to obtain the year-course HKE 2, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. HKE 2 is required before a student may register for HKE 3. Participation in a wide variety of laboratory practicals, as well as tutorials form part of all modules of both HKE 2 courses.

Supplementary examinations are offered in either course, provided that a candidate achieves the minimum standard specified by the Department.

HKE 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: HKE 1

Course description: Kinanthropometry, Anatomy and Biomechanics of the Lower Extremities, Human Information Processing

DP requirements: 100% attendance of tests and laboratory practicals, minimum 75% lecture attendance, 75% tutorial attendance (even with valid leave of absence, only a maximum of three laboratory practicals and three tutorials may be missed), 100% submission of all assignments, class record of at least 40% for admission to the examination.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

Supplementary exam: Semester mark of 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: Semester mark of at least 40% for aggregation with HKE 202. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for HKE201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

HKE 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: minimum of 40% for HKE 201

Course description: Neuromuscular Physiology, Attention and Situation Awareness; Integration and Application.

DP requirements: 100% attendance of tests and laboratory practicals, minimum 75% lecture attendance, 75% tutorial attendance (even with valid leave of absence, only a maximum of three laboratory practicals and three tutorials may be missed), 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%

Supplementary exam: Semester mark of 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: Semester mark of at least 40% for aggregation with HKE 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for HKE202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS

HKE 3 comprises two third-year courses: HKE 301 is held in the first semester, and HKE 302 in the second semester. HKE 2 is required before registering for HKE 3. A sub-minimum mark of 40% is required to progress from HKE 301 to HKE 302. An aggregate mark for the two semester-courses of at least 50% allows the candidate to obtain the year-course HKE 3, provided the candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. HKE 3 is required before a student may register for postgraduate (honours) studies in HKE. Participation in a wide variety of

laboratory experiences forms part of all modules of both HKE 3 courses.

Supplementary examinations are offered in either course, provided that a candidate achieves the minimum standard specified by the Department.

HKE 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: HKE 2

Course description: Humans and Systems, Exercise Physiology, Research, Evaluation and Measurement

DP requirements: 100% attendance of tests and laboratories (even with valid leave of absence, only a maximum of three practicals may be missed), minimum 75% lecture attendance, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%
Supplementary exam: Semester mark of 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: Minimum semester mark of 40% for aggregation with HKE 302. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for HKE301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

HKE 302

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% HKE 301

Course description Anatomy and Biomechanics of the Trunk and Spine, Perceptual Motor Control, Integration and Application

DP requirements: 100% attendance of tests and laboratories (even with valid leave of absence, only a maximum of three practicals may be missed), minimum 75% lecture attendance, 100% submission of all assignments, at least 40% of class record for admission to the examination
Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%;

Supplementary exam: Semester mark of 40-49%

Sub-minimum for November: Minimum semester mark of at least 40% for aggregation with HKE 302. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for HKE302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: This one-year postgraduate course comprises a seminar block and a research project, complemented by field trips, research seminars and exposition to advanced research. The seminar modules cover the whole range of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics subjects with consideration of theoretical and applied aspects. Modules offered include Research Methods, Advanced Physiology, Ergonomics Assessment, Systems, Advanced Biomechanics and Chronobiology. The research project is undertaken by the student in consultation with a supervising staff member to add depth in an area of particular interest. These areas may include physical and mental performance, human responses, and human behaviour to different types of tasks (incl. sport activities and lifestyle), as well as environmental influences. Scientific rigour, linked with application skills, is emphasised throughout the course.

DP requirements: 100% submission of all assignments

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 40%, November examinations 30%

Supplementary exam: None

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to pursue research degrees at the MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) level. These involve preparation of a thesis under the supervision of a member of staff of the Department.

Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE

Associate Professor and Head of Department

A-R Childs, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor and Research Chair

WM Potts, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Professor

WHH Sauer, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UPE)

Associate Professor

CLW Jones, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer

EL Mabidilala PhD (Limpopo)

Professors Emeriti

PJ Britz, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UCT), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

T Hecht, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UPE)

H Kaiser, Dr.agr (Bonn)

Visiting Professors

K Cochrane, PhD (Wits)

A Chakona, PhD (Rhodes)

N James, PhD (Rhodes)

B Mann, PhD (UKZN)

N Vine, PhD (Rhodes)

Honorary Professor

S Aswani, PhD (Hawaii)

P Cowley, PhD (Rhodes)

MR Lipinski DSc (Lodz)

M Roberts, PhD (UCT)

P Shaw, PhD (Swansea)

D Vousden, PhD (Bangor)

A Whitfield, DSc (Rhodes)

Visiting Fellows

A Arkhipkin, PhD (Moscow)

J Augustyn, PhD (UPE)

Senior Research Associates

R Bennett, PhD (Rhodes)

K Christison, PhD UFS)

M Duncan, PhD (Rhodes)

G Hofmeyr, PhD (UP)

J Lang-Mann, PhD (Queensland)

J Pegg, PhD (Bournemouth)

B Macey, PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

T Andrew, PhD (Rhodes)

A Cockroft, PhD (UPE)

C da Silva PhD (UCT)

C Elston, PhD (Rhodes)

M Farthing, PhD (Rhodes)

E Gennari, PhD (Rhodes)

D Huchzermeyer, PhD (UP)

M Naylor, MSc (Rhodes)

M Magoro, PhD (NMU)

L Mofu, PhD (Rhodes)

C Muller, PhD (Rhodes)

T Murray, PhD (Rhodes)

G Paulet, MSc (Rhodes)

T Shipton, PhD (Rhodes)

K Smith, MSc (Rhodes)

R Taylor, PhD (Rhodes)

M Smale, PhD (Rhodes)

K van der Walt, PhD (Rhodes)

A Winkler, PhD (Rhodes)

A Witte, PhD (Rhodes)

The Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science is a leading African academic institution supporting the sustainable utilisation and study of fishes, fisheries management, aquaculture and aquatic resource utilisation through teaching and training of students, community engagement, professional service provision and conducting research. It is recognised by the African Union as a *Centre of Excellence* for training in marine fisheries and aquaculture.

At the undergraduate level the Department offers a four-semester major in Ichthyology (ICH), which may be taken as a major subject for the BSc, BA and BJourn degrees.

At the postgraduate level the following degrees are offered: BSc Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Master of Science and Doctor of Philosophy in either Ichthyology or Fisheries Science. Masters and Doctoral degrees are by research only through the preparation of a thesis.

Detailed information on course work and curricula may be obtained from the Head of Department.

For further details See the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology>, particularly on the contents of courses.

To major in Ichthyology, a candidate is required to pass the following courses: CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 301; ICH 302; CHE 1. Both ICH 201 and ICH 202 are required before a student may register for ICH 301.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ICHTHYOLOGY

There are two semester-long second-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 201 is offered in the first semester and ICH 202 is offered in the second semester. Credit for each semester-course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course ICH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Ichthyology must pass both ICH 201 and ICH 202 before proceeding to ICH 3. Adequate performance in ICH 201 is required before a student may register for ICH 202. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. An ecological field trip is held jointly with the Departments of Entomology and of Botany in the second semester, and all students are required to attend.

Cell Biology (CEL 101) and Zoology (ZOO 102) are required before a student may register for ICH 201 or ICH 202. CHE 1 and BOT 102 are required to major in Ichthyology. Students without CHE 1, CEL 101, ZOO 102 or BOT 102, but with appropriate alternative foundation degrees, for example EAR 101, GOG 102 or GLG 102, might be considered by exception, and at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

ICH 201: Life in water - fish diversity and functional biology

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: CEL 101 and ZOO 102, or ZOO 1

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to these entrance requirements and co-requisites shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

Course description: The course is structured around the general theme of fish diversity, functional anatomy and fish life histories and is comprised of lectures, tutorials, practicals and an anatomy project. Topics include fish diversity, evolution, palaeontology, functional anatomy, fish life history styles, ecology, reproduction, feeding biology, nutrition, and age and growth. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

DP requirements: Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Theory Examination: 50%, Project 20%

Supplementary exam: 40%-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% for aggregation with ICH 202. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for ICH201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ICH 202: Aquatic physiology and ecology

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% ICH 201

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to this shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

Course description: The course is structured around the theme of aquatic physiology and ecology and is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals. Students are introduced to the basic physiological concepts in fish covering general topics of respiration, blood circulation, nitrogen metabolism, fish growth, osmoregulation, and comparative endocrinology. The multitude of aquatic environments from high-altitude Afromontane streams down to the abyssal plains are explored.

Each of these aquatic environments has specific hydrological, limnological and oceanographic processes. Students will be introduced to the physical and biological processes that define these aquatic environments, and to the fishes that inhabit

them. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

DP requirements: Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Theory Examination: 70%

Supplementary exam: 40%-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with ICH 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for ICH202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN ICHTHYOLOGY

The ICH 301 and 302 semester courses covers aspects of molecular biology, behavioural ecology, quantitative biology, invasion and conservation biology, and global change ecology. Credit may be obtained for each semester-course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course ICH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in ICH 301 (at least 40%) is required before a student may register for ICH 302. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. There is a year-long project that introduces students to supervised research and is assessed at the end of the first and the second semesters.

ICH 301: Applied and quantitative biology

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 50% ICH 201, 50% ICH 202

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to this shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

Course description: The course is structured around the theme of applied and quantitative ecology and is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals. The writing of essays and presentation

of seminars form an integral part of the course. The course includes molecular biology, behavioural ecology and quantitative biology.

DP requirements: Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 20%, Theory Examination 1: 25%, Theory Examination 2: 25%

Supplementary exam: 40%-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with ICH 302. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for ICH301 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ICH 302: Environmental and global change biology

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% ICH 301

Co-requisites: CHE 1, ZOO 102, BOT 102. Exceptions to this shall be considered, at the discretion of the department on a case-by-case basis.

Course description: This course is structured around the theme of environmental change and global change biology. Topics include invasion and conservation biology, and global change ecology. The preparation of essays and the presentation of seminars are important components of the course.

DP requirements: Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 20%, Theory Examination 1: 25%, Theory Examination 2: 25%

Supplementary exam: 40%-49%

Sub-minimum for November: 40% for aggregation with ICH 301. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum (40%) will not obtain credit for ICH302 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: 65% ICH 3 or equivalent

Course description: The aim of the Ichthyology Honours degree is to produce free-thinking and critical young scientists capable of performing independent research and equipped with practical skills to work in fisheries, conservation, aquaculture, ichthyology, environmental and aquatic science related fields. Applicants for Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science are required to have completed a BSc before the start of the honours year, with a major in the life sciences and normally with the equivalent of Chemistry 1 (CHE 1).

The Honours course comprises of advanced studies in data analysis, evolution and systematics, biodiversity, fish biology and ecology, conservation, population dynamics and fisheries resource management, and aquaculture. There are at least two field excursions, the first to gain insight and practical experience in field sampling techniques and the second to obtain insight into operational aquaculture ventures. Students are required to design an aquaculture production facility, prepare and present a business plan concept for a hypothetical aquaculture venture. A major research project is undertaken through the year, and a report submitted for the final examination, in a form suitable for publication in a peer-reviewed journal. The course is run on the basis of lectures, tutorials, seminars and essays. The examination consists of three theory papers, one practical examination, an oral examination, and research project report. Practical and theoretical work done during the year counts towards the final mark.

Applications for the Honours course can be completed via the Rhodes University online admission portal (<https://ross.ru.ac.za/>). Besides this application, all applicants are also encouraged to forward a letter of motivation and a curriculum vitae directly to the department administration (difs@ru.ac.za) at the time that they submit their application. The application and selection process will start 1st July of the preceding year. Late applications will be considered up until the start of the academic year, provided places are available.

DP requirements: Completion of all formal assignments and course attendance.

Assessment: Class record 22%, one project 31%, three theory examinations, one practical examination and one oral examination 47%.

Supplementary exam: None

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN ICHTHYOLOGY OR FISHERIES SCIENCE

Candidates who wish to register for the MSc degree (NQF level 9, 180 credits) in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a four-year BSc degree at the NQF 8 level or BSc Honours degree in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture, Zoology or equivalent (as approved by both the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

Candidates for the PhD degree (NQF level 10, 360 credits) in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a Master's degree or equivalent in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture or Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

The degree of MSc or PhD in Ichthyology is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on fishes (freshwater, estuarine or marine), especially in the classical fields of systematics, morphology, distribution, ecology, behaviour or biology. The degree of MSc or PhD in Fisheries Science is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on aspects of fisheries management, fisheries modelling, aquaculture or fisheries economics. Candidates for MSc or PhD degrees may additionally be required to complete such examinable coursework as may be prescribed by the Head of Department.

The PhD degree must make a substantial contribution towards the advancement of knowledge in the chosen field.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes.

Applications for PhD and MSc in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must follow the department's

application procedure that is available on the department's website:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology/studying/prospectivestudents/applicationprocessformscphdcandidates/>

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Associate Professor and Head of Department

I Siebörger, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

GG Foster, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

G Baduza, MCom, PhD (Rhodes)

M Moyo, MPhil Ed (Cambridge), MSc, PhD (UNISA)

CT Upfold, MBA (Rhodes)

Lecturers

M Katurura, MCom (Fort Hare)

O Lehasa, MCom (Rhodes), MM (Wits)

M Nxosi, BSc (Rhodes), HDipCompAud (Wits), MBA (Wits), PhD (Rhodes)

L Salamntu, MCom (UCT)

Professor Emeritus

DA Sewry, MSc, PhD (Rhodes), FICSIT,

MIITPSA, MAIS

Visiting Professors

NJ Bidwell, MIT (UQ), PhD (Lond.)

SV Flowerday, MBA (Oxford Brookes), DTech (NMU), FBSC, MAIS

M Herselman, M BIS (PE Technikon), PhD (UP),

C Khene, MCom, PhD (Rhodes)

K Renaud, BSc (UP), PhD (Glasgow)

Research Associates

N Isabirye, MCom (Fort Hare), PhD (NMU)

H Mthoko, BBS, PhD (Rhodes)

Information Systems (INF) is a two-year major subject which is primarily studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. The subject is also studied for the specialist BSc (Information Systems) degree in the Faculty of Science.

The courses offered in the Department concentrate on aspects of the development, application and management of Information Systems in organisations and the technologies used in these processes. Other course topics include project communications, project management, databases, data analytics, information systems theory, and the audit and control of information systems. There is an emphasis on computer-based information systems, and practical courses include the use of spreadsheets, financial modelling, database design, decision support systems, IT project management

tools, data analytic tools, and web application development. In addition, various guest lecturers present seminars during the year on a variety of topics relevant to all areas of Information Systems. The management and strategy aspects are well complemented by courses in the Department of Management, while technical and computer-specific aspects are handled in more depth by courses in the Department of Computer Science.

For further details, particularly on the content of courses, see the departmental web page (<http://www.ru.ac.za/informationssystemsw/>)

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

The Department offers three second-year level courses: INF 201, INF 202 and INF 203. Information Systems 2 consists of the two one-semester courses INF 201 and INF 202; or INF 201 and INF 203. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course INF 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component (see Rule C.12). A candidate who fails INF 201 shall be permitted to proceed to INF 202 or INF 203 provided the required sub-minimum in INF 201 has been obtained. A pass in INF 202 or INF 203 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass INF 201 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

INF 202 is normally taken by students following an Information Systems professional route, whilst INF 203 is normally taken by students following an Accounting professional route as set out in the Bachelor of Commerce (Accounting) curriculum or who intend to register later for the Post-Graduate Diploma in Accountancy or the Honours programme in Financial Management. Students are also permitted to take both INF 202 and INF 203, in which case Information Systems professional or

Accounting professional routes are available to them.

Students must normally gain credit in INF 201 and INF 202, or INF 2 with INF 201 and INF 202 aggregated, before being permitted to register for INF 301.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Information Systems 201 (INF 201)

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: CSC 112; candidates deemed to be in their first year of study may not register for INF 201.

Course description: Digital Experience;; Information Systems Analysis; Database Fundamentals.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before the due date; and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 201 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Information Systems 202 (INF 202)

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: sub-minimum in INF 201.

Course description: Web Development; Databases.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before the due date; and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 202 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Information Systems 203 (INF 203)

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: sub-minimum in INF 201.

Course description: Accounting Information Systems Security and Control; Databases; Data Analytics; Disruptive Technologies.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before the due date; and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 203 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Information Systems 3 consists of the two one-semester courses INF 301 and INF 302. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course INF 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component (see Rule C.12). A candidate who fails INF 301 shall be permitted to proceed to INF 302 provided the required sub-minimum in INF 301 has been obtained. A pass in INF 302 in such circumstances

shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass INF 301 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

Information Systems 301 (INF 301)

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 7, 30 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: INF 201 and INF 202, or INF 2 with INF 201 and INF 202 aggregated.

Course description: IT Project Management and Communications; Digital Transformation; ; Web Development; Systems Development Project.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before the due date; and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 301 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Every student is also expected to participate in and complete a group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Information Systems 302 (INF 302)

Third-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 7, 30 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: sub-minimum in INF 301.

Course description: Web Development; Data Analytics; Systems Development Project.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend at least 90% of practical sessions; attend at least 80% of lectures; submit all practicals and assignments on or before the due date; and write all term tests.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examinations count 60%. The examination for the INF 302 course consists of not more than two practical or theory examinations. Every student is

also expected to participate in and complete a group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester coursework mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

INFORMATION SYSTEMS HONOURS

The Honours course is a one-year, full-time programme and consists of a coursework component and a research project component. Students may also register for a joint Honours in which the honours programmes from Information Systems and Computer Science or Management, are taken 60%:40% with some coursework and some project components selected from each department.

Coursework component

Students must take an agreed selection of modules. Students may also take any one equivalently weighted Honours level module from another department, provided that it is approved by the Head of Department, in consultation with the Head of the other department.

A selection of the following modules will be offered in any one year, subject to a minimum number of students per module and staff availability: Business Analysis; Business Consulting; Business Data Analytics; Enterprise Architecture; e-Governance; Information Systems Management; Information Security; Research Methodology; User Experience; Big Data.

In addition to the modules listed above, students are required to attend any other activities as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Department.

Research project component

All students are required to undertake a research project in a given area and to produce a written research report.

**INFORMATION SYSTEMS MASTERS
AND DOCTORAL DEGREES**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MCom and PhD under the supervision of staff in the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Regulations.

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Head of School

Q Mgogo, MA, PhD (Fort Hare)

Senior Lecturer and Deputy Head of School (Academics)

C Uzuegbunam, PGDip, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (UCT)

Senior Lecturer and Deputy Head of School (Projects)

BD Garman, BSc, BSc (Hons) (Natal), MA (Rhodes)

Professors

L Dalvit, Laurea (Trento, Italy), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

AC Garman, BA (Wits), BA (Hons), MA (UKZN), PhD (Wits)

Associate Professor

P Boshoff, BA, BA (Hons), PGDJMS, MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

R Amner, BJourn (Rhodes), MA (Rhodes)

JE du Toit, BA, African Studies (Hons), MA, H Dip Ed (UCT), PhD (Stell)

A Schoon, BSc (UP), Dip in Film & Video (Technikon Pretoria), BA (Hons) (Wits), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

Lecturers

H Gess, BA, BA (Hons), HDipJourn, PGDHE (Rhodes)

T Gqubule-Mbeki, MPhil (Columbia), M Phil (Gibs Business School)

T Isaacs de Vega, BA, MA (NMU), PhD (UNISA)

S Mati, BJourn (Rhodes), MEd (UWC), MPhil (Stell)

S Pamphilon, BJourn, PGDHE (Rhodes)

G Rennie, BA (Natal), NDip Journ (Technikon Natal), MPhil (Stell)

K Roux, BJourn, MA (Rhodes)

T Ndabezitha, MA (Rhodes)

Public Service Accountability Monitor

Director: J Kruuse BA LLB (Rhodes)

Sol Plaatje Media Leadership Institute

Director: Vacant

South African Reserve Bank Centre for Economics Journalism

Director

RL Hancocks, BEcon, BCom (Hons), PGDJMS, MCom Financial Markets (Rhodes)

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Journalism and Media Studies 1 (JMS 1)

First-year, full-year course

(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: An introduction to Communications Studies and Communication Practice, Journalism Studies and Journalism Practice, Media Studies and Digital Media Studies.

DP requirements: A student may be excluded from the course if they do not comply with any of the following:

- 80% attendance of all course meetings and events, including lectures, tutorials, practicals, tests and examinations.
- Submission of all practical and essay assignments by the due date and time.
- If unable to do any of the above, a student must apply for a Leave of Absence (LOA) and/or an extension.

Assessment: The programme is divided into modules, each between four and six weeks in duration. 50% of the course marks are based on assignments completed in Semester 1, and 50% for the same in Semester 2.

Assessment mode: Each module is designed around a process of continuous assessment.

Supplementary exam: None. Learning activities are designed around continuous assessment, so that students have multiple opportunities to receive feedback and improve on assignments as part of each course.

Journalism and Media Studies 2 (JMS 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: JMS1. There are 120 places in JMS2 – entry into JMS2 is not guaranteed. Applications are submitted by students and reviewed in committee. The following areas are taken into account: individual academic performance; a portfolio of media work completed by students during their first year; tutors' reports and students' progress; an evaluative and biographical questionnaire and a

critical reflection of media work undertaken in the course of the year. Furthermore, students wishing to apply for entry to JMS2 must complete a portfolio of media work in order to meet the application criteria. NB: Students will not qualify to enter JMS2 unless they have passed at least two other first year credits in addition to JMS1.

Course description: This course is divided equally into two streams, which are taught concurrently: Media Production and Media Studies. Media Production consists of a semester-long module in Podcasting and another semester-long module in Publication Production.

Co-requisite course: IsiXhosa for Journalism is a one-year course offered by the School of Languages and is co-requisite with JMS2. This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree. The course includes streams for students who are beginning to learn the language, those who are at an intermediary level and those who are at an advanced level.

DP requirements: Same as JMS1. In addition, it is a DP requirement that all JMS2 students who intend to proceed to JMS3 complete a portfolio of media work, to be submitted as part of their applications for JMS3. The portfolio may include both coursework assignments and extra-curricular work. Work done in JMS1 will not count.

Assessment: Media Studies = 50%; Audio Storytelling = 25%; Publication Production = 25%

Supplementary exam: None. Students submit Media Production portfolios at the end of each semester and are provided opportunities to resubmit work for these portfolios during that semester. Media Studies courses are also assessed through continuous assessment, with opportunities to resubmit improved work during each course.

A candidate who fails to obtain 50% for one of the components but passes on aggregate will be granted a non-continuing pass. It is therefore strongly recommended that students who register for Journalism and Media Studies 2 also register for two other second year credits in order to ensure that they still have two major options should they fail Journalism and Media Studies 2 or pass the year with a non-continuing pass.

Journalism and Media Studies 3 (JMS 3)

Third-year, full-year course
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: JMS2 + entry to Journalism and Media Studies 3 is normally predicated upon a candidate obtaining a minimum of 50% for both the Media Studies and Media Production components of the Journalism and Media Studies 2 course. Entry into the student's first-choice media specialisation is based on individual performance at Journalism and Media Studies 2 level as well as on written motivations and additional media experience. Students wishing to apply for entry to JMS3 must complete a portfolio of media work in order to meet the application criteria.

Course description: This course is divided equally into two streams, which are taught concurrently: Media Production Electives and Media Studies. Media Production Elective options include: Design, Photography, Audio, Television, Writing and Editing.

DP requirements: Same as JMS1 and JMS2

Assessment:

Media Production Elective = 50% of year mark

Media Studies = 50% of year mark

Supplementary exam: None. All coursework involves continuous assessment. For Media Production modules such assessment is designed around submission of a portfolio of work. Students collate this portfolio throughout the module with regular feedback so that they can improve on submissions. For Media Studies, students regularly submit assignments that support the learning process. In this way students are provided with multiple opportunities to resubmit work as an integrated aspect of the teaching and learning process.

Journalism and Media Studies 4 (JMS 4)

Fourth-year, full-year course
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: JMS3 (students wishing to enter fourth year must normally have completed two third-year majors). Acceptance into a fourth-year media practice specialisation will be decided on the basis of performance, portfolio and written motivation and/or interview. Students who achieve below 60% for either their final JMS3 specialisation or Media Studies mark will jeopardise their chances of advancing into JMS4. Students going into JMS 4 also need to have passed isiXhosa for Journalism prior to this fourth year.

Course description: JMS4 consists of four courses, all of which are compulsory:

1. Media Production (possible options include Audio, Design, Multimedia, Photography, Video, and Writing and Editing).
2. Media Studies
3. Media Electives in which students select from a range of options related to media production or relevant media topics.
4. Project / work experience in which students embark on a self-defined project or a short work experience in a media production company.

DP requirements: Same as JMS 1, JMS 2 and JMS 3.

Assessment: In order to complete Journalism and Media Studies 4, students must pass the Media Production and Media Studies courses and obtain a sub-minimum of 45% in their Media Elective and Project / Work experience.

Media Production = 50%

Media Studies = 20%

Media Elective = 10%

Project / Work experience = 20%

Supplementary exam: There are no supplementary exams because all teaching and learning is organised around continuous assessments. For Media Production modules, these tasks build towards the submission of a final portfolio. Assessment of Media Studies is supported through a series of assignments which operate as scaffolding for the learning process. In both cases, students are provided with multiple opportunities to improve on their work as part of the coursework process.

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies (PGDIP JMS)

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in any discipline.

Course description: The Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism is designed for students and working practitioners (with a previous NQF 7 qualification). It is organised around participation in *Grocotts Mail*, an award-winning digital news organisation, Rhodes Music Radio and other media platforms. Such participation enables students to experiment with emerging innovations in journalism, digital media production and engagement while exploring relevant debates in the study of journalism, media and communication. In this way they develop the mindset and competencies required of journalists and communication practitioners more generally in the contemporary world.

Assessment:

Media Production = 60%

Media Studies = 20%

Media Elective = 20%

Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management (PGDIP MM)

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in any discipline.

Course description: This course provides graduate students with specialised skills in the management of media. There are eight modules in specialised areas of media management; an experiential learning component involving a media management research project and a further project relating to active participation in a media initiative.

Assessment:

Media management contexts, policy and institutions = 10%

Media management and leadership = 10%

New technology and convergence = 10%

Media economics and financial planning = 10%

Human resource management = 10%

Markets, audiences and advertising = 10%

Managing media content = 10%

Circulation, distribution and transmission = 10%

Portfolio assignment = 20%

Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management (PGDIP MM)

(Part-Time, Distance)

Two-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Candidates may be admitted to the two-year, part-time, online course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they have been admitted to the degree or status of a bachelor in any faculty of the University or from other recognised universities. Consideration will be given to admit students based on the Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) provided that these students have been in the media industry for at least five years and have a diploma and/or advanced certificate in a cognate discipline (e.g. Diploma in Journalism or Advanced Certificate in Journalism; Marketing and Communications, etc.). The numbers of RPL students each year will be capped at 10% of the total student cohort of that year of online students.

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in all of the four modules offered in the first year to progress to the second and final year, where the candidate must pass one of the two additional other modules and the mini-thesis. A pass mark for each module is an aggregated 50% composed of the course and examination marks. A pass mark for the overall course is also an aggregated 50% of the marks of the modules and portfolio.

First Year Modules:

- Research Methods: 12.5%
- Media Ownership and Economics: 12.5%
- Media Governance, Leadership and Advocacy: 12.5%
- One of the Three Elective modules: 12.5% (Either Media Marketing and Advertising; Digital Media

Entrepreneurship and Innovation; or Media Management and Artificial Intelligence).

Second Year Modules:

- Media Law and Ethics: 12.5%
- People Management and the New World of Work: 12.5%
- Mini-thesis: 25%

The duration of the Diploma shall be no less than two academic years.

Postgraduate Diploma in Economics Journalism (PGDIP EJ)

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in any discipline.

Course description: The Postgraduate Diploma in Economics Journalism (PGDip EJ) is an NQF 8 qualification offered by the Rhodes University School of Journalism and Media Studies part-time over two calendar years. The qualification aims to take postgraduate students and media practitioners (with a previous NQF 7 qualification) from various backgrounds and provide them with practical coursework exposure to economics, financial and business journalism production.

The PGDip EJ builds on the journalistic skills of the participants by providing the required vocational training to report on issues and events in the financial and business sectors, as well as local and national government budget reporting, in a way that improves their career prospects and deepens their understanding of journalism. As a part-time course, it is ideal for working journalists who want to switch to financial journalism or develop a professional capacity in this reporting field.

The qualification provides a bridge for aspiring students from commerce and journalism backgrounds who wish to gain a formal qualification and training in economics journalism. Being an NQF 8 qualification, this is the perfect step for industry veterans and aspiring undergraduates to gain a strong postgraduate foothold in their chosen career path.

The course relies heavily on self-driven assignments, though two mandatory in-person modules at the Rhodes University Campus with a duration of five days per module and a further two mandatory online modules in the first academic year. The second year of study will require two additional in-person and two online modules with the same duration, while the final capstone assignment will be completed as a self-driven project over year two. The PGDip EJ consists of 8 core modules, all of which are compulsory.

Assessment:

Financial Journalism = 12.5%

Economics for Journalists = 12.5%

Media Landscape = 12.5%

Financial Markets for Journalists = 12.5%

Accounting and Finance for Journalists = 12.5%

Data Analysis and Interpretation = 12.5%

Public Policy = 12.5%

Capstone Assignment = 12.5%

All assignments must be completed for the candidate to pass.

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in humanities or social sciences.

Course description: Honours students will complete three compulsory papers, two elective papers and a research essay of 10-15 000 words.

Assessment:

Media Studies and Social Theory (compulsory) = 15%

Research Methods (compulsory) = 15%

Academic Writing (compulsory) = 15%

Two electives are to be chosen from the list of those offered in a year = 2 x 15%

Research Report = 25%

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: The student has:

- obtained a good Honours degree or fourth-year in Journalism and Media Studies or related discipline,
- provided that a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,
- provided that candidates satisfy the general regulations governing Master's degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

Description of degree: There are two routes for obtaining an MA degree in the School of JMS:

Option A: Thesis Only

Master of Arts degrees are undertaken by full thesis and under the guidance of supervisors. Students are accepted depending on their area of interest, academic records, and supervision availability.

Option B: Practice-based Masters

This MA degree consists of a media practice project and a mini-thesis. The practice component is conceptualised as a critical intervention in response to a problem or issue. The outputs of the intervention could consist of a portfolio of work, an exhibition, a documentary, a website, a narrative report, etc.

Media Practice Project = 50%

Mini-thesis = 50%

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A Master's Degree in Humanities or Social Sciences

Course description: Doctoral studies are undertaken by full thesis and under the guidance of supervisors.

LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES (SCHOOL OF)

Professor and Head of School of Languages and Literatures

AN Mukenge Licence es Lettres (Lubumbashi),
Agrégation (Lubumbashi), MA (UCT), PhD
(UKZN)

AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES

Subject Head

Associate Professor LL Kwatsha, BA, BA
(Hons) (Fort Hare), BCom (Hons) (NMU), MA,
PhD (Vista), HDE (Rhodes).

Professor and NRF SARCHI Chair in the Intellectualisation of African Languages, Multilingualism and Education

D Nkomo, BA (Hons) (UZ), MPhil, PhD
(Stell), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

LL Kwatsha, BA, BA (Hons) (Fort Hare),
BCom (Hons) (NMU), MA, PhD (Vista), HDE
(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

K Ndhlovu, BA (Hons), MA (UZ), PhD (Fort
Hare)

BB Nosilela, BA, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA
(Stell), PGCE (UNISA), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

M Sam, BSc (Hons) (Fort Hare), MA (Rhodes)
R Molubo, BA, BA(Hons), MA (Rhodes)
B Maseko, BA, BA(Hons), MA (UZ), PhD
(UNISA)

African Languages at Rhodes is offered as both an academic course (African Language Studies) and a language acquisition course. Both are three-year major courses which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases, more than one course is allowed as a credit for a degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Law, Education and Science.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

African Language Studies 101

First-year, Semester course
(NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: This course is offered to isiXhosa language speakers who have

matriculated with Home Language and First Additional Language (FAL). Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.

Course description: The African Language Studies course takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. The modules on offer are Language in context, Language and Society, Literary Studies, as well as Comparative isiNguni Language Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is isiXhosa.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

African Language Studies 102

First-year, Semester course
(NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: This course is offered to isiXhosa language speakers who have matriculated with Home Language and First Additional Language (FAL). Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.

Course description: The African Language Studies course takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. The module on offer is Literary

Studies The medium of teaching and learning is isiXhosa.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

African Language Studies 201

Second-year, first semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: African Language Studies 101 and 102 OR isiXhosa for Journalism 101 and 102

Course description: The course consists of 2 modules per semester. The African Language Studies course 2 takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa, mainly, and other isiNguni languages. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven, and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. Presently the modules on offer are isiXhosa Linguistics and Human Language Technology, Translation Studies, as well as Literary Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is, primarily, isiXhosa but other isiNguni students are allowed to use their respective languages.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

African Language Studies 202

Second year, second semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: African Language Studies 101 and 102 OR isiXhosa for Journalism 101 and 102

Course description: The course consists of 2 modules per semester. The African Language Studies course 2 takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa, mainly, and other isiNguni languages. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven, and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. The module on offer is Literary Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is, isiXhosa.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

African Language Studies 301 and 302

Third-year, semester course
(NQF level 7, 30 credits per semester for each 301 and 302)

Entrance requirements: African Language Studies 201 and 202

Course description: The course consists of 2 modules per year, which are divided into 1 module per semester. The African Language Studies course takes a multi-disciplinary approach to isiXhosa, mainly, and other isiNguni languages. It can be taken in combination with any other discipline in the University. It is also market-driven, and modules offered are meant to enhance the employability of the students. The modules on offer can be any of the following modules: IsiXhosa Linguistics, Human Language Technology, Translation Studies, as well as Literary Studies. Currently, the module on offer in African Languages Studies 301 is Translation Studies, and in African Languages

Studies 302 is Literary Studies. The medium of teaching and learning is, primarily, isiXhosa but other isiNguni students are allowed to use their respective languages, except for literary studies where only isiXhosa is used as the medium of teaching and learning.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 1

First-year, full year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: This course is open to those students who have no prior knowledge of isiXhosa as well as those who have limited knowledge of the language and those who matriculated with Second Additional Language (SAL). Only at the discretion of the Head of the Section will students whose mother tongue is isiXhosa (or any isiNguni language), be permitted to register for the course.

Course description: The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

The course offerings are: Language acquisition, i.e., proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language and introduction to the sociolinguistics of the isiXhosa language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language

learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 30% Coursework, 70% Examination (includes an Oral Examination)

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 201

Second-year, semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 1 OR isiXhosa for Journalism

Course description: The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to various literary discourses, as well as to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

The course offerings are: Language acquisition i.e., proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework, 60% Examination (includes an Oral Examination)

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 202

Second-year, semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 1 OR isiXhosa for Journalism

Course description: The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural

competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to various literary discourses, as well as to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

The course offerings are:

- Language proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.

Literary Studies

- Introduction to the various genres of literature, and study of selected isiXhosa literary works (abridged versions of isiXhosa novels are used for better understanding of the isiXhosa culture and use of language)

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework, 60% Examination (includes an Oral Examination)

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 301 and 302

Third-year, semester courses
(NQF level 7, 30 credits per course for each semester)

Entrance requirements: IsiXhosa Language Acquisition 201 and 202

Course description: The course aims to equip students with both linguistic and cultural competence so that they are able to cope in a multilingual and culturally diverse society. Students enrolled in these courses are exposed to

themes that are appropriate to foster speaking, and understanding of the structure of the language. Furthermore, the students are introduced to various literary discourses, as well as to issues of inter- and cross-cultural communication. The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literary and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

In the first semester – 301, the course offerings are:

- Language acquisition i.e., proficiency in speaking, listening, reading and writing the language.
- Grammar of isiXhosa language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language.

In the second semester – 302, the course offerings are:

- Sociolinguistics of the isiXhosa language.
- Various genres of literature, and study of selected isiXhosa literary works (abridged versions of isiXhosa novels are used for better understanding of the isiXhosa culture and use of language.)
- In addition, isiXhosa Language Acquisition 302 students will do a research project which forms part of their oral exam

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: 40% Coursework, 60% Examination (includes an Oral Examination)

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Vocation specific isiXhosa courses can also be taken if you are studying Journalism or Pharmacy (*Law or Education – currently not on offer*).

IsiXhosa for Journalism 101

First year, Semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None. This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree. If students fail the course at the end of this year, they will be allowed to repeat the course during their third year of study. The course must be completed before a student can graduate. Students who intend to graduate with a Bachelor of Journalism degree should note that isiXhosa for Journalism 101 and 102 course must be completed by the end of the third year of their Journalism and Media Studies major. Once the course has been passed, students can also proceed to second year. Such students will be allocated either to the African Language Studies or isiXhosa Language Acquisition stream, depending on their level of proficiency in isiXhosa.

Course description: The purpose of the IsiXhosa for Journalism course is to enable students to work confidently and sensitively as journalists in multilingual and multicultural environments. It achieves this goal by focusing on what it means to work as a journalist in the environment in which Rhodes University is based. Because isiXhosa is the primary language of communication for the majority of people in this context, the course focuses on strengthening students' ability to communicate in this language. This aspect of the course is designed to accommodate students with widely different proficiency levels in isiXhosa, from those who are fluent to those who have no experience in speaking the language. The course also assists students in strengthening their ability to reflect in an informed way on how journalism is produced and circulated in multicultural contexts. They do so by exploring cultural and linguistic questions and debates of relevance to the South African context, with particular reference to issues of relevance to environments in which isiXhosa is spoken. The knowledge students acquire in this way is, however, more widely applicable, strengthening their ability to engage with the languages and cultures that are of relevance to any work environment.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language

learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: It is both formative and summative and in the form of orals that simulate contexts where language is used in journalistic environments and journalistic projects and essays. Students are assessed throughout the duration of the course to evaluate whether they have accomplished the specific outcomes as given in the course. Formative assessment is 50% and summative assessment is 50%

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

IsiXhosa for Journalism 102

First year, Semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: IsiXhosa for Journalism 101. If the student has failed 101 the student can proceed to 102 provided the student can do 101 again in the 3rd year of Journalism and Media Studies

Course description: This course is compulsory for all students majoring in Journalism and Media Studies and must be taken during the second year of their degree. If students fail the course at the end of this year, they will be allowed to repeat the course during their third year of study. The course must be completed before a student can graduate. Students who intend to graduate with a Bachelor of Journalism degree should note that the full course must be completed by the end of the third year of their Journalism and Media Studies major. Once isiXhosa for Journalism 101 and 102 course has been passed, students can also proceed to second year. Such students will be allocated either to the African Language Studies 201 or isiXhosa Language Acquisition 201 stream, depending on their level of proficiency in isiXhosa.

Course description: The purpose of the IsiXhosa for Journalism course is to enable students to work confidently and sensitively as journalists in multilingual and multicultural environments. It achieves this goal by focusing on what it means to work as a journalist in the

environment in which Rhodes University is based. Because isiXhosa is the primary language of communication for the majority of people in this context, the course focuses on strengthening students' ability to communicate in this language. This aspect of the course is designed to accommodate students with widely different proficiency levels in isiXhosa, from those who are fluent to those who have no experience in speaking the language. The course also assists students in strengthening their ability to reflect in an informed way on how journalism is produced and circulated in multicultural contexts. They do so by exploring cultural and linguistic questions and debates of relevance to the South African context, with particular reference to issues of relevance to environments in which isiXhosa is spoken. The knowledge students acquire in this way is, however, more widely applicable, strengthening their ability to engage with the languages and cultures that are of relevance to any work environment.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required.

Assessment: It is both formative and summative and in the form of orals that simulate contexts where language is used in journalistic environments and journalistic projects and essays. Students are assessed throughout the duration of the course to evaluate whether they have accomplished the specific outcomes as given in the course. Formative assessment is 50% and summative assessment is 50%

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

IsiXhosa for Pharmacy

First year, semesterised course that can be taken in either semester
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: It is taken during the fourth year of the pharmacy degree where students are required to interact, during their Community Experience Programme, with

speakers of isiXhosa in Grahamstown and in other communities where isiXhosa is spoken.

Course description: The purpose of the course is to give students language skills, specific to their vocation, to be able to cope during "patient-client" interviews in contexts where isiXhosa has to be spoken. This is a beginner's course and other than basic literacy skills in English, there is no prior knowledge expected of isiXhosa from the students.

During lectures the focus is in all four language learning skills (i.e., speaking, listening, reading and writing). Students are also provided with knowledge and skills which will be necessary for them to understand and interpret cultural issues embedded in isiXhosa communication, especially those specific in the context of medicine.

DP requirements: Class participation and attendance of classes is critical to language learning. A minimum of 70% lecture attendance and tutorial participation is required. Students should attain a minimum of 40% for their mid-year mark.

Assessment: It is both formative and summative and in the form of orals that simulate contexts where language is used (or "On-site clinical examinations" – OSCEs) and reflective essays. Students are assessed throughout the duration of the course to evaluate whether they have accomplished the specific outcomes as given in the course.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

It is offered for the duration of a year for full time students and two years for part time students.

Entrance requirements: Candidates with a three-year major in an African Language or an equivalent will be permitted in this degree. This course is meant for students who have taken African Language Studies or isiXhosa Language Acquisition or any other equivalent from a different institution. Students who have not majored in the course (African Languages

Studies) can take modules in this as part of the African Studies programme. In this case students are required to enrol for Joint Honours with another of the Humanities Faculty courses.

Course description: The course consists of the following modules:

- IsiXhosa Modern Literature
- IsiXhosa Traditional literature,
- Language Planning and Intellectualisation of African Languages
- Translation Studies
- Human Language Technology
- Linguistic Theory
- Research Methodology
- Lexicography and Terminology Development

Candidates will be required to choose 5 modules one of which must be a mini research thesis. They may choose to do joint Honours in African Language Studies and one/ two other courses or under the regulations of the African Studies Programme (see Interdepartmental Studies) as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Section.

DP requirements: Sub-minimum for each module is 40%

Assessments: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Honours degree in African Language Studies or equivalent.

Course description: This degree is offered by a thesis on any approved topic to full or part-time students. It caters for candidates who hold a Postgraduate degree in any language related discipline.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Master's degree in African Language Studies or equivalent.

Course description: A thesis on any approved topic within the field of African Language Studies. Periods of residence for consultation with the supervisor are required over the period.

AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES

Lecturer and Subject Head

AF Vorster, BA (UPE), BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

ME Botha, BA, BA (Hons) (UPE), MA (NMMU),
DLitt (NMMU),

Afrikaans en Nederlands can be studied as a major subject in the Faculty of Humanities and is currently a 2-year major. One or, in some cases, two courses in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

*Please note there will be no first-year intake for Afrikaans 1 and Afrikaans 1(P), until further notice.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Afrikaans 1(P)

(Currently not on offer)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Usually a matric pass in Afrikaans First Additional Language. Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.

Course description: Afrikaans I (Professional) is a one-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. Afrikaans 1(P) will not necessarily be offered in any particular calendar year.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 60%; Exams 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40 %

Afrikaans 1

(currently not on offer)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Usually a matric pass in Afrikaans Home or First Additional Language.

Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Subject Head.

Course description: This course introduces students to the academic study of prose, poetry and drama (including media texts). Specific focus areas such as gender, engaged literature, texts for film and television, popular fiction, the history of Afrikaans, ecology and postcolonialism are covered. Basic narratology is a fundamental part of the course.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 40%; Exams 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

Afrikaans en Nederlands 2

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Students must be 2nd-year level students and should usually have passed at least two 1st-year Humanities subjects and have passed Afrikaans as Home or First Additional Language at Matric level.

Course description: Afrikaans en Nederlands explores the academic study of prose, poetry and drama (including media texts). Specific focus areas such as gender, engaged literature, texts for film and television, popular fiction, the history of Afrikaans, ecology and postcolonialism are covered. Students are also introduced to Dutch language and literature as an invaluable and easily accessible entry point into the exploration of international culture and intellectual currents. Basic narratology is a fundamental part of the course.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 60%; Exams 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

Afrikaans en Nederlands 3

Third-year, full-year course
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: Afrikaans en Nederlands 2

Course description: In Afrikaans en Nederlands 3, specialised areas of knowledge, including the most recent developments in Afrikaans and Dutch literature and culture, are studied.

DP requirements: 80% lecture and tutorial attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 60%; Exams 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: 60% in Afrikaans en Nederlands 3

Course description: An Honours course in either Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands can be taken by students who satisfy the entrance requirements. Candidates usually take five modules chosen in consultation with the relevant lecturers from a range of topics provided by the Section. With the permission of the Subject Head, an independent research essay of no more than 10 000 words written in the course of the year may be substituted for one of the modules.

Assessment: Includes coursework 60% and 40% examinations. Exams are written in both June and in November exam times.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands is usually

required. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted on the discretion of the Subject Head and with the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

Course description: Candidates may work towards a Master's degree either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Subject Head. In consultation with the staff of the Section, candidates for the degree by examination are usually required to choose three areas for intensive research in Afrikaans and/or Dutch literature, language or literary theory. Although seminars are offered on the chosen topics, a large degree of independent research is required. A three-hour examination is written on each of the three topics. In addition, a short dissertation on an approved topic has to be handed in by the end of the second year of study.

Assessment: Exams 60%; Dissertation 40%

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands is usually required. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted at the discretion of the Subject Head and submit a thesis comprising independent research on a topic which has been approved by the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Humanities.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to submit a research dissertation on a topic approved by the Higher Degrees Committee of the Faculty of Humanities.

CHINESE STUDIES

Professor and Subject Head

D Liu, BA, MA (Jinlin), PhD (Northeastern)

Chinese Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Chinese Studies 1

First year, full-year course

(NQF Level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirement: None, Chinese native-speakers not allowed to enrol.

Course description: Chinese Studies 1 is an introductory course that covers the study of the Chinese language and culture.

Assessment: Coursework 40%, Examination 60%.

DP requirement: 70 % attendance

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

Chinese Studies 2

Second year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirement: Chinese Studies 1

Course description: Chinese Studies 2 expands and refines the skills and content of Chinese Studies 1.

DP requirement: 70 % attendance.

Assessment: Coursework 40%, Examination 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

Chinese Studies 3

Third year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirement: Chinese Studies 2

Course description: Chinese Studies 3 offers, in addition to an intensive focus on the Chinese language, an introduction to Chinese civilisation and history.

DP requirement: 70 % attendance

Assessment: Coursework 40%, Examination 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

Understanding China

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: None

Course description: Understanding China offers an exploration of the key concepts, historical events and social processes for understanding China. This is a non-major course with no prerequisite requirements. Understanding China may be taken in the second or subsequent academic years (but not the first).

DP requirement: 70 % attendance

Assessment: Coursework 40%, Examination 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF Level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirement: Chinese Studies 3

Course description: Students who choose to register for Honours in Chinese Studies have the following modules:

Compulsory core modules:

- Paper 1: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese (Written)
- Paper 2: Intermediate Mandarin Chinese (Spoken)
- Paper 3: Research essay (10 000 words) on a topic relevant to Chinese Studies

Elective modules:

- Paper 4: Chinese Philosophy
- Paper 5: Chinese History
- Paper 6: Classical Chinese
- Paper 7: Business Mandarin Chinese
- Paper 8: A module at Honours level in another discipline (at the discretion of the Head of the Chinese Studies Section)

Master's Degree

(NQF Level 9, 180 Credits)

Degree by thesis only.

The applicant must have scored at least 60% at Honours level. Candidates from other disciplines may be admitted on the discretion of Subject Head, taking into consideration the topic of the research.

CLASSICAL STUDIES

Lecturer and Subject Head

DSC Malamis, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD

(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

OB Mlambo, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD

(University of Zimbabwe)

Lecturer

PA Fox, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

The Classical Studies Division offers separate degree courses in three interrelated subjects: Classics, Classical Latin and Ancient Greek.

Classics is a two-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The entry requirement for Classics 2 is a credit in either Classics 1 or a full year credit in any other subject.

CLASSICS

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Classics 101 and Classics 102

This is a semesterised, one-year, self-contained course designed as a foundational and general introduction to the study of history, culture and some formative moments in human civilization. It may be included in degree/diploma curricula in most under-graduate programmes in the university. It is a useful, but not compulsory, prerequisite course for Classics 2. It offers an introduction to the Ancient World from the Neolithic Revolution to the rise of Civilization in Egypt and Mesopotamia through the Classical periods of Greece and Rome and up to the rise of Christianity and Islam in Late Antiquity.

Classics 101 (CLA 101)

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This course takes up the origins of urbanisation in Egypt and Mesopotamia and entails a study of Greek mythology, focussing on the Trojan War and the adventures of the wandering hero Odysseus, the world of the Early Eastern Mediterranean, the

colonization of the West by the Greeks and their war with the Persians.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at tutorials, submission of tutorial exercises and term assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%, one examination in June counts 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Classics 102 (CLA 102)

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This course examines the daily life and great events of the Classical period at Athens, Alexander the Great and his campaigns, the war with Hannibal and the Rise and Fall of Rome as a world power, daily life and art at Pompeii, Gladiators and Spectacles of Death in the Early Empire and the rise of Christianity and Islam.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at tutorials, submission tutorial exercises and term assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%, one examination in November counts 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Classics 201 (CLA 201)

Second-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Students must be 2nd-year level students and should usually have passed at least two 1st-year Humanities subjects.

Course description: No previous study in Classics is required for entrance to this course. Classics 2, i.e., Classics 201/202, consists of a closer study of the history and great works of the Ancient World. It ranges in its specific content from close readings in Greek and Roman epic, tragedy, comedy and love poetry, to ancient philosophy, myth and religion, social and political history and Classical receptions. Modules on Bronze Age, African, Indian and

Chinese civilisations may be included in the year's syllabus.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at tutorials, submission tutorial exercises and term assignments.

Supplementary exam: June result 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Classics 202 (CLA 202)

Second-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Students must be 2nd-year level students and should usually have passed at least two 1st-year Humanities subjects

Course description: No previous study in Classics is required for entrance to this course. Classics 2, i.e., Classics 201/202, consists of a closer study of the history and great works of the Ancient World. It ranges in its specific content from close readings in Greek and Roman epic, tragedy, comedy and love poetry, to ancient philosophy, myth and religion, social and political history and Classical receptions. Modules on Bronze Age, African, Indian and Chinese civilisations may be included in the year's syllabus.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at tutorials, submission of tutorial exercises and term assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%, one examination in June counts 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Classics 301/302

The syllabus for Classics 2 & 3 is on a revolving two-year cycle so that Classics 2 & 3 students sit classes together. Classics 3 students, while studying the same content, are assessed differently and are set different assignments.

Classics 301 (CLA 301)

Third-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Classics 201 and 202 / Latin 2 / Greek 2.

Course description: See Classics 2 entry

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at tutorials, submission tutorial exercises and term assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%, one examination in June counts 40%.

Supplementary exam: June result 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Classics 302 (CLA 302)

Third-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Classics 201 and 202 / Latin 2 / Greek 2.

Course description: See Classics 2 entry

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at tutorials, submission of tutorial exercises and term assignments. A research essay may be written in lieu of both term assignments.

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%, one examination in November counts 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Classics 3 as a major, with a final mark of 60% or above for Classics 3.

Course description: Five papers, by coursework and/or by research essay, tailored to the interests of the student, are written. Taught papers may cover individual Classical authors, literary genres, ancient history, religion, art and society, and are selected each year at the discretion of the staff in consultation with students. Students are encouraged to prepare at least one of their papers for publication. Classics Honours students have a lecturer designated as a personal tutor with whom they regularly meet.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Honours degree in Classics, or a joint Honours degree with a Classics component.

The Master's degree in Classics is examined by

thesis only, on a subject approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Master's degree in Classics.

Greek and Latin

Greek and Latin are three-year major subjects, which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. No previous knowledge of Latin is required to enter Latin 101 or of Greek to enter Greek 101. The second- and third-year classes of both languages will be offered each year at the discretion of the department.

LATIN

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Latin 101 (LAT 101)

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This is a beginner's course, which offers mainly an introduction to Latin, including the reading of selected passages, translation from Latin to English and from English to Latin, and the study of various aspects of the Graeco-Roman world. The course also focuses on developing students' general competence in language, especially through a study of the origins of English words and the acquisition of vocabulary.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, one examination in June counts 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Latin 102 (LAT 102)

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: A 60% pass or above for Latin 101.

Course description: In terms of language the focus will be entirely on Latin, with continued reading of texts, translation both ways and study of aspects of Roman culture.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, one examination in November counts 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Latin 2 (LAT 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: A 60% aggregate or above for Latin 101 and 102, or a rating of at least 5 in the National Senior Certificate.

Course description: The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, and English into Latin. A genre of Latin Literature and/ or a period of Roman history.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Latin 3 (LAT 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: A 60% pass or above for Latin 2.

Course description: The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, and English into Latin. A genre of Latin literature and/ or a period of Roman history. Texts for self-study.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

GREEK**Greek 101 (GRE 101)**

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This is a beginner's course, which offers an introduction to Greek, including the reading of selected passages, translation from Greek to English and from English to Greek, and the study of various aspects of the Greek world.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, one examination in June counts 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Greek 102 (GRE 102)

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: A 60% pass or above for Greek 101.

Course description: There will be continued reading of texts, translation both ways and study of aspects of Greek culture, particularly in Classical Athens.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, one examination in November counts 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Greek 2 (GRE 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: A 60% aggregate or above for Greek 101 and 102.

Course description: The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and English into Greek. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Greek 3 (GRE 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: A 60% pass or above for Greek 2.

Course description: The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and English into Greek. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history. Texts for self-study.

DP requirements: Minimum 75% attendance at classes.

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%, June and November examinations count 60%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES**Greek and Latin Honours Degree**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Latin 3 and/or Greek 3 as a major, with a final mark of 60% or above in the relevant subject(s).

Course description: A paper in unseen translation. A research essay of 8000-10,000 words.

Any three further papers selected from the following: Translation and exegesis of Greek and/or Latin texts. Greek and/or Roman History and culture.

Master's Degree in Greek and/or Latin

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Honours degree in Greek and/or Latin.

We accept candidates for the Master's degree in Greek and Latin literature, language or history. This can be examined by full thesis.

Doctoral Degree in Greek and/or Latin

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Master's degree in Greek and/or Latin.

CREATIVE WRITING

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

P Wessels, BA, MA (Rhodes)

Master's in Creative Writing

The MA in Creative Writing can be studied

Full-Time or Part-Time

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: Candidates require an Honours degree in any discipline or the NQF equivalent. A portfolio of creative work must accompany the application. For detailed guidelines please consult our Prospectus available for download from the Creative Writing section of our website.

Course description: Both full-time and part-time programmes are offered.

Full-Time Study

The full-time programme is completed over two years.

First year: Semester 1 consists of sixteen weeks of coursework presented by numerous writer-teachers. At the start of Semester 2 supervisors are allocated to students and work begins on the Creative Project and research proposal.

Second Year, Semester 1: Creative Project continues under supervision. Research Project (half-thesis) begins.

Part-Time Study

The part-time programme may be completed over two or three years. Coursework is completed in the first year. Supervisors are allocated towards the end of the first year and work begins on the Creative Project and research proposal. The Research Project (half-thesis) begins at the start of the second year.

By the end of the full-time or part-time programme there is delivery of:

1. Creative Project (book-length collection of fiction, non-fiction, poetry, prose or graphic novel).

Word count will vary depending on genre, for example, poetry might be 30-50 poems or pages, whereas a novella or short stories could be 30

000 – 50 000 words), memoir or experimental writing 15 000 – 40 000 words and a Comic or Graphic Novel comprising 22 pages of which 5 will be complete pages, inked and lettered; 5 will be pencilled pages, lettered; 10 will be storyboarded pages, sketched drafts, lettered; and 2 will be cover pages, front and back).

2. Research Project (half-thesis). A structured half-thesis comprising the poetics of the Creative Project (20 000 – 25 000 words).

All coursework is presented in English but candidates may discuss language preferences at the beginning of the year with the Section Head. Parallel seminars and reading groups can be arranged in isiXhosa and Kaaps, as well as for the Graphic Novel genre, where the need arises, and where student numbers and staff capacity allows. Application portfolios should reflect both the language and the genre preference of the applicant.

Creative Writing at Rhodes University is committed to innovative approaches to literary production that expand the possibilities of writing. The governing pedagogy is heuristic, with learning demonstrated through an evolving poetics. The programme emphasises the indistinguishable relationship between reading and writing that is Creative Writing.

In addition to seminars, coursework assignments and reading groups, candidates are required to complete four book reviews, a short essay on book reviewing, maintain an independent as well as course-directed research programme of reading, and produce short essays on form and poetics.

Full-Time candidates meet with the Section Head every week of Semester One to discuss overall progress. Part-time candidates meet with the Section Head bi-weekly via video conference. All candidates and teachers participate in two Contact Weeks at Rhodes University in the first year, and one in the second year.

A core requirement of the course is the production of a formatively assessed Reflective Journal across all facets of the course. These weekly critical reflections (bi-weekly for part-time students) are then compiled and edited into a short essay or process journal for inclusion in the Research Project (half-thesis).

The draft Creative Project is formatively assessed by an anonymous reader skilled within the particular genre or form/s of the writing who produces a short report. This report is used by the student in consultation with their supervisor to reflexively assess the creative work and to write

up the assessment for inclusion in the Research Project (half-thesis).

Summative assessment of both the Creative and Research Projects is performed by two external examiners for monolingual theses, and by up to four examiners for dual-language theses. Where possible we pair local and international examiners best suited to the genre and form/s of the Projects submitted.

FRENCH & FRANCOPHONE STUDIES

Professors

AN Mukenge Licence es Lettres (Lubumbashi),
Agrégation (Lubumbashi), MA (UCT), PhD
(UKZN)

PK Mwepu, Licence es Lettres (Lubumbashi),
Agrégation (Lubumbashi), MA (Lubumbashi),
PhD (UCT)

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

CJ Cordell, BA (UPE), BA Hons (RAU), MA
(RAU), PhD (UJ)

French is a three-year major subject which can be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

French preliminary (FRE 1P)

(Currently not on offer)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: No prior knowledge of the language is required. (Students with O-level French or a pass in French in the National Senior Certificate examination may not take this course. Mother-tongue speakers of French may not take this course.)

Course description: This is a beginner's course designed to enable students who have not taken French as a National Senior Certificate subject to acquire the essential elements of the language and culture.

Students who obtain 70% or more in French 1P may proceed to French 1.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 40%; Paper 1 (June) + Oral exam (June) count 20%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

French 1 (FRE 1)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: None. Students with no prior knowledge may take this course (A1 level according to the Common European Framework of Reference). Additionally, students with Matric, 'O'-level and 'A'-level French or similar qualifications, obtained in the past three years, may take this course. At the discretion of the Head of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course and students with prior knowledge may take some elective modules at a more linguistically advanced level.

Course description: This course aims to develop basic oral and written skills, and to provide an introduction to Francophone culture.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 50% ; Paper 1 (June) + Oral exam (June) count 15% ; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 35% .

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

French 2 (FRE 2)

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: A pass for FRE 1 or an equivalent qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of French Studies.

Course description: This course further develops language skills by means of translation and other linguistic activities. Course modules include: French for tourism; French for commerce; Francophone culture; Francophone cinema. French-language novels, poetry and plays mainly from the 20th and 21st centuries are studied. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 50% ; Paper 1 (June) counts 13%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 37% .

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40%

French 3 (FRE 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: FRE 2 or an equivalent qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of French Studies.

Course description: This course offers advanced translation and further develops spoken and written language skills. Course modules include: French for tourism; French for commerce cinema. French literature from the 17th to the 21st century is studied. At the discretion of French Studies, mother-tongue speakers of French may take this course.

DP requirements: 80% class and tutorial attendance; hand in all assignments on time; write all tests.

Assessment: Under normal circumstances, coursework counts 50%; Paper 1 (June) counts 12.5%; Paper 2 (November) + Paper 3 (November) + Oral exam (November) count 37.5% .

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: None

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

French Honours

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for FRE 3 or equivalent qualification.

Joint French Honours

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for FRE 3 or equivalent qualification. Students may

combine either two (or three) taught papers in French Studies with three (or two) papers from another subject at Honours level.

Course description: For full Honours, the examination consists of four written papers and one oral examination :

- Paper 1 (compulsory) Translation into and from French.
- Papers 2 to 3 Candidates may choose three study periods or authors. These authors or genres may be chosen from the Medieval period to the present day, depending on staff availability and interests. Alternatively, candidates may replace up to two literary study periods or authors with papers which focus on contemporary Francophone culture as mediated through film and/or French for Commerce and Tourism and/ or French for Pedagogical purposes. Study areas will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and need to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.
- Paper 4 : Oral examination Detailed analysis of a literary text chosen from one of the periods studied, or in the case of the Contemporary France / French for Commerce and Tourism / French for Pedagogical purposes modules, a presentation on a related topic.

In addition, candidates doing a full French Honours will be required to write a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and needs to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

Assessment for Honours: Coursework counts 50%; Paper 1 (Translation) + Paper 2 (Chosen Topics 1 & 2) + Paper 3 (Chosen Topics 3 & 4) + Oral exam and Research essay count 50%. All exams take place in November.

Supplementary exam: 40-49% for written papers only [Papers 1, 2 or 3]. Oral exam will not be repeated – initial mark stands. No supplementary for research module.

Assessment for Joint Honours: Coursework counts 50%; Paper 1 (Translation) + Paper 2 (chosen topic 1 [+ chosen topic 2 if the candidate is taking 3 papers in French and 2 in the other subject]) + Oral exam count 50%. All exams take place in November. One of the chosen topics may be replaced by a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in consultation with French Studies staff and needs to be approved by the French Studies Subject Head.

Supplementary exam: 40-49% for written papers only [Papers 1 & 2]. Oral exam will not be repeated – initial mark stands. No supplementary for research module.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for the Honours research essay and at least 60% for French Honours overall. For further information, please consult French Studies staff.

Course description: The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which must be approved by the Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: at least 60% for Masters (French)

Course description: The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which must be approved by Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

GERMAN STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

N Engelbrecht, MA (Stell), MA (Leipzig), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

U Weber, Staatsexamen I (Bonn), PhD (Rhodes)

German Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. In the literature and cultural studies sections the medium of instruction and examining is primarily English, though texts have to be read and studied in German. Cultural studies at second and third-year as well as Honours level can be taught concurrently; assessment will be appropriate to the year of study. One, or in some cases two courses in German Studies are allowed as credits for degree and diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Science and Law.

UNDERGRADUATE STUDIES

German Studies 1 (GER 1FL)

First-year, full year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This is an introductory (A1-level) language and cultural studies (Landeskunde) course for students who have no prior knowledge of German. Students who have obtained a matric pass (or equivalent thereof) may proceed directly to German Studies 2 after consultation with a member of staff. Students who have proven competency of the German language (e.g. matric pass or equivalent from a German school like the Deutsche Schule Kapstadt or Deutsche Schule Johannesburg or a similar institution), or who are deemed suitable after assessment by German Studies staff may proceed to German Studies 2, possibly Elective 2, with advanced language instruction at the B2-C2 level of the Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) for Languages, after consultation with German Studies staff.

- Paper 1 Language
- Paper 2 Text analysis, cultural studies (Landeskunde)

DP requirements: attend 70% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests and examinations.

Assessment: 10% June examination, 50% November examinations, 40% tests (written and oral) and assignments.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

German Studies 2 (GER 2FL)

Second-year, full year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: GER 1FL or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Course description:

- Paper 1 Language
- Paper 2 Cultural studies (Landeskunde)
- Paper 3 Literature

DP requirements: attend 70% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests (written and oral) and examinations.

Assessment: 20% June examination, 40% November examinations, 40% tests and assignments.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

German Studies 3 (GER 3FL)

Third-year, full year course
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: GER 2FL or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Course description:

- Paper 1 Language
- Paper 2 Cultural studies (Landeskunde)
- Paper 3 Translation
- Paper 4 Literature

DP requirements: attend 70% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests (written and oral) and examinations.

Assessment: 20% June examination, 40% November examinations, 40% tests and assignments.

Supplementary Exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

(Oral component of P1 will not be repeated – initial mark stands.

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: a completed degree with GER 3FL as a major (60% or above) or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Joint Honours

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: a completed degree with GER 3FL as a major (60% or above) or a similar qualification obtained in the past three years, or at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Students may combine either two taught papers or two taught papers and a research essay in German Studies with three/ two papers from another subject at Honours level.

- Paper 1 Language
- Paper 2 Cultural Studies (Landeskunde; incl. diachronic and/ or synchronic aspects of German)
- Paper 3 Literature
- Paper 4 Translation theory, practice and methodology
- Paper 5 In consultation with members of staff, a candidate is to submit a typewritten

research essay of not more than 10 000 words.

DP requirements: attend 80% of all class meetings (incl. tutorials), hand in all assignments on time, sit all tests (written and oral) and examinations.

Assessment: 10% June examination, 30% November examinations, 40% tests and assignments, 20% research (long essay).

Supplementary Exam: Final mark 40 – 49%
(Oral component of P1 will not be repeated – initial mark stands. No supplementary for research module.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

By thesis only.

Details are available from members of staff.

Entrance requirements: A completed undergraduate degree in German Studies and an Honours degree (65% or above) in German Studies or a cognate discipline, at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

By thesis only.

Details are available from members of staff.

Entrance requirements: A completed undergraduate degree in German Studies and a Master's degree in German Studies or a cognate discipline, at the discretion of the Head of German Studies.

LAW FACULTY

Professor and Dean

MG Karels, LLB, LLM (UFS), LLD (UNISA)

Deputy Dean

S Somandi, LLB, LLM (NMU)

Professors

GB Glover, BA, LLB, PhD (Rhodes)

LO Juma, LLB (Nairobi), Dip Law (Kenya), LLM (Pennsylvania), MA (Notre Dame), LLD (Fort Hare)

HJ Kruuse, BA, LLB, LLM, PhD, PGDHE (Rhodes)

EH van Coller, LLB, LLM (UFS), LLM (Utrecht), PGDHE (Rhodes), LLD (UJ)

Associate Professors

J Campbell, BA, LLB (UCT), LLM (Rhodes)

R Krüger, BA (Hons), LLB (Potch), PGDHE, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

SEH Driver, BA, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (UNISA), PGDHE (Rhodes)

L Katiyatiya, LLB (UFH), LLM (NWU), LLD (Stell)

N Ncamane, LLB LLM (Fort Hare), PGDipHE (Rhodes)

S Rahim, BJuris, LLB (UPE), LLM (UNISA)

Lecturers

S Bergover, LLB, LLM (UKZN)

FP Bothma, LLB, LLM (NWU)

P Jabavu, NDIP (WSU), BTech: Journalism (TUT), LLB (Wits)

P Roux, LLB, LLM (UWC)

NA Nxumalo, LLB, LLM (UKZN)

Professors Emeriti

JR Midgley, BCom, LLB (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

ID Schäfer, BA, LLB (Rhodes), PhD (Natal)

Associate Professor Emeritus

J Bodenstein BA (Stell), LLB, LLM (Natal)

Research Associates

CJC McConnachie, BA, LLB (Rhodes), BCL,

MPhil, DPhil (Oxon)

MV Tsele BA LLB LLM (Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

N Dambuza, BProc, LLM (Natal), LLM (Tulane)

D Davis, BCom, LLB (Cape Town), MPhil (Cantab), LLD (hc) (Cape Town)

Visiting Fellows

M Boqwana, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

Manager: Administration

A Comley

Faculty Administrator

F Mwellie

Principal Librarian: Humanities, Law and Education

Lusanda Nyoka, BTech LIS (DUT), (Hons) (Pretoria), LLB (UNISA)

Faculty Librarian

S Gule, BTech LIS (UNISA), (Hons) (UKZN)

BACHELOR OF LAWS

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses required for the LLB degree, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties.

For those students who registered up to 2025, who will study in terms of the 'old curriculum', Legal Theory is a three-year major subject in the BA, BSocSci, BCom and BSc curricula. It involves study of key fields of South African public and private law, and forms an important stepping-stone towards the LLB degree.

Students registered in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science may register for Legal Theory, which is currently recognised by those faculties as a major for degree purposes. Students who pass Legal Theory component courses as part of a degree curriculum in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science are exempt from the equivalent courses in the LLB curriculum.

For those students registering from 2026, who will study in terms of the 'new curriculum', Legal Theory will no longer be offered as a three-year major subject. Students will be able to register in their first year for 15-credit semester courses in Foundations of Law and Introduction to Law, and these two courses will give students some basic grounding in the field of law.

OLD CURRICULUM (those registering up to 2025: to be phased out by 2028)**Legal Theory 1**

(two semester courses, 30 credits)

Paper 1: Foundations of Law (NQF Level 5, 15 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Introduction to Law (NQF Level 6, 15 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Legal Theory 2

(four semester courses, 40 credits)

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Constitutional Law A (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Constitutional Law B (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Persons (NQF Level 6, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Legal Theory 3

(six semester courses, 60 credits)

Paper 1: Law of Contract A (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Life Partnerships (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Law of Property A (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Contract B (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 5: Law of Property B (NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 6: Legal Pluralism (NQF Level 7, 10 credits) See the course structure set out below.

NEW CURRICULUM (those registering from 2026)**First year**

(two semester courses, 30 credits)

Paper 1: Foundations of Law (NQF Level 5, 15 credits). See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Introduction to Law (NQF Level 5, 15 credits). See the course structure set out below.

In addition, the Faculty of Law offers Commercial Law at first-year level, which may be studied for degrees in the Faculty of Commerce.

Commercial Law 1

(two semester courses, 30 credits)

Commercial Law 101: (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

Commercial Law 102: (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

See the course structure set out below.

COURSES OFFERED BY THE LAW FACULTY (in alphabetical order)**Administrative Law**

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 20 credits)

(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%, class work (50%), November examination)

Background and introduction to administrative law; the sources of administrative law, the constitutional right to just administrative action; introduction and overview of the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA); administrative action in terms of PAJA; judicial review of administrative action and the requirements of lawfulness, reasonableness and procedural fairness, the right to written reasons; procedural issues and remedies.

Administrative Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 20 credits)

(one-year course; one three-hour paper (50%, class work (50%), November examination)

Background and introduction to administrative law; the sources of administrative law, the constitutional right to just administrative action; introduction and overview of the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act (PAJA); administrative action in terms of PAJA; judicial review of administrative action and the requirements of lawfulness, reasonableness and procedural fairness, the right to written reasons; procedural issues and remedies.

African Customary Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course; one three-hour paper (50%, class work (50%), June examination)

The nature and ascertainment of customary law; customary law, the courts and the bill of rights; the conflict of laws; customary law principles relating to the law of persons, marriage, property, succession and obligations.

Alternative Dispute Resolution

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (50%), practical examination (20%), journal (20%), coursework (10%), November examination) Negotiation and mediation theory and the development of practical skills; arbitration legislation, and rules and enforcement.

Banking Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The law on electronic payments and electronic fund transfers; the bank/customer relationship and bank liability; compliance duties under the Financial Intelligence Centre Act; anti-money laundering and countering the financing of terrorism; an overview of the supervisory role of the South African Reserve Bank.

Banking Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The law on electronic payments and electronic fund transfers; the bank/customer relationship and bank liability; compliance duties under the Financial Intelligence Centre Act; anti-money laundering and countering the financing of terrorism; an overview of the supervisory role of the South African Reserve Bank.

Civil Procedure A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Courts with civil jurisdiction; locus standi; action proceedings from letter of demand to trial in both the High Court and the Magistrates' Courts including commonly utilized interlocutory

applications such as summary judgment, exceptions and applications to strike out.

Civil Procedure B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Applications in both the High Court and the Magistrates' Courts; applications relating to insolvency and related matters for example sequestration, voluntary surrender, rehabilitation and liquidation of companies; other specific applications, for example, interdicts, Anton Piller orders, matrimonial matters (rule 43) and curatorship; provisional sentence; appeals, reviews and rescission of judgment; costs; and enforcement of judgments and administration orders.

Civil Procedure

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Introduction to civil procedure; action proceedings: pre-litigation issues, pleadings stage, pre-trial proceedings, trial procedure, judgment, interest and legal costs, selected interlocutory matters; application proceedings: 'on notice' applications, *ex parte* and urgent applications; appeals and reviews; mediation and settlement; enforcement of judgments.

Commercial Law 1

(two semester courses: COL 101 and COL 102) (NQF Level 5, 30 credits)

COL101 (One three-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Introduction to the nature of law; general principles of the law of contract, including the administration of deceased estates; the law of insolvency.

COL102 (One three-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

Introduction to business entities; company law and corporate governance. A credit in or a valid DP certificate for COL101 is required for entry into COL102.

Company Law A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

The nature, formation and functional aspects of Companies and Close Corporations from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

Company Law B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The winding-up of companies; the law relating to mergers and acquisitions of companies; securities regulations, initial public offerings and private placements; legislation and rules governing black economic empowerment; and an introduction to corporate governance.

Company Law A

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Partnerships; trusts; the nature, formation and functional aspects of companies and close corporations from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

Company Law B

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The law relating to mergers and acquisitions of companies; securities regulations, initial public offerings and private placements; legislation and rules governing black economic empowerment; and an introduction to corporate governance.

Competition Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The objects of, and rationale for, competition law; a brief history of the regulation of competition; restrictive horizontal practices: legislation and cases; restrictive vertical practices: legislation and

cases; the abuse of dominance: legislation and cases; institutions, procedures and remedies.

Constitutional Law A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Sources of constitutional law, key constitutional concepts in context of major constitutional models and a detailed analysis of the structures of government created by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

Constitutional Law A

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Sources of constitutional law, key constitutional concepts in context of major constitutional models and a detailed analysis of the structures of government created by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

Constitutional Law B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

The protection of human rights in a constitutional state, judicially and extra-judicially, with an emphasis on the former; application and interpretation of the Bill of Rights; consideration of selected rights protected in the Bill of Rights (chapter 2 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996).

Constitutional Law B

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

The protection of human rights in a constitutional state, judicially and extra-judicially, with an emphasis on the former; application and interpretation of the Bill of Rights; consideration of selected rights protected in the Bill of Rights (chapter 2 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996).

Constitutional Litigation

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)
Litigating under the Constitution, the rules of the Constitutional Court; constitutional remedies; consideration of selected constitutional law topics at advanced level.

Criminal Law A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Introductory concepts and definitions; fundamental values, functions and objectives underlying criminal justice; general principles of criminal liability including: conduct, unlawfulness, causation, capacity and fault; defences; forms of participation in criminal activities; liability for inchoate crimes.

Criminal Law A

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Introductory concepts and definitions; fundamental values, functions and objectives underlying criminal justice; general principles of criminal liability including: conduct, unlawfulness, causation, capacity and fault; defences; forms of participation in criminal activities; liability for inchoate crimes.

Criminal Law B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Selected common-law and statutory crimes.

Criminal Law B

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Selected common-law and statutory crimes.

Criminal Procedure A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Structure of the courts; jurisdiction; search procedure; arrest; summonses; written notice; bail; indictments and charge sheets; essentials of a valid charge; defects etc. cured by evidence; amendments of charges; pleas of guilty and not guilty; conduct of criminal trials; verdict and sentence; automatic review and right of appeal.

Criminal Procedure B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Who prosecutes; private prosecutions; stopping and withdrawal of prosecutions; prosecutions to be brought within reasonable time; search and seizure; legal representation; disclosure by prosecution; indictments in High Court; exemptions, exceptions, provisos; duplication of convictions; further particulars; autrefois convict and autrefois acquit; plea and sentence agreements; prosecution of corporations; appeals; taking of evidence under s205 of Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977; inquests; extradition; asset forfeiture.

Criminal Procedure

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
The structure of the criminal courts and jurisdiction; pre-trial procedures; public and private prosecutions; indictments, summons and charges; pleas and sentencing agreements; conduct of criminal trials; separation of trials; review and appeals.

Environmental Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Scope and definition of environmental law; legal norms and standards underpinning environmental management; sources and history; overview of international environmental law; the Constitution and environmental legislation; administration and enforcement; environmental management tools; selected topics: natural resources and conservation management.

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work 40%), November examination)
The study of different approaches to ethical decision-making in the legal context; the purpose and function of ethics in the legal profession; the sources and content of legal ethical rules, including regulation of the profession; the kinds of ethical dilemmas which lawyers and judges face, and issues relating to professional negligence.

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work 40%), November examination)
The study of different approaches to ethical decision-making in the legal context; the purpose and function of ethics in the legal profession; the sources and content of legal ethical rules, including regulation of the profession; the kinds of ethical dilemmas which lawyers and judges face, and issues relating to professional negligence.

Family Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 5, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Evolution of the traditional concept of family and marriage; influence of the Constitution and international law; legal status of religious marriages; development of the law with respect to same-sex life partnerships and domestic partnerships; engagement; legal requirements for a valid marriage; void and voidable marriages; consequences of marriage in and out of community of property; antenuptial contracts; calculation of accrual; divorce and maintenance; changing trends in family law evident in recent Constitutional Court decisions.

Foundations of Law

Old curriculum, (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)
(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Part A: Historical foundations of South African law; sources of South African law; the

Constitution, legislation, the common law, judicial precedent, custom and indigenous law.

Part B: The structure of the courts; dispute resolution methods; the legal profession; elementary outline of criminal procedure; elementary outline of civil procedure.

Foundations of Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 5, 15 credits)
(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Part A: Historical foundations of South African law; sources of South African law; the Constitution, legislation, the common law, judicial precedent, custom and indigenous law.
Part B: Nature of law; law and justice; rights and duties; introduction to the legal systems of the world.

Information and Communications Technology Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%) class work (30%), November examination)
Introduction to ICT law; electronic communications; e-commerce, electronic contracting and consumer protection; electronic evidence; cybercrime; data protection; e-commerce & tax; the liability of internet service providers; freedom of expression online.

Information and Communications Technology Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%) class work (30%), November examination)
Introduction to ICT law; electronic communications; e-commerce, electronic contracting and consumer protection; electronic evidence; cybercrime; data protection; e-commerce & tax; the liability of internet service providers; freedom of expression online.

International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%) class work (40%), June examination)

History and nature of international human rights law; selected human rights in international law; enforcement of international human rights law standards; international humanitarian law.

International Trade Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
The origin and evolution of international trade; general concepts and principles; the United Nations Convention on the International Sale of Goods; the law of the World Trade Organization.

Introduction to Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 6, 15 credits)
(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Part A: Nature of law; law and justice; rights and duties; introduction to the legal systems of the world. Part B: Divisions of law: criminal law; contract; delict.

Introduction to Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 5, 15 credits)
(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Part A: The structure of the courts; dispute resolution methods; the legal profession; elementary outline of criminal procedure; elementary outline of civil procedure. Part B: Divisions of law: criminal law; contract; delict.

Jurisprudence

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%) class work (40%), June examination)
An introduction to the major theories of law, adjudication, justice and punishment (with a particular focus on the African context) and an overview of the core jurisprudential debates that have preoccupied legal philosophers from ancient to modern times.

Jurisprudence

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%) class work (40%), June examination)

An introduction to the major theories of law, adjudication, justice and punishment (with a particular focus on the African context) and an overview of the core jurisprudential debates that have preoccupied legal philosophers from ancient to modern times.

Labour Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
The legal framework for the regulation of labour relations in South Africa in context; basic conditions of employment; individual labour law – contracts, transfer, dismissal and unfair labour practices and dispute resolution; employment equity, collective labour law – freedom of association, organisational rights, collective bargaining and its regulation, industrial action.

Labour Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 15 credits)
(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
The legal framework for the regulation of labour relations in South Africa in context; basic conditions of employment; individual labour law – contracts, transfer, dismissal and unfair labour practices and dispute resolution; employment equity, collective labour law – freedom of association, organisational rights, collective bargaining and its regulation, industrial action.

Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Agency: Agency power and authority; the rights and duties of principals and agents; the relationships between principals and agents and third parties. Insurance: sources; essential elements; insurable interest; duty of disclosure; warranties; risk; loss; subrogation; over-insurance; under-insurance. Credit Agreements: a review of the National Credit Act.

Law of Agency, Insurance and Credit Agreements

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Agency: Agency power and authority; the rights and duties of principals and agents; the relationships between principals and agents and third parties. Insurance: sources; essential elements; insurable interest; duty of disclosure; warranties; risk; loss; subrogation; over-insurance; under-insurance. Credit Agreements: a review of the National Credit Act.

Law of Contract A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
The historical antecedents of South African contract law; theories of contracts; the essentials of a valid contract, including capacity, consensus (offer, acceptance, mistake, misrepresentation, duress, undue influence), legality (statutory, common law, the influence of the Constitution), possibility of performance and formalities; rectification; suretyship.

Law of Contract A

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
The historical antecedents of South African contract law; theories of contracts; the essentials of a valid contract, including capacity, consensus (offer, acceptance, mistake, misrepresentation, duress, undue influence), legality (statutory, common law, the influence of the Constitution), possibility of performance and formalities; rectification; suretyship.

Law of Contract B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Types of contractual terms, interpretation of contracts; alteration and termination of contractual obligations; cession; performance; breach; remedies; parties to a contract.

Law of Contract B

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Types of contractual terms, interpretation of contracts; alteration and termination of contractual obligations; cession; performance; breach; remedies; parties to a contract.

Law of Copyright and Trade Marks

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Registration of trademarks; transactions involving trademarks; infringement of trademarks; domain names and the internet; requirements for the subsistence of copyright; transactions involving copyright; infringement of copyright; copyright and the internet; and counterfeit goods.

Law of Delict

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 20 credits)
(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%); class work (50%) November examination)
General Principles and elements of delictual liability in terms of the *actio legis Aquiliae*, the action for pain and suffering and the action *iniuriarum*; forms of strict liability in terms of common law; liability imposed by statute (Road Accident Fund Act, Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, Consumer Protection Act); prescription of claims; delictual remedies and quantification of damages.

Law of Delict

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 15 credits)
(one year-course; one three-hour paper (50%); class work (50%) November examination)
General Principles and elements of delictual liability in terms of the *actio legis Aquiliae*, the action for pain and suffering and the action *iniuriarum*; forms of strict liability in terms of common law; liability imposed by statute (Road Accident Fund Act, Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, Consumer Protection Act); prescription of claims; delictual remedies and quantification of damages.

Law of Evidence A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination) Introductory terminology; the course of the trial; burden and standard of proof; judicial notice; opinion evidence; documentary; real and machine-generated evidence.

Law of Evidence B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination) Informal admissions; confessions; formal admissions; private privilege; state privilege; hearsay; previous consistent statements; similar fact evidence; entrapment; unconstitutionally obtained evidence.

Law of Evidence

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Definition and sources; relevance and admissibility; burden and standard of proof; judicial notice; opinion evidence; documentary, real and machine-generated evidence; informal admissions; confessions; formal admissions; privilege; hearsay; previous consistent statements; character evidence, opinion evidence and similar fact evidence; entrapment; unconstitutionally obtained evidence.

Law of Insolvency

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Voluntary surrender; compulsory sequestration; powers of trustees; vesting; meetings of creditors and proof of claims; effects of sequestration; impeachable transactions; composition; rehabilitation; winding-up of companies.

Law of Life Partnerships

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Evolution of the traditional concept of family and marriage; influence of the Constitution and international law; legal status of religious marriages; development of the law with respect to same-sex life partnerships and domestic partnerships; engagement; legal requirements for a valid marriage; void and voidable marriages; consequences of marriage in and out of community of property; antenuptial contracts; calculation of accrual; divorce and maintenance; changing trends in family law evident in recent Constitutional Court decisions.

Law of Partnerships and Trusts

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The nature, formation, dissolution and functional aspects of sole proprietorships, co-operatives, partnerships and trusts from a legislative, case law and practical perspective.

Law of Persons

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination) The general concept of legal personality: how it begins and ends and the rights and duties associated with it. Legal principles that affect legal status: domicile, age, mental illness, prodigality, change of sex. Protection of children in terms of the Children's Act 38 of 2005. Legal personality of systems of artificial intelligence.

Law of Persons

(New curriculum, NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

The general concept of legal personality: how it begins and ends and the rights and duties associated with it. Legal principles that affect legal status: domicile, age, mental illness, prodigality, change of sex. Protection of children in terms of the Children's Act 38 of 2005. Legal personality of systems of artificial intelligence.

Law of Property A

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Meaning, function and scope of property law; definition, characteristics and classification of things; distinction between real and personal rights; general principles, limitation, and acquisition and protection of ownership.

Law of Property A

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Meaning, function and scope of property law; definition, characteristics and classification of things; distinction between real and personal rights; general principles, limitation, and acquisition and protection of ownership.

Law of Property B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Possession; servitudes (definition and classification; creation, termination and enforcement); and real security (mortgage, pledge, notarial bonds, tacit hypothecs, lien).

Law of Property B

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
Possession; servitudes (definition and classification; creation, termination and enforcement); and real security (mortgage, pledge, notarial bonds, tacit hypothecs, lien).

Law of Sale and Lease

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Sale: the essential elements; passing of ownership; risk and benefit; conditional sales; residual obligations of the seller and remedies of the buyer; residual obligations of the buyer; sales affected by statute.

Lease: essential elements; types of leases; the rights and duties of lessors and lessees; the impact of the Constitution and various statutory enactments on leases; renewal; termination; lessee's rights in regard to improvements.

Law of Sale and Lease

(New curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)
Sale: the essential elements; passing of ownership; risk and benefit; conditional sales; residual obligations of the seller and remedies of the buyer; residual obligations of the buyer; sales affected by statute.
Lease: essential elements; types of leases; the rights and duties of lessors and lessees; the impact of the Constitution and various statutory enactments on leases; renewal; termination; lessee's rights in regard to improvements.

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
The scope of succession; intestate succession; executing wills; the contents of wills; collation; succession by contract; and administration of deceased estates including deceased insolvent estates.

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)
The scope of succession; intestate succession; executing wills; the contents of wills; collation; succession by contract; and administration of deceased estates including deceased insolvent estates.

Law of Tax and Estate Planning

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Selected material provisions of the Income Tax Act No. 58 of 1962, including the “gross income definition”, allowable trade deductions, and certain special deductions; general and specific anti-avoidance provisions; use of trusts in estate planning; introductory fundamental principles of capital gains tax; introductory fundamental provisions of the Value-Added Tax Act No. 89 of 1991; donations tax.

Legal Accounting

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 5, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Theoretical aspects of financial accounting; general bookkeeping; accounting for a trust account; accounting for conveyancing transactions; accounting for transactions with corresponding attorneys; financial statement analysis; internal controls.

Legal Accounting and Costs

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Theoretical aspects of financial accounting; general bookkeeping; accounting for a trust account; accounting for conveyancing transactions; accounting for transactions with corresponding attorneys; financial statement analysis; internal controls; costs in litigation.

Legal Interpretation

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Nature and classification of enacted law in South Africa; the Constitution and legislation as sources of legal authority, traditional common-law and modern theories of statutory interpretation; interpretive methods, rules and principles; judicial precedent and introduction to theories adjudication; analysis of legal reasoning and court judgments.

Legal Interpretation

(New curriculum, NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Nature and classification of enacted law in South Africa; the Constitution and legislation as sources of legal authority, traditional common-law and modern theories of statutory interpretation; interpretive methods, rules and principles; judicial precedent and introduction to theories adjudication; analysis of legal reasoning and court judgments.

Legal Pluralism

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), classwork (30%), November examination)

Meaning and challenges of legal pluralism; origins and evolution of legal pluralism in South Africa; history and application of customary law in the legal system; the bill of rights and customary/religious normative systems; marriage laws in comparative perspective (African customary, Hindu, Muslim and Jewish normative systems); settlement of disputes in plural legal settings; and selected topics on legal pluralism.

Legal Practice

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)
(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first or second semester)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

File and case management, consultation, interviewing, communication, and drafting skills. The emphasis is on the practical application of the law through prescribed work at the Law Clinic, practical exercises and assignments, the aim of which is to draw together and apply the legal knowledge acquired in academic studies.

Legal Practice

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)
(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first or second semester)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

File and case management, consultation, interviewing, communication, and drafting skills. The emphasis is on the practical application of the

law through prescribed work at the Law Clinic, practical exercises and assignments, the aim of which is to draw together and apply the legal knowledge acquired in academic studies.

Legal Skills

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: assessment of practical work (100%), first semester, carrying over into beginning of second semester)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

Research skills, including electronic resources; regulation of the legal environment; writing skills; numeracy skills; applied logic and critical reasoning; and structure and delivery of legal argument, including heads of argument and mootings.

Legal Skills A

(New curriculum, NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

(one semester course: continuous assessment of practical work (100%), first semester)

Careers in law; academic literacies; reading the various legal texts and sources; legal writing and communication; research and referencing skills; digital and information literacies; introduction to critical thinking and legal problem-solving.

Legal Skills B

(New curriculum, NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

(one semester course: continuous assessment of practical work (100%), second semester)

Argumentation; logic and reasoning; oral communication in law; basic mootings skills; AI and ethics in law; numeracy skills.

Public International Law

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Sources; international and municipal law; international personality; territory; jurisdiction; law of the sea; state responsibility; human rights; treaties; use of force; international institutions.

Public International Law

(New curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Sources; international and municipal law; international personality; territory; jurisdiction; law of the sea; state responsibility; human rights; treaties; use of force; international institutions.

Research Paper

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 8, 20 credits)

(two semester courses: assessed at the end of the year)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations).

LLB candidates are permitted to complete a research essay in a topic of their choice, subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor and the approval of the Dean. The paper will count for two elective credits. Students will be asked to indicate their intention to undertake this elective in the fourth term of their penultimate year of study. The detailed essay on the approved topic must be submitted by the end of the third week of the fourth term of the final year.

International Moot Competition

(Old curriculum, NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

(one semester course, assessed at the end of the year)

(Students will not be eligible for supplementary or aegrotat examinations)

Students who have participated in the African Human Rights Moot Court Competition, or any other international mootings competition, are permitted with the approval of the Dean to present the work done for this competition, as well as an analysis of their experiences of being involved in such a competition, in coherent written form for examination in accordance with the requirements laid down by the Faculty. A candidate may obtain only one elective credit for participation in a moot competition, irrespective of the number of times a candidate participates in such competitions.

LINGUISTICS AND APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES

Head of Department and Associate Professor

MA de Vos, BJourn (Rhodes), MPhil (Tromsø),
PhD (Leiden)

Professor

C Collins, PhD (MIT)

Associate Professor

W Bennett, BA (Carleton College), PhD (Rutgers)

Senior Lecturer

I Siebörger, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

TN Bowles, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PGDipHE
(Rhodes)

M Jiyane, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UKZN)

I Adetomokun, BA (Hons) (OAU - IFE), MA, PhD
(UWC)

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is a three-year major subject. Entrance to the course is open to students in all faculties. The object of courses in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is to develop students' understanding of language systems in the context of human communication and society. The main focus is on language within the South African context. Linguistics is an important component in the study of people and their cultures, and is of potential interest to students planning Humanities, Social Science, or Law degrees, as well as being of practical value to those specifically intending to qualify as teachers, journalists, media and language practitioners. Students are also encouraged to combine Linguistics and Applied Language Studies with a major in another language.

Module Themes

Our courses are structured around modules in the following areas.

Sound systems: phonetics and phonology

Morpho-syntactic systems: Syntax,
morphology

Discursive systems: Discourse Analysis,
Critical Discourse Analysis and Systemic
Functional Linguistics

Social Systems: Sociolinguistics, Service
Learning

Psycholinguistic systems: psycholinguistics,
language acquisition and linguistic perspectives
on literacy,

Special Topics in Linguistics: Special Topics in
Linguistics, Linguistics of South African Sign
Language, Linguistics of African Languages

The modules to be offered in any given year are chosen to provide a coherent linguistic programme, maintaining a balance between formal and applied linguistics, and according to staff availability.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1 (ELN 1)

First-year, full-year course
(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This course provides an introduction to, the main topics in Linguistics. The focus of the course is divided between linguistic systems and studies on language in use.

DP requirements: students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; examinations in June and November count 50%. Coursework for Semester 1 and 2 is written off in the June and November examinations respectively. Students who have failed a module essay may resubmit a substantially revised version within 10 days and will be remarked up to a maximum of 55%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: Students who achieve a combined Semester 1 mark (coursework and exam) of 35% or less will be deregistered from the course.

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2 (ELN 2)

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: ELN 1

Course description: The focus of the course is divided between linguistic systems and studies on

language in use. The course builds on the basic knowledge of linguistics learned in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1.

DP requirements: students must attend 80% of all class meetings and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; summative examinations in June and November count 50%. The exception to this is Service Learning which is assessed 100% through course work and there is no written examination; the non-summative assessment for class mark counts 50% of the Service learning mark; a summative assignment for Service Learning constitutes the remaining 50% Coursework for Semester 1 and 2 is written off in the June and November examinations respectively. Students who have failed a module essay may resubmit a substantially revised version within 10 days and will be remarked up to a maximum of 55%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: Students who achieve a combined Semester 1 mark (coursework and exam) of 35% or less will be deregistered from the course.

Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 3 (ELN 3)

Third-year, full-year course
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: ELN 2

Course description: The focus of the course is divided between the linguistic systems and studies on language in use. The course aims to help students develop a well-rounded and advanced knowledge of these areas. In addition, students produce a research report on a linguistic topic.

DP requirements: students must attend 80% of all class and tutorial meetings, as well as 80% of all Research Group meetings, and submit all written tests and assignments by the due date.

Assessment: June Exam 21.25%; November Exam 21.25%; Class record: 42.50%; Research Article: 15.00%. Coursework for Semester 1 and 2 is written off in the June and November examinations respectively. Students who have failed a module essay may resubmit a substantially revised version within 10 days and will be remarked up to a

maximum of 55%. This also applies to the Research Article.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for June: Students who achieve a combined Semester 1 mark (coursework and exam) of 35% or less will be deregistered from the course.

Professional Communication

Second-year, one-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: The course is intended for non-Humanities students who are in at least their second academic year, apart from those registered for BCom (Accounting).

Course description: The Professional Communication course aims to improve the spoken, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication in the professional world. Some theoretical background is given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. It is a compulsory course required for the completion of a Commerce undergraduate degree in all curricula apart from a BCom (Accounting). Students attend three classes every week (two tutorials and one lecture). Additional online resources and compulsory exercises are also offered every week.

DP requirements: Students must submit all written tests and assignments by the due date, and must complete all spoken presentation assessments. Students must attend 80% of tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%; there is no sit-down examination.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%
Subminimum: none.

Professional Communication for Accountants

Second-year, one-term course
(NQF level 6, 7.5 credits)

Entrance requirements: The course is intended for Commerce students in their second academic year, registered for BCom (Accounting).

Course description: Professional Communication for Accountants aims to improve the spoken, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication in the

commercial and professional world with a special emphasis on the communicative needs of accountants. Some theoretical background is given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. It is a compulsory course required for the completion of a BCom (Accounting). Students attend three classes every week (two tutorials and one lecture). Additional online resources and compulsory exercises are also offered every week. The course content is partly assessed through an assignment in the Principles of Professional Accountancy course, which is jointly assessed by both the Linguistics and Applied Language Studies and Accounting departments.

DP requirements: Students must submit all written tests and assignments by the due date and must complete all spoken presentation assessments. Students must attend 80% of tutorials.

Assessment: Coursework counts 100%; there is no examination for the course.

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

There are a number of options for postgraduate studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, including Honours, Master's and PhD degrees. Some of these options can be taken on either a full-time or part-time basis, and at Master's level the options include degrees by thesis only or by coursework and half thesis.

Modules in the following areas may be offered at Honours and Master's degree levels.

Modules in Linguistics:

Phonology and Phonetics
Morpho-Syntax
Linguistics of particular languages

Modules in Applied Language Studies:

The Linguistics of Literacy
Appraisal
Language and Knowledge
Multilingualism

Other modules:

Special topics in Linguistics
External Language credit
Research Project

We also offer other modules from time to time depending on staff availability. Please consult the Department's Postgraduate Handbook (available on the Department website) for more information on the structuring and content of these modules. Modules passed at the Honours degree level may not be repeated at Master's degree level (see below). In terms of assessment, all modules carry equal weight, and are assessed by assignments and examinations. Examinations are written at the end of the semester in which modules are taught. The department may offer take-home, open-book, pre-allocated questions or standard exams.

Honours Degree

Full-year course
(NQF level 8, 120)

The aim of the Honours course is to provide students with a balance between the social and formal aspects of the central disciplines of Linguistics. All modules include a strong commitment to methodological and analytic aspects, drawing on relevant theory and consolidated by a supervised research report. The Honours degree can be completed full-time in one year (minimum) or over two years on a part-time basis.

Entrance requirements: Entry to the Honours programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline.

Course description: Students must complete four coursework modules (see above). In addition, students will complete a research report on a topic to be mutually negotiated, taking into account the research and/or teaching interests of the department, e.g. further developing Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 3 research reports, Honours modules or departmental research projects. At the discretion of the Head of Department, students may take a non-mother-tongue language credit from the Rhodes University School of Languages and Literatures in place of one of the four modules. Additional coursework will be required.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Two structures are possible in the Master's degree:

Master of Arts by full thesis

Entrance requirements: Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is open to students with any of the following qualifications: (a) an Honours degree in Linguistics, or (b) an Honours degree or four-year degree in a cognate discipline, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

DP requirements: Students normally ought to have their HHDC proposal and ethics application approved by the end of the first year.

Course description: This is a research degree, which is governed by the general regulations for Master's degrees in the University. Full-time candidates can complete the requirements for the award of the degree in a minimum of one year but usually take at least two years to complete the degree. Part-time candidates can complete the requirements in a minimum of two years.

Master of Arts by coursework and half thesis

Entrance requirements: Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies is open to students with any of the following qualifications: (a) an Honours degree in Linguistics, or (b) an Honours degree or four-year degree in a cognate discipline, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Course description: This degree can be completed on a full-time basis in a minimum of one year but usually takes two years to complete the degree. Part-time candidates can complete the requirements in a minimum of two years. It consists of both coursework and a half thesis. It is normally expected that full-time students complete their coursework in the first year. Coursework includes four modules. The half thesis is guided research, supervised by a member of the department.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: Students with a Master's degree in Linguistics can register for the Doctoral degree.

DP requirements: Pass four modules. Students normally ought to have their HHDC proposal and ethics application approved by the end of the first year.

Course description: The Doctoral degree in Linguistics can only be done by thesis, and only under the supervision of a member of staff. Students who have not studied Linguistics at Rhodes University previously will be required to take four modules as part of their preparation for the thesis. Failing one or more of these modules is particularly serious and will be considered as part of the supervisory and annual report. PhD students normally ought to have their HHDC proposal and ethics application approved by the end of the first year.

LITERARY STUDIES IN ENGLISH

Associate Professor and Head of Department

AR Krueger BA, BA (Hons), (UP), MA (UNISA), DLitt et Phil (UP)

Professor

S Naidu, BJourn, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (SOAS & Rhodes), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Associate Professors

AMM Phiri, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Edinburgh)

LG Spencer, BA Law (WSU), BA (Hons) (UP), MA (Wits), PhD (Stell)

Senior Lecturers

T Njovane, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)
DA Seddon, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab), JA McGregor, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer

NT Ntsepo, BA (Wits), BA (Hons) (Wits), MA (Sussex)

Professors Emeriti

M Van Wyk Smith, BA (Hons) (Stell) MA, MLitt (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes)

DGN Cornwell, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

DC Kloppe, BA (UKZN), HED (UKZN), BA (Hons), MA, DLitt et Phil (UNISA)

PS Walters, BA (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

DA Wylie, BA, BA (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

MJ Marais, BA, BA (Hons), MA (NMU), D Litt et Phil (UJ)

Literary Studies in English is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Courses in English are also allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

English 101 (ENG 101)

First-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 1 Introduction to Genre: Prose
- Paper 2 Introduction to Genre: Drama and Poetry

DP requirements: 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of continuous assessment; writing June examinations

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

English 102 (ENG 102)

First-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% or more for ENG

101 Course description: Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 3 South African Literature
- Paper 4 The Sense of an Ending

DP requirements: 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of continuous assessment; writing November examinations

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

English 201 (ENG 201)

Second-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: English 101 and English 102

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 1 Postcolonial Literature
- Paper 2 Transnational Literature

DP requirements: 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 essays; writing two June examinations

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

English 202 (ENG 202)

Second-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 45% or more for ENG 201

Course description: Students take the following two papers:

- Paper 3 Romanticism and The Gothic
- Paper 4 The Modernist Revolt

DP requirements: 80% attendance of tutorials; submission of 2 essays; writing two November examinations

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

English 301 (ENG 301)

Third-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: English 2

Course description Students take two core papers, one per term, taught by means of lectures. Students also choose one elective paper for the semester, taught by means of seminars.

The core papers for ENG 301 are:

- Paper 1 African Literary Representations
- Paper 2 Early Modern Literature

The range of elective papers on offer varies from year to year.

DP requirements: Submission of all essays, including elective assignments; 80% attendance of elective seminars; 80% attendance of lectures, writing the June examination for the core papers.

Assessment: Core papers counts 60% (essays 24% and exam 36%) and the elective paper 40%.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

English 302 (ENG 302)

Third-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% or more for ENG 301.

Course description: Students take two core papers, one per term, taught by means of lectures. Students also choose one elective paper for the semester, taught by means of seminars.

The core papers for ENG 302 are:

- Paper 3 Realism to Postmodernism

- Paper 4 South African Post-Apartheid Writing

The range of elective papers on offer varies from year to year.

DP requirements: Submission of all essays, including elective assignments; 80% attendance of elective seminars; 80% attendance of lectures, writing the November examination for the core papers.

Assessment: Core papers counts 60% (essays 24% and exam 36%) and the elective paper 40%

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: 65% for English 3. Subject to the approval of both Heads of Department and the Dean, Honours courses may be offered in (a) English or (b) English in combination with Honours courses offered by other departments (see Rule H.26). The latter option will be termed "joint Honours" if the candidate takes two or more papers from another department. Full English Honours candidates may nevertheless include in their curriculum one paper chosen from another Honours course in the Humanities Faculty. The attention of prospective candidates is also drawn to the separate entry on Interdisciplinary Honours degrees (see Interdepartmental Studies) for information on other options involving input from the Department of Literary Studies in English.

Course description: Candidates for Honours in English choose five papers from the following:

- Paper 1 Literary Theory
- Paper 3 American Literature
- Paper 4 Global Modernisms
- Paper 5 Africa in the World
- Paper 6 Imaginings of Place in SA Literature

Additional options for papers may be offered in any given year. Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department, a candidate may choose to submit a research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above papers.

DP requirements: Submission of all essays;
100% attendance of seminars; writing the June
and November examinations

Assessment: Coursework 60% and Examination
40%

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to
complete a research thesis.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to
complete a research thesis.

MANAGEMENT

Associate Professor and Head of Department

N Oosthuizen, BCom (Hons), MCom (UPE), PhD (NMU)

Raymond Ackerman Chair of Business

Administration, and Professor

L Louw, BCom (Hons), MCom, DCom (UPE) (presently Deputy Dean of Commerce)

Associate Professor

MB Bunting, MCom (Financial Markets), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

TL Amos, BSocSc (Hons) (Economics), BSocSc (Hons) (Psychology), MSocSc (Rhodes)

XL Antoni, BCom (Hons), PGDip (Financial Planning), MCom, PhD (NMU), CFP

Lecturers

L Maholo, BCom(Hons), MCom (Rhodes)

M Maritz, BCom (Hons), PGDHE (Rhodes),

S Sha, BCom (Hons), MCom (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

AS Williams, BSocSc (Hons), BCom (Hons), MCom (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Research Associates

C-H Mayer, MA, Doctorate (Göttingen), PhD (Rhodes)

E Osabutey BSc (Eng), MA, MA, MCIM, MCMI, FHEA, PhD (Swansea, Wales)

Management is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. It is also possible to take Management as a major subject in the BSc, BSocSc and BJourn degrees. In addition, one, or in some cases, two, courses in Management are allowed as courses for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Science. The BBusSc degree in the Department of Management is designed to equip students to pursue a career in Management. Normally a candidate will only be admitted to Management 2 if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1. A candidate will normally be admitted to Management 3 only if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1, Economics 1, and either one of Mathematics 1, or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2.

Students will normally be refused admission to any course offered by the Department after the second week of the start of the course.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MANAGEMENT

Management 1 consists of two semester courses: MAN 101 and MAN 102. Credit may be obtained in any of the courses separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course MAN 1, provided that the courses constituting Management 1 are read in the same year and a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each course (see Rule C.12). A candidate who fails MAN 101 shall be permitted to proceed to MAN 102 provided the required sub-minimum in MAN 101 has been obtained. A pass in MAN 102 in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass MAN 101 in order to gain credit for the full course unless an aggregated pass is awarded.

Management 1 is seen as an undergraduate introductory course in business management. The purpose of the course is to equip students with knowledge of management in the South African business environment.

Management 101 (MAN 101)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: none

Course description: This semester course focuses on the world of business management, the role of an entrepreneur and manager in the South African business environment, and managerial competencies. Further the module focuses on the general management tasks of planning, organising, leading and controlling.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examination counts 60%

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 102 (MAN 102)

First-year, second-semester course (NQF Level 5, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: sub-minimum of 35% in MAN 101

Course description: This semester course continues to focus on the business organisation and management, and explores managing in various contexts which includes marketing management, financial management, operations management, human resource management and purchasing and supply chain management.

DP requirements: Obtain a coursework mark of at least 40%; attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all term tests

Assessment: Coursework counts 40%; examination counts 60%

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MANAGEMENT

Management 2 consists of four half-semester modules: MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214. Credit may be obtained in any of the modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course MAN 2, provided that the modules constituting Management 2 are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two modules, with credit being obtained in the remaining two modules; or that a sub-minimum of 40% is obtained for one module, with credit being obtained for the remaining three modules (see Rule C.12).

Management 211 (MAN 211) - Human Resource Management A

Second-year, first quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 1 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC

112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

Course description: The human resource management function with emphasis on human resource planning, staffing, compensation, labour relations, training and development, performance management, human resource information technology and international human resource management maintenance.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; examination counts 50%

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 212 (MAN 212) - Supply Chain Management

Second-year, second quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 1 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

Course description: An overview of operations and supply chain management with an emphasis on the concepts of supply chain strategy, integrated logistics, inventory, quality and quality tools, forecasting and supply chain management challenges and future trends.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; examination counts 50%

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 213 (MAN 213) - Principles of Marketing A

Second-year, third quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 1 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

Course description: The principles of Marketing which includes – the marketing concept, the

marketing mix with specific emphasis on product, price, place and promotion decisions; an introduction to marketing research; an introduction to consumer behaviour; and segmentation, targeting and positioning.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; obtain a sub-minimum mark of at least 40% for the group assignment; and write all tests and obtain a sub-minimum of at least 40% for the class test

Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; examination counts 50%

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 214 (MAN 214) - Financial Management A

Second-year, fourth quarter module (NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 101 and MAN 102 or MAN 2 with MAN 101 and MAN 102 aggregated, and ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112, or ACC 1 with ACC 101 and ACC 102 or ACC 112 aggregated

Course description: This course builds on the foundation of the financial management topics introduced in the first year programme. The specific focus is on capital budgeting, cost of capital, working capital management, and financial statement analysis.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests
Assessment: Coursework counts 50%; examination counts 50%

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

The Department reserves the right to teach MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214, which constitute MAN 2, in any combination in each of the two semesters.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MANAGEMENT

Management 3 consists of four half-semester modules: MAN 311, MAN 312, MAN 313 and MAN 314. Credit may be obtained in any of the modules separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-semester course MAN 3,

provided that the modules constituting Management 3 are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained for at least two modules, with credit being obtained in the remaining two modules; or that a sub-minimum of 40% is obtained for one module, with credit being obtained for the remaining three modules (see Rule C.12).

Management 311 (MAN 311) - Human Resource Management B

Third-year, first quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

Course description: Building on MAN 311 – Human Resource Management A, this module focuses on organisational behaviour, with the emphasis on understanding the behaviour and leadership of people in the organisation; labour relations, with the emphasis on South African labour relations systems and management.

DP requirements: Submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests

Assessment: Coursework counts 60%; examination counts 40% A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 312 (MAN 312) - Strategic Management

Third-year, second quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C2 and STA 1C2

Course description: A study of the principles of strategic management, where the major outcome of the course is to develop the students' knowledge,

comprehension, diagnostic and analytic capability, to problem-solve strategic management scenarios.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; write all tests and meet a sub-minimum of 45% for each assessment task. **Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; examination counts 40% A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 313 (MAN 313) - Principles of Marketing B

Third-year, third quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

Course description: Building on MAN 213 - Principles of Marketing A, this module focuses on a selection of the following topics – designing a customer-driven marketing strategy, marketing research, consumer behaviour, brand management, marketing communications, services marketing, and social and digital marketing to equip students with the knowledge to advise managers on real-world marketing scenarios.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests **Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; examination counts 40% A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

Management 314 (MAN 314) - Financial Management B

Third-year, fourth quarter module (NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Admission pre-requisites: MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 or MAN 2 with MAN

211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 aggregated, ECO 101 and ECO 102 or ECO 1 with ECO 101 and ECO 102 aggregated, MAM 1 or TOF 1C1 and STA 1C2

Course description: This course continues the development of a coherent knowledge structure in financial management, building on topics introduced in the first and second year programmes. The specific focus is on: bond valuation and interest rates; equity valuation; risk and return; capital budgeting; capital structure; dividends and other payouts; environmental, social and governance (ESG) issues; and mergers and acquisitions.

DP requirements: Attend all tutorials; submit all assignments on or before due date; and write all tests **Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; examination counts 40% A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the exam. If the exam sub-minimum is failed, but the overall mark is 50% or more, the student will be granted a supplementary exam.

Supplementary examination: 40-49%

The Department reserves the right to teach MAN 311, MAN 312, MAN 313 and MAN 314, which constitute MAN 3, in any combination in each of the two semesters.

HONOURS LEVEL COURSES

Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) in the Department of Management

Students can register for one of two options:

1. B.Com (Hons) Management/Management 4 (BBS4)
2. B.Com (Hons) Management: Financial Management
3. Students may also register for a joint Honours in which the honours programmes from Management and Information Systems , are taken 60%:40% with some coursework and some project components selected from each department.

B.Com (Hons) Management/Management 4 (BBS4)

This honours degree option consists of the following 5 compulsory papers:

Paper 1: Strategic Management

Paper 2: Human Resource Management
Paper 3: Strategic Marketing
Paper 4: Strategic Supply Chain Management
Paper 9: Research

Admission requirements: A degree with a major in Management or equivalent. Credit should be obtained for all relevant Management courses with an aggregate of 60%. Admission however remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

BCom (Hons) Management: Financial Management

This option consists of the following 5 compulsory papers:

Paper 5: Strategic Financial Management
Paper 6: Personal Financial Management
Paper 7: Investments
Paper 8: Derivatives and Risk Management
Paper 9: Research

Admission requirements: A degree with a major in Financial Management (equivalent to Management 314). Credit should be obtained for all relevant Management courses with an aggregate of 60% as well as a minimum of 65% for Financial Management at third year level. Admission, however, remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

Paper Content of Hons Courses

Paper 1: Strategic Management

The aim of this course is to enable students to think strategically and be aware of the importance of ethical principles, values and responsible corporate citizenship. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- Strategy, stakeholders and strategic direction
- Strategic analysis
- Strategy development and formulation
- Strategy implementation and strategic risk management

Paper 2: Human Resource Management

The aim of this course is to enable students to initiate and manage organisational change and development. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- The skills, task and role of an organisational consultant
- Organisational development (OD)
- Organisational diagnosis
- Organisational development interventions
- Learning Organisations
- Knowledge and intellectual capital

Paper 3: Strategic Marketing

The aim of this course is to enable students to solve contemporary topical marketing problems. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- International Marketing
- Consumer Behaviour
- Brand Management
- Marketing Research
- Customer Relationship Management (CRM)
- B2B Marketing
- Services Marketing
- E-Marketing
- Integrated Marketing Communications (IMC)
- Digital Marketing

Paper 4: Strategic Supply Chain Management

The aim of this course is to prepare students for advanced roles in supply chain strategy, logistics, and procurement, equipping them to innovate and lead in dynamic, global business environments while considering sustainability and ethical responsibilities. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- The strategic role of Supply Chain Management
- Supply chain integration and collaboration
- Demand planning, sourcing, production and operations, inventory management, and
- logistics, emphasising their integration for optimal performance
- Impact of emerging technologies
- Solutions for complex supply chain challenges
- Ethical and sustainability issues

Paper 5: Strategic Financial Management

The course aims to build on the third-year course in corporate finance by introducing students to the high-level application of corporate finance principles to long-term strategic decisions in

organisations with the ultimate focus of maximising shareholder wealth. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- Financial strategy aligned with corporate strategy
- Value creation and Financial matrix
- Strategic Risk Management
- Investment Decisions under uncertainty
- Mergers and Acquisitions
- Funding Strategies
- Sustainability and ESG

Paper 6: Personal Financial Management

The course aims to increase the financial literacy levels of students. The course will ensure that students acquire the necessary knowledge of personal finance content, execute financial calculations (improving financial numeracy), and transfer class-based financial knowledge into real-world experience. This course will also allow students to gain practical experience with personal financial content through Service-learning. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- Personal finance theory and financial education
- Financial Coaching
- Investment products and financial decision-making
- Income tax
- Retirement planning
- Estate planning

Paper 7: Investments and Paper 8: Derivatives and Risk Management

The aim of these courses are to extend the corporate finance focus of the undergraduate programme, by introducing students to key concepts underpinning investment and risk management. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- Investment returns
- Equity valuation using dividend discount, free cash flow, and residual income models
- Equity valuation using price and enterprise value multiples
- Equity risk and return
- Fixed income and money market valuation
- Fixed income duration (risk) and return

- Pricing and valuation of forward commitment and contingent claim derivatives
- Introduction to financial risks
- Hedging financial risks using derivative and non-derivative strategies

Paper 9: Research

The aim of the course is to enable students to conduct research independently within a team. Topics may include, but are not limited to:

- Identify a research project
- Write a research proposal
- Conduct a literature review
- Analyse and explain research results in a meaningful manner
- Write up the research in the form of a research paper

Note 1: The Department of Management reserves the right to offer the papers in no particular order from academic year to year.

Note 2: The Department also permits students to register for either 40% or 60% Management Honours. 60% Honours candidates are required to read any two of the listed papers in addition to Paper 9 (Research), the Research Paper. 40% Honours candidates are required to read any two of the listed papers, excluding Paper 9 (Research). The 60% or 40% option is only available to those registering for the BCom (Hons) Management, and BCom (Hons) Management: Financial stream.

Course admission pre-requisites

Management 102: Sub-minimum of 35% for Management 101

Management 2: Management 1; Accounting 1

Management 3: Economics 1, Management 2, Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

Management 3 (Marketing): Management 213 (Marketing)

Management 3 (Finance): Management 214 (Financial Management) and Mathematics 1 or Theory of Finance and Statistics 1C2

Management 3 (Human Resource

Management): Management 211 (Human Resource Management)

Honours/ Management 4 (BBS4): Management 3, with a minimum aggregate of 60% for all courses and a credit for each course

Honours (Financial Stream): Major in Financial Management (equivalent to MAN 314), with a credit for all relevant majors, a minimum aggregate of 60% for all courses and minimum of 65% for Financial Management at the third year level. Admission, however, remains at the discretion of the Department of Management.

Aggregation

In cases where credit is obtained for a course on the basis of aggregation of marks awarded for courses/modules, candidates are permitted to proceed to any course at the next level of Management,

excluding fourth-year (Honours and Management 4) level. Aggregation is permitted at the Honours and Management 4 level, subject to all papers being passed except one (excluding Paper 8: Research which must be passed), in which case the subminimum for the failed paper is 45%.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN MANAGEMENT

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the full thesis research degrees of MCom and PhD under the supervision of staff of the Department. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on a good academic record, the acceptance of a topic statement and the availability of expertise in the Department to supervise the project. Further details for these degrees are given in the General Regulations.

MATHEMATICS

Associate Professor and Head of Department
EOD Andriantiana, MSc, PhD (Stell)

Professors Emeriti

NT Bishop, MA (Cantab), PhD (Southampton), FRAS

M H Burton BSc (Hons) (Natal), MSc (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

V Murali MSc (Madras), MSc (Wales), PhD (Rhodes)

CC Remsing, MSc (Timisoara), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor

D Pollney, MSc (Queens), PhD (Southampton)

Associate Professor

M Atemkeng, MSc (Dschang), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

M Nxumalo MSc (UWC), PhD (UNISA)

S Oloniju MSc, PhD (UKZN)

AL Pinchuck, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Wits)

C McLean, MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

O Gobingca MSc (Rhodes)

K Koch MSc (UKZN)

W Poka MSc (UKZN), PhD (UP)

Mathematics (MAT) and Applied Mathematics (MAP) may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn, BCom, BBusSci, BEcon and BSocSc, and for the diploma HDE(SEC).

To major in Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM1, MAM2, MAT3.

To major in Applied Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM1, MAM2; MAP3. See Rule S.23.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the field of Bioinformatics is drawn to the recommended curriculum that leads to postgraduate study in this area, in which Mathematics is a recommended co-major with Biochemistry, and for which two years of Computer Science and either Mathematics or Mathematical Statistics are prerequisites. Details of this curriculum can be found in the entry for the

Department of Biochemistry, Microbiology and Bioinformatics.

See the departmental web page for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

FOUNDATION YEAR COURSES

The Mathematics Department offers two courses as part of the extended studies programme, providing an opportunity for students without the required school- level mathematics credits to gain the background required to enter the mainstream program.

MAT 1F (Foundation Mathematics)

First-year, year-course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

Course description: A full year course for BScF students who do not qualify for entry into MAM 1. A 60% pass gives admission to MAM 1. The goal of this course is to help students develop appropriate mathematical tools necessary to represent and interpret information quantitatively. It also develops skills and meaningful ways of thinking, reasoning and arguing with quantitative ideas in order to solve problems in any given context.

Syllabus: Arithmetic: Ratios, proportions, fractions and percentages. **Algebra:** Real numbers, algebraic expressions, polynomial, exponential, logarithmic and trigonometric functions and their graphs; modelling with functions;; setting up and solving equations.. **Differential Calculus:** Limits and continuity; Rules of differentiation; Applications of Calculus in curve sketching and optimisation.

Antirequisite: MAT 1S1, credit cannot be obtained for both MAT1F and MAT1S1.

DP requirements: 100% attendance at tutorials and tests. 40% for the class record.

Assessment: June class record 20%, June Examination 30%, November class record 20%, November Examination 30%

Supplementary exam: 40-49% average of the June and November final marks

Sub-minimum for June: 40% to continue into the second semester

Theory of Finance 1F (TOF 1F):

First-year, year-course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

Course description: A full year course for students planning to enter the degree program in the Faculty of Commerce. The course material is identical to that of the TOF course (listed below), but covered at a slower pace over the course of two semesters. **Syllabus:** See description of TOF1, below.

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Class record 30%, June Examination 35%, November Examination 35%

Supplementary exam: 40-49% average of the June and November final marks.

Sub-minimum for June: None

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

Mathematics 1 (MAM 1): This is a year-long semesterised two-credit course. Credit in MAM 1 must be obtained by students who wish to major in certain subjects (such as Mathematics, Applied Mathematics, Physics, Applied Statistics and Mathematical Statistics) and by students registered for the BBusSci degree.

Introductory Mathematics (MAT 1S1): A semester-long course recommended for Pharmacy students and for Science students who do not need credits in MAM 1.

Theory of Finance (TOF 1C1): A single semester course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce emphasising mathematical techniques required in finance and financial applications.

Course descriptions

Mathematics 1 (MAM 1)

There are two first-year courses in Mathematics for candidates planning to major in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics. MAT 101 is held in the first

semester and MAM 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the two-credit course MAM 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the department. Candidates must obtain at least 40% for MAM 101 in order to be permitted to continue with MAM 102. MAM101 is required for a major in Computer Science.

MAM 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 5 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

Course description: Basic concepts (number systems, functions), calculus (limits, continuity, differentiation, curve sketching, introduction to integration), propositional calculus, proof techniques, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem, vectors, lines and planes, matrices and systems of linear equations.

DP requirements: Class record of at least 40% including two test results

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% to aggregate with MAM 102

MAM 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% MAM 101

Course description: Calculus (integration, applications of integration, improper integrals, ordinary differential equations), complex numbers, sequences and series including Taylor series.

DP requirements: Class record of at least 40% including two test results

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% to aggregate with MAM 101

Introductory Mathematics (MAT 1S1)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC or equivalent

Course description: Functions: Review of coordinate geometry, absolute values (including graphs); Inequalities; Power functions, trig functions, exponential functions, the number e (including graphs); Inverse functions: roots, logs, $\ln$ (including graphs); Graphs and working with graphs; Interpretation of graphs, modeling; Introduction to differentiation and basic derivatives; Differentiation techniques (product, quotient and chain rules); Introduction to integration and basic integrals; modeling, translation of real-world problems into mathematics.

DP requirements: Class record of 40% including two test results.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Theory of Finance (TOF 1C1)

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: Level 4 Mathematics or the NSC equivalent

Course description: A single semester course for students planning to enter the degree program in the Faculty of Commerce. Syllabus: Simple Interest and Simple Discount, compound Interest, simple and complex annuities, loans, linear equations, linear programming, depreciation, differentiation, application of differentiation, integration

DP requirement: Class record of 40%

Assessment: Class record 20%, Examination 80%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

The Department offers a common second-year program for students intending to major in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics. Mathematics and Applied Mathematics 2 (MAM 2) comprises two semesterised courses, MAM 201 and MAM 202. Each course may be obtained

separately, alternatively, an aggregate mark of 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-long course MAM 2, provided a sub-minimum of 40% is achieved in both semesters.

MAM 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: MAM 1

Course description: This course is comprised of three modules which run concurrently throughout the semester:

- **Multivariable Calculus (MC):** Partial differentiation: directional derivatives and the gradient vector; maxima and minima of surfaces; Lagrange multipliers. Multiple integrals: surface and volume integrals in general coordinate systems. Vector calculus: vector fields, line integrals, fundamental theorem of line integrals, Green's theorem, curl and divergence, parametric curves and surfaces.
- **Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE):** First-order ordinary differential equations, linear differential equations of second order, Laplace transforms, systems of equations, series solutions.
- **Mathematical Modeling and Programming 1:** Introduction to the python programming language, basic syntax, tools, programming principles. Applications taken from MAM 2 modules. This course continues over both semesters.

DP requirements: 40% class record for each of MC and ODE

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% to aggregate with MAM 202

MAM 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% MAM 201

Course description: This course is comprised of four modules which run concurrently throughout the semester:

- **Linear Algebra (LA):** Linear spaces, inner products, norms. Vector spaces, spans, linear independence, basis and dimension. Linear transformations, change of basis, eigenvalues, diagonalization and its applications.
 - **Introduction to Algebra and Analysis (IAA):** Set theory; mappings; binary operations; equivalence relations and order; groups.
 - **Introduction to Analysis:** Real numbers; open and closed intervals; sequences and series (convergence); functions of a real variable (continuity, limit); series of functions.
 - **Mathematical Modelling and Programming 2:** Introduction to the python programming language, basic syntax, tools, programming principles. Applications taken from MAM 2 modules. This course continues over both semesters.
- DP requirements:** 40% for each of LA and IAA
Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%
Supplementary exam: 40-49%
Sub-minimum for June: 40% to aggregate with MAM 201

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

Entrance requirement: MAM 2

The two majors, Mathematics (MAT) and Applied Mathematics (MAP), are organised into the semester-modules listed below:

	Major	NQF credits and level
MAM 311: Complex Analysis	MAP and MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAP 311: Numerical Analysis	MAP	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAP 312: Dynamical Systems	MAP	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAP 314: Partial Differential Equations	MAP	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAT 311: Algebra	MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAT 313: Real Analysis	MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits
MAT 315: Topics in Mathematics	MAT	NQF level 7, 18 credits

A major in MAP requires an average mark of at least 50% over the four modules MAP 311, MAP 312, MAP 314 and MAM 311, with at least 50% in two of the modules and a subminimum of 40% in each course.

A major in MAT requires an average mark of at least 50% over the four modules MAT 311, MAT 313, MAT 315 and MAM 311, with at least 50% in two of the modules and a subminimum of 40% in each course.

Students who obtain an average of at least 50% over all seven courses will be granted credit for both MAP 3 and MAT 3, provided that the average of the MAP modules is at least 50% and the average of the MAT modules is at least 50%, two of the MAT and two of the MAP modules are passed with at least 50%, and a minimum of 40% is achieved in each module.

Individual modules may be carried forward from year to year.

Changes to the topics offered may be made from time-to-time depending on the interests of the academic staff.

Course descriptions

MAM 311 - Complex Analysis

(This is a common course required by both MAP and MAT majors.) Revision of complex numbers, Cauchy- Riemann equations, analytic and harmonic functions, elementary functions and their properties, branches of logarithmic functions, complex differentiation, integration in the complex plane, Cauchy's Theorem and integral formula, Taylor and Laurent series, Residue theory and applications. Residue theory and applications to improper and Fourier integrals.

MAP 311 - Numerical Analysis

Error Analysis, systems of non-linear equations, polynomial interpolation, cubic splines, numerical linear algebra, numerical computation of eigenvalues, numerical differentiation and integration, numerical solution of ordinary and partial differential equations, finite differences, approximation theory, discrete Fourier transform.

MAP 312: Dynamical Systems

Differential equations and iterated maps as dynamical systems. Geometric representation of trajectories.

Limiting behaviour of trajectories in linear and nonlinear systems. Equilibria of linear systems and linearisation of hyperbolic equilibria of nonlinear systems. Invariant sets and attractors. Bifurcation and chaos in nonlinear maps. Notions of stability. Some applications of dynamical systems in modeling.

MAP 314: Partial Differential Equations

First-order partial differential equations, classification of second-order equations, construction and behaviour of solutions, the method of characteristics, shocks and nonlinear phenomena, maximum principles, energy integrals, Fourier transform methods.

MAT 311: Algebra

Sets, the Division Algorithm Theorem, equivalence relations, groups, rings, fields, integral domains, homomorphisms, isomorphisms, and their elementary properties.

MAT 313: Real Analysis

Cardinality of sets, topology of the real line, continuity and uniform continuity, Heine- Borel, Bolzano-Weierstrass, introduction to metric spaces.

MAT315 - Topics in Mathematics: This course consists of two modules:

- Module A - Topology: Topological Spaces (Fundamental concepts, Interior, closure, density, Subspaces, Bases), Continuity, Separation axioms (including T0, T1, T2).
- Module B -Discrete Mathematics: Permutations, combinations, generating functions, recursions, inclusion- exclusion, graph theory.

DP requirements: Per course – consult lecturer

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60% (each course)

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% per course

HONORS LEVEL COURSES

Mathematics and Applied Mathematics Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: Each of the two courses (Mathematics and Applied Mathematics) consists of six topics and one project. A Mathematics Honours degree usually requires the candidate to have majored in Mathematics (MAT 3). An Applied Mathematics Honours degree usually requires the candidate to have majored in Applied Mathematics (MAP 3).

The topics are selected from the following general areas covering a wide spectrum of contemporary mathematics: Algebra; Algebraic Graph Theory; Combinatorics; Functional Analysis; General Relativity; Geometry; Information Theory; Manifolds, Measure Theory; Number Theory; Numerical Modelling; Statistical mechanics; Continuum Mechanics; Topology; Category Theory; Spectral Collocation Method

Joint Honours in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics

For joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the options listed above. These modules must contribute to between 40% and 60% of the final grade.

It is also possible to substitute individual modules from other departments into a Mathematics or Applied Mathematics honours programme, with the approval of the Heads of the departments concerned. Alternatively, honours modules from the Department of Mathematics may be considered by other departments as components of their postgraduate courses, again with the approval of the departments concerned.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN MATHEMATICS OR APPLIED MATHEMATICS

Masters degrees

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

PhD degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to these degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

A Master's degree in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics may be taken by thesis only, or by a combination of course work and a thesis. If course work is offered, normally four examination papers and/or essays are required in addition to the thesis. The course of study must be approved by the Head of Department.

MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

B McConnachie, BMus, MMus, PhD, PGCE, RULS (Rhodes)

Professor

C Foxcroft, BMus (UCT), UPLM (UNISA), MMus (HMTMH, Germany), Diplomsolistin (HMTMH, Germany), DMus (UP)

Senior Lecturer and Director: ILAM

L Watkins, BA (Hons), MA (UKZN), PhD (Hong Kong, China), HDE (UWC)

Senior Lecturer

W Fourie, BMus (US), MSt (Oxon), PhD (RHUL)

Lecturer

D Daula, BMus, BMus (Hons) (UCT), MMus (RNCM)

E Madiba, BMus Ed (UPE), MMus, PhD (Rhodes)

Junior Lecturers

C Cooper, BMus, MMus, RULS, BSoc Sci (Hons) (Rhodes)

S Njeza, BMus (Rhodes), MBA (Rhodes)

Associate Professor Emeritus

J Brukman, DMus (UNISA)

Librarian

I Chirombo, BMus, MMus (Rhodes)

THE BACHELOR OF MUSIC DEGREE (BMus)

The four-year BMus degree is intended for students who wish to pursue music as a profession. To be recognised as a teaching qualification it must be combined with the Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) offered by the Faculty of Education. Students who wish to take more than the minimum number of BMus courses in any one year may do so, subject to the approval of the Dean of Humanities.

Music as a subject in other degree courses (Humanities and Science Faculties)

Music, Culture and History (MCH), Music Theory and Analysis (MTA), Instrumental Music Studies (IMS) or Sound Technology

(STC) may be taken as a three-year major subject for the BA, BSoc Sci and BSc degrees. Normally not more than FIVE music subjects may be taken in the BA or FOUR in a BSc degree (see the relevant Faculty Rules).

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

INSTRUMENTAL MUSIC STUDIES

Instrumental Music Studies (IMS) is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. It comprises two musical genres: Western Art and African Music.

Instrumental Music Studies 1 (IMS 1)

First-year, full-year course

(NQF level 5, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements:

Western Art: Matric music or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/Trinity Grade 5) plus an audition at Rhodes University. Students who lack the literacy skills and knowledge necessary for IMS 1 are required to register for MTA 101 and 102.

African Ensemble: No prior musical experience required.

Course description:

Western Art: This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural training, and a literature paper. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music and Musicology. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

African Ensemble: The year will focus on skills which include learning songs and dances from Southern Africa, the marimba, various drumming styles, the mbira, other African instruments and a written module on the fundamentals of African music.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Instrumental Music Studies 2 (IMS 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements:

Western Art: IMS 1 or equivalent (ABRSM/UNISA/TRINITY Gr 7) plus an audition at Rhodes University.

African Ensemble: IMS 1 plus *co-requisite (for major): MTA 101 and 102*

Course description:

Western Art: This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural training and a literature and pedagogy paper. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music and Musicology. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

African Ensemble: The year refines and builds upon skills learnt in IMS 1 and includes a module on instrument making. Students are encouraged to take MTA 101 and 102 to progress to IMS 3.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%.

Instrumental Music Studies 3 (IMS 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements:

Western Art: IMS 2

African Ensemble: IMS 2 and MTA 101 and 102

Course description:

Western Art: This includes the study of a major instrument, ensemble training, aural training and a literature and pedagogy paper. Syllabi for the various instruments are available from the Department of Music and Musicology. The “instrument” includes voice and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

African Ensemble: The year refines and builds upon skills learnt in IMS 1 and 2.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%.

NB All IMS students are required to take part in at least one ensemble approved by the HoD. Possible ensembles include but are not limited to: Rhodes Chamber Choir, Opera / Vocal Ensemble, Makana Community Orchestra, RUMBand, Jazz Ensemble and African Ensemble for the duration of their course of study. Please note that tuition in and examination of the ensemble component (or second instrument) of Instrumental Music Studies is in addition to these requirements. Attendance of a minimum of 80% of the rehearsal schedule is obligatory.

MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS

Music Theory and Analysis is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science.

Music Theory and Analysis 101 (MTA 101)

First-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: MTA 101 is a one-semester course introducing students to the basic concepts required to attain competence in music literacy.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Music Theory and Analysis 102 (MTA 102)

First-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: MTA 101

Course description: MTA 102 develops the concepts taught in MTA 101, during which students are introduced to elementary harmony. Students who pass the Music Theory entrance test with a mark of 65% or more may register for IMS 1 without registering for MTA 101/102. For those registering for IMS 2 and/or 3 successful completion of MTA 101 and 102 is required.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Music, Theory and Analysis 2 (MTA 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: MTA 102, or the demonstration of significant proficiency in an entrance examination, as determined by the Head of Department. The entrance examination must be written prior to curriculum approval.

Course description: MTA 2 introduces students to four-part harmony and the study of form.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examinations

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Music Theory and Analysis 3 (MTA 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: MTA 2

Course description: Further study of chromatic harmony is undertaken in MTA 3. Form and analysis includes the study of chorales, compositions of the 18th, 19th, and 20th centuries, and works by South African composers in the Western Classical Tradition.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

MUSIC, CULTURE AND HISTORY

Music, Culture and History (MCH) is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. There are two semester modules per year offered in Music Culture and History: Musicology and Ethnomusicology.

Ethnomusicology 101 (MCH 101)

First-year, semesterised course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: An introduction to the study of music's function and origin in various societies.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Musicology 102 (MCH 102)

First-year, semesterised course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: An introduction to the historical study of Western music.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Musicology 201 (MCH 201)

Second-year, semesterised course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: MCH 102

Course description: Covers topics in music history.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Ethnomusicology 202 (MCH 202)

Second-year, semesterised course

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: MCH 101

Course description: Covers field work and ethnography.

DP requirements: 80% attendance.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Music, Culture and History 3

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: MCH 101, 102, 201, and 202 or at the discretion of the course coordinator.

Course description: Music Culture and History 3 includes specialist topics in the contemporary debates around music studies and is presented in an interdisciplinary way that integrates musicology and ethnomusicology.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sound Technology

Sound Technology is a major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Science.

Sound Technology 1 (STC 1S1)

First-year, semesterised course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Course description: Introduction to audio/visual production with the aim of producing podcasts and documentaries.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sound Technology 2 (STC 2)

Second-year, year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: STC 1S1

Course description: Fundamentals of studio recording techniques, utilising both the analogue and digital protocols.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sound Technology 3 (STC 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: Sound Technology 2

Course description: The course builds on the theory introduced in Sound Technology 2 and

provides exposure to additional and more in-depth practical applications. The course also includes additional modules on room acoustics, synthesis and the MIDI protocol.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Note: STC 3 may not be offered every year.

Music Health and the Brain (MHB 1MH)

First-year, semesterised course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Music, Health and the Brain is an interdisciplinary study of some elements of human engagement with music, focusing on musical cognition, emotion, identity and music's therapeutic potential.

DP requirements: 80% attendance

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

MUSIC 4 (MUS 4)

Fourth-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: BMus 3

Course description: This course is completed in the fourth year of study. Students must complete five papers or the equivalent of 120 credits. Subject to student preferences and the availability of staff, the topics for the papers are selected from the list below.

DP requirement: 80% attendance

Supplementary exam: **None.** BMus 4 is assessed by continuous assessment. Students are given the chance to resubmit assessments for modules during the course of the year.

Assessment: A proposal for the Compulsory 1 paper must be passed in the Research Methodology paper to gain entry to examination. Examination marks of papers are aggregated into 100% of the candidate's mark.

Compulsory 1: At least one of the following:

- Paper 1: Extended Research Project (48 credits) or
- Paper 2: Full Recital (48 credits) or

- Paper 3: Full Creative Portfolio (48 credits)
- Paper 4: Sound Technology Portfolio (48 credits)

Compulsory 2:

- Paper 5: Research Methodologies (24 credits)

Options: Remaining credit points are acquired from a variety of 24-credit papers. Options are detailed in the course outline available from the course coordinator.

POSTGRADUATE COURSES**Joint Honours**

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with one music major.

Course description: Must complete BMus 4 Compulsory 1 and a Compulsory 2 paper. Elective papers equivalent in credits to those in the BMus 4 curriculum can be selected from the joining department.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with one music major.

Course description: Must complete BMus 4 Compulsory 1 and a Compulsory 2 paper. Elective papers equivalent in credits to those in the BMus 4 curriculum can be selected from the joining department.

Master's Degree (MMUS)

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: BMus or a completed BA Honours or BSc Honours in Music degree.

Course description: A Master's degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, a portfolio of compositions*, two public recitals* (60%) and mini-thesis (40%), two public recitals (60%) and short composition portfolio (40%).

**Any culture or style may be included.*

- **Thesis**

The research proposal and title of the thesis must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within four months of registration for

the degree.

- **Composition**

The nature and scope of the compositions must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before submission. Candidates must also submit an explanatory commentary on important structural, textural and stylistic aspects of the work submitted, including its contextualisation within contemporary South Africa. A candidate who submits a set of compositions shall be required to submit three copies of the compositions together with suitable recordings.

- **Performance and Mini-Thesis and/or Short Composition Portfolio**

The nature and scope of public recitals (60%) and mini-thesis (40%) and/or Short Composition Portfolio (40%) must receive prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and a departmental subcommittee. The research proposal and title of the mini-thesis must also be approved by the Departmental Postgraduate Research Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

Options available for the recitals are as follows:

- 1) performance in two separate public solo recitals or
- 2) one public solo recital and one full chamber recital or
- 3) one public solo recital, one short chamber recital and one concerto, where the genres are applicable to the culture or style of the chosen instrument.

**Any culture or style may be included.*

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed Master's degree in Music or equivalent.

Course description: A PhD may be awarded by the presentation and successful examination of:

- 1) A thesis
- 2) A set of compositions consisting of at least three substantial original compositions (not less than 70 minutes in duration. The candidate must also submit an explanatory

statement (not less than 25 000 words) referring to important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestration devices used. This document should detail the portfolio's theme or contextualising thread. Recordings of compositions are required.

- 3) Three performances (60 – 70 min duration) and a mini- thesis (50 000 words) (examined as a linked project).

CURRICULUM FOR BMUS DEGREE

FIRST YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 1

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102

Electives:

Music Culture and History 101 and 102

OR

Sound Technology 1S1 and Music, Health and the Brain 1S2

AND

one Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science course.

SECOND YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 2

Music Theory and Analysis 2

Electives:

Music Culture and History 201 and 202

OR

Sound Technology 2

AND

one Bachelor of Arts or Science course

THIRD YEAR

Instrumental Music Studies 3

Electives:

Students choose one of the following courses:

- MCH 3
- MTA 3
- STC 3

FOURTH YEAR

Students must do FIVE papers or the equivalent of 120 credits in accordance with the Music 4 rules. All choices are subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

INTERNATIONAL LIBRARY OF AFRICAN MUSIC

The International Library of African Music (ILAM) is an independent research institute and archive. Internationally recognised as a leading centre for the study of African music, it offers opportunities for undergraduate studies and postgraduate research in Ethnomusicology. ILAM occupies a purpose-built building with an archive, library, sound digitising lab, recording studio, outdoor performance area, and is a prominent resource centre for research in various sub-Saharan African musical traditions.

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

Dean of the Faculty and Head of Pharmacy

Associate Professor SMM Khamanga, BSc
(UNISWA), BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD
(Rhodes)

Deputy Dean and Deputy Head of Pharmacy

PHARMACEUTICS

Professor of Pharmaceutics

RB Walker, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), FPS (SA)

Associate Professor

SMM Khamanga, BSc (UNISWA), BPharm, MSc
(Pharm), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer and Head of Division

S Melamane, BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD
(Rhodes)

Lecturer

GM Purcell, BPharm, MPharm (NMMU)
UM Sibanda, BPharm, MPharm (SMU)

PHARMACEUTICAL CHEMISTRY

Associate Professor and Head of Division

SD Khanye, BSc (Hons) (Wits), MSc (Wits), PhD
(UCT)

Lecturer

AO Egunlusi, BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD
(UWC)

PHARMACY PRACTICE

Senior Lecturer

C Oltmann, BSc (Med) (Hons) (Wits), MSc,
BPharm (Rhodes), PGDHET, PhD (Rhodes),
MPS (SA)

Lecturer and Head of the Division

C Magadza, BPharm (Rhodes), MSc (Pharm)
(Rhodes), MPS (SA)

Lecturer

GZ Ngodwane, BPharm (Rhodes), MPH (UKZN)

Lecturer – Work Based Learning

M Purcell, BPharm, MPharm (NMMU)

Lecturer-Clinical Training

DL van Dyk, B.Soc.Sc (Nursing), H.B.Soc.Sci
(Nursing), PGDip (Nursing Education) (UOFS),
MA (Higher Education Studies) (UFS)

PHARMACOLOGY

Associate Professor and Head of Division

ME Mothibe, NDip Med Tech (TNT), BSc, BSc
(Hons), MSc (Med Pharmacology)(Medunsa),
PhD (SMU)

Senior Lecturer-Pharmacotherapy

L Allan, BPharm, MPharm, PhD (Rhodes), MPS
(SA)

Lecturer

BS Ndzamba, BPharm (SMU), MPharm (SMU),
MPhil (UCT)

Associate Professor, Anatomy & Physiology

N Sibiya, BMed Sci (Hons), MMed Sci, PhD
(UKZN), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Lecturer, Anatomy & Physiology

T Dukhan, BHSc, BHSc Hons, MSc (Med) (Wits)

Instrument Scientist

LS Sethoga, BSc (UL), BSc Honours (UL), MSc
(SMU), PhD (UL)

Visiting Professors

BD Glass, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), BSc (Chem)
(Hons), BTech (Hons) (UPE), MPS (Aus)
SC Srinivas, BPharm, MPharm (Bangalore),
PGDHE (Rhodes), PhD (RGUHS)

Visiting Fellows

A Gray, BPharm, MSc (Pharm) (Rhodes), PhD
(UKZN), FPS, FFIP
S Patnala, BPharm (Bangalore), MPharm
(RGUHS), PhD (Rhodes)
C Veale, BPharm (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)
L Graham, BSc (Psychology), BVM BVS
(Sussex)

Professors Emeriti

H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA),
FRSSAf
I Kanfer, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons), PhD
(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS (SA)
JM Haigh, BSc (Pharm), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes),
PhD (UCT), MRPharmS, MPS (SA)

S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(MED)
(MEDUNSA)

Associate Professor Emeritus

R Dowse, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes), MPS (SA)

Clinical Fellows

S Singh, BPharm, PharmD (Rhodes)

G S Kalyatanda, MBBS (JSS Medical College)

V Henge-Daweti, BPharm, PharmD (Rhodes),

MSc (Med Pharmacy) (UL), MA Welfare Public
Health Management (NMU)

S Moodley, BPharm (NMU), PharmD (Rhodes)

Y Wang, BPharm, PharmD (Rhodes)

N Paterson, BPharm, MSc (Pharm) (Rhodes)

MHealth Econ and Pharmacoecon (UPF)

Professional Associate

K Kasongo, BPharm, MSc (Pharm), PhD
(Rhodes)

The Faculty of Pharmacy aims to accomplish its specific objectives as outlined in its Mission and Vision of the Faculty (see Faculty of Pharmacy entry section of this calendar) in the following manner:

- Provision of formal training in both undergraduate and postgraduate degrees, and
- Undertaking research and involvement in Community and Professional service.

The BPharm degree has been registered as an NQF Level 8 qualification. The following information is a summary of the documentation submitted to the NQF to register the qualification. The BPharm curriculum is accredited by the South African Pharmacy Council.

Purpose of the BPharm degree

The purpose of the professionally-oriented Bachelor of Pharmacy degree is to provide science-based education and training to equip pharmacists with the necessary knowledge, specific skills and relevant competencies to render a comprehensive pharmaceutical service relevant to time and environment. This is achieved through a sound foundation in basic cognate sciences on which applied pharmaceutical sciences are progressively built.

Knowledge and skill acquisition will progress to attributes that will culminate in the development of competencies required of an entry-level pharmacist. This prepares graduates to assume diverse responsibilities as informed, caring and ethical pharmacists in the dynamic South African healthcare environment and remain relevant to the profession as practised globally.

Graduates are prepared to serve in an inter-professional environment displaying professional conduct responsive to the socio-economic environment that influences the practice of pharmacy through engaged scholarship, advocacy and effective communication.

Graduates are equipped with the ability to keep pace throughout their careers with developments in pharmacy and therapeutics by being efficient self-directed learners engaged in continuing professional development.

The degree prepares graduates for a multidisciplinary role and function of the pharmacist, as well as for diverse career opportunities. It further provides the level of education to create, transmit and apply knowledge based on evidence, continue with postgraduate studies and/or specialise in pharmaceutical health sciences.

Completion of the degree provides the minimum requirement to prepare for registration as a pharmacist following successful completion of the internship and community service.

Assessment

Assessment will take place using tests, assignments, practicals, presentations, written and/or oral examinations and any other relevant forms of assessment. Continuous assessment is emphasised, especially during the first two years of study.

Quality Assurance

The Quality Assurance system for this qualification relies on:

- External examiners
- Internal moderation

- Monitoring and accreditation by the South African Pharmacy Council
- South African Qualifications Authority
- Internal reviews by the University in terms of its quality assurance criteria
- Higher Education Quality Committee

Articulation

The possession of a BPharm degree permits both vertical and horizontal articulation. Graduates may gain access to postgraduate studies at the Masters and/or PhD levels.

Candidates may receive exemption for some first-year courses obtained at other tertiary level learning institutions.

COURSES FOR THE BACHELOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE

Chemistry 1: Chemistry 101 (CHE 101) is offered in the first semester and Chemistry 102 (CHE 102) in the second semester. Both courses are taught by the Chemistry Department. CHE 101 includes learning about chemical symbols and numeracy, nuclear chemistry, atomic structure and bonding, chemical and physical equilibrium, introduction to organic chemistry. CHE 102 includes learning about properties of inorganic systems, chemistry and the environment, organic functional group chemistry, biological building blocks, reaction rates, chemical thermodynamics and electrochemistry.

Cell Biology (CEL101): is offered in the first semester. The course is taught by the Botany and Zoology Departments. This course compares cell structure in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells and examines cellular processes including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis and cell respiration. Cell division and fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes are also included.

Mathematics for Life Sciences (MAT 1S): A study of mathematical concepts and applications relevant for the study and practice of Pharmacy.

The course is taught by the Mathematics Department.

Introduction to ICT (Information and Communication Technology) (CSC 1L1):

Fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues, and the logic of problem solving. The course is taught by the Computer Science Department.

Pharmacy Anatomy and Physiology 1: A study of the functional anatomy and physiology of humans.

Pharmaceutical Biochemistry 1: A study of the important molecules found in living organisms.

Foundations of Pharmacy: An introductory course in Pharmacy, where learners will be introduced to the fundamentals of Pharmacy Practice, Pharmaceutics, Law and Ethics.

Anatomy, Physiology, Pathophysiology and Pathology:

A study of the functional anatomy and physiology of humans and of diseases and pathological conditions in different body systems, how diseases develop, their characteristics, features of common diseases and conditions as they occur in humans and the effects of diseases on human functioning.

Biochemistry, Microbiology and Immunology:

A study of the important molecules found in living organisms and of the role of Pharmaceutical Microbiologists and the application of microbiology in the practice of pharmacy, the health and economic implications of microbial contamination of pharmaceutical and hospital environments, the basic characteristics, pathogenesis, diagnosis, disease, epidemiology, prevention and treatment of microorganisms found in pharmaceutical and hospital environments, water and sewage systems.

Pharmaceutics: A two-and-a-half -year course covering basic pharmaceutical principles and their

application to the formulation, production and assessment of medicinal products, microbiology and sterility.

Pharmaceutical Chemistry: A two-year course covering the study of the purity and chemical properties of various materials and formulations used in the practice of pharmacy.

Pharmacy Practice: A two-and-a-half-year course, which examines Pharmaceutical Care and the role of the pharmacist; various aspects of management including performance management, organisational management, managing pharmaceutical supply; understanding and influencing behaviour; Primary Health Care; Ethics; legal and psychosocial principles and their application in providing safe and effective medicine use by pharmacists and patients.

Pharmacology: A one-and-a-half-year course of the interaction between medicaments and the human body, disease states and medicinal therapy used to relieve these conditions, the toxic effects of household agents, medicines and street drugs.

Statistics for Pharmacy: A one semester course offered by the Statistics Department, in the third year. A study of statistics that is used in pharmaceutical and biomedical research, so as to use and understand different statistical methods used in research.

Pharmacotherapy: An integrated study of the relevant pathophysiology of diseases and conditions, how mechanisms of action of medicines are used to treat these diseases and/or disorders to counteract their pathophysiological origins, synthesising and integrating information to make informed and rational pharmacotherapeutic decisions justifying the selection of appropriate dosage forms.

Research Methodologies: A year-long course offered in the final year covering fundamental aspects relating to the conduct of research. Students are expected to complete a research project.

Electives: These include electives offered in the Faculty of Pharmacy, or candidates may select one elective course offered in other Faculties provided they are relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the timetable for that academic year.

ELECTIVES

All final-year BPharm candidates must take two elective courses offered within the Faculty of Pharmacy. In certain circumstances, e.g. when a student is not reading all subjects in a particular year, the Dean may allow a student, not in 4th year, to take a one semester course in another Faculty that is relevant to Pharmacy and can be accommodated in the BPharm timetable.

The elective courses offered by the Faculty of Pharmacy entail study at an advanced level of aspects of the BPharm curriculum and will depend on staff availability and interest.

Individuals could also do a year-long research project on an approved topic in any pharmaceutical field in lieu of two electives.

SAPC REGISTRATION

Pharmacy students are required to register with the SAPC in their first year of study. Registration requires the payment of a registration fee and annual fees in order to remain registered whilst completing the BPharm degree.

In addition, students are reminded that as professionals, registered with the SAPC, professional indemnity insurance is required.

Students must have completed a Level 3 First Aid course before they commence their internship.

WORK BASED LEARNING (WBL)

As part of the BPharm curriculum students must complete a minimum of 400 hours of work-based learning (WBL). This allows pharmacy students practical experience and work integrated learning opportunities within the work environment.

The outcomes of the WBL programme include:

- Exposure to the workplace in order to create awareness of the realities of the workplace,
- To reinforce and integrate theoretical concepts,
- To consolidate knowledge,
- To develop desired attitudes, and
- To develop the ability to apply knowledge and skills appropriately.

MASTER'S DEGREES

Students who have completed the BPharm degree at a sufficiently high academic standard may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science (Pharmacy) or Master of Pharmacy.

Students who have completed a bachelor's degree and at least an Honours (or equivalent) degree in another Faculty and have attained in their degree a

standard suitable for continuation to a Master's degree in that Faculty, and who have an interest in the application of elements of other subjects to pharmaceutical disciplines, may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science.

The Master of Science degree is taken by thesis. The Master of Pharmacy degree is taken either by thesis, or a combination of coursework and thesis. Registration for the Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy degree will depend on the field of study of the candidate.

Registration with the South African Pharmacy Council may be a pre-requisite for registration for the Master of Pharmacy programme.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Regulations.

PHILOSOPHY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

WE Jones, BA (Berkeley), BPhil, DPhil (Oxon)

Professor and Director of the Allan Gray Centre for Leadership Ethics

P Tabensky, Lic(PUCC), BA(ANU), PhD (Murdoch)

Associate Professor

T Martin, BSc, BSc (Hons), BA, BA (Hons) (Adelaide), PhD (UNSW), PGDHE (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

L Kelland, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Rhodes)

LJ Bloom, BA, PhD (UGA)

Lecturers

T Dewhurst BA, MA (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

M Maponya, BSocSci, BSocSci (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

L Gama, BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (UP)

N Lembethe BA (UJ), BA Hons, MA (UKZN), PhD (Wits)

S Ndwandwe, BA, BA (Hons) (Unizulu), MA (Fort Hare), MA (London)

Philosophy is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degrees in the Faculty of Humanities. Philosophy 1 and Philosophy 2 but not Philosophy 3 are semesterised. Philosophy courses are also allowed as credits for degrees in the Faculties of Commerce, Law and Science. Check with the relevant faculty for their rules on this.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Philosophy 101 (PHI 101)

First-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: The course introduces students to philosophical ideas, issues and methods drawing on topics in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics from a range of philosophical traditions. PHI 101 typically focuses on issues in Epistemology and Metaphysics.

DP requirements: At least 40% for coursework.

Assessment: Coursework 60%; June summative assessment 40%.

Supplementary summative assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Philosophy 102 (PHI 102)

First-year, second semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: The course introduces students to philosophical ideas, issues and methods not dealt with in PHI 101, with the focus typically being on issues in Ethics.

DP requirements: At least 40% for coursework. Assessment: Coursework 60%; November summative assessment 40%.

Supplementary summative assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Philosophy 201 (PHI 201)

Second-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirements: any of the following configurations — PHI 101 AND PHI 102; PHI 101 (OR PHI 102) AND IiNtetho zoBomi 101 (OR IiNtetho zoBomi 102); a 70% pass in IiNtetho zoBomi 101 AND IiNtetho zoBomi 102.

Course description: The course deepens the examination of historical and contemporary debates in Moral Philosophy, metaphysics, epistemology and might include specialised topics in Philosophy of Mind, or Religion, or Ancient Philosophy.

DP requirements: At least 40% for coursework.

Assessment: Coursework 60%; June summative assessment 40%.

Supplementary summative assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Philosophy 202 (PHI 202)

Second-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirements: any of the following configurations —; PHI 101 AND PHI 102; PHI 101 (OR PHI 102) AND IiNtetho zoBomi 101 (OR IiNtetho zoBomi 102); a 70% pass in IiNtetho zoBomi 101 AND IiNtetho zoBomi 102. Course description: The course continues the examination of historical and contemporary debates in metaphysics, epistemology and ethics of PHI 201.

DP requirements: At least 40% for coursework.

Assessment: Coursework 60%; November summative assessment 40%.

Supplementary summative assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Philosophy 3 (PHI 3)

Third-year, full-year course
(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: PHI 201 and PHI 202

Course description: The course covers an advanced examination of some particular historical and contemporary debates. PHI 3 consists of four Papers.

DP requirements: At least 40% for coursework.

Assessment: Continuous 50%; Summative 50%

Supplementary summative assessment: Final mark 40 – 49%

IiNtetho zoBomi

IiNtetho zoBomi: Conversations About Ethics, Meaning and Community IiNtetho zoBomi consists of IiNtetho zoBomi 101 and IiNtetho zoBomi 102. It can be taken either as a one-year course, starting in the first or second semester of any given year, or as a semester course (either in the first or the second semester of any given year). It is an offering of the Allan Gray Centre for Leadership Ethics (AGCLE), which is part of the Department of Philosophy, and complements but is not a replacement for courses offered as part of the philosophy major. A 70% pass in IiNtetho zoBomi101 and IiNtetho zoBomi 102 may be used for entrance to PHI 2.

IiNtetho zoBomi 101

First-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: IiNtetho zoBomi 101 explores the relationship between personal freedom, ethics, and education. It introduces students to some pressing philosophical questions and obstacles to personal freedom.

Assessment: Coursework 100%

DP requirement: 80% attendance at conversations and lectures (absence beyond 80% for either conversations or lectures must be justified with an LOA), 100% attendance at service-learning (a valid LOA must be provided for missing any service-learning activities), and submission of both draft and final journals. We are very strict about service-learning participation, for inconsistency on the part of students can negatively affect learners in underprivileged schools.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Students with a final result between 40% and 49% are allowed to rework and resubmit their final reflective journal—the culmination of a continuous assessment process—to improve their final result. Students who receive a DNW may appeal to the Dean for permission to write the outstanding work. **Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

IiNtetho zoBomi 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance Requirements: None

Course description: IiNtetho zoBomi 102 focuses on social, phenomenological, and epistemological questions relating to ethics and personal freedom as well as how structural forces present obstacles to effective, ethical agency.

Assessment: Coursework 100%

DP requirement: 80% attendance at conversations and lectures (absence beyond 80% for either conversations or lectures must be justified with an LOA), 100% attendance at service learning (a valid LOA must be provided for missing any service-learning activities), and submission of both draft and final journals.

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Students with a final result between 40% and 49% are allowed to rework and resubmit their final reflective journal—the culmination of a continuous assessment process—to improve their final result. Students who receive a DNW may appeal to the Dean for permission to write the outstanding work. **Sub-minimum for aggregation:** 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES**Philosophy Honours**

Full-year course
(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance Requirements: 60% in PHI 3

Course Description: Honours students normally take four Papers, chosen from a range of topics, and in addition submit an independent research essay. With the permission of the Head of the Department, an Honours student may substitute a research essay written during the year for one of the Papers. The length of the research essay and the date on which it is to be submitted are laid down in the Faculty of Humanities rules.

DP requirements: At least 40% for coursework.

Assessment: continuous and/or summative assessment as per requirements of individual lecturers.

Supplementary summative assessment: Paper result 40 – 49%

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Candidates may take the Master's degree in Philosophy either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department.

Candidates for the degree by examination are normally required to write a number of examinations on topics within their main field of interest, to submit an independent research essay in their first year, and to submit a short dissertation by the end of their second year.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Candidates for this degree are required to complete a research dissertation.

PHYSICS AND ELECTRONICS

Professor and Head of Department

ML Chithambo, BSc (Malawi), MPhil (Sussex),
PhD (Edinburgh)

Professor & SARChI SKA Chair in Radio

Astronomy Techniques and Technologies

O M Smirnov, PhD (Russian. Acad. Sci.)

Associate Professors

DG Roux, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (UCT)

AJM Medved, BSc, MSc, PhD (Manitoba)

S Nsengiyumva, BSc (Rwanda), MSc (Stell), PhD (UCT)

JA Williams, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

Senior Lecturer

SO Kuja, BEd (Moi), MSc (Eldoret), MEng PhD (Stell)

Lecturers

AJ Sullivan, MSc (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

JL Jonas, PhD (Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

RS Booth, PhD (Manchester)

FB Abdalla, DPhil, MPhys (Oxon)

G Bernardi, PhD (Bologna)

A Karastergiou, PhD (Max-Planck)

A Kemball, PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associates

JB Habarulema, PhD (Rhodes)

ZT Katamzi, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Bath)

I Theron, PhD (Stell)

C Tasse, PhD (Paris)

SK Sirothia, PhD (Tata Inst.)

GIG Jozsa, PhD (Bonn)

Senior Research Associate

I Heywood, PhD (Manchester)

J Noordam, D-Ing (TUD)

Physics with Electronics (PHY) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Physics with Electronics a candidate is required to obtain the following courses: PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAM 1 (or its equivalent), and MAM 2 (or its equivalent).

Up to two, or in some cases four, Physics with Electronics semester-courses may be allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Pharmacy.

Besides the major course, the department offers two terminal semester courses in Physics and Electronics, namely PHY 1S1 (formerly PHY1E1) (*Physics for Science*) and PHY 1E2 (*Electronics Literacy*).

Physics 1S1 is a service course designed to meet the needs of students in the Department of Human Kinetics and Ergonomics but is also well suited to students majoring in the biological sciences. Any student accepted into the university may register for PHY 1E2, which affords students in a wide range of disciplines an opportunity to gain an understanding of basic electronics and modern electronic devices such as computers. Aggregating Physics 1S1 and Physics 1E2 is not permitted.

One of PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1S1 and PHY 1E2 are highly recommended choices of prerequisites for students who wish to major in Chemistry. (Refer to the Department of Chemistry Calendar entry.)

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/physics/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN PHYSICS WITH ELECTRONICS

There are two first-year courses in Physics with Electronics for candidates planning to major in physical, computational, mathematical or earth science subjects. PHY 101 is held in the first semester and PHY 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course PHY 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified

by the Department. Class tests and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course. Candidates wishing to register for PHY 101 must have obtained a level 5 pass in Mathematics and a level 5 pass in Physical Science in the National Senior Certificate examination, or the equivalent thereof.

Adequate performance in PHY 101 is required before a student may register for PHY 102. Alternatively, candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1S1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2.

PHY 101

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 in NSC Mathematics or equivalent

Course description: Theory component: Introduction to Mechanics, Rotations. Experimental component: Measurement and data analysis.

DP requirements: Class record of 40%

Assessment: Class record 45%, Examinations 55%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% to aggregate with PHY 102

PHY 102

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% PHY 101 or 70% PHY 1S1

Course description: Theory component: Waves, Fields, Modern Physics and Kinetic Theory. Experimental component: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics.

DP requirements:

Assessment: Class record 45%, Examinations 55%, Supplementary exam: 45%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% to aggregate with PHY 101

The Department offers two other first-level courses in Physics and Electronics. PHY 1S1 is held in the

first semester and PHY 1E2 in the second semester. Aggregating PHY 1S1 and PHY 1E2 is not permitted. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course. Entry into PHY 1E2 does not require that a student have attended or passed PHY 1S1. The course is open to all university students. All three of the courses PHY 101, PHY 102 and PHY 1E2 may be obtained.

PHY 1S1 (FORMERLY PHY1E1): Physics for Science for non-Physics Majors

First-year, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 pass in NSC Mathematics or equivalent

Course description: Theory component: Mechanics; thermal physics; vibrations and waves; Applications to the life sciences are emphasised. Experimental component: Measurement practice and data analysis.

DP requirements: Class record of 40%

Assessment: Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: None

PHY 1E2: Electronics Literacy

First-year, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: Level 4 rating for Mathematics on the NSC

Course description: Theory component: Basic electricity and electronics necessary to connect up and commission modern, popular commercial instrumentation, in particular microprocessor-based devices. Experimental component: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics; elementary interfacing and communication between computers and peripheral devices.

DP requirements: Class record of 40%

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: None

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN PHYSICS WITH ELECTRONICS

There are two second-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 201 is held in the first semester and PHY 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course PHY 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Physics with Electronics 1 (PHY 1) and Mathematics 1 (MAM 1) are normally required before a student may register for PHY 201 or PHY 202. Students are strongly encouraged to register for MAM2 and PHY 2 concurrently

PHY 201

Second-year, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: PHY 1, PHY102, MAM 1

Course description: Theory component: AC Theory, Vibrations, Waves and Optics, Properties of Matter. Experimental component: AC circuits; analogue and digital electronics.

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% to aggregate with PHY 202

PHY 202

Second-year, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% PHY 201

Course description: Theory component: Electrostatics, Classical Mechanics, Special Relativity, and Quantum Mechanics I. Experimental component: Physics laboratory techniques.

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% to aggregate with PHY 201

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN PHYSICS WITH ELECTRONICS

There are two third-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 301 is held in the first semester and PHY 302 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a year-course PHY 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Physics with Electronics 2 (PHY 2) and Mathematics 2 (MAM 2 with the modules in Advanced Calculus and Linear Algebra) are normally required before a student may register for PHY 301 or PHY 302. Adequate performance in PHY 301 is required before a candidate may register for PHY 302.

PHY 301

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: PHY 2, MAM 2

Course description: Theory component: Electromagnetism, Quantum Mechanics II, Thermodynamics, Signals and Systems. Experimental component: Analogue electronics; Advanced digital electronics.

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Class record 33%, Theory examinations 67%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for June: 40% to aggregate with PHY 302

PHY 302

Third-year, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: 40% PHY 301, MAM 2

Course description: Theory component: Solid State Physics, Nuclear Physics, Statistical Physics. Experimental component: Physics laboratory techniques.

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Class record 33%, Examinations 67%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum for November: 40% to aggregate with PHY 301

HONOURS COURSES

Candidates may choose to read for Honours degrees in Physics, Electronics, Telecommunications, Joint Physics and Electronics or in approved combinations with subjects offered by other departments. A BSc with a major in Physics with Electronics, and second year mathematics (MAT 2 or MAM 2) or MAP 2 is the normal entrance requirement for these courses.

Practical work, essays, tests and a project done during the year form part of the final mark, and a full course typically includes an approved selection of seven topics from those listed below, depending on the availability of lecturing staff.

Honours in Physics

Year-long courses (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: Classical Mechanics; Computer Interfacing I; Computational Physics; Electrodynamics; General Relativity; Nuclear Physics; Optics; Quantum Physics; Radio Astronomy; Particle Physics; Space Science; Solid State Physics; Statistical Mechanics, Signal Processing. Appropriate topics from the list of the Electronics Honours course may be chosen.

Honours in Electronics

Year-long courses (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: Computer Interfacing 1; Computer Interfacing 2; Computational Physics; Control Theory; Electronic Design; FPGA, Optics; Signal Processing. Appropriate topics from the list of the Physics Honours course may be chosen.

Joint Honours in Physics and Electronics, and other combinations

Year-long courses (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Course description: For Joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the lists given for the Physics and Electronics Honours courses, so that the final proportion in each is between 40% and 60%. Similarly, Physics or Electronics may be combined with another approved Honours course (e.g. in Computer Science, Geology, Chemistry, Mathematics) to form a joint Honours course. A candidate may substitute approved topics from other Honours courses in the Faculty of Science for topics in any of the Honours courses in this Department.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc (NQF level 9, 180 credits) and PhD (NQF level 10, 360 credits) under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

The Master's degree may be taken in Physics, or Electronics, and will be examined by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects. Current areas of specialisation include experimental solid-state physics, nuclear physics, radio astronomy, upper atmosphere physics, physics education and theoretical physics. The current areas of specialisation in Electronics are transducers, instrumentation and digital signal processing.

A PhD degree may be taken by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects, and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Current areas of specialisation are as for the MSc degree.

POLITICAL AND INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

Associate Professor and Head of Department

E Jordaan, BA, MA, PhD (Stell)

Professor

L Vincent, BA, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M Phil, DPhil (Oxon)

Associate Professors

M Majavu, BA, BA (Hons), MA (UCT), PhD (Auckland)

S Magadla, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (Ohio), PhD (Rhodes)

S Matthews, BA, MA (UP), PhD (Birmingham)

Senior Lecturer

C Nedziwe, BA, BA (Hons) (Don-State Technical University), MA (Queensland), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer

T Tselapedi, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (UP)

Professor Emeritus

P-H Bischoff, BA (Wits), MA (Lancaster), PhD (Manchester)

Nelson Mandela Visiting Professor

R Abrahamsen, MA (Volda), BSc.Econ (Honours) (Swansea), PhD (Swansea)

Honorary Professors

A Acharya, BA (Ravenshaw), MA (Jawaharlal Nehru), PhD (Murdoch)

A Ashforth, BA (Western Australia), MA, PhD (Oxon)

S Grovogui, BA (Law) (Conakry), MA, PhD (Wisconsin-Madison)

N Nzegwu, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Ifé), PhD (Ottawa)

Senior Research Associates

I Souaré, PhD (Québec)

A Salem, PhD (Illinois at Urbana-Champaign)

Research Associates

F Diaz, MA (ISS)

R Chipaike, PhD (Rhodes)

Political and International Studies is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Courses offered in the Department are studied from a global, regional and local perspective with particular attention paid to the South African and African contexts.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Political and International Studies 101 (POL 101)

First-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This course introduces students to the basic components of the discipline of Political and International Studies.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials per year without a valid Leave of Absence (LOA).

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Political and International Studies 102 (POL 102)

First-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None. Students who receive a DPR for POL101 may not enter POL102 in the same year they receive the DPR for POL101.

Course description: This course builds on Political and International Studies 101 in order to introduce students to the basic components of the discipline of Political and International Studies.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials per year without a Leave of Absence (LOA).

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Political and International Studies 2 (POL 2)

Second-year, full-year course
(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: Political and International Studies 101 and Political and International Studies 102.

Course description: This course consists of a selection of courses in Political Theory, Comparative Politics, Political Studies, Political Philosophy and/ or International Relations.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials per year without a Leave of Absence (LOA).

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

Political and International Studies 3 (POL 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirements: Political and International Studies 2

Course description: This course consists of a selection of courses in Political Theory, Comparative Politics, Political Studies, Political Philosophy and/or International Relations.

DP requirements: Attendance of tutorials, submission of course work. Students may not miss more than two tutorials without a Leave of Absence (LOA) per year.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 - 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Diploma in International Studies (PDIS)

(Not currently offered)

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in any field with a good pass.

Course description: The Diploma consists of five courses in the field of International Studies with a focus on Africa. To be awarded the Diploma students must pass at least four out of the five courses taken and achieve an overall aggregated pass of at least 50%.

Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: An undergraduate degree in Political and International Studies with a good second-class pass. Students with a good second-class pass degree in a cognate discipline may also be considered for admission.

Course description: The Honours degree consists of either five courses or four courses and a research essay of 10 000 words. The latter option may be exercised only on recommendation of the Head of Department. Students may choose from a range of postgraduate courses offered in the Department and, with the permission of the Head of Department, may also take one course from another discipline. The courses on offer vary from year to year. Prospective students should inquire as to which courses are on offer in the year that they will be registered. To be awarded the degree students must pass at least four out of the five courses taken and achieve an overall aggregated pass of at least 50%.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree with at least a good second class pass in Political and International Studies or, with the approval of the Head of Department, in a cognate discipline. Students with a mark of 70% or above for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies may also be considered for admission.

Course description: Students may register for either a combined coursework and thesis Master's degree or a Master's degree by thesis only, as recommended by the Head of Department. The Master's by coursework and thesis consists of three approved postgraduate courses and a thesis of 15 000 to 25 000 words. The required thesis length for the Master's by thesis only is 30 000 to 50 000 words. Master's students are required to have a thesis proposal passed by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by the 30th of November in the year in which the degree is begun. Those who do not succeed in doing so may not be permitted to continue with the Master's degree. Thesis proposals must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide and must be submitted to the Higher Degrees Committee with the approval of the supervisor and Head of Department. To be awarded the degree, coursework Master's students need to pass all three courses as well as the thesis. They may not repeat courses already passed at Honours level.

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: A Master's degree with at least a good second class pass in Political and International Studies or, with the approval of the Head of Department, in a cognate discipline. Admission is also subject to the availability of suitable supervision expertise in the chosen field of study of any prospective student.

Course description: The PhD consists of a dissertation which must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide. Doctoral students are required to have a thesis proposal passed by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by the 30th of November of the year in which the degree is begun. Those who do not succeed in doing so may not be permitted to continue with the Doctorate.

PSYCHOLOGY

Lecturer and Head of Department

ES Fouten, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology) (UWC), PhD (Rhodes)

Distinguished Professor and SARCHI Chair

CI Macleod, BSc (Natal), HDE, BSoc Sci (Hons), MEd (Psychology) (UCT), PhD (Natal)

Associate Professors

M Campbell, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Counselling Psychology), PhD (Rhodes)

L Jacobs, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology) (UWC), PhD (Stell)

T Feltham-King, BA (UNISA), BA (Hons), MA, PGDHE (Fort Hare), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

DD Booysen, BPsych, MA (Psych) (NMMU), MA (Clinical Psychology), PhD (Stell)

A Fourie, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Clinical Psychology) (UPE), PgDip (Applied Ethics) (Stell), IAAP(SAAJA)

J Knoetze, BA, HDE (Stell), BA (Hons), (UPE), MEd (Psychology) (Stell)

G Steele, BA (UPE), BA (Hons), PGDHE, MA (Research Psychology) (Rhodes), PhD (UNISA)

CD Diale-Makgetla, Bcom, Bcom (Hons) (UNISA), Mcom (Industrial Psychology) (UP), PhD (UNISA)

S Zondo, BA (Wits), BSoc Sci (Hons), MA (Neuropsychology) (UCT), PhD (Wits)

Lecturers

S Bazana, BAdmin (HRM), BCom (Hons),

MCom (Industrial Psychology) (Fort Hare)

W Bohmke, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Research Psychology) (Rhodes)

C Gqibitole, BSoc Sci, BSoc Sci (Hons) BSoc Sci MA Counselling Psychology (Fort Hare)

S Nabo-Bazana BSoc Sci, BSoc Sci (Hons), MSoc Sci (Research Psychology), Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education and Training, (FORT HARE), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Rhodes)

K Ramosala BA, BSoc Sci (Hons), MA (Counselling Psychology) (UP)

N Zwane, BAdmin, BA (Hons), BCom (Hons), MCom (Industrial Psychology) (UNISA)

BSoc SciBSoc Sci

Professors Emeriti

J Akhurst, NTSD (Natal), BA, BA (Hons) (UNISA), MA (Counselling Psychology) (Natal), PhD (Psychotherapy) (Rhodes),

CPsychol, AFBPsS, SFHEA

AB Edwards, BA (Rhodes), MSc (UCT), PhD (Rhodes)

DJA Edwards, MA (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes), CPsychol

LA Wilbraham, BA, BSoc Sci (Hons), MA (Research Psychology), PhD (UCT)

Research Associates

J Blaine, PhD (Rhodes)

D Botha, UNISAMSc Sci (Counselling Psychology) (South Australia), DCom (UPE)

MT Chiweshe, PhD (Rhodes)

AJ Collins, PhD (California, Santa Cruz)

N Donaldson, MSocSc (Rhodes)

C Groenewald, PhD (UKZN)

I Lynch, PhD (UP)

J Marx, PhD (Rhodes)

A Maritz, PhD (Rhodes)

T Meehan, PhD (Psychology), DCLinPsych (Trinity College, Dublin)

D Moodley, PhD (Rhodes)

T Morison, PhD (Rhodes)

M Toerien, PhD (York)

C Towriss, PhD (LSHTM)

S Truter, PhD (RAU)

N Wannenburg, PhD (Rhodes)

V Whitefield-Alexander, PhD (Rhodes)

Clinical Associates

S M Hawkridge, FCPsych(SA)

L Qangule PhD (Rhodes)

PC Sakasa, MA (Clinical Psychology) (Rhodes)

A three-year major in Psychology or a two-year major in Organisational Psychology may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science.

All undergraduate courses in Psychology and Organisational Psychology are semester courses; for all three undergraduate levels, the first semester should normally be taken before the second semester course. Psychology 101 and 102

are common first-year credit for students majoring in Psychology or Organisational Psychology. In the second-year students elect to continue either to Psychology 201 and 202 or Organisational Psychology 201 and 202. A major in Psychology (Psychology 301 and 302) is recommended for students planning to enter a career in psychological and/or social research, or in the helping professions with an emphasis on counselling or clinical work. It is also recommended for students wanting to work in a range of settings that require interactions with individuals and groups. A major in Organisational Psychology (Organisational Psychology 301 and 302) is a good preparation for work in human resources, management or organisational development. Students who wish to switch from Psychology to Organisational Psychology or vice versa require permission from the Head of Department. This will not be automatic and in cases where permission is given assignments may be set to enable students to cover the work they have missed. Currently, it is not permitted to major in Psychology *and* Organisational Psychology.

The Critical Studies in Sexualities and Reproductions Research Programme (CSSR) is a unit within the Psychology Department that conducts multidisciplinary research. Masters and doctoral supervision is open to postgraduate students located in psychology or other humanities departments who have a background in any of the relevant social sciences.

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Psychology 101 (PSY 101)

First-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None.

Course description: This is a first-semester course, in which the following three modules are usually taught: Developmental Psychology, Biological Psychology, and Mental Health and Wellbeing.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- You don't attend lectures and tutorials,
- If you miss a class test,
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50%

Examination

Supplementary exam: Overall mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

June exam subminimum: 40%

Psychology 102 (PSY 102)

First-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This is the second semester course, in which the following three modules are usually taught: Personality Psychology, Cognitive Psychology, and Organisational Psychology.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- You don't attend lectures and tutorials,
- If you miss a class test,
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50%

Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

November exam subminimum: 40%

Psychology 201 (PSY 201)

Second-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102

Course description: This is a first-semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Performance Psychology and Social Psychology.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

June exam subminimum: 40%

Psychology 202 (PSY 202)

Second-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Developmental Psychology, and Mental Health and Distress.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

November exam subminimum: 40%

Organisational Psychology 201 (ORG 201)

Second-year, first-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Organisational Behaviour, and Health and Wellbeing.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

June exam subminimum: 40%

Organisational Psychology 202 (ORG 202)

Second-year, second-semester course
(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: PSY 101 and 102

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following two modules are usually taught: Workplace Relations and HR Psychology.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 50% Coursework; 50% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

November exam subminimum: 40%

Psychology 301 (PSY 301)

Third-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: PSY 201 and PSY 202

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Psychological Assessment, Psychological Interventions and Community Interventions.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

June exam subminimum: 40%

Psychology 302 (PSY 302)

Third-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: PSY 201 and 202

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Quantitative Research Methods, Qualitative Research Methods and Critical Health Psychology.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

November exam subminimum: 40%

Organisational Psychology 301 (ORG 301)

Third-year, first-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: ORG 201 and 202

Course description: This is a first semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Career Psychology and Psychological Assessment.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals
- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

June exam subminimum: 40%

Organisational Psychology 302 (ORG 302)

Third-year, second-semester course

(NQF level 7, 30 credits)

Entrance requirements: ORG 201 and 202

Course description: This is a second semester course, in which the following modules are usually taught: Research in Organisations and Organisational Effectiveness.

DP requirements: A student will lose their DP under the following circumstances:

- It is expected that all students attend lectures
- If you miss class tests or fail to hand in written assignments
- Failure to attend all practicals

- Failure to hand in practical reports
- If you are found guilty of committing plagiarism that carries the penalty of DP withdrawal.

Assessment: 60% Coursework; 40% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark of 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

November exam subminimum: 40%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Psychology Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject. Normally 67% of places are reserved for applicants who completed their third year in Psychology at Rhodes University. See the Psychology Honours selection policy for more details.

Course description: The full-year course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Clinical, Counselling, Psychometry, and Research Psychology. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good result in their final year of undergraduate study. Students write one compulsory paper (Research methodology – quantitative and qualitative) of 30 credits and three elective papers (3 x 20 credits) and complete a research project (30 credits). Electives usually cover a variety of topics in Psychology that may change from year to year, depending on staff availability.

DP requirements: Record of attendance, Submission of work, and academic performance: a minimum of 40% for each assignment, submission of all academic work by the stipulated due date(s)

Research Component: The research proposal is incomplete/not up to the required standard, or not submitted for assessment by the required deadline; failure to attend the whole Postgraduate Conference; failure to present at the whole. No evidence of Plagiarism in any work submitted, failure to complete and submit the final draft of the research component by the required deadline.

Assessment: One written examination for each paper. Examinations are written in June and November.

Organisational Psychology Honours Degree

Full-year course

(NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Organisational Psychology as a major subject. Normally 67% of places are reserved for applicants who completed their third year in Organisational Psychology at Rhodes University. See the Organisational Psychology Honours selection policy for more details.

Course description: The full-year course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Organisational Psychology or research. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good result in their final year of undergraduate study. Students write one compulsory paper (Research methodology – quantitative and qualitative) of 30 credits and four electives (4 x 15 credits), and complete a research project (30 credits). Electives usually cover a variety of topics in Organisational Psychology that may change from year to year, depending on staff availability.

DP requirements: Record of attendance, Submission of work, and academic performance: a minimum of 40% for each assignment, submission of all academic work by the stipulated due date(s)

Research Component: The research proposal is incomplete/not up to the required standard, or not submitted for assessment by the required deadline; failure to attend the whole Postgraduate Conference; failure to present at the whole. No evidence of Plagiarism in any work submitted, or failure to complete and submit the final draft of the research component by the required deadline.

Assessment: One written examination for each paper. Examinations are written in June and November.

Master's Degree in Clinical Psychology

Two-year course

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

The first year is a coursework year and the second year is the internship)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject and an Honours degree in Psychology. Further details of the selection criteria and the process are available online.

Course description: The Master of Arts in Clinical Psychology is a professional training course that provides the foundations leading to graduates being able to apply for registration as a Clinical Psychologist with the Professional Board for Psychology of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA). The Master's course consists of academic and practical training, and may only be taken on a full-time basis following careful selection processes. Modules in psychopathology, assessment and psychotherapy for adults and children/young people are offered with an emphasis on evidence-based practice, as well as modules that cover contextual, professional and ethical issues relevant to the practice and profession of Clinical Psychology (including public mental health interventions). Students work in a range of settings with adults, young people and children. Practical training includes supervised work with cases within individual, group and community contexts. Students must complete a research half-thesis on a topic relevant to the practice of Clinical Psychology. In terms of an HPCSA directive, Fort England Hospital is the linked internship site of the Master's course, and all students who successfully complete year 1 are required to take up an internship position at Fort England Hospital. Fort England Hospital is an accredited internship site and is a requirement for registration as a Clinical Psychologist.

The coursework, thesis and internship together constitute the academic requirements for the award of the degree. All coursework must be completed before the commencement of the internship. An HPCSA requirement for registration as a Clinical Psychologist in

Independent Practice is the completion of a national board examination.

Clinical psychologists are also required to complete a year of community service.

DP requirements: DP will be removed if all seminars are not attended, and other components of the course, such as approaching the course with professionalism and commitment, working collegially with peers, forming meaningful relationships with clients acting ethically, and acquiring the requisite skills in psychological assessment, psychological intervention and report writing.

Assessment: 35% Coursework, 31% Examinations, 34% Research Dissertation

Supplementary exam: A supplementary exam, usually for no more than one of the three written papers, may be awarded in special cases with the permission of the Head of Department. In such cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

Master's Degree in Counselling Psychology

Two-year course

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

The first year is a coursework year and the second year is the internship)

Entrance requirements: A completed degree with Psychology as a major subject and an Honours degree in Psychology. Further details of the selection criteria and the process are available online.

Course description: The Master of Arts in Counselling Psychology is a professional training course that provides the foundation leading to graduates being able to apply for registration as a Counselling Psychologist with the Professional Board for Psychology of the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA). The Master's course consists of academic and practical training, and may only be taken on a full-time basis following careful selection processes. Modules in i) psychological assessment, ii) psychological therapies and interventions (including community psychology) and iii) professional practice (including ethical issues and skills relevant to the practice and profession of Counselling Psychology) are

offered. Students work in a range of settings with adults, young people and children. Practical training includes supervised work with cases within individual, group and community contexts. Students must complete a research half-thesis on a topic relevant to the practice of Counselling Psychology. As per HPCSA requirements, the Rhodes University Student Counselling Centre is the linked internship site of the Master's course, and all students who successfully complete year 1 are required to take up an internship position at this site. The Rhodes University Student Counselling Centre is an accredited internship site and this accredited internship is a requirement for registration as a Counselling Psychologist. The coursework, thesis and internship together constitute the academic requirements for the award of the degree. All coursework must be completed before the commencement of the internship. An HPCSA requirement for registration as a Counselling Psychologist in Independent Practice is the completion of a national board examination. Counselling psychologists are not presently required to complete a year of community service.

DP requirements: DP will be removed if all seminars are not attended, and other components of the course. Students must approach the course with professionalism and commitment, working collegially with peers, forming meaningful relationships with clients acting ethically, and

acquiring the requisite skills in psychological assessment, psychological intervention and report writing.

Assessment: 35% Coursework; 31% Examinations, 34% Research Dissertation

Supplementary exam: A supplementary exam, usually for no more than one of the three written papers, may be awarded in special cases with the permission of the Head of Department. In such cases, the overall mark for the paper will be capped at a maximum of 50%.

Master's Degree by Thesis
(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirements: Usually an Honours degree in Psychology

Course description: A Master's degree by thesis may be undertaken on a full-time or part-time basis. Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Under the supervision of a staff member, students produce a research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor.

Doctoral Degree
(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

A PhD must be taken by thesis (see the General Rules). Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. Under the supervision of a staff member, students produce a doctoral thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor.

SOCIOLOGY

Professor and Head of Department

GG Klerck, BA (Hons), LLB, MA (UKZN), PhD (Rhodes)

Professor and Director: Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit

LJW van der Walt, BA (Hons), PhD (Wits)

Professors

MD Drewett, BSoc Sci (Hons), MSoc Sci, PhD (Rhodes)

SC Mnwana, STD (Dr Rubusana College), ACE (Rhodes), BEd Hons, MEd, PhD (Fort Hare)

Lecturers

T Alexander, BSoc Sci (Hons) (US), MSoc Sci, PhD (Rhodes)

JKC Chisaka, BSoc Sci (Hons), MSoc Sci (Rhodes)

C Martínez Mullen, LicSocSc (Buenos Aires), MSoc Sci (UKZN)

KL Ntकिनca, BSoc Sci (Hons), MSoc Sci, PhD (Rhodes)

N Ntombela, BA (Hons) (US), MA (Michigan State University), PhD (US)

HB Sishuta, BA (Hons) (Fort Hare), MA, MSoc Sci (Rhodes)

Research Associates

L Alferts, PhD (UKZN)

CT Allan, MPhil (Ulster)

S Bhatasara, PhD (Rhodes)

A Bowman, PhD (Manchester)

T Chevo, PhD (Rhodes)

MK Chiweshe, PhD (Rhodes)

R Grinker, BArch (Wits)

S Hadebe, PhD (UKZN)

L Makonese, PhD (Rhodes)

L Naidoo, PhD (Rhodes)

CA Nardi, PhD (Trento)

Visiting Professors

AL Bialakowsky, PhD (Buenos Aires)

P Gunnigle, PhD (Cranfield School of Management)

JP Holloway, PhD (Edinburgh)

PK Jha, PhD (Jawaharlal Nehru)

Professor Emeritus and Director: Unit of Zimbabwean Studies

KD Helliker, PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor Emeritus

MJ Roodt, PhD (Rhodes)

- Sociology is a three-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce
- Industrial and Economic Sociology is a two-year major subject that may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce
- Sociology and Industrial and Economic Sociology may not be taken together
- A non-continuing pass in Sociology I will not meet the entrance requirements for Sociology II or Industrial and Economic Sociology II
- First-semester courses are examined in June, and second-semester courses are examined in November
- Any student who fails an examination paper by no less than 40% may be granted the option of writing a supplementary examination for that paper

UNDERGRADUATE COURSES

Sociology 101 (SOC101)

First-year, full-semester course
(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

This course consists of the following modules:

- *Introduction to Sociology* provides an overview of what studying sociology entails and how it differs from other social sciences (such as psychology, politics, and economics). Key sociological topics and themes are covered, which include the origins of sociology; the foundational sociological thinkers (Emile Durkheim, Karl Marx, and Max Weber); the individual in society; socialisation and identity; culture, social structures, social groups, social institutions, and formal organisations; and ways of studying the social world (research methods).
- *Institutions and Inequality* illustrates and outlines modern societies' key regulatory structures and systems. Institutions are not merely visible organisations, but encompass the complex processes and relations through which dominant

social systems are normalised. The module introduces sociological definitions of systems of stratification, encompassing class, race, and gender. It examines the intricate institutional arrangements that underpin social norms, including the family, economy, religion, and education. A particular focus is placed on understanding institutions and inequality within the South African context.

DP requirements: Submission of all assignments, writing all tests, and attending at least 80% of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

This course may also be offered through block release as Introduction to Sociology: States, Capitalism and Workers.

Sociology 102 (SOC102)

First-year, full-semester course

(NQF level 5, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: At least 40% for Sociology 101 (SOC101)

This course consists of the following modules:

- *Social and Cultural Change* provides a critical sociological perspective on social change. Classical and contemporary sociological theories of social change are used to explain the transformation of modern society, with a specific focus on Africa and South Africa. A key question is how economic development and technological innovations are changing African societies.

- *Sociology of Deviance* introduces the key themes in the sociological study of deviance. This module sheds light on the processes involved in the social construction of deviance in contemporary society. The topics include defining deviance, the phenomenon of moral panic, the medicalisation of deviance, (traditional and modern) theories of deviance, and violence and crime in South Africa.

DP requirements: Submission of all assignments, writing all tests, and attending at least 80% of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 30% Coursework; 70% Examination

Supplementary exam: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sub-minimum for aggregation: 40%

This course may also be offered through block release as Introduction to Sociology: Inequality, Change and Labour Movements.

An examination for SOC 101 is written in June, and an examination for SOC 102 is written in November. Dates may vary for the block release versions of the course.

Sociology 2 (SOC 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirement: Sociology 1

This course consists of the following core papers:

- *Theory and Society:* This module begins by introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. The central concerns and ideas of the major classical theorists are discussed. The focus is on ideas and theories developed to understand and explain significant social changes brought about by earlier economic, social and political transformations up to and including events of the early 20th century. The relevance of these theories for contemporary societies is addressed.
- *Introduction to Social Research:* This is an introductory module to research methods, which are indispensable to the work of sociologists as they construct scientific explanations of human society through empirical investigations. The basic dimensions of the research process, including research design and research techniques, are covered.

Two specialised areas of study will be offered, as determined by the Department in a particular year, including Sociology of Development, Crime and Deviance, Political Sociology, Family Sociology, Sociology of Language, Race and Class, Mass Communication, Migrant Studies, Sociology of Education, and Gender and Sexualities.

DP Requirements: Submission of all assignments, writing all tests, and attending at least 80% of lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 – 49%

Sociology 3 (SOC 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirement: Sociology 2

This course consists of the following core papers:

- *Contemporary Social Theory:* This module encompasses contemporary theories and explores modern debates on the theorising process, as well as the contours of the various systems of thought within the discipline.
- *Social Research:* This is an intermediate research methods module that builds on the second-year social research module. It provides a deeper and more nuanced understanding of the research process as well as the many complexities and challenges faced in undertaking social research.

Two specialised areas of study that will be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Development Studies, Sociology of Education, Sociology of Higher Education, Sociology of Race and Ethnicity, Gender Studies, State and Society, Political Sociology, Sociology of Law, Environment and Society, and Popular Culture.

DP Requirements: Submission of all assignments, writing all tests, and attending at least 80% of lectures and tutorials

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 – 49%

Industrial and Economic Sociology 2 (INS 2)

Second-year, full-year course

(NQF level 6, 30 credits)

Entrance requirement: Sociology 1

This course consists of the following papers:

- *Industry, Economy, and Society:* This module provides a conceptual and theoretical foundation for Industrial and Economic Sociology, laying the groundwork for the subsequent courses. It examines the historical rise of capitalist societies and developments in the economy and industry during the 20th and 21st centuries. Both classical and contemporary thinkers are covered in the module.
- *Sociology of Work:* This module examines the concept of work within industrial society in detail, considering related areas such as

technological development and managerial strategies. It examines both classical and contemporary theoretical views on work. Included in the module is a discussion of the debates on the changing labour process. Contemporary forms of industrial restructuring and the future of work are also covered.

- *Introduction to Social Research:* This is an introductory module to research methods, which are indispensable to the work of sociologists as they construct scientific explanations of human society through empirical investigations. The basic dimensions of the research process, including research design and research techniques, are explored.
- *Sociology of Labour Markets:* This module provides a distinctively sociological perspective on labour markets in capitalist societies. It examines the power structures and inequalities that underpin labour markets. Additionally, it examines the significant changes in the standard employment contract that have occurred under neoliberal restructuring.

Other specialised areas of study that may be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Gender and Work, Industrial and Occupational Health, Organisational Studies, Labour in the World Economy, and Conflict in the Workplace.

DP Requirements: Submission of all assignments, writing all tests, and attending at least 80% of lectures and tutorials

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 – 49%

Industrial and Economic Sociology 3 (INS 3)

Third-year, full-year course

(NQF level 7, 60 credits)

Entrance requirement: Industrial and Economic Sociology 2

This course consists of the following papers:

- *Political Economy of Contemporary Capitalism:* This module explores contemporary capitalism, with a specific focus on neoliberal restructuring, situating South African developments within broader global and historical contexts. It introduces economic sociology and political

economy, examining the theory underlying and the causes and effects of neoliberal models. It also considers the impact of competing state policies and state capacity, as well as class struggles, on those policies. The module also examines alternative models and considers the question of whether there are alternatives to neo-liberalism.

- **Introduction to Industrial Relations:** This module introduces the dynamics and institutions of industrial relations. The role in collective bargaining of trade unions, employers' organisations, and the government are explored in some detail. Aspects of labour law, such as discipline, retrenchment and dismissal, are also covered. The final part of the module examines the nature of industrial conflict and the various models and mechanisms for dispute resolution.
- **Social Research:** This is an intermediate research methods module that builds on the second-year social research module. It provides a deeper and more nuanced understanding of the research process as well as the many complexities and challenges faced in undertaking social research.
- **Trade Unions and Comparative Labour History:** In this module, classical and contemporary theories of trade unions are reviewed. This is followed by a comparative and historical study of trade union movements in selected countries. A primary focus is on the nature and functions of trade unions, their relationship to political parties and the state, their organisation and politics, and their structures and tactics. Additionally, we examine issues such as historical shifts in trade union tactics, the role of trade union movements in promoting democratic change, and the strategic challenges faced by trade union movements.

Other specialised areas of study that may be on offer, as determined by the Department in a particular year, include Development and Industrialisation, State and Labour, Contemporary Capitalism and Globalisation, Economic and Industrial Policy, Economic Sociology, and Labour and Workplace Restructuring.

DP Requirements: Submission of all assignments, writing all tests, and attending at least 80% of lectures and tutorials

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examination

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 – 49%

POSTGRADUATE COURSES

Honours Degree

Full-year course (NQF level 8, 120 credits)

Entrance requirement: at least 65% for Sociology 3, Industrial and Economic Sociology 3, or a cognate discipline

An Honours degree may be taken in Sociology, Development Studies, or Industrial and Economic Sociology.

Candidates will be registered in the faculty in which their undergraduate degree was completed.

Assessment: 40% Coursework; 60% Examinations

Supplementary exams: Final mark 40 – 49%

Honours in Sociology

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

- Advanced Research Methodology
- Advanced Social Theory
- Environmental Sociology
- Gender Studies
- Land and Agrarian Studies
- Sociology of Health
- Sociology of Identities
- Sociology of Race
- State and Society
- Any other specialised area of study

Honours in Development Studies

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

- Advanced Research Methodology
- Development Theory
- Gender and Development
- Land and Agrarian Studies

- Models of Industrial Development
- Social Policy and Development
- State and Social Accountability
- Value and Commodity Chains
- Any other specialised area of study

Honours in Industrial and Economic Sociology

The degree consists of four papers and a research report on a topic approved by the Department. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include four of the following:

- Advanced Labour Market Studies
- Advanced Research Methodology
- Advanced Sociology of Work
- Comparative Labour Law
- Economic and Industrial Policy
- Human Resource Development and Management
- Industrial and Employment Relations
- Labour and Globalisation
- Trade Unions and Comparative Labour Studies
- Any other specialised area of study

In the case of all three honours programmes listed above, a candidate may, with the approval of the Head of Department, register for no more than one paper in a cognate department.

Interdisciplinary Honours

See Interdepartmental Studies.

The Department participates in the Interdisciplinary Honours degree offerings in Industrial Relations, Development Studies, Gender Studies, and South African Cultural Studies.

Master's Degree

(NQF level 9, 180 credits)

Entrance requirement: At least 65% for Honours in sociology, development studies, industrial and economic sociology, or a cognate discipline

A Master's degree may be taken in Sociology, Development Studies, Industrial and Economic Sociology, and Industrial Relations by thesis or by coursework/dissertation. Students will only be accepted for a Master's degree by thesis if they have completed a dissertation in their Honours programme or submitted a satisfactory long essay with their Master's application. Candidates may be registered in Humanities or Commerce, depending on the faculty in which their Honours degree was completed. See the General Rules.

Master's by Thesis

This degree involves research only and the production, within two years of full-time study, of a thesis of 50,000 words. Proposals should be submitted to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within nine months of the date of registration.

Master's by Coursework and Dissertation

This degree is completed over 12 months and comprises three papers and a dissertation of 25,000 words. The papers to be offered in a particular year are determined by the Department and include three of the following:

- Advanced Social Research
- Advanced Social Theory
- Applied Literature Reviews
- Development Studies
- Industry, Economy, and Society
- Land and Agrarian Studies
- Any other specialised area of study

The coursework will commence one week prior to the start of the first term of the academic year. Proposals for the dissertation must be reported to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee on a date announced by the Department. The dissertation must be submitted for examination within 24 months of the date of registration. Students must pass at least two papers and achieve a minimum aggregate of 50% across the three papers to pass the degree. Passing at least two papers with at least a 50% aggregate for the three papers is also a precondition for proceeding to the dissertation. Passing the dissertation is a precondition for passing the degree.

Assessment: Coursework counts 50% and the dissertation counts 50%

Doctoral Degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits)

Entrance requirements: at least 68% for a Master's degree in sociology, industrial and economic sociology, or a cognate discipline, as well as a strong concept note

A Doctoral degree (PhD) in Sociology or Industrial Relations is obtained by thesis. The faculties in which the degree may be registered are Humanities or Commerce. Proposals should be submitted to the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within nine months of the date of registration. See the General Rules.

RESEARCH UNITS, GROUPS, AND PROJECTS

Africa Research and Knowledge Hub (ARKH)

ARKH is a research group that hosts a webinar series and conducts research on rural development topics, including agroecology, waterscapes, and development-induced displacement.

Eastern Cape Agricultural Research Project (ECARP)

The ECARP is a hub for agrarian studies within the Department. It supports the initiatives by and works towards positive changes for farm workers, farm dwellers, and small-scale farmers in the Eastern Cape. ECARP's work has the following objectives: to facilitate and support social mobilisation among rural communities; to strengthen labour and tenure rights in agricultural labour markets; to promote climate justice; to defend the rights to access and control of land; to secure food sovereignty and the right

to quality food; and to conduct research and document the outcomes of climate change as well as agricultural, land and labour laws and policies on the employment and quality of life of the rural poor.

Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit (NALSU)

The NALSU is a labour studies hub at Rhodes University, built around a vibrant interdisciplinary team. It is named in honour of Dr Neil Hudson Aggett, a trade union organiser and medical doctor who died in 1982 in the jails of the apartheid state. NALSU is located in the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology, but includes members from History and Economics and Economic History. NALSU has developed active research partnerships with various national and international research and advocacy organisations and draws strength from its location in the Eastern Cape Province. Its work includes research on a wide range of issues, public engagement and trade union education, and the related production of popular materials.

Unit of Zimbabwean Studies (UZS)

The UZS has two main components. First, the supervision of Master's and Doctoral students, who undertake research on a range of topics pertaining to Zimbabwean history and society, including land and land reform, livelihoods, civil society, social movements and political parties. Second, research is undertaken by the UZS in conjunction with colleagues at universities in Zimbabwe. Additionally, when possible, Zimbabwean studies are covered at the third-year and Honours levels.

STATISTICS

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

JS Baxter, BSc, BSc (Hons), PGDip (HE), MSc (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus

SE Radloff, PhD (Rhodes)

Professors

AJ Booth, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

L Raubenheimer, BCom, BCom (Hons), MCom, PhD (UFS)

Senior Lecturer

S Izally, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

S Hamlomo, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes)

R Bhurtun, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), MSc (Wits)

Mathematical Statistics (MST) and **Applied Statistics** (AST) may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BSc (InfSys), BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc and BEcon. To major in Mathematical Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM 1, MST 102, MST 2, MST 3, see Rule S.23. To major in Applied Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAM 1, MST 102, MST 2, AST 3, see Rule S.23. A student may major in one of Mathematical Statistics or Applied Statistics, not both. Students intending to major in statistics are strongly encouraged to take Mathematics 2 (MAM 2). The availability of both MST 3 and AST 3 in any year is subject to adequate staffing.

A rating of at least 4 in Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent, or MAT 1F or MAT 1S1 or TOF 1F or TOF 1C1 or equivalent, is a prerequisite for admission to STA 1C2. A rating of at least 4 in Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent is a prerequisite for admission to STA 1S1 and STA 1P1. A rating of at least 5 in Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent is a prerequisite for admission to MST 102.

If a candidate obtains a pass in a semester-course or half-semester module offered by the Department, but fails to gain an aggregate pass for the year-long course in the following ordinary or

supplementary examination, then that candidate is required to pass the semester-course or half-semester module failed in order to obtain credit for the year-long course. The Department recommends that candidates repeating a semester credit repeat the year-long course; see rules S.16.6 and S.24.5.

Besides the major courses, the department offers various other courses in Statistics. Statistics for Science (STA 1S1) is a one-semester first-year level course which may be taken for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Science, Commerce and Humanities. Statistics for Pharmacy (STA 1P1) is a one-semester first-year level course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Pharmacy. Statistics for Commerce (STA 1C2) is a one-semester first-year level course taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce, Science and Humanities. For further details, particularly on the content of courses, see the departmental web page <http://www.ru.ac.za/statistics/>

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN STATISTICS

There are four first-year level courses in Statistics. STA 1S1 and STA 1P1 are held in the first semester and MST 102 and STA 1C2 are held in the second semester. Credit for each course is obtained separately and aggregation is not permitted. Credit may not be obtained for STA 1S1 and STA 1C2; STA 1S1 and STA 1P1, STA 1P1 and STA 1C2. Supplementary examinations may be recommended, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. MST 102 is one of the prerequisites for MST 2.

Statistics for Science (STA 1S1)

First-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

Entrance requirements: At least a level 4 rating in Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent.

Course description: Numerical descriptive statistics; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; correlation and linear regression; point and interval estimation; modern

univariate statistical inference; ANOVA; design and analysis of questionnaires; categorical data analysis; survival analysis.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%.

Statistics for Pharmacy (STA 1P1)

First-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

Entrance requirements: At least a level 4 rating in Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent.

Course description: Numerical descriptive statistics; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; point and interval estimation; modern univariate statistical inference; correlation and linear regression; ANOVA; design and analysis of questionnaires; categorical data analysis; survival analysis.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Statistics for Commerce (STA 1C2)

First-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

Entrance requirements: At least a level 4 rating in Mathematics on the NSC or equivalent, or MAT 1F or MAT 1S1 or TOF 1F or TOF 1C1 or equivalent.

Course description: Collection and tabulation of statistical data; graphs and diagrams; frequency distributions; measures of central tendency and dispersion; shapes and parameters of classical distributions (normal, binomial, Poisson); simple classical probability theory; conditional probability; sampling distributions; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; analysis of time series; correlation and simple linear regression.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%.

Mathematical Statistics 102 (MST 102)

First-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 5, 15 credits).

A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the course irrespective of their final aggregated mark.

Entrance requirements: At least a level 5 rating in Mathematics in the NSC or equivalent and at least 40% for MAM 101.

Course description: An introduction to linear programming and optimisation. Probability: introduction; sample spaces; probability measures; calculating probabilities; conditional probability; independence. Discrete random variables:

Bernoulli; binomial; geometric; negative binomial; hypergeometric and Poisson distributions. Expected values, moments and moment-generating functions. Using R as a calculator, discrete distributions in R, simulation of discrete events in R, an introduction to functions in R.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examinations 60%.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%.

Sub-minimum: At least 40% in the written exam. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for MST102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS

There are two second-year level semester-long courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 201 is held in the first semester and MST 202 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course MST 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum of 40% in each course. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the relevant semester course irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the semester or the year course.

Entrance requirements: Mathematics I (MAM 1) and Mathematical Statistics 102 (MST 102) are required before a student may register for MST 201 or MST 202. Adequate performance of at least 40% in MST 201 is required before a student may

register for MST 202. Students intending to major in Mathematical Statistics should note that an average of at least 60% for MST 2 is strongly suggested to register for MST 3 or AST 3.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Mathematical Statistics 201 (MST 201)

Second-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits).

Entrance requirements: MAM 1, MST 102.

Course description: Continuous univariate distributions including the uniform, normal, exponential, gamma, beta, student-t, chi-square and F distributions. Expected values: expectation; variance and standard deviation. Moment-generating functions. Jointly distributed random variables: discrete; continuous; independent; conditional distributions; Covariance and correlation. Functions of random variables; order statistics. Continuous distributions in R, simulation of continuous random variables in R.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examination 70%.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%.

Sub-minima: At least 40% in the written exam. At least 40% for the course to aggregate with MST 202. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for MST201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

Mathematical Statistics 202 (MST 202)

Second-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 6, 20 credits).

Entrance requirements: At least 40% for MST 201.

Course description: Sampling: population parameters; simple and stratified random sampling.

Limit theorems: law of large numbers; central limit theorem. Sampling distributions derived from normal populations. Estimation of parameters: Goodness-of-fit and Poisson distribution; method of moments; method of maximum likelihood; confidence intervals; efficiency; sufficiency. Hypothesis testing: types of errors; power; Neyman-Pearson lemma; generalised likelihood ratio tests; measures of location and dispersion; comparison of two independent samples; paired samples; categorical data analysis; simple linear regression. Simulation of limiting theorems in R. Hypothesis testing (t-tests and associated non-parametric tests) and simple regression in R.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examination 70%.

Supplementary exam: 40-49%.

Sub-minima: At least 40% in the written exam. At least 40% in the course to aggregate with MST 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for MST202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN STATISTICS

The two majors, Mathematical Statistics 3 (MST 3) and Applied Statistics 3 (AST 3), are organised into half-semester-long modules. A major in MST consists of the four half-semester modules MST 311, MST 321, MST 312, and MST 322. A major in AST consists of four half-semester modules AST 311, AST 321, AST 312, AST 322. Credit may be obtained in each module separately, and in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to the relevant two-semester course, provided that the subminimum of 40% in each module is met and at least two modules are above 50%. Individual modules may be carried forward from year to year. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in the written examinations. A student obtaining less than 40% in the written examination will be deemed to have failed the module irrespective of their final aggregated mark for the module or the year course. MST 311, MST 321, AST 311, and AST 321 are held in the first semester while MST 312, MST 322, AST 312, and AST 322 are held in the second

semester. Changes to the topics offered may be made from time-to-time depending on the interests of the academic staff.

Entrance requirements: Mathematical Statistics 2 (MST 2), Mathematical Statistics 102 (MST 102) and Mathematics 1 (MAM 1) are required before a student may register for any MST 3 or AST 3 module. Adequate performance of at least 40% on average for MST 311 and MST 321 is required before a student may register for MST 312 or MST 322 or AST 312 or AST 322.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, tutorials, tutorial tests and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests and tutorial tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each and every term test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Examination 70% (each module).

Supplementary exam: 40-49% (each module).

Sub-minima: At least 40% in the various written exams. At least 40% per module to aggregate. A student with a final module mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for that module but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS

Mathematical Statistics 311/Applied Statistics 311 (MST 311/AST 311): An Introduction to Multivariate Distribution Theory

Third-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 15 credits).

Course description: Introductory linear algebra, multivariate distribution theory; multivariate normal distribution, multivariate normal sampling theory, the distribution of various quadratic forms.

Mathematical Statistics 321/Applied Statistics 321 (MST 321/AST 321): The General Linear Model

Third-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 15 credits).

Course description: The general linear model: estimation; inference; prediction; model adequacy and residual analysis; transformations and weightings to correct model inadequacies. An introduction to SAS. Applied regression analysis in SAS and R.

Mathematical Statistics 312 (MST 312): Stochastic Finance

Third-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 15 credits).

Course description: A selection of topics from stochastic processes and financial statistics; financial computations in R.

Mathematical Statistics 322 (MST 322): Stationary Time Series Analysis

Third-year level, second-semester course (NQF level 7, 15 credits).

COURSE DESCRIPTION: Stationary (ARMA) time series modelling and forecasting; time series analysis with ITSM2000.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES IN APPLIED STATISTICS**Applied Statistics 312 (AST 312): Applied Statistical Modelling**

Third-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 15 credits).

Course description: Experimental design; applications of the general linear model; analysis of variance; non-linear regression.

Applied Statistics 322 (AST 322): Applied Statistical Modelling

Third-year level, first-semester course (NQF level 7, 15 credits).

Course description: Generalized linear models and their application in R: visual display of these data, model fitting, model checking and fit assessment, interpretation and reporting of the

statistical results, limitations of these statistical methods.

MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS HONOURS

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120 credits).

Entrance requirements: Students are required to attain at least 65% on average, where no module or component is less than 60%, in their undergraduate third year Mathematical Statistics course(s). Students are strongly encouraged to take at least Mathematics 2 in their undergraduate studies.

Course description: The course consists of six modules and a research project. Subject to staff availability the modules may be selected from the following topics: Bayesian statistics (papers A and B); econometrics; generalized linear models; multivariate analysis; probability theory and stochastic processes; time series analysis; survey methods and sampling techniques; stochastic calculus in finance; computation, applied statistics and consulting; classification theory; statistical learning.

DP requirements: The department maintains that attendance at lectures, seminars, tutorials, practicals and term tests is mandatory (100% attendance). Students who do not attain leave of absence certificates for tests will be deemed to not have duly performed or completed the course. Students who do not attain at least 40% in each test will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their class record will be deemed to not have duly performed. Students who do not attain at least 40% for their portfolio will be deemed to not have duly performed.

Assessment: For each module, the class record counts 30% and the examination 70%. A portfolio is assessed for the computation, applied statistics and consulting module. The six modules count 70%, that is 11,67% each, of the final Honours mark. The research component counts 30% of the final Honours mark. The research project mark is the average of the supervisors and external examiners mark and counts 75% of the research component. The oral presentation of the project counts 20% and the research seminar series portfolio counts 5% of the research component.

The oral presentation mark is the average of the mark awarded by the members of staff at the presentation.

Supplementary exam: None.

Sub-minima: 40% for each module, 40% for the seminar series, 40% for the research project, 40% for the research presentation.

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS

Master's degrees

(NQF level 9, 180 credits).

PhD degree

(NQF level 10, 360 credits).

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to research degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules. The Master's degree is either by thesis or by coursework and thesis. The course of study for a Masters by coursework must be approved by the Head of Department and Dean, acting on behalf of Faculty. A candidate may also be required to take an oral examination.

ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

B Smit, BSc, BSc (Hons) (UKZN), MSc (Wits), PhD (UP)

Senior Lecturer and Deputy Head of Department

N Mgqatsa, BSc, BSc (Hons) (WSU), MSc, PhD (NMMU)

Distinguished Professor and NRF Research Chair

MP Hill, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes) FRSSAf Professors

S Edwards, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Stell)

I Paterson, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

NB Richoux, BSc (Hons) (UBC), MSc, PhD (MUN)

RJ Wasserman, BSc (UNISA), BSc (Hons), MSc (NMMU), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

T Naidoo, BSc, BSc (Hons), PhD (UKZN)

M Riddin, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Professors Emeriti

RTF Bernard, PhD (Natal)

AJFK Craig, PhD (Natal)

AN Hodgson, PhD, DSc (Manchester)

CD McQuaid, PhD (UCT)

Honorary Professors

RSK Barnes, PhD (London)

RM Brigham, PhD (Canada)

SGA Compton, PhD (UK)

M Hausberger, PhD (UR1)

S Moore, PhD (Rhodes)

C Nyamukondiwa (US)

F Porri, PhD (Rhodes)

LJJ Seuront, DSc (University of Sciences and Technologies of Lille)

Senior Research Associates

A Bernard, PhD (Rhodes)

G Zardi, PhD (Rhodes)

TW Perry, PhD (New Mexico)

Research Associates

TA Bellingan, PhD (Rhodes)

B Bonnevie, MSc (Rhodes)

L Claassens, PhD (Rhodes)

ML Cole, PhD (Rhodes)

J Comley, PhD (Rhodes)

FC De Moor, PhD (Wits)

JM Midgley, PhD (Rhodes)

MC Mlambo, MSc (Rhodes)

K Williams, PhD (Rhodes)

C Nicastro, PhD (Rhodes)

CA Owen, PhD (RU)

KA Williams, PhD (Rhodes)

E Strange, PhD (Rhodes)

Zoology (ZOO) is a six-semester, three-year subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn. Two, or in some cases four, semester courses in Zoology are allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

To major in Zoology, a candidate is required to obtain credit for the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; ZOO 301, ZOO 302.

Entomology (ENT) is a four-semester, two-year subject that may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Entomology, a candidate is required to obtain credit for the following courses: CHE 1; CEL 101; ZOO 102; BOT 102; ENT 201; ENT 202; ENT 301; ENT 302.

Students must attend all official field trips that form part of a semester-course for which they are registered. Detailed information on course structures and curricula involving Zoology or Entomology is available from the Head of Department.

FIRST-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

IN ZOOLOGY

There are two first-year courses in Zoology. CEL 101 is held in the first semester and ZOO 102 in the second semester. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% is deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ZOO 1, provided that the candidate attains the required sub-minimum (40%) in each component.

Students wishing to major in Zoology and/or Entomology must normally obtain credit for each

semester course separately. Supplementary examinations may be awarded in either course, provided that a candidate achieves at least 40% in Semester 1 and at least 40% in Semester 2.

CEL 101: Cell Biology

First-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 5, 15-credit) jointly taught by the Departments of Botany and Zoology & Entomology.

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: This course covers the structures of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells; cellular processes, including cell to cell communication, photosynthesis, cell respiration, and cell division; and fundamental genetics, including the structure of genetic material and how it controls cellular processes.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures; submit all assignments; write all tests and essays, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum for June: 40% to aggregate with BOT 102 or ZOO 102

ZOO 102: Animal Diversity, Structure and Function

First-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 5, 15-credit)

Entrance requirements: CEL 101

Course description: This course introduces the evolution, systematics, morphology and anatomy, and functional biology of the animal kingdom, both vertebrate and invertebrate.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical and lecture classes, submit all assignments, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with CEL 101. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ZOO102 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

IN ZOOLOGY

There are two independent second-year courses in Zoology, ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% is deemed to be equivalent to the year-course ZOO 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark.

Students wishing to major in Zoology normally require credit in Zoology 1 (CEL 101, ZOO 102), Botany 102 (BOT 102), and Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) before they may register for ZOO 201 or ZOO 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or BOT 102 concurrently with ZOO 201 and ZOO 202.

ZOO 201: Principles of Ecology and Evolution

Second-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

Entrance requirements: CEL101, ZOO102 or ZOO 1

Co-requisites: CHE 1, BOT 102

Course description: This course concerns the general principles of ecology and evolution. Ecological topics include the levels of organism, population, community, and ecosystem. Short field trips may be held. Evolution topics include evolutionary genetics, species diversification and micro- and macro-evolution.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures, submit all assignments, attend all field trips, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with ZOO 202.

A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ZOO201 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ZOO 202: Environmental and Behavioural Physiology

Second-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

Entrance requirements: ZOO 1

Course description: This course examines the effects of environmental variables such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, ions, water, temperature, and other external stimuli on animal function and how groups of animals respond to environmental conditions and stimuli.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures, submit all assignments, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with ZOO 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ZOO202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

SECOND-YEAR LEVEL COURSES**IN ENTOMOLOGY**

There are two independent second-year courses in Entomology, ENT 201 and ENT 202. Credit for each course may be obtained separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% is deemed to be equivalent to the year-long course ENT 2, provided that a candidate attains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark. Students wishing to major in Entomology normally require credit in Zoology 1 (CEL 101, ZOO 102), Botany 102 (BOT 102), and Chemistry 1 (CHE 1) before they may register for ENT 201 or ENT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 or BOT 102 concurrently with ENT 201 and ENT 202.

ENT 202: General Insect Biology

Second-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

Entrance requirements: CEL101, ZOO102 or ZOO 1

Co-requisites: CHE 1, BOT 102

Course description: This course introduces the anatomy, physiology, genetics, diversity and phylogeny of insects. Practical classes will be both field- and laboratory-based and students submit an insect collection and attend short weekend field trips.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical and lecture classes, submit all assignments, attend all field trips, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with ENT 201. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ENT202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ENT 201: Professional Entomology: Insects and Man

Second-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 6, 20-credit)

Entrance requirements: CEL101, ZOO102 or ZOO 1

Co-requisites: CHE 1, BOT 102

Course description: This course provides an overview of the biology of the major insect orders and their impact on humans, particularly in the context of major entomology career pathways such as agricultural entomology, medical and veterinary entomology, pest control, aquatic entomology, and biomonitoring. Practical classes will be both field- and laboratory-based, and students submit an insect collection.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes, submit all assignments, attend all field trips, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum: 40% to aggregate with ENT 202.

A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ENT201 but

will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

IN ZOOLOGY

There are two independent third-year courses in Zoology. Students wishing to major in Zoology must obtain ZOO 301 and ZOO 302. Credit for each of these courses may be obtained separately. Aggregation will be deemed equivalent to a year-long course ZOO 3, provided that the candidate attains the required subminimum in each semester. Supplementary examinations may be offered in third year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark. A research project may form a component of each semester in Zoology. Students wishing to major in Zoology normally require credit in ZOO 201 and ZOO 202, or equivalently ZOO 2, before they may register for a third-year semester.

ZOO 301: African Zoology: Land Animals and Life Histories

Third-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

Entrance requirements: ZOO 2

Course description: This course uses the African vertebrate fauna to teach behaviour, physiology, and conservation. A short field trip may be held.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures, submit all assignments, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Subminimum: 40% to aggregate with ZOO 302.

A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ENT202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ZOO 302: Marine Biology

Third-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

Entrance requirements: ZOO 2

Course description: The oceans have a profound effect on life on Earth, providing food for man and influencing both weather and climate. This course emphasizes the physical properties of the marine environment and how these shape species' interactions and food webs. Topics covered may include ocean circulation, primary production, zooplankton dynamics, the deep sea, rocky shores, sandy beaches, estuaries, planktonic food webs, pelagic/demersal fisheries, climate change, and the behavioural and physiological ecology of marine animals. Short field trips may also be held.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures, submit all assignments, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with ZOO 301.

A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ENT202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

THIRD-YEAR LEVEL COURSES

IN ENTOMOLOGY

There are two independent third-year courses in Entomology. Students wishing to major in Entomology must obtain ENT 301 and ENT 302. Credit for each of these courses may be obtained separately. Aggregation will be deemed equivalent to the year-long course ENT 3 provided that the candidate attains the required subminimum in each semester. Supplementary examinations may be offered in third year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars, and class tests collectively comprise the class mark. A research project may form a component of each semester in Entomology. Students wishing to major in Entomology normally require credit in ENT 201 and ENT 202, or equivalently ENT 2, before they may register for a third-year semester.

ENT 302: Applied Insect Ecology

Third-year, Semester 1 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

Entrance requirements: ENT 2

Course description: This course illustrates the application of ecology and ethology to applied problems in entomology.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures, submit all assignments, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with ENT 30. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ENT202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

ENT 301: Environmental Entomology

Third-year, Semester 2 course (NQF level 7, 30-credit)

Entrance requirements: ENT 2

Course description: This course investigates the role of insects in various environmental and ecological roles related to professional entomology.

DP requirements: Attend at least 90% of practical classes and lectures, submit all assignments, and obtain at least 40% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record 40%, Examination 60%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% to aggregate with ENT 302. A student with a final course mark of 50% or more but who fails to achieve the examination subminimum will not obtain credit for ENT202 but will be eligible to write the supplementary examination.

HONOURS COURSES

Honours in Zoology and Entomology

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

Entrance requirements: normally at least 65% for ZOO 3 or ENT 3 or equivalent

Course description: The department offers separate Honours courses in Zoology, Entomology, Marine Biology, and African Vertebrate Biodiversity. The aims of these courses are to produce graduates who think critically, manage independent research, and communicate professionally. Students participate in core courses

of statistics, scientific communication, various academic topics, and research projects. Whenever possible, students undertake a field trip and attend a local scientific conference. Joint honours with cognate disciplines may be permitted at the discretion of the Heads of Departments concerned.

DP requirements: Attend 90% of tutorials, submit all assignments and research projects.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

Supplementary exam: None

Zoology Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

Entrance requirements: normally at least 65% in ZOO 3 or equivalent

Course description: The course consists of advanced studies in Zoology that may include reproduction, life histories, behaviour, disturbance ecology, evolutionary biology, invasion biology, trophic ecology, and applied zoology. Candidates undertake research projects in any field of Zoology.

DP requirements: Attend 90% of tutorials, submit all assignments and research projects, and attend all field trips.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

Supplementary exam: None

Entomology Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

Entrance requirements: normally at least 65% for ENT 3 or equivalent

Course description: The course consists of advanced studies in Entomology that may include insect ecology, economic entomology, biological control, and biological invasions. Candidates undertake entomological research projects.

DP requirements: Attend 90% of tutorials, submit all assignments and research projects, and attend all field trips.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

Supplementary exam: None

Marine Biology Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

Entrance requirements: normally at least 65% for ZOO 3 or equivalent

Course description: The course consists of advanced studies in Marine Biology that may include physical and chemical oceanography, planktonic food webs, benthic food webs, fringing communities, climate change, and life history strategies. Candidates undertake marine biological research projects.

DP requirements: Attend 90% of tutorials, submit all assignments and research projects, and attend all field trips.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

Supplementary exam: None

African Vertebrate Biodiversity Honours

Year-long course (NQF level 8, 120-credit)

Entrance requirements: normally at least 65% for ZOO 3 or equivalent.

Course description: The course consists of advanced studies in African Vertebrate Biology

that may include biogeography, biodiversity, population processes, life history patterns, physiological adaptations, conservation, and wildlife management. Candidates undertake vertebrate research projects.

DP requirements: Attend 90% of tutorials, submit all assignments and research projects, and attend all field trips.

Assessment: Class record 30%, Project 40%, Examination 30%

Supplementary exam: None

MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

MSc (NQF level 9, 180-credit)

PhD (NQF level 10, 360-credit)

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to read for the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

RESEARCH INSTITUTES AND UNITS

THE ALBANY MUSEUM

Director

P Cimi

Assistant Director

Vacant

ADMINISTRATION

State Accountant

T. Sias

Finance Clerk

A. Mheshe

Admin Officer

N. Sentile

Human Resource Officer

Z.R. Mjenxane

Admin Clerk

A. Gogodla

Communications and Marketing Officer

L. Dyani

DEPARTMENT OF ENTOMOLOGY AND ARACHNOLOGY

Curator

T. Bellingan, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus

S. Gess, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus

E. Pringle, LLB

DEPARTMENT OF FRESHWATER

INVERTEBRATES

Curator

Assistant Curator

P. Ntloko, PhD (Rhodes)

Curator Emeritus

F.C. de Moor, PhD (Wits)

DEPARTMENT OF EARTH SCIENCES

Curator

R. Prevec, PhD (Natal), PhD (Wits)

Research Scientist

R. Gess, PhD (Wits)

HERBARIUM

(staffed jointly by Rhodes University and the Albany Museum)

Curator

P.V.Cimi

Botanist

T. Dold

DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY

Curator

C. Booth

General Assistant

B. Tana

ANTHROPOLOGY

Curator

P Mntonintshi

HISTORY

Curator

G. Zomelele

Assistant Curator

B. September

Curator Emeritus

W.F. Way-Jones

OBSERVATORY MUSEUM

Curator

Z. Gxotelwa

Front of House, Observatory Museum

L. Mains

S. Sandi

EXHIBITIONS

Exhibitions Officer

P. Janse

Conservator

A. Chiazzari

General Assistant

T.G. Maswana

Taxidermist

T. du Toit

EDUCATION

Museum Education Officer

K. Mhasele

TECHNICAL SERVICES**Artisan Foreman**

H. Köhl

Artisan

V. Pina

General Assistants

E. Thomas

A. Ngeleza

L. Mto

V.M. Sandi

Visitor Services

Z. Klaas

P. Maselana

B. Mtuze

S. Citwa

The Albany Museum falls under the Department of Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture in the Eastern Cape government, although the building and collections are owned by a Board of Trustees. The Museum, as an Affiliated Institution, has enjoyed a long and productive relationship with Rhodes University. Several staff members are Science Faculty Board Members, continue to supervise numerous student projects, and run courses within the academic programmes of departments such as Entomology, Botany and Geology. Museum staff engage extensively with the public in the form of tours and talks, and an active outreach programme catering to local school groups (contact the Museum for a copy of our Education Booklet with a schedule of focus weeks run by each department). Staff also participate in SciFest, careers days and many other initiatives. The extensive collections of insects and other invertebrates, fossils, birds and plants, historical, anthropological and archaeological artefacts, are an important research and heritage resource.

History of the Albany Museum

The Albany Museum, the second oldest museum in southern Africa, was founded in September 1855. The Museum acquired its own building in 1902 when was built.

When legendary botanist and administrator Dr Selmar Schonland was appointed as Curator of the

Museum 1889 (a position changed to Director in 1895), the Museum was housed in the City Hall. It was through his tireless efforts that a separate and dedicated building was constructed, and in 1900 all collections were transferred to the new building. This formed the core block of the present Natural Sciences Museum, and it was officially opened in 1902.

Dr Schonland played a major role in the development of the herbarium and the library, as well as for the establishment of the Museum as a centre of scholarship in the natural sciences. In 1903, the first issue of the Records of the Albany Museum was published.

This extraordinary man also played a critical role in the establishment of Rhodes University College. He addressed the Cape Parliament speaking for the establishment of a university in Makhanda (then known as Grahamstown), and persuaded the trustees of Cecil Rhodes's estate to pledge funds for the establishment of the college. He has been described as the driving force and champion behind the establishment of Rhodes University College. When the College was eventually established in 1904, Dr Schonland, became its first professor of Botany.

The first three science professors to be appointed by Rhodes, were in the fields of botany, zoology and geology. Their posts were shared with the Museum, and in fact, the Museum paid over a third of their salaries. These joint appointments allowed Prof. Selmar Schonland and the geologist, Prof. E.H.L. Schwartz, to continue to invest time in building the Museum herbarium, and geological collections, respectively.

The palaeontological and geological collections have their origins with the collections of Andrew Geddes Bain and Dr W Guybon Atherstone; and with his joint appointment at Rhodes, Prof. E.H.L. Schwartz, became the Keeper of Mineralogy and Geology at the Museum. Curation of the Earth Science collections was then undertaken by various volunteers, including Prof. E.D. Mountain, head of Geology at Rhodes. Dr William 'Billy' de Klerk was the first full-time staff member to be appointed

as curator of the geological and palaeontological collections, a post he held from 1985 to 2016.

Prof Schonland was succeeded as director by Dr John Hewitt. His research interests lay in the fields of vertebrate zoology and archaeology. The earliest collections of archaeological material date back to 1895. During this period, Makhanda's longstanding affair with fishes started. In 1930 Dr JLB Smith, Senior Lecturer in Chemistry at Rhodes, identified and catalogued the Museum's marine fish collection. In 1952 the Museum's collection of fishes was loaned to the University's Department of Ichthyology, and 1968, it was moved to the newly established JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology (now known as SAIAB, the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity), leaving the developing freshwater fish collection at the Albany Museum. Over the next decades, the freshwater fish collections of the Transvaal and Cape Nature Conservation authorities, the Natal Museum and the South African Museum were all transferred to the Albany Museum. Then, in 2015, the freshwater fish collection was amalgamated with the SAIAB fish collection on a 99-year loan agreement, putting all of the fish under one roof again.

On 6 September 1941 the Museum was burnt down. The library and most of the collections were saved but there was a great loss of exhibited material. The Museum was rebuilt and the displays were reconstructed.

In 1955, the Museum celebrated its centenary and, in 1957, its staff became Provincial employees. Dr

John Hewitt retired the following year, and was succeeded by Dr T. H. Barry. During Dr Barry's tenure of five years the Hewitt and Rennie Wings were added to the Natural Sciences Museum and the 1820 Settlers Memorial Museum was built. The period between 1965 and 1977, under the directorship of Mr C. F. Jacot Guillarmod, was one of consolidation. Fort Selwyn was restored by the Province and handed over to the Museum in 1977. The National Collection of Freshwater Organisms was transferred from the CSIR to the Museum, founding what is now known as the Department of Freshwater Invertebrates, with Dr KMF Scott the first curator. In 1958 the Department of Entomology and Arachnology was created with Charles Jacot-Guillarmod, its first curator.

Under Mr Jacot Guillarmod's successor, Mr B.C. Wilmot, the Museum entered a new period of growth. De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited purchased and restored the Observatory and the Priest's House and donated them to the Museum. The Old Provost was restored by the Province. The Observatory Museum received considerable maintenance again in 2019 under the directorship of Mr Manzi Vabaza, facilitated by the Department of Public Works.

Museum staff started teaching short courses at the University and, in 1983, the Museum became an Associated Research Institute of Rhodes University. The Museum's close relationship with the University was expanded with the consolidation of the herbaria of the two institutions and the formation of the Selmar Schonland Herbarium, housed in the Museum.

AMAZWI SOUTH AFRICAN MUSEUM OF LITERATURE (formerly THE NATIONAL ENGLISH LITERARY MUSEUM)

Director

BA Thomas, BFA (Rhodes), BA (Hons)(UNISA),
PG Prof Dip Mus (Stell)

Manager: Curatorial Division

CA Warren, HdipLIS (PE Technikon) BA
(Hons)(UNISA)

Manager: Education and Public Programmes Division

ZT Matshoba, PTD (Senior)(Masibulele), ACE
(Science Education)(Rhodes), PGdip
JMS(Rhodes), Bed (Hons)(Fort Hare), MA
(Creative Writing)(Rhodes)

Chief Financial Officer

I Daringo, BCom (Hons)(NUST Zim)

The National English Literary Museum was officially renamed Amazwi South African Museum of Literature in 2019. The museum now has a mandate to collect literary artefacts relating to the literatures of all South African languages.

NELM was founded with a small collection of South African English manuscripts by the late Professor Guy Butler of Rhodes University in the 1960s. Butler had a vision of a national repository for South African literary manuscripts, and this was the genesis of the museum. The museum became a Declared Cultural Institution in 1980 and is principally funded by the national Department of Sport, Arts and Culture. Although autonomous, Amazwi maintains close links with the ISEA and is an associated research institute of Rhodes University.

In 2016 the museum moved into its new custom-designed building. The building has a 5-star rating from the Green Building Council of South Africa, the first museum in the country to achieve this. The permanent exhibitions, “Voices of the Land”, depict the literary representation of the South African landscape from early colonial times to the present day. Through literary imaginings the landscape is presented as a physical place with its

long history of ownership conflicts, and as an aesthetic symbol of cultural identity. The building also has temporary exhibition space, an auditorium, activity rooms and a reading room for visiting researchers.

Amazwi has two satellite museums: Schreiner House in Cradock and the Eastern Star in Makhanda.

The exhibitions at Schreiner House explore the life and work of Olive Schreiner – the renowned author of *The Story of an African Farm* – and recognise her contribution as a writer, women’s rights activist and human rights activist. Some of her belongings and part of her and her husband’s personal libraries are on display. Schreiner House – No. 9 Cross Street – was once her home, and she lived there with her siblings Theo, Ettie and Will from 1867 to 1870.

The Easter Star gets its name from a newspaper that was established in Grahamstown in 1871. The newspaper and its proprietors followed the gold rush to Johannesburg in 1887 and the paper was renamed *The Star* – still a popular daily. The Eastern Star houses exhibits of 19th century printing equipment, including a 120-year old Wharfedale printing press, and an exhibition that examines the history of the press in South Africa.

Amazwi has more than 100 000 literary artefacts in its collection. These include authors’ manuscripts, printers’ proofs, diaries, correspondence, publishers’ archives, photographs, posters, play-scripts, theatre programmes, cultural artefacts and rare books that date back to the 17th century. The museum’s collection of published poems, short stories, novels, plays, autobiographies, travel writing and children’s literature exceeds 30 000.

Amazwi provides support for the teaching of literature as well as less formal guided tours of the museums and indigenous gardens, and storytelling sessions for learners in the lower grades and special schools. Our aim is to inspire future generations of writers and nurture avid readers.

See <https://amazwi.museum> or <https://www.facebook.com/NationalEnglishLiteraryMuseum> for further information, or e-mail: info@amazwi.museum.

BIOPHARMACEUTICS RESEARCH INSTITUTE (BRI)

Director

Vacant

Emeritus Professor

I.Kanfer, BSc (Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Clinical Co-Ordinator

EAK Repinz, RN (Gen, Psych &Com)

Research Officer

Vacant

The Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI) is a Specialty Contract Research Organisation, established in 1987 and dedicated to conducting bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies on topical corticosteroid drug products in accordance with international requirements and specifications. The Institute has been inspected, audited and approved by a number of international regulatory authorities such as the USA's Food & Drug Administration (FDA), the World Health Organization (WHO) and the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (formerly known as the Medicines Control Council – MCC) and is internationally acknowledged as a premier testing site using the Vasoconstrictor Assay (VCA) in accordance with the internationally accepted FDA's guidance for such products.

A full range of services for the clinical, statistical and report generation aspects of bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies are undertaken according to Good Clinical Practice (GCP) and standard operating procedures (SOPs). The BRI provides safety and efficacy testing

services to pharmaceutical manufacturing companies for topical corticosteroid drug products for national and international regulatory registration purposes as well as for formulation development purposes. Topical corticosteroid products which have been successfully tested at the BRI have received marketing authorisation in South Africa, Europe, United States of America and Canada.

Studies are conducted in a clinic staffed by experienced investigators including study physicians, registered pharmacists and QA officers where the Executive Director has over forty years of experience with studies on topical corticosteroids. The Institute has a pool of well-trained professional nurses who assist in general clinical activities. Study protocols are submitted for review for ethical approval according to GCP principles and in accordance with the requirements of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Motivated and responsible volunteers are recruited from male and female members of the Rhodes University student body. The clinic is ideally situated on the Rhodes University campus and is within easy walking distance of volunteers residing in University residences or off-campus - over 50% of the student body reside on campus.

The Institute also provides facilities for postgraduate projects leading to MSc and PhD degrees.

CENTRE FOR SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT (CSD)

Director

F Gunzo, BSocSci(Hons)(Fort Hare), MEd,
PhD(Rhodes)

Coordinators

H Khuhlane, BCom, PGCE, BEd Hons,
MEd(Rhodes)

J Muroa, BA(Soc)(Limpopo), MEd(Rhodes)

Facilitators

B Msimango, Diploma in Development Practice

N Shelle, National Diploma in ECD

V Joni, National Diploma in ECD

Financial Administrator

N Jama, National Higher Certificate in
Accountancy (CPUT), National Diploma in Cost
and Management Accounting (CPUT), Advanced
Diploma in Business Project Management (UCT)

Administrative staff

T Nombewu

B Danster

Professional Associate

M Irvine, BA, UED(Rhodes), UED(Pre-Primary
Education)(UNISA), BEd(Hons), MEd(Rhodes)

Visiting Professor:

L Pretorius, BA(Stell), BA(Hons)(Italian), Higher
Education Diploma, BA(Hons)(Linguistics),
MA(Linguistics), D Litt.et Phil(UNISA)

The focus of the Centre for Social Development is Early Childhood Development (ECD). Its work proceeds in three broad directions:

- community development through institutions and activities including, for example, toy libraries and skills training for ECD practitioners in the form of capacity developing workshops, and emergent literacy and numeracy interventions.
- CHE accredited formal teacher education qualifications, namely a part-time Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching) and Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching, which are offered under the auspices of the Education Faculty.
- Engaged research linking the community and academic projects.

The CSD's work provides a pathway for ECD practitioners with little formal education training

into a formal teacher education programme, the BEd (Foundation Phase Teaching) degree. This pathway is contributing to the professionalisation of both the ECD sector and the Foundation Phase (Grades R to 3) of formal schooling.

The CSD undertakes research into literacy, early childhood development and education. The institute is uniquely positioned in the University to contribute to a growing field of engaged research given its dual mandate of academic advancement and community engagement.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN FOUNDATION PHASE LITERACY TEACHING

(NQF Level 6, 120 credits) 2 years part time study
This qualification focuses on literacy teaching and learning in the Foundation Phase of schooling (Grades R to 3) with a particular focus on the development of literacy in African Languages. The qualification consists of 12 modules plus an additional course in computer literacy.

Computer Literacy

(NQF Level 5, 12 credits)

Course description: This is a fundamental course. If students can demonstrate competence, this will be recognised as prior learning. If not, they will be required to attend an introductory course in computer literacy. The course is done in Year 2.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Pass mark: 50%

YEAR 1

CAPS Reading Activities

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module provides an overview of how children learn to read and demonstrates how the various reading activities specified in CAPS (Read Aloud, Shared Reading and Writing, Group Guided Reading, Paired Reading and Independent Reading) enable the learner to move along a continuum of shifting support for reading.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Emergent Literacy

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module looks at the early stages of learning to read and write. It focuses on the importance of Grade R as a context for developing emergent literacy, especially where children are not getting extensive exposure to books at home, and on how Grade R teachers can support children's language and literacy development.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Teaching Decoding

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module explains the role of decoding in learning to read for meaning. It deals with four components of decoding that predict early reading success, namely, (1) phonological and phonemic awareness, (2) alphabetic knowledge and phonics, (3) word recognition, and (4) oral reading fluency.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Teaching Vocabulary

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module focuses on the importance of vocabulary in reading, the nature of vocabulary knowledge and how it develops, what factors can facilitate – or impede – word learning, and what strategies can be explicitly taught to help children become more efficient word learners.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Teaching Comprehension

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module focuses on comprehension processes and how to develop

them. It emphasises the need to explicitly teach strategies that support and develop reading comprehension. It demonstrates how to use questions that help children think about the meaning of what they read, how to teach about text structure, and how to assess comprehension.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Teaching Writing and Handwriting

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module develops understanding of the reciprocal role of reading and writing and provides the teacher with knowledge and tools for teaching writing across the Foundation Phase. It covers stages of writing development; teaching writing using a process and genre approach; CAPS writing activities; teaching creative writing and ways to extend writing; teaching language, spelling and grammar; and assessing writing.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

YEAR 2

Teaching EFAL in the Foundation Phase (1)

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module outlines principles for teaching an additional language in the Foundation Phase and demonstrates how to apply these in the classroom. It contextualises this within the South African Language-in-Education Policy and the current curriculum. The module focuses on setting up the classroom and doing baseline assessment at the start of the year, and how to teach oral language, phonological awareness, phonics and reading in EFAL.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%,
Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Teaching EFAL in Foundation Phase (2)

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: Following on from Teaching EFAL in Foundation Phase (1), this module covers

teaching writing in EFAL, teaching vocabulary and grammar in EFAL, preparing children for the transition to English LoLT in Grade 4, assessing learner's English and planning for EFAL teaching.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Creating a Culture of Reading

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this module is to develop schools and teachers who can create a culture of reading so that children can see on a daily basis that reading is important, that books are valued, that being a good reader is desirable, and that learning about the world through books is a normal part of learning.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Inclusive Education

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module assists the teacher to work in an inclusive classroom in which children may experience a variety of barriers to learning. It focuses on the teacher's role in identifying barriers, on policies and available support services, as well as on practical strategies the teacher can use in the ordinary classroom.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Reading Assessment and Remediation

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This module focuses on assessment of learning in relation to educational principles and curriculum and policy requirements. The purpose of the module is to help teachers understand why assessment of reading and writing is important, how to go about doing it in different contexts and how to plan teaching in light of the results of assessment.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

Planning and Progression

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this module is to help teachers understand why planning for teaching literacy is important and how to go about doing this in relation to educational principles and curriculum and policy requirements. It emphasizes the need to time, sequence and coordinate reading activities in order to make them coherent and meaningful.

Assessment: Test 40%, Assignment 40%, Teaching Portfolio Assessment Task 20%

Pass mark for all assessments: 50%

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (FOUNDATION PHASE TEACHING)

[Part-time] (BDFN1 for 4 year BDFN2 for 5 year)

The curriculum for the five-year programme for candidates holding an Early Childhood Development qualification of 240 credits at NQF Level 5 starts with the following courses. These courses are not included in the four year programme which is for candidates who are professionally qualified teachers, holding an initial teaching qualification of 360 credits at NQF Level 6 or the three year programme for students entering the course as professionally qualified teachers, holding an initial teaching qualification of 180 credits at NQF Level 6 or above.

Year 1 of BDFN2

Education and Professional Studies 3

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Course Description: The purpose of this course is to introduce students to contemporary and comparative perspectives of early childhood and their implications for understanding teaching and learning in the early years.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

English for Teaching 3

(NQF Level 6, 8 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in English.

Assessment: Class record 100%

African Indigenous Language for Teaching 3

(NQF Level 6, 7 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in an official African language.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Note: Students who are not competent in an official African language (non-Mother Tongue speakers) must demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

Performance and Multimodalities 1A (Art)

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this course is two-fold: firstly, to develop the epistemological, experiential and content knowledge necessary for confident, flexible and active teaching and learning of Life Skills. Secondly, to develop students' modalities that can be used in teaching generally to mediate learning.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Performance and Multimodalities 1B (Physical Education)

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this course is two-fold: firstly, to develop the epistemological, experiential and content knowledge necessary for confident, flexible and active teaching and learning of Life Skills. Secondly, it is to develop students' modalities that can be used in teaching generally to mediate learning.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Introduction to Mathematics for Teaching

(NQF Level 5, 5 credits)

Course descriptor: The purpose of this module is to strengthen and develop students' personal knowledge and understanding of foundational Mathematical concepts enabling them to work with 'problems' and Mathematical concepts flexibly

and with confidence. Through this confidence, teachers will empower children with confidence in their own mathematical abilities.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Foundation Phase Studies 1: First Additional Language (English)

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Course descriptors: The purpose of this course is firstly, to enable students to understand the developmental processes involved in acquiring English as an additional Language. Secondly it is to introduce students to the teaching of English as a First Additional Language in a diversity of classroom contexts.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Foundation Phase Studies 1: Home Language

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Course descriptors: The purpose of this course is firstly, to enable students to understand the developmental processes involved in acquiring home language (language and literacy) and the theory that informs this. Secondly it is to introduce students to the teaching of home language in a diversity of classroom contexts.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 1: Life Skills

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Course descriptors: The purpose of this course is to equip students with content, pedagogical and curriculum knowledge to understand and support children's holistic development in relation to Life Skills.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary Examination: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 1: Mathematics

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Course descriptors: The purpose of this course is to develop an understanding of the nature of mathematics; the role of language in learning

mathematics; and advance knowledge of concepts and skills relating to the teaching of shape and space, measurement and data handling in the Foundation

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

YEAR 1 of BDFN1, YEAR 2 of BDFN2

Education and Professional Studies 4

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance Requirement: EPS3 for BDFN2

Course description: The purpose of this course is to introduce students to contemporary and comparative perspectives of early childhood and their implications for understanding teaching and learning in the early years.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

English for Teaching 4

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance Requirement: English for Teaching 3 for BDFN2

Course description: The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in English. In addition, it introduces students to prose fiction, poetry, child language acquisition and children's literature in English and English linguistics (phonology, morphology, grammar, lexis).

Assessment: Class record 100%

African Indigenous Language for Teaching 4

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance Requirement: African Indigenous Language for Teaching 3

Course description: The purpose of this course is to strengthen students' knowledge and proficiency in isiXhosa (Mother Tongue). In addition, it introduces students to prose fiction, poetry, child language acquisition and children's literature in

isiXhosa and isiXhosa linguistics (phonology, morphology, grammar, lexis).

Assessment: Class record 100%

Note: Students who are not competent in an official African language (non-Mother Tongue speakers) must demonstrate conversational competence in such a language.

Understanding the Social and Physical World 2

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance requirement: None

Course description: This course gives students the opportunity to engage with technology, geography and history content knowledge. It develops students' skills in the mentioned components. The course also supplements the teaching of the beginning knowledge towards the Life Skills Subject.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Mathematics for Teaching

(NQF Level 5, 10 credits)

Entrance requirement: Introduction to Maths for teaching for BDFN2

Course description: The Mathematics for Teaching course focuses on the development of content knowledge, mathematical thinking skills and the habits of mind necessary to teach mathematics in the Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: First Additional Language (English)

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits) (Core)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1: FAL English for BDFN2

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It seeks to develop the First Additional Language (FAL) in English, of in-service teachers supporting them to become knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa; and proficient, competent and capable of promoting FAL teaching that is accessible, authentic, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in FAL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Home Language

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1: HL for BDFN2

Course descriptors: The purpose of this course is firstly, to enable students to understand the developmental processes involved in acquiring home language (language and literacy) and the theory that informs this. Secondly it is to introduce students to the teaching of home language in a diversity of classroom contexts.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Life Skills

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 1: Life Skills for BDFN2

Course description: Life Skills is central to the holistic development of the child. This course is aligned to the national school curriculum and aims to provide a framework for understanding how Life Skills fits into the children's education in the Foundation Phase, as well as how the integration of Beginning Knowledge and Personal and Social Well-being, Creative Arts, and Physical Education should support and strengthen the other core Foundation Phase subjects namely Languages (Home and First Additional) and Mathematics.

Assessment: Class record 50%, Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 2: Mathematics

(NQF Level 6, 5 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 1: Mathematics for BDFN2

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum and seeks to develop an understanding of the different approaches to teaching Mathematics in the Foundation Phase

classroom. In addition, it aims to increase teachers' content knowledge of concepts and skills relating to the teaching of number operations and relationships, patterns, measurement, shape and space, and data handling in Foundation Phase Mathematics.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

YEAR 2 of BDFN1, YEAR 3 of BDFN2

Education and Professional Studies 5

(Holistic development of the teacher):

(NQF Level 7, 20 credits)

Entrance requirement: EPS 4

Course description: This course deals with theories and research related to child development and their implications for teaching young children. In addition, it aims to induct students into the study of education and professional issues such as the philosophy and psychology of education. It also includes pedagogy and managing and organising learning.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Performance & Multimodalities 2A

(NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: PMM1

Course description: This course equips students with content and skills of Art in education (Physical education, drama, dance and music) with regards to Foundation Phase teaching. Students are equipped and introduced to the above art components to enable them to have content knowledge and subject matter knowledge that supplement the teaching of Life Skills in Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 100 %

Foundation Phase Studies 3: First

Additional Language (English)

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 FAL English

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It draws from FPS 2 FAL English course and seeks to develop (English) in-service teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa, and proficient, competent, and capable of promoting FAL (English) teaching that is accessible, authentic, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in FAL (English) to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Home Language

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 HL

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It draws from the FPS 2 HL course and seeks to develop First or Home language (HL) in-service teachers who are knowledgeable about language issues in South Africa and proficient, competent and capable of promoting HL teaching that is accessible, authentic, inclusive and meaningful to all learners. It develops students' knowledge and proficiency in HL to support teaching and learning in other subjects in the curriculum.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Life Skills

(NQF Level 6, 10 credits)

Entrance requirements: None

Course description: Life Skills is central to the holistic development of the child. This course is aligned to the national school curriculum and aims to provide a framework for understanding how Life Skills fits into the children's education in the Foundation Phase, as well as how the integration of Beginning Knowledge and Personal and Social Well-being, Creative Arts, and Physical Education should support and strengthen the other core

Foundation Phase subjects namely Languages (Home and First Additional) and Mathematics. This year focuses particularly on Creative Arts (dance, drama, music and the visual arts) and physical Education. It provides theoretical underpinnings, as well as methodologies and ideas for teaching Creative Arts and Physical Education in the Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 3: Mathematics

(NQF Level 6, 9 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 2 Mathematics

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. It draws from the FPS 2 Mathematics course and provides a sound framework for understanding Mathematics education in the Foundation Phase. In addition, it aims to advance teachers' knowledge of theory, concepts and skills relating to the teaching of number operations and relationships, patterns, shape and space, measurement and data handling in Foundation Phase Mathematics.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

YEAR 3 of BDFN1, YEAR 4 of BDFN2

Education and Professional Studies 6

(NQF Level 7, 20 credits)

Entrance requirements: EPS 5

Course description: The purpose of this course is to deepen students' knowledge and understanding of the study of education and professional issues related to ethics, pedagogy and policy.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 4: First Additional Language (English)

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 3 FAL English

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. The purpose of this closure is to deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching English as an additional language in a diversity of contexts.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 4: Home

Language

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 3 HL

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. The purpose of this course is to deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching home language and literacy in a diversity of contexts.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 4: Life Skills

(NQF Level 7, 10 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 3: Life Skills

Course description: This course is aligned to the national school curriculum. The purpose is to deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge to understand and support children's holistic development in relation to Life Skills.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 4: Mathematics

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 3 Mathematics

Course description: The purpose of this course is three-fold. Firstly, to synthesise knowledge of curriculum and knowledge packages to develop learning trajectories for the teaching of the content areas in Foundation Phase Mathematics. Secondly, to manage and organise learning and learning trajectories. Thirdly, to advance knowledge of concepts and skills relating to the teaching of

measurement and data handling in the Foundation Phase.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Understanding the Social and Physical World 3 (NQF Level 6, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: Understanding the Social and Physical World 2

Course description: The purpose of this course is to develop the epistemological, experiential and content knowledge necessary for confident, flexible and active teaching of Life Skills.

Assessment: Class record 100 %

YEAR 4 of BDFN1, YEAR 5 of BDFN2

Education and Professional Studies 7

Entrance requirements: EPS 6

(NQF Level 7, 20 credits)

Course description: The purpose of this course is to deepen students' knowledge and understanding of the study of education and professional issues related to ethics, pedagogy and policy.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 5: First Additional Language (English)

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirement: FPS 4 FAL English

Course description: To deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching English as an additional language in a diversity of contexts.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 5: Home Language

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 4 HL

Course description: To deepen students' pedagogical content knowledge for teaching

English or isiXhosa Home Language/literacy in a diversity of contexts.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 5: Life Skills

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: LS 4

Course description: To deepen students' content, pedagogical and curriculum knowledge to understand and support children's holistic development in relation to Life Skills

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

Foundation Phase Studies 5: Mathematics

(NQF Level 7, 15 credits)

Entrance requirements: FPS 4 Mathematics

Course description: To critically engage with the nature of mathematics, the development of learners' mathematical proficiency and the promotion of access to quality mathematics experiences and knowledge for all children

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: Class Record 40%, Examination 40%

MASTER OF EDUCATION

The CSD offers supervision for full research studies focused on the education of young children from conception to nine years of age.

Please refer to the Education Faculty section for further detail.

DICTIONARY UNIT FOR SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH (DSAE)

Director

T van Niekerk, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)

Senior Editor

B Le Du, BA (UNISA), BA (Hons)(NMMU), MA (Rhodes)

Associate Editor: Systems Development

R Slater, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

The Dictionary Unit for South African English (DSAE) is the National Lexicography Unit (NLU) dedicated to the South African variety of English. Now funded by the Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB), it is one of eleven NLUs (one for each official language). The project of documenting South African English vocabulary and usage was formally initiated in 1969 by the late Professor Bill Branford, Rhodes University's first professor of English Language and Linguistics. Following decades of research by subsequent teams of linguists and lexicographers, including intermediate publishing milestones, the Unit's flagship project was published in print by Oxford University Press as *A Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles (DSAEHist, 1996)*. The lexical archives supporting this unparalleled diachronic linguistic and cultural research project constitute a unique resource for students of the English language as it is used in South Africa, particularly in the context of multilingualism. In addition to computerised holdings and a library of lexicographical materials, the Unit's resources include over 300,000 card indexes collected between 1969 and the 1990s showing contexts for words and phrases in South African English. Sources range from early explorers' and settlers' journals to printed books, contemporary newspapers and oral transcriptions. Subsequently the DSAE became a Digital Humanities project. In 2014 the DSAE's transition to electronic platforms and research methods was

signalled by the publication of a pilot online version of the historical *Dictionary of South African English (DSAE)*. Following early collaborations with the University of Hildesheim, Germany and the University of Stellenbosch, South Africa – and associated journal publications – the Unit produced a comprehensive electronic adaptation of this dictionary as an enhanced Desktop Edition (2019) followed by the Mobile Edition (2020). Both are freely accessible at <http://dsae.co.za>. Locally and internationally, the Unit – now an online dictionary publisher in its own right – plays a leading role in electronic dictionary design, as evidenced by its most recent, cutting-edge project, the *DSAE Visual Edition* (<http://visual.dsae.co.za>, 2021). Its current project is the dramatic expansion of the Unit's electronic database holdings by applying computational linguistic methods to a newly-created South African English corpus of about 3 billion words.

In addition to its dictionary projects, the DSAE assists both national and international researchers as well as the general public with enquiries about South African English. It contributes to the promotion of multilingualism in South Africa by maintaining regular contact with the National Lexicography Units for all other official languages and participating in the wider language community.

The DSAE is an Associated Institute of Rhodes University, operating as a registered Non-Profit Company. In addition to core funding from PanSALB, the DSAE receives royalties from the sales of its commercial publications, the *Francolin Illustrated School Dictionary for Southern Africa* (Francolin 1997/Longman 2001), the *Oxford South African Concise Dictionary* (OUP Southern Africa 2010) and the *Oxford South African Pocket Dictionary* (2015).

For more information, see www.ru.ac.za/dsae/

INSTITUTE FOR ENVIRONMENTAL BIOTECHNOLOGY (EBRU)

Professor and Director

AK Cowan, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Researcher

To be appointed

Administrative Officer:

To be appointed

Fellows

L Sekhohola-Dlamini, PhD (Rhodes)

Y Titilawo, PhD (Fort Hare)

H Tsikos, PhD (Rhodes)

The Institute for Environmental Biotechnology, Rhodes University (EBRU) targets research in environmental biotechnology at the interface between the fundamental and applied sciences. In doing so it undertakes the innovation and development of bioprocess solutions to environmental problems, and focuses on the diffusion and transfer of environmental technology from laboratory to full-scale industrial application. This activity targets excellence in capacity building and the development of associated academic and applied disciplines. Historically, innovation and development of environmental bioprocesses related to water treatment was the main focus area. More recently, the scope of research and bioprocess development has been widened to include contemporary fields such as alternative energy and bio-fuels. As part of our human resource development programme the institute offers intensive Masters' and Doctoral research opportunities. The various research programmes are focused on the development of human resource capacity and link the application of biotechnology to industrial and municipal related environmental degradation, and clean technology.

Environmental biotechnology may be defined as the development, use and regulation of biological systems and their derivatives and processes for sustainable socio-economic benefit in environmental protection, remediation and energy generation. It is a knowledge-intensive, research-driven field which addresses a broad spectrum of environmental sector needs in the major areas of soil, air, and water, and in co-product (waste) valorization. In brief, use of natural products / microbes to perform industrially important tasks in an environmentally sustainable way is the focus of attention.

EBRU welcomes applications to undertake independent postgraduate research in the field of environmental biotechnology. Candidates who are employed and fulfil the admission criteria may after consultation with the Institute register as 'not in attendance' and undertake their research remotely. Opportunities are available for MSc (180 credits and NQF level 9) and PhD (360 credits and NQF level 10) study by research in agricultural biotechnology, industrial and municipal wastewater bioremediation and beneficiation, land rehabilitation, microalgal biotechnology, and renewable energy. The entrance requirements for research MSc and PhD degrees are outlined in the General Rules section of the Rhodes University calendar. Candidates with an Honour's degree in the chemical, natural and/or life sciences are welcome to apply for the MSc degree, while PhD candidates are required to already be in possession of a relevant postgraduate qualification at time of application. Applications are also welcome from candidates interested in postdoctoral fellowship at the Institute. For further information, please visit the Institute's website (<http://www.ru.ac.za/eburu/>).

ELECTRON MICROSCOPY UNIT

Senior Instrument Scientist and Head of Department

D van Niekerk BSc, BSc (Hons) (RAU), MS, PhD (Hawaii)

Technical Officer

MA Randall

The Electron Microscopy Unit was established as an autonomous service department in the Faculty of Science in 1972. It is a central facility open to all Departments & Faculties. The laboratory pursues a modern academic & research agenda; it gives access and basic training to students and scientists to collect their own data, using electron beam techniques for the purpose of high-resolution microscopy & micro-analysis. More in-depth

collaboration between unit staff and Users is available via co-authorship of published output. The Unit has operated several generations of SEM & TEM instruments. Current instrumentation include: i) a new TESCAN Clara field emission scanning electron microscope, ii) a ZEISS Libra 120 Plus EFTEM transmission electron microscope (retired in 2023; efforts will be made in future to replace it but for now Users must travel elsewhere for TEM work or use the lower resolution (S)TEM detector on the Clara SEM), iii) a JEOL 8230 Electron Probe Micro-Analyser (aka electron microprobe). Supporting equipment include various sample preparation instruments and other microscopes.

THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF THE ENGLISHES OF AFRICA (ISEA)

Associate Professor and Director

M Mbelani, BA(ED)(UNITRA),
BEd(Hons)(UNISA), ACE(ELT), MED(ELT),
PhD(Rhodes)

Alan Macintosh Research Fellow

R Mawela, BA(Andrews), HDE, MEd(Solusi),
HDE(UNITRA), PhD(Rhodes)

Research Officer

Vacant

Researcher

ZM Mamase, BA, PGCE, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

School Support Facilitator

X Ntinkinca, SPDT (Clarkebury College of
Education), BCompt (UNITRA), BEd (ELT),
BEd (Hons), MEd (ELT) Rhodes

Research Associates

RS Berold, BSc(Eng)(Wits), MA(Cantab)
B Willan, BA(Hons), MA, PhD(London)

Publications Manager

C Leff, BA(Wits), BA(Hons), MA,
PhD(Rhodes)

Editor: English in Africa

Vacant

Editor: New Coin Poetry

v gantsho, MA(Rhodes)

Administrative Officer

U Ntshakaza, ND:Internal Auditing(CPUT)

Secretary

N Kelemi

Professor Emeritus

Prof MG Hendricks, BA, HDE(UCT),
BA(Hons), MEd(Rhodes), PhD(Wits)

The Institute was established in July 1964 during the University's Diamond Jubilee celebrations, at the suggestion of Professor Guy Butler. The mission of the ISEA is to "sponsor research, collect information, provide liaison with South African and overseas scholarship and organize conferences and courses of training for teachers and others interested in language".

Whilst celebrating its 50th anniversary in 2014, the ISEA was motivated to consider the language dynamics in Africa and hence there was a change of name from the Institute for the Study of

English in Africa to the Institute for the Study of the Englishes of Africa.

The ISEA is a research institute within the University subsidised largely by private donations and endowments, and it retains complete independence in its research.

Since its inception, the Institute has given rise to three independent organisations:

The National English Literary Museum (Currently Amazwi South African Museum of Literature)

The Dictionary Unit for South African English
The Molteno Language and Literacy Institute.

The first two are separate, nationally-funded institutions, while the Molteno Institute for Language and Literacies, the largest and most successful language-learning programme in primary education in Southern Africa, is now an independent institute.

Today, the ISEA fulfils the aims of its founders in teacher education, research and development projects in English education; in the publication of journals devoted to the English language in South Africa; and by providing a research base for scholars working in the field covered by the Institute.

The ISEA offers an extra-curricular short-course in Creative Writing.

Publications

Periodicals published by the ISEA include *English in Africa* (from 1974), a scholarly journal devoted to African writing in English, *New Coin Poetry* (from 1964), and *Shakespeare in Southern Africa* (from 1987). In addition, the ISEA publishes research reports, scholarly monographs, anthologies and collections of poetry.

The ISEA offers the following qualifications in the Faculty of Education:

Bachelor of Education (Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching) (part time, in-service)

Bachelor of Education Honours in Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access

Master of Education (full thesis)

Doctor of Philosophy

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE AND FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING) IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING

Part-Time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education

The BEd (Senior/FET Teaching) in ELT qualification is offered as a three year part-time Continuing Professional Development qualification for in-service teachers admitted under E.11.3. In each year there are common core modules, a major specialisation in English First Additional Language (FAL) Senior Phase, a minor specialisation in English First Additional Language (FAL) FET Phase, and a minor specialisation in School Librarianship.

CORE MODULES

Education Studies 5

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Teaching Tools and Technologies 5

(NQF level 6, 10 credits)

Course Description: This module introduces how literacy provides fundamental skills, tools, and technologies for teaching. It is

structured in three strands: Mathematical Literacy, Information Technology, and Academic Literacy. In the first year, it develops a sound reflective practice-based engagement with educational technology and cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum: None

Professional Studies 5

(NQF level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

English FAL Major (SP) 1:

(NQF level 6, 17 credits)

Course Description: This is one of the specialism modules. It combines Literature and Grammar.

It aims to develop a deep and comprehensive knowledge of English and a level of proficiency in English, which enhances the teacher's capacity to teach English FAL.

It also aims to develop an understanding of grade-appropriate pedagogies in English FAL learning and teaching for the Senior Phase & FET Phase.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40- 49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

English FAL Minor (FET) 1:

(NQF level 6, 10 credits)

Course Description: This course develops knowledge of English and a level of proficiency in English.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40- 49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

School Librarianship 1

(NQF level 6, 11 credits)

Course description: This course deepens teachers' understanding of the language learning benefits of reading for pleasure/extensive reading. It provides practical knowledge of the steps involved in setting up a classroom library and extensive reading programme.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum: None

Year 2

Education Studies 6

(NQF level 7, 15 credits)

Course Description: This course seeks to challenge the current standard teaching practice. To make these challenges explicit to our students so they can engage with and make their voices heard in this process.

The theory is most effectively developed when it is brought into the context of a particular practice in a way that gives insight and clarity, as well as the language that allows us to engage flexibly and effectively with the context.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Teaching Tools and Technologies 6

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course description: This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Sub-minimum: None

Professional Studies 6

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course Description: This module develops a theoretically informed, critical, reflective, and reflexive understanding of the teaching profession: the teacher and the school community, lesson and medium-term planning, and teaching.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination Equivalent 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam equivalent

English FAL Major (SP) 2

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

Course description: This course develops a deeper understanding of English, an understanding of methodologies appropriate to additional language learning in the Senior Phase, and a level of spoken and written proficiency in English to promote a sound teaching base for the Senior Phase.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

English FAL Minor (FET) 2

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

Course description: This course deepens teachers' understanding of critical language awareness in English, an understanding of methodologies appropriate to additional language learning in the FET Phase, core language skills and develops a level of spoken and written proficiency in English to promote a sound teaching base for English FAL in the FET Phase.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40-49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

School Librarianship 2:

(NQF level 7, 11 credits)

Course Description: This module guides teachers to reflect on and research the implementation of an extensive reading program. The guiding framework uses action

research as a methodology and the co-construction of research tools to gather data (a school textbook audit form, a questionnaire for the learner case study, and progress reports).

Assessment: Class record 100%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum: None

Year 3:

Education Studies 7

(NQF level 7, 15 credits)

Course Description: This course aims to challenge the current standard practice of teaching. It also aims to make these challenges explicit to our students so they can engage with and make their voices heard in this process.

The theory is most effectively developed when it is brought into the context of a particular practice in a way that gives insight and clarity, as well as the language that allows us to engage flexibly and effectively with the context.

The in-service students are very different from pre-service students because they are experienced practitioners, and so have extensive experience in practicing in context. We will help them develop and improve their teaching by explicitly asking them to challenge their practice.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40- 49%

Sub-minimum: 40%

Teaching Tools and Technologies 7

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course Description: This module develops the student's research skills with a particular emphasis on classroom-based research of teaching practice.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum: None

Professional Studies 7

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course Description: Ethical issues and teaching -general ethics studies, ethics as relates to diversity, ethics as relates to schools and

schooling (links to subversive nature of teaching – bell hook – in Ed studs)

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination Equivalent 50%

Supplementary exam: 40- 49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam equivalent

English FAL Major (SP) 3:

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

Course Description: This is one of the specialism modules. This module deepens and refines understanding of English and deepens an understanding of methodologies appropriate to additional language learning in the Senior Phase & FET Phase.

It deepens knowledge of the gaps between South African language education policy and practice and how English can grow high levels of literacy and proficiency in English FAL while responding to multilingual classroom realities.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40- 49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

English FAL Minor (FET) 3:

(NQF level 7, 17credits)

Course Description: This module

deepens knowledge of the gaps between South African language education policy and practice and how English can grow high levels of literacy and proficiency in English FAL while responding to multilingual classroom realities.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Supplementary exam: 40- 49%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

School Librarianship 3:

(NQF level 7, 11 credits)

Course Description: This module guides teachers in writing a research report that critically reflects on the implementation of their extensive and intensive reading projects.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Supplementary exam: None

Sub-minimum: None

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS)

The BEd Honours qualification is a 120-credit, NQF level 8 degree, normally offered on a part-time basis. It is intended to prepare candidates for research-based postgraduate studies in a particular field of education. It serves to consolidate and deepen candidates' expertise and theoretical engagement in educational practice, and develop research capacity in the methodology and techniques of educational research. The first year covers the Foundation Programme and the second year covers the Specialism Programme.

Foundation Programme

The foundation programme comprises a 30-credit course called "Educational Ideas and Issues" and a 30-credit course called "Research in Education". See the Department of Secondary and post-School Education for descriptors of the foundation courses.

Specialism Programme

The ISEA offers one specialism (Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access) from a suite of specialism Honours programmes offered by

the Departments of Primary & Early Childhood Education, and Secondary & Post-School Education (for further details on these refer to the entries for these departments).

Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access

(NQF Level 8, 60 credits)

This module examines key debates in bi/multilingual education, drawing on Janks's theoretical framework of power, diversity, access and design to explore relationships between language(s) learning and teaching, on the one hand, and societal language policy and practices, on the other. Through seminars and structured reading, the module engages with issues of language(s), identity and power, language policy and planning in South Africa, and the challenges of literacy, diversity and epistemic access in South African education.

The 'Research Project in Language Education' module is to be conducted as a supported educational research course; that is, by supervision and collaborative peer self-study, the student is guided through an independent, practice-based research process, by means of selected readings and developmental on-course activities.

INSTITUTE OF SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC RESEARCH

Director

Cyril Nhlanhla Mbatha, BA (Hons) Rhodes, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Researcher

Reesha Kara, PhD (Rhodes)

Academic and Research Administrator

Jamie Alexander, MA (Rhodes)

Financial Administrator

Gail Bint

Administrative Assistant

Bulelani Mothlabane

Professor Emeritus

Valerie Møller, Lic. Phil, PhD (Zurich)

Visiting Professors

Ben Fine, BA, BPhil (Oxon), PhD (London)

Edward Webster, BA (Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Oxon), BPhil (York), PhD (Wits)

Pantaleo Daniel Rwelamila, PhD, FCIQB, PrCMP, MAACE, MIAC, MIAPP

Visiting Fellow

Steffan Otterbach, PhD (Honeheim)

Martin Gustafsson, BA (UCT), BA Hons (Unisa), MA (Stellenbosch), PhD (Stellenbosch)

Research Fellow

Samuel Sadian, MA (Rhodes), PhD (Barcelona)

Research Associate

Wandile Sihlobo, BSc Agric. Econ. (UFH), Msc (Stellenbosch)

The Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER) was established in Rhodes University in 1954. Strongly grounded in the Eastern Cape since its inception, the ISER soon developed a diverse portfolio of research initiatives involving its own staff and staff members of other Rhodes academic departments. Throughout its existence, engagement by academics from a range of departments within the university in the work of the ISER contributed not only to the content and quality of ISER's research work, but also enriched teaching within those academics' home departments.

Scholars associated with the ISER in the early period of its establishment produced a series of scholarly volumes comprising the Keiskammahoek

Rural Survey (1947–1952) and the Border Regional Survey (1956–1964) amongst others. Although the former documented changes in Keiskammahoek since the establishment of the apartheid regime in 1948, the ISER, in its early years, generally did not engage with the consequences of apartheid for the well-being of the black majority, and did not challenge the status quo of repressive, white minority rule. This approach gradually changed in later years, when the ISER came to engage more actively with the social conditions and development problems of the Eastern Cape through empirical research and public policy engagement.

Currently the ISER focuses on multidisciplinary research across varied socio-economic challenges in rural and urban spaces, locally, nationally and on the African continent. These include socio-economic research activities on the interface of the use and consumption of agricultural land and environmental water resources, cross border trade, rural to urban livelihoods, informal to formal economic sector activities, digital skills development and education issues for youth employment and productive activities, and other such related areas under the leadership of Prof. Cyril Nhlanhla Mbatha who joined the ISER in 2020.

A brief history

Under Prof Peter Vale's Directorship from 1984, the ISER's research agenda directly and indirectly exposed the consequences of the apartheid political economy on the black inhabitants of the Eastern Cape. The ISER developed a research specialisation on well-being studies under Professor Valerie Møller, a leading internationally recognised scholar in the field and Director of the ISER between 1998 and 2006. From 2006 to 2010, the ISER was led by Professor Greg Ruiters, who introduced a vibrant, large-scale programme of research rooted in concerns of political economy and municipal service provision in the Eastern Cape. Prof Ruiters also introduced an annual ISER Winter School, which drew together community-based organisations and leading academics into in-

depth discussions on topical social, developmental and political concerns for the province and the country.

In 2009, the ISER started developing Social Policy as a core research and teaching focus area, joined, in late 2012, by labour studies. Led by Prof Robert van Niekerk, the Social Policy focus area developed into a number of collaborative research programmes including programmes on health, social policy and the developmental role of the state and social citizenship. The Social Policy focus area was strengthened by the appointment of Prof Rebecca Surender in 2014 until her departure in 2015. Work on Social Policy as a distinct focus area was discontinued in mid-2018.

The Neil Aggett Labour Studies Unit (NALSU) was established in 2012 under the leadership of Dr John Reynolds and formally launched in 2014. NALSU, a hub for labour studies at Rhodes University, was relocated out of the ISER in 2019.

The ISER has had an abiding influence on a number of institutions within Rhodes University and the wider Eastern Cape. In 1979, the International Library of African Music was moved to Rhodes University under the auspices of the ISER, where it was hosted until its incorporation into the Rhodes Department of Music and Musicology in the mid-nineties. Also in 1979, a Development Studies Unit, headed by a Chair in Development Studies, was started; that unit was discontinued in 1994, when Prof Bill Davies joined the new Eastern Cape Provincial Government, where he built an economic planning and research unit in the Department of Economic Affairs, Environment and Tourism. An International Studies Unit was established in the ISER in 1988 and, in 1992, was migrated to the Rhodes Department of Political Studies, into which it was fully incorporated in the early 2000s, changing the name of the department to the Department of Political and International Studies. In 2003, the East London branch of the ISER was incorporated into the University of Fort Hare as the Fort Hare Institute of Social and Economic Research (FHISER).

POSTGRADUATE DEGREES

The following is the general information and requirements for postgraduate study in ISER.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degree in Development Studies

The ISER is participating in the offering of the Interdisciplinary Honours Degree in Development Studies in the Faculty of Humanities. It participates by coordinating a specialised programme, with modules selected annually from other participating departments that are listed under the programme (see Interdepartmental Studies in this Calendar). The ISER's coordinated programme is aimed at developing theoretical and technical skills for social and economic policy analyses. From the contributing departments the programme will present the following core and elective topics on, a) Discussions and analyses of selected social and economic policies in South Africa and in an African context; b) Political thinking and challenges on the African continent; c) Topics on the South African economic history; d) Policy and political language analyses OR Organised labour movement issues in Africa OR Development Economics and Trade & Industrial Policy (Economics and Economic History) OR Development Economics and Environmental Resources Economics.

An interdisciplinary honours degree in Development Studies may be undertaken on a fulltime basis. To be accepted as an honours student for interdisciplinary degree under the ISER, applicants would usually require a bachelor's degree with at least a good second class pass in a social science discipline, as well as satisfy *any honours module pre-requisite requirements*. Applicants for honours study would usually be submitted by 15 November of the year preceding the year of study, and would require approval by the Director: ISER.

The Honours degree programme requires students to register for at least four semester modules which will be presented by the following departments as well as a research project undertaken in the participating departments:

- a) The Institute of Social and Economic Research
- b) Political and International Studies
- c) History
- d) Linguistics and Applied Language Studies
- e) Sociology
- f) Economics and Economic History

The list of available modules and presenters from each participating department will be presented to prospective students by the ISER at the beginning of each academic year.

Master's Degree

A Master's degree by thesis may be undertaken on a full-time or part-time basis. To be accepted as a Master's student in the ISER, applicants would usually require an Honours degree with at least a good second class pass in a social science discipline. Applications for Master's study would usually need to be submitted by 15 November of

the year preceding the first year of study, and would require approval of the ISER Research Committee, which would also consider supervisory capacity.

Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the ISER Research Committee and the Higher Degrees Committee of either the Humanities or Commerce Faculties. Under the supervision of an academic staff member, students produce a full-length research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor and approved by the Faculty in which they are registered.

Doctoral Degree (PhD)

A PhD may be taken by thesis (see the General Rules and Higher Degrees Guide). Prospective students must usually be in possession of a good Master's degree in a social science discipline. Applications for PhD study would require approval of the ISER Research Committee, which would also consider supervisory capacity.

Students complete a thesis proposal that is approved by the ISER Research Committee and the Higher Degrees Committee of either the Humanities or Commerce Faculties. Under the supervision of an academic staff member, students produce a full-length research thesis on a topic negotiated with a supervisor and approved by the Faculty in which they are registered.

THE INSTITUTE FOR WATER RESEARCH (IWR)

Incorporating the Centre for Environmental Water Quality (CEWQ) and ARUA Centre of Excellence in Water (Water CoE)

Professor and Director

ON Odume, PhD (Rhodes), Pr Sci Nat

Associate Professor

SK Mantel, PhD (Hong Kong); Pr Sci Nat

Senior Researchers

Director ARUA Water CoE

J Tanner, PhD (Rhodes)

Academic Lead: CEWQ

CF Nnadozie, PhD (UKZN)

Researchers

N Griffin, PhD (Cape Town)

M Weaver, PhD (Rhodes)

Junior Researcher

J Alexander, MA (Rhodes)

Professors Emeriti

DA Hughes, PhD (Wales), Pr Sc Nat

CG Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)

AR Palmer, PhD (Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

JH Slinger, PhD (Stell) from TU Delft, Netherlands

L Mack, PhD (Indiana)

Senior Research Associates

PK Mensah PhD (Rhodes)

E Igbinigie PhD (Rhodes)

O Gwate PhD (Rhodes)

Dr WJ Muller (Rhodes)

Dr P Scherman (Rhodes)

Research Associate

JK Clifford-Holmes PhD (Rhodes)

AR Slaughter PhD (Rhodes)

Dr J Glenday (UCSB)

AR Henriksson PhD (Stockholm)

The Institute for Water Research (IWR) is home to a multi-disciplinary group of researchers and post-graduate students, that contribute to the understanding and sustainable management of water resources in Africa. These objectives are achieved through fundamental and applied research into the structure, function and components of natural water systems and their associated social systems, in the landscape. There is an emphasis on the co-development of

knowledge, and knowledge sharing, directly and through academic and more accessible publications. Consulting services are offered to solve specific problems through the application of research developments. The IWR contributes to teaching at both undergraduate and postgraduate levels, as well as offering professional training courses and other capacity building and professional training initiatives. Specifically, postgraduate students can register in the Institute for MSc and PhD degrees (by thesis) in both Hydrology and Water Resource Science. Candidates interested in the Hydrology degree must be in possession of an appropriate qualification – MSc in the case of a PhD in Hydrology, or Honours in the case of MSc in Hydrology, normally in the physical sciences such as Hydrology, Geography, Geology, Environmental Science, or a related discipline. Candidates interested in the Water Resource Science degree must be in possession of an appropriate qualification – MSc in the case of a PhD in Water Resource Science, or Honours in the case of MSc in Water Resource Science, normally in the Biological/Chemical Sciences such as Zoology/Ecology, Microbiology, Chemistry, Environmental Science or a related discipline. The IWR contributes modules to the Honours Degree in Environmental Water Management, in the Department of Geography:

Candidates interested in the Environmental Water Management Honours degree must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelor's degree, normally majoring in at least one of Geography, Environmental Science/Ecology, Biological/Chemical Sciences or Hydrology. Other candidates with appropriate professional experience in water resource management may be considered. This degree aims to equip students with the conceptual understanding and practical knowledge that are needed to make an effective contribution to the sustainable management of catchment systems and their associated water

resources. Additional details regarding the Honours degree in Environmental Water Management should be obtained from the Geography. Department.

The Institute has extensive continental network. It is the hub of the African Research University Alliance (ARUA) Centre of Excellence in Water (Water CoE). The ARUA Water CoE partner universities are University of Cape Town, University of Kwazulu-Natal, University of Lagos, University of Dar es Salam, University of Rwanda, Makerere University, and Cheikh Ant Diop University,. The IWR is also the host of the African Water Resource Mobility Network (AWaRMN), comprising of six partner universities: Rhodes University, Makerere University, University of Kinshasa, Federal University of Technology, Minna, Higher School of Hydraulics, Blida, and TU Delft. The IWR is the co-host (together with the Environmental Learning Research Centre (ELRC) and Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER) of the Future Earth Africa Hub Leadership Centre at Rhodes. The IWR is also the co-host of the Africa-Europe Cluster of Research Excellence in Water Resource Management for a sustainable and just future. The IWR is an important partner in the Africa Multiple Cluster of Excellence, within the context of the Rhodes University Africa Studies Centre . As a result, research projects at the IWR are global in outlook, addressing pressing water-related challenges with a focus on the African continent and facilitating the training and mobility of students and staff across Africa.

Staff members of the IWR serve on various research, management and policy making committees both within South Africa and internationally. The staff of the Institute actively collaborate with other departments and institutes at Rhodes University including the departments of Geography, Zoology and Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, the Environmental Learning Research Centre, The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity and the Albany Museum. The Institute also cooperates with other universities, state

departments and private consulting companies, both in South Africa and internationally.

The Institute has expertise in several areas within the broad field of water resource science, including hydrology, Integrated Water Resource Management, freshwater ecology, water chemistry data and analysis, ecotoxicology, biomonitoring, the management of water services, water governance, computational and molecular microbiology, GIS and remote sensing and community- based engaged education. The combination of research and practical problem solving within the IWR allows recently developed research methods to be rapidly deployed for water resource planning and management. Within the field of ecology, the Institute has focused on understanding the processes and requirements of aquatic ecosystems and the effects of flow variability and anthropogenic stressors. Much of the work has been directed at assessing the environmental water quantity and quality requirements of rivers, an important component of the 'Reserve' determination process designed to ensure the sustainable use of water resources under the National Water Act (No 36 of 1998). This research has been supported by the IWR's long history (over 30 years) of research into the development and application of methods for analysing and modelling hydrological information for various water resource planning and management purposes. The focus has been on combining a sound understanding of hydrological processes with the development of practical simulation tools. This has included the development of computer software designed to facilitate access to hydrological information and the integration of modelling and data visualisation tools with databases. Recent work has focused on issues of uncertainty (including climate change effects) associated with hydrological estimation and how imperfect information impacts on decision making.

Within the IWR, the Centre for Environmental Water Quality (CEWQ) focuses on ecology, environmental water quality, and water governance. The main focus of the ecology work include aquatic microbial ecology, ecotoxicology,

biomonitoring and water chemistry. Aquatic Microbial Ecology focuses on determining the diversity and function of freshwater microorganisms (mainly prokaryotes), effect of ecological and environmental influences on aquatic microbial communities and their functions and vice-versa. Our interest is on functional microbial that carry out key processes in freshwater environments. Additional interest of the Aquatic Microbial Ecology research is on the role of freshwater systems and urban water cycle in the spread of antibiotic resistant bacteria and other waterborne bacterial pathogens.

Ecotoxicology at the IWR concentrates on determining the tolerances of indigenous riverine macroinvertebrates and algae, under controlled laboratory conditions, to selected water quality variables and complex effluents. Ecotoxicology is included in an integrated approach to assessing the water quality of a water resource and is being practically applied to evaluate the effects of industrial effluents on rivers. CEWQ is actively involved in the development of policies and strategies for improving the quality of the nation's

freshwater resources. In recent years, CEWQ has initiated research into complex social-ecological systems and the need to account for multiple perspectives and adopt transdisciplinary approaches to solving water resources management problems. CEWQ research has extended to explicitly include connections between people and their landscapes, viewing surface and groundwater catchments as complex social-ecological systems.

The IWR is largely self-funded, and managed through a Board, made up of representatives of Rhodes University, private, government and other university groups who have an interest in water resources, locally and internationally. It derives part of its income from research contracts with local and international funding agencies, such as the Water Research Commission, the European Union, UKRI, GIZ, NRF, etc.). The majority of the remaining income base is from shorter term consultancy projects through partnerships with consulting companies.

RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP)

Director

F Mkhwane, STD, BA(UNITRA), BEd(UNISA), BTech(Bus Adm.)(PE Tech), MBA(NMMU), MEd(Rhodes)

Projects Coordinator

T Haywood, DESP (Dower College), ACE(Mathematics), BEd(Hons), MEd(Rhodes)

Facilitator Northern Cape

V Mrubata, STDip(Transkei College of Education), BCompt(WSU)

Facilitators

S Wood, BSc(UCT), BA(UCT), HED(UNISA)
N Munemo, BSc(Hons)(UZ), PGCE(UWC), BEd(Hons)(UNISA), MEd(NMU)

Collegial Cluster Facilitator

Vacant

Administrative Assistant

Z Mvane

The Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project is an outreach programme of the University. RUMEP offers Mathematics Education teacher professional development, and develops curriculum resources for use in schools. It conducts short courses for the Department of Education and other NGOs. RUMEP publishes reports, articles and newsletters in the field of mathematics education, and provides a centre for research in mathematics education. RUMEP offers a Bachelor of Education degree in Senior Phase and Further Education Teaching with a Mathematics specialism for in-service Mathematics teachers. The admission requirements rules are contained in the Education Faculty section

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (SENIOR PHASE AND FURTHER EDUCATION AND TRAINING TEACHING) IN MATHEMATICS TEACHING

[Part-time, Continuing Teacher Professional Education]

Year 1

Education Studies 5

(NQF level 6, 15 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Supplementary: 40-49%

Teaching Tools and Technologies 5

(NQF level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice including numeracy, and academic literacy.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Professional Studies 5

(NQF level 6, 10 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: productive pedagogies, SACE code of conduct, inclusive learning, diversity and learning support materials evaluation.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Senior Phase Major 1

(NQF level 6, 21 credits)

(for those specialising in Senior Phase Mathematics)

Course description: This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for Senior Phase Mathematics in schools. The emphasis is on all mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase. Students engage with numbers, operations and relationships, patterns, functions and algebra, measurement, geometry, statistics and

probability. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform the teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Further Education and Training Minor 1

(NQF level 6, 12 credits)

Entrance requirements: (same as above)

Course description: This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a higher cognitive level and to promote a level of confidence and to develop their understanding of more detailed mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Further Education and Training Band. In addition the emphasis on more complex content knowledge such as algebra, functions, trigonometry, statistics and probability are studied.

Credits: 12

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Further Education and Training Major 1

(NQF level 6, 21 credits)

(for those specializing in FET Mathematics)

Course description: This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for FET Mathematics in schools. Key content areas covered include functions, finance and growth, patterns, functions, algebra, statistics, probability and Euclidean Geometry at a higher cognitive level. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Senior Phase Minor 1

(NQF level 6, 12 credits)

Course description: This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a fundamental level and to promote a level of confidence to develop students understanding of the basic mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase, including, patterns, functions and algebra, Euclidean geometry, data handling and probability.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Literacy 1

(NQF level 6, 12 credits)

Course description: This course focuses on integrating the mathematical skills and knowledge used to develop competence in solving practical problems.

Work focuses on skills and knowledge acquired by the end of senior phase in the school curriculum, and specialises in application situations we find in numbers and calculations with numbers, data handling and probability. Students will be expected to apply knowledge in problem-solving situations, and be able to refer to underlying principles which govern actions and concepts in problem-solving work.

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Year 2

Education Studies 6

(NQF level 7, 15 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy. It develops a critical reflective and reflexive understanding of theory in practice.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Teaching Tools and Technologies 6:

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course description: This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with

educational technology and the cognitive tools of the teaching community of practice.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Professional Studies 6:

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: classroom management, planning, sequencing, pace and progression, integration, intellectual quality, barriers to learning and lesson observations.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Mathematics Senior Phase Major 2

(NQF level 7, 16 credits)

(for those specialising in Senior Phase Mathematics)

Course description: This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for Senior Phase Mathematics in schools. The emphasis is on all mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase. Students engage with numbers, operations and relationships, patterns, functions and algebra, measurement, geometry and data handling. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform the teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

Credits: 16

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Further Education and Training Minor 2

(NQF level 7, 9 credits)

Entrance requirements: (same as above)

Course description: This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a higher cognitive level and to promote a level of confidence and to develop their understanding of more detailed mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Further Education and Training Band. In addition the emphasis on more complex

content knowledge such as algebra, inequalities, functions, trigonometry, geometry, statistics and probability are studied.

Credits: 9

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Further Education and Training Major 2

(NQF level 7, 16 credits)

(for those specializing in FET Mathematics)

Course description: This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for FET Mathematics in schools. Key content areas covered include functions, trigonometric identities, limits and continuity, euclidean geometry, statistics and probability at a higher cognitive level. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

Credits: 16

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Senior Phase Minor 2

(NQF level 7, 9 credits)

Course description: This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a fundamental level and to promote a level of confidence to develop students understanding of the basic mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase.

Credits: 9

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Literacy 2

(NQF level 7, 20 credits)

Course description: This course focuses on integrating the mathematical skills and knowledge used to develop competence in solving practical problems.

Work focuses on skills and knowledge acquired by the end of senior phase in the school curriculum, and specialises in application situations we find in

finance, measurement and maps, and plans applications. Students will be expected to apply knowledge in problem-solving situations, and be able to refer to underlying principles which govern actions and concepts in problem-solving work.

Credits: 14

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%
Sub-minimum 40% exam

Year 3

Education Studies 7

(NQF level 7, 15 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge in the study of education (history of education, theories of pedagogy), with particular emphasis on grounding this knowledge in a socio-culturally situated South African educational practice.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Teaching Tools and Technologies 7:

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course description: This course develops a sound, reflective, practice-based engagement with educational technology. Engaging in a “How I Teach” research project.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Professional Studies 7:

(NQF level 7, 10 credits)

Course description: This course consolidates knowledge of professional issues in teaching and grounds this knowledge in educational and classroom practice: errors and misconceptions, construction of a portfolio of evidence and classroom observation.

Assessment: Class record 100%

Mathematics Senior Phase Major 3

(NQF level 7, 28 credits)

(for those specialising in Senior Phase Mathematics)

Course description: This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for Senior Phase Mathematics in schools. The emphasis is on all mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase. Students engage with numbers,

operations and relationships, functions and algebra, transformational geometry. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform the teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

Assessment: Class record 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Further Education and Training Minor 3

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

Entrance requirements: (same as above)

Course description: This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a higher cognitive level and to promote a level of confidence and to develop their understanding of more detailed mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Further Education and Training Band. In addition the emphasis on more complex content knowledge such as algebra, functions, inverse functions and logarithms, analytical geometry, probability are studied.

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Further Education and Training Major 3

(NQF level 7, 28 credits)

(for those specializing in FET Mathematics)

Course description: This course focuses on the current teaching and learning context for FET Mathematics in schools. Key content areas covered include patterns, functions and algebra, trigonometric identities, differential calculus, Euclidean geometry at a higher cognitive level. In addition, the course seeks to provide students with the necessary competencies to develop detailed lesson plans together with the use of appropriate teaching strategies and media to inform teaching and learning in the Mathematics classroom.

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

Mathematics Senior Phase Minor 3

(NQF level 7, 17 credits)

Course description: This course aims to allow students to interact with mathematics at a fundamental level and to promote a level of confidence to develop students understanding of the basic mathematical knowledge and skills applicable to the Senior Phase, including, patterns, functions and algebra, Euclidean geometry, data handling and probability.

Assessment: Class record: 50% Examination 50%

Sub-minimum: 40% exam

SOUTH AFRICAN INSTITUTE FOR AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY (SAIAB)

Managing Director

A Chakona, PhD (Rhodes)

Director's Personal Assistant

N Nyoka

RESEARCH DIVISION

J Coetzee, PhD (Wits)

N James, PhD (Rhodes)

F Porri, PhD (Rhodes)

M Magoro, PhD (NMU)

Research Support Administrator

V Rouhani, MSc (Rhodes)

SCIENCE PLATFORMS

Marine Research Platforms

African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP):

Marine Platform Manager

R Palmer, MSc (Rhodes)

Marine Technician - Port Elizabeth

J Smith

Marine Field Assistant – Port Elizabeth

F Jacobs

Marine Technician - Durban

M Gaudin

Deckhand - Durban

T Mbuyazi

Transformation Manager

G van Heerden, MBA (Rhodes)

Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP):

Instrument Scientist

T Murray, PhD (Rhodes)

Instrument Technician

M Parkinson, PhD (Rhodes)

Geophysics & Mapping Platform (GeMaP)

Instrument Technician (Multi-beam)

T Wanda, MSc (UKZN)

Marine Remote Imagery Platform (MARIP):

Instrument Scientist

A Bernard, PhD (Rhodes)

SAPRI Seafloor Instrument Technician

D Julius, MSc (CPUT)

Aquatic Genomics Research Platform (AGRP):

Instrument Scientist

G Matcher, PhD (Rhodes)

Laboratory Technician

J Oliver, MSc (UJ)

Bioinformaticist

E de Villiers PhD (Utrecht University)

Aquatic Ecophysiology Research Platform

Instrument Scientist

L Mofu, PhD (Rhodes)

Biodiversity Information Platform:

Biodiversity Information Manager

W Coetzer, PhD (KwaZulu-Natal)

Margaret Smith Library:

Senior Librarian

M Meltaf, Nat Dipl. Info Studies (PE Tech)

Collections and Specialised Laboratories Platform:

Collections Manager

N Mazungula, MSc (Rhodes)

Senior Curator

R Bills, MSc (Rhodes)

Biobank Coordinator

S Reddy, MSc (Rhodes)

Biomaterials Officer

A Gura, BSc (Fort Hare)

Collections Officer

N Mgibantaka, MSc (NMU)

Collections and Safety Officer

M Dwani

Collections Assistant

V Hanisi

SUPPORT SERVICES

Finance and Operations Manager

G Ngobeni Management Advancement
Programme (Wits)

Finance Manager

E Wolhuter

Communications & Stakeholder Relations Manager

L Dlamini, MA (Wits)

IT Systems Administrator

W Phillip

SCM Manager

A Buthelezi, MCom Supply Chain Management
(MANCOSA)

Procurement Specialist

N Khuzwayo, Nat Dipl. Public Procurement &
Supply Management (UNISA)

People and Culture Business Partner B Smith,
BCom (UNISA)

Occupational Health and Safety Manager

T Siziba, B.Tech (CPUT)

Finance Officers

R Botha

B Phongolo

Administration Officer

Z Canda Nat Dipl. Business Administration (East
Cape Midlands College)

Administration Officer/ Receptionist

L Makana

Senior Technical Officer

F Lamont

Driver Trainer

L Mbangata

General Assistants

N Jodwana

N Zabo

N Zuzani

P Mpiyane

L Kokose

Dr W Conradie

Dr T Dalu

Dr R Daly

Dr T Dlaza

Prof R Dorrington

Prof L du Preez

Dr D Ebert

Dr B Ellender

Dr JD Filmlalter

Dr E Gennari

Dr J Glass

Mr O Gon

Dr G Gouws

Mrs E Heemstra

Dr E Heynes-Veale

Dr J Hill

Dr A Hlungwani

Mr W Holleman

Dr J Jackson

Dr M Jackson

Dr F Jacobs

Dr M Jordaan

Dr W Kadye

Mr D King

Dr A Kock

Dr R Peel

Dr J Pegg

Prof W Potts

Dr P Psomadakis

Dr A Rajkaran

Dr M Ramojane

Dr U Schliewen

Prof P Skelton

Dr M Smale

Dr J South

Prof J Stauffer

Dr M Tagliarolo

Dr G Taylor

Dr J Taylor

Mr D Twedde

Dr F Uiblein

Dr S Viana

Dr N Vine

Dr E Vreven

Dr R Wasserman

Dr D Woodford

Mr M Mlambo

Dr G Rishworth

Dr C Edworthy

Prof A-R Childs

Dr C Keates

Dr D Khosa

Dr M Martin

Dr N Masikane

Dr J Shelton

Dr T Naidoo

Dr E Puccinelli

By K Smit

Dr N Smit

Dr L Vorsatz

Prof A Whitfield

Dr E Wiles

Dr A Green

Dr S Bogorodskiy

Dr C Elston

Dr E Abwe

Dr P de Braganca

Dr L Woodall

Prof T Makhalanyane

Dr Barry Russell

HONORARY RESEARCH ASSOCIATES

Dr E Anderson

Dr M Lipinski

Dr H Barber-James

Dr N Mandrak

Dr R Bennett

Dr S Marr

Prof M Bruton

Dr T Miya

Mr V Mthombeni

Dr R Chalmers

Dr TF Næsje

Prof A Channing

Dr S Parker-Nance

SAIAB SCIENTIFIC ADVISORY COMMITTEE

Name	Affiliation	Representation and Specialisation
Michelle Hamer (Chairperso)	South African National Biodiversity Institute	SANBI; Zoological Systematics, Collections and Biodiversity
Harrison Pienaar	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, CSIR	Science Councils
Mmbofheni Stanley Liphadzi	Water Research Commission	Science Councils
Lawrence Oellermann	Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI), South African Association for Marine Biological Research (SAAMBR)	NGO and marine science management and consultancy
Ramashwar Bharuthram	Independent	Transformation
Ashley Naidoo	Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE)	Departmental representative and stakeholder
Luvuyo Mini	Bayworld	Collections and Eastern Cape Provincial Government
Jean Harris	WILDOCEAN S	NGO and ACEP Platform user
Judy Mann	Two Oceans Aquarium Foundation	NGO and Public Engagement; Science Communication; Change Methodology
Kaluke Mawila	Nelson Mandela University (NMU)	Research, Innovation and Internationalisation (RII)
Cliff Jones	Department of Ichthyology & Fisheries Sciences, Rhodes University	Academic - Ichthyology and Fisheries Sciences

The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (NRF-SAIAB) is a National Facility of the National Research Foundation and an internationally recognised centre for the study of aquatic biodiversity. NRF-SAIAB serves as a major scientific resource for knowledge and understanding of the biodiversity and functioning of Africa's aquatic ecosystems. With a focus on the full spectrum of aquatic environments: from marine offshore to continental freshwater catchments, NRF-SAIAB is ideally placed to develop the Biodiversity Economy and the Blue Economy within southern Africa. As a National Facility of the National Research Foundation, NRF-SAIAB is required to provide research platforms within the National System of Innovation, which are not generally available in other institutions. NRF-SAIAB offers a variety of research platforms which make unique sets of skills and infrastructure available to the broader research community. All of NRF-SAIAB's activities – research, student supervision and platform provision – support the Higher Education sector in the education, training and development of the aquatic managers and researchers of the future.

MARINE RESEARCH PLATFORMS

The African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP) offers technical expertise, vessel time on coastal craft, specialised equipment for underwater visual surveys and seabed mapping, monitoring networks and a dive unit. ACEP is the largest inter-institutional, multi-disciplinary, marine programme in South Africa. ACEP is a flagship programme of the Department of Science, Technology and Innovation and is managed by NRF-SAIAB as a Marine Science Platform. ACEP promotes competitive, multidisciplinary, multi institutional east coast marine research with an emphasis on building capacity and transforming marine science, providing competitive access to funding, research platforms and marine research infrastructure within the National System of Innovation. ACEP's highly successful coastal craft and instrumentation platform comprises the 13m *RV uKwabelana* and 15m *RV Phakisa*, which are based in the Port of Durban, and the 15m *RV Observer* which is based in the Port of Port

Elizabeth, and Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs) capable of diving to 1000m depth, for use by the South African marine research community.

Through ACEP, NRF-SAIAB plays a key interface role between researchers and other South African research platforms. ACEP's partner platforms include NRF-SAIAB's **Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP)** and **Marine Remote Imagery Platform (MARIP)**, as well as the **Geophysics and Mapping Platform (GeMaP)**.

ACEP has developed an excellent track record of training the next generation of marine scientists, technicians and innovators. NRF-SAIAB initiated a profound paradigm shift in 2012 by establishing the *Phuhlisa* (Development) Programme through ACEP to ensure that black South African postgraduates are trained in the marine sector and that marine science is more deeply entrenched at historically black universities. A significant highlight of recent years has been cementing its relationship with the universities of Fort Hare and Walter Sisulu in the Eastern Cape through the *Phuhlisa* Programme and extending its reach beyond the Eastern Cape to include the University of the Western Cape and the University of Zululand. One-third of ACEP's funding is dedicated to the *Phuhlisa* Programme. The focus is on capacity building and generating interest in and enthusiasm for marine sciences at the four universities. Currently, ACEP supports a minimum of 80 postgraduate students. This is in addition to over 100 students supported in previous phases. The *Phuhlisa* programme provides a winning model to develop high quality graduates in marine science by inspiring talent at historically black universities in South Africa.

The **Acoustic Tracking Array Platform (ATAP)** is a collaborative nationwide network of acoustic receivers, and currently comprises more than 300 receivers deployed in the inshore coastal environment and at least 15 estuaries between St Helena Bay on the cool temperate Atlantic coastline and Santa Maria in southern Mozambique on the sub-tropical east coast. These receivers detect unique signals sent by acoustic transmitters that have been attached to, or surgically inserted

into marine animals. The ATAP team at NRF-SAIAB manages this expanded network of automated data-logging acoustic receivers together with dedicated deployment collaborators, and all data uploaded from these receivers are stored on a national database housed at NRF-SAIAB. Collected data belong to the tag owners, and data are available by request. The ATAP also has a small equipment loan programme, which is dependent on equipment availability and the needs of the greater acoustic telemetry community in South Africa.

The **Marine Remote Imagery Platform (MARIP)** provides sophisticated and standardised remote benthic sampling tools and protocols to the marine research community in South Africa. These tools include 10 baited, remote underwater stereo-video systems (stereo-BRUVs) for sampling fish assemblages, and a benthic jump camera for photographing benthic macro-fauna assemblages. NRF-SAIAB partners with the Coastal (Elwandle) Node of the NRF-South African Environmental Observation Network (NRF-SAEON) on MARIP projects in the Sundays River catchment area, NRF-SAEON's Algoa Bay Sentinel Site and a number of marine protected areas along the South African coast. The synergies with the Elwandle Node are highly significant and position the NRF-SAIAB as an international and regional centre for South Western Indian Ocean marine research. Researchers at NRF-SAIAB and NRF-SAEON Elwandle Node have been developing innovative technology to survey reef fishes of South Africa. Novel sampling techniques aim to provide standardised data to further our understanding of the ecology of South Africa's reef fish and support effective management.

The **Aquatic Genomics Research Platform (AGRP)** is an open-access platform which provides the necessary research infrastructure and workspace for researchers conducting molecular biological studies in the field of aquatic research. The platform is equipped with laboratory equipment for capabilities that extend from DNA extraction through to Sanger Sequencing, as well as Next-Generation Sequencing. In addition, staff provide technical support to users of the platform.

The training provided by the platform manager enables those with little or no practical experience to gain the skills needed to obtain their qualifications or to pursue a career in molecular work. Research projects range from taxonomic identification of species, microbiome studies, environmental DNA analysis, and whole genome sequencing and assembly, to name a few.

The **Aquatic Ecophysiology Research Platform (AERP)**, established in 2014 after formal collaboration between SAIAB and Rhodes, provides researchers with the tools and equipment needed to study the effects of a changing climate on aquatic organisms. Available equipment includes large holding and experimental tanks, and respirometers of varying sizes capable of running metabolic experiments on animals of different sizes, ranging from fish and invertebrate larvae to adult reef fish species. This research is invaluable, determining the effects a changing climate will have on the relationship between living organisms and their surrounding environment, and how organisms may either cope or adapt.

COLLECTIONS AND SPECIALISED LABORATORIES PLATFORM

The **Collections Facility Platform** is one of the most important custodians of aquatic natural science collections in Africa. The collection includes over 1.5 million specimens of fishes, amphibians, invertebrates and diatoms, making it one of the largest and most comprehensive collections of its kind in Africa. The collection covers over 150 years with the oldest specimen dating back to 1860. The JLB Smith Collection Management Centre provides a collection-sorting laboratory, accommodation for collection staff and for visiting scientists and students. The Collections Facility provides storage for the National Fish Collection, African Amphibian Collection, a new and developing Cephalopod Collection and the National Aquatic Biodiversity Biobank. Back-up support includes a separate, ultra-cold-storage tissue biobank with over 60 000 tissue samples and preparation room; a bulk inflammable liquid storage chamber with automated preservative mixing and delivery; specialised specimen preservation laboratories and glass storage; an X-

ray room with an Inspex 20i Digital X-Ray Imaging System, Photography studio and an isolated dermestarium for the preparation of vertebrate skeletal specimens. The Platform also manages the National Diatom and Frogs Collections which are housed at North West University (NWU) in Potchefstroom. These are dynamic research platforms for molecular, systematics and conservation oriented studies.

The Collection Platform's aim is to facilitate research by providing access to these materials through hosting visits, posting samples on loans, by doing measurements and taking high-quality photographs and x-rays of specimens, and providing associated data to scientists all over the world. Typically, each year this platform loans out several hundreds of specimens to researchers from across the world. The Platform is part of the National Science Collections Facility (NSCF) and the Biodiversity Biobank South Africa (BBSA) and has an open access policy towards the collection and its associated database.

THE BIODIVERSITY INFORMATION PLATFORM

The **Biodiversity Information Platform** includes the **Margaret Smith Library** and the **Biodiversity Informatics Unit**.

As an academic library, the **Margaret Smith Library** shares resources and library services with Rhodes University Library to support research and teaching: main users are staff and students of the Rhodes University's Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science. The Margaret Smith Library houses one of the largest document collections and resource centres for African aquatic biodiversity research in Africa. The Library contributes to the Rhodes University online catalogue and Open Access institutional repositories at Rhodes and the NRF. The Library is also partnered with the Biodiversity Heritage Library - Africa.

The Library was established in the 1940s with a small collection of books and scientific papers belonging to Professor JLB Smith. The early indexing system and card catalogue were developed by Professor Margaret Smith. The

collection was first stored in a small room in Artillery Road, which was then part of the Rhodes University Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science. The library moved to the present premises in Somerset Street in 1975. After being fully refurbished in 2010, the Library was named for Margaret Smith to commemorate her contribution to preserving the legacy of early Ichthyological research at Rhodes University.

The Library offers users a dedicated computer lab; up-to-date library processes and procedures; social media and Open Access initiatives; additional partners and new collections. The Library holdings include some 5000 books and 2000 serial titles, a large reprint collection dating back to the 1800s and 206 titles in the rare book collection. The Institute has published a number of books on the freshwater fishes of southern Africa, fishes of the Southern Ocean, the biology and ecology of southern African estuarine fishes and coastal fishes of southern Africa, as well as the Smithiana monograph and Special Publications series. Popular guides to estuaries and coastal fisheries resources have also been published and are available in the digital commons.

The **Biodiversity Informatics Unit** supports collections management and is available to anyone with a need for management and analysis of aquatic biodiversity and ecological information. NRF-SAIAB offers a hosting platform to various museums and is pioneering new techniques in biodiversity data mining.

RESEARCH

NRF-SAIAB has an internationally recognised profile in aquatic research and a dynamic and active research staff and postgraduate school are involved in numerous collaborative research programmes concerned with aquatic biodiversity and serve on several national advisory committees. They are also involved in teaching undergraduate and postgraduate courses, supervising Honours, MSc and PhD projects particularly through Rhodes University and other universities, both nationally and internationally.

The geographical focus of projects extends from the primary focus area, South Africa, through southern Africa to the African continent. NRF-SAIAB's research strategy is strongly influenced by societal imperatives with an emphasis on demand-driven, collaborative research that is aligned with national and international initiatives (e.g. National Development Plan, Marine and Antarctic Research Strategy (MARS), Phakisa Programme and the Sustainable Development

Goals) through three core research areas:

- Taxonomy and BioDiscovery which contributes directly to the description and quantification of global biodiversity assets. Core competencies include taxonomy and systematics, biogeography, molecular biology and biodiversity genomics on a variety of taxa including diatoms, zooplankton, crustaceans, amphibians and fishes.
- Biology and ecology, which are the foundation for understanding ecosystems and the services that they provide. This research area directly informs the management of ecological infrastructure to enhance resilience and ensure benefits to society. Key research areas include life-history assessments, biodiversity assessments, predator-prey interactions, plankton ecology, ecological engineering, movement ecology, food webs, ecophysiology and seascape ecology.
- Drivers of global change and their impacts on aquatic ecosystems is a research area that intends to inform the development of proactive response strategies to mitigate and promote resilience against adverse impacts on ecosystem services. Although NRF-SAIAB engages in research at all levels of global change, there is a strong focus on understanding the impacts of climate change, invasions and overfishing.
- NRF-SAIAB also offers a range of customised equipment such as specialised trailers, electro-fishers, inflatable and fixed hull boats, nets and environmental monitoring instruments for working in different aquatic environments in and around South Africa.

SOUTHERN OCEAN GROUP

Director

PW Froneman, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Research Officer

CD McQuaid, PhD (UCT)

The Southern Ocean Group was established in the Department of Zoology and Entomology in 1981 under the directorship of Professor Brian Allanson. The group was the first unit in South Africa involved in the study of biological oceanography in the Southern Ocean, Antarctica and in the vicinity of the Prince Edward Islands. This programme

forms part of the oceanographic component of the South African National Antarctic Research Programme (SANAP) and is concerned with the spatial variability in Southern Ocean ecosystems and its response to global climate change. Present projects concern the spatial and temporal patterns in the plankton community structure and food web dynamics in the Southern Ocean. This research provides opportunities for research towards Honours, Master's and Doctoral degrees, and postgraduates form a very active part of the group.

TEBELLO NYOKONG INSTITUTE FOR NANOTECHNOLOGY INNOVATION (TEBELLO NYOKONG INSTITUTE)

DSI/NRF Professor of Medicinal Chemistry and Nanotechnology, Director: Tebello Nyokong Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation, Distinguished Professor, Rhodes University

T Nyokong, BSc (Lesotho), MSc (McMaster), PhD (Western Ontario), OMB, FRS, FRSSAf, HonFRSC, FSACI

Associate Professor, Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry, Deputy Director: Tebello Nyokong Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation
PN Mashazi, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Tebello Nyokong Institute for Nanotechnology Innovation Manager and Senior Researcher
J Britton, BSc, PhD (Rhodes)

Nanotechnology Specialist and Associate Professor
J Mack, BSc (Hons) (Aberdeen University), PhD (Western Ontario)

Research Associate
M Managa, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Researcher
To be appointed

Instrument Scientist
To be appointed

Postdoctoral Fellows
S Centane, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)
A Sindelo, BSc (Hons), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)
G Gebregziabher, BSc (Arba Minch), MSc (Gondar), PhD (UNISA)

Administration Office
G Cobus

General Background

The Tebello Nyokong Institute for Nanotechnology Institute (Tebello Nyokong Institute) is a multi-disciplinary and inter-disciplinary research institute where cutting edge and pioneering research is taking place. It is a globally recognized national facility hosting several pieces of research equipment where porphyrinoid chemistry and nanotechnology research is taking place. The intricate design of porphyrinoid compounds and their combination with nanomaterials is investigated and thus unravelling novel properties for various industrial applications. The innovative and cutting edge research involve the design and engineering of materials and exploiting their potential applications in the following areas:

- (i) treatment of cancer with reduced toxicity to normal cells,
- (ii) development of energy conversion materials for efficient solar energy harvesting,
- (iii) development of materials for light sensitive organ protection (non-linear materials),
- (iv) photochemical and photoelectrochemical degradation of pollutants in wastewater,
- (v) development of ultrasensitive systems for diseases and virus detection and diagnosis,
- (vi) antimicrobial materials to address global challenges on drug resistance for improved therapy, and
- (vii) photosensitizers-infused macro and micro-porous membrane materials for wastewater treatment.

The Tebello Nyokong Institute also offers consultation services to solve specific problems involving the areas stated above. The Tebello Nyokong Institute has wealth of knowledge in cancer research, laser-based research, porphyrinoid compounds research, nanomaterials design and development, photochemical and photophysical research, medicinal research, and nanotechnology. The Tebello Nyokong Institute contributes to teaching at both undergraduate and postgraduate levels in the Department of Chemistry. The Tebello

Nyokong Institute offers professional courses, and other capacity building and professional training initiatives.

BACHELOR OF SCIENCE HONOURS

Year-long (NQF level 8, 120-credits)

The Bachelor of Science with Honours in Chemistry is offered jointly with the Department of Chemistry. The Institute hosts students for their research projects. The Tebello Nyokong Institute Staff teaches several modules to the BSc Honours students. See the Department of Chemistry for the requirements for the Bachelor of Science with Honours in Chemistry.

MASTERS AND DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified postgraduate students can register in the Tebello Nyokong Institute for MSc and PhD degrees in Chemistry by thesis.

Candidates wishing to enrol for MSc (NQF Level 9, 180-credits) must be in possession of Bachelor of Science with Honours in any of the following courses (Chemistry, Biochemistry, Biotechnology, and Pharmaceutical Chemistry). Candidates wishing to enrol for PhD (NQF Level 10, 360-credits) must be in possession of MSc in any of the following fields (Chemistry, Biochemistry,

Biotechnology, Pharmaceutical Chemistry). For both MSc and PhD degrees, postgraduate students will conduct research under the supervision of the staff the Tebello Nyokong Institute and/or in collaboration with other affiliate departments at Rhodes University, such as Chemistry, Biotechnology, Biochemistry and Microbiology, and Pharmaceutical Chemistry, as well as affiliates in the public and private research and industry sector.

Academic programmes including research seminars, conference presentations and advisory committees (constituted for masters and doctoral candidates) further support research activities.

All postgraduates are offered voluntary short courses to enrich their learning and enhance their preparedness for a fulfilling research career. Finally, the Tebello Nyokong Institute provides a space for thriving research activities where innovation, pioneering research and space for our postgraduates interested in the future technology transfer and commercialisation of their postgraduate research.

Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

THE RHODES UNIVERSITY LIBRARY & INFORMATION SERVICES (RULIS)

EXECUTIVE MANAGEMENT

Director, Library Services

GN Danster, BBibl (UFH), BBibl (Hons) (UFH),
M Applied Science-Information Management
(Curtin University – Western Australia)

Head: User Services and Research Support
S Simango

Head: Technical Services

WD van der Walt; BTech LIS (UNISA), Dip Bus
Man (UJ), BInf (Hons) (UNISA), M.IT (UP)

Principal Librarian: Cory Library

K Tshukudu

ICT & Facilities Officer

G. Dampies; Information Systems Management
certificate; Digital Transformation Strategy
certificate (UCT)

Assistant to the Library Director

A. Leslie

Principal Librarian: Digital Scholarship

USER SERVICES & RESEARCH SUPPORT

Head, User Services and Research Support

Humanities and Education

Principal Librarian

L Nyoka

Librarian (Humanities)

Librarian (Social Sciences)

Vacant

Librarian (Education)

A Qomfo; NDLIS, BTech: LIS (NMMU)

Assistant Librarian

Assistant Librarian (Sound Library)

I. Chirombo; BMus (Rhodes), PGDipLIS
(UNISA)

Science & Pharmacy

Principal Librarian

VT Menze; BInf; BInf. (Hons) (UNISA)

Librarian (Pharmacy & Science)

V Ntamo; BSc (Rhodes), PGDipLIS (UCT)

Commerce & Law

Principal Librarian

Librarian (Commerce)

SJ Rionda, BA (Rhodes), HDipLIS, BBibl (Hons)
(Natal)

Librarian (Law)

SP Gule, BTech LIS (UNISA); BHLIS (Hons,
UKZN)

Information Literacy & Marketing

Librarian

User Access Services

Librarian

Assistant Librarian

N Fumbatha, BComm, Hons, MComm (Rhodes)

Inter-library Loans

Assistant Librarian

A Mncwabe, Dip LIS (DUT)

Shelving

A Bavuma

N. Nqebeya

DIGITAL SCHOLARSHIP & SCHOLARLY COMMUNICATION:

Principal Librarian: Digital Scholarship
(Vacant)

Librarian: Scholarly Communication:

DL Martindale, BA, HDE (Rhodes), BBibl
(UNISA); M.IT (UP)

TECHNICAL SERVICES***Head, Technical Services******Cataloguing, Metadata & Repository*****Principal Librarian**

Vacant

Librarian

C Clack, BTech LIS (NMU) PG Certificate in Archival Studies (UNISA)

Librarian: Metadata & Repository

(Vacant)

Library Assistant: Digitisation

T Mamani

Electronic Resources Management & Acquisitions**Librarian:**

BC Stoltz, BA, HDE (Rhodes), BInf Hons (UNISA),

Library Assistant:

K Yona, NDip IT (WSU), BInf (UNISA)

Administrative Assistant:

S Fourie

Systems and Web Management**Principal Librarian:**

(Vacant)

CORY LIBRARY FOR HUMANITIES RESEARCH***Cory Library*****Librarian**

VF Nhanha, LDLIS, BBibl (UFH)

Assistant Librarian

LM Verwey, NDLIS (UNISA)

Senior Administrative Assistant

S Fourie

ICT & FACILITIES MANAGEMENT***ICT & Facilities Officer*****Technical Assistant (ICT):**

A Sampson, NDip IT (NMMU); Web Design certificate (UCT)

Purpose Statement

Rhodes University Library and Information Services is committed to supporting the mission of Rhodes University in the pursuit of knowledge by students, researchers, scholars and surrounding communities, by providing quality learning resources, client centered services, the skills required to effectively participate in the information society and knowledge economy and, a conducive physical and virtual learning environment, that enhances intellectual creativity as well as the free and open exchange of knowledge and ideas.

Library Profile and Policies

The Rhodes University Library profile, strategy and policies are available on the Library webpage at: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/>

RHODES UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES (RUL)

RUL consists of four libraries and three affiliated libraries. These are; the Main Library, the Cory Library for Humanities Research, the Alistair Kerr Law Library and the Sound Library. The affiliated libraries are the Margaret Smith Library at SAIAB, the Teacher Resources Centre, and the International Library of African Music (ILAM). For more information on each of these libraries: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/about/branchlibraries/affiliatedinstitutes/>

Library membership

A valid Rhodes University ID card validates a user as a library member and grants you access rights to and use of the Main Library and branch libraries facilities. All registered students and Rhodes University staff are automatically members of the Library. Staff and community members are required to register annually to have access to the library service and facilities.

Access to Library resources and facilities

Students use their student identity cards as Access and Borrowers' cards. Staff use their staff identity cards as Access and Borrower's cards. Visiting members will be issued with cards after registration

at the Library. Loss of a card must be reported to the library immediately to prevent unauthorized use. Users may not use someone else's card to gain access to the libraries, to borrow library material or to use library facilities. New students and new staff members have to activate/set up their library account in order to access online databases and eBooks remotely/off-campus. To create your library account, go to: <https://rb.gy/kc9hwx>

Library collections

The Library has approximately 300 000 volumes of print books onsite, approximately 700 000 e-books and 66 online scholarly databases. The short loan collection is the most heavily used print collection by both staff and students. Access to the Library's collections is through the Library's web page: <https://www.ru.ac.za/library/>

The loan schedule of the Main Library is as follows:

- Undergraduates: six (6) items for two weeks.
- Postgraduate: twelve (12) items for four weeks
- Senior postgraduates: twenty (20) items for eight weeks
- Academic staff, Research staff, Support staff and post-doctoral scholars: thirty (30) items for twelve weeks
- Community members: up to three months six (6) items for two weeks
- Visiting scholars: more than three months twenty (20) items for eight weeks

Lending rules

- A borrower is responsible for returning any loaned item/s by the due date. Items which are retained for longer than the stipulated loan period are subject to fines. The University requires all categories of users to pay such fines.
- No item may be transferred to any other person.
- Items which are lost or damaged must be paid for or replaced.
- The Director: Library Services may at his/her discretion restrict the loan period of any item or refuse its loan altogether.
- An item on loan may be recalled at any time.

Opening hours

Term hours	
Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 22:30
Friday	08:30 to 18:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	13:30 to 17:30
Swot week	
Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 01:00
Friday	08:30 to 21:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	09:00 to 21:00
Exam hours	
Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 00:00
Friday	08:30 to 21:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	09:00 to 21:00
Vacation hours:	
Monday - Friday	08:30 to 17:00
Saturday	09:00 to 12:30

Variations in Library hours, due to specific regulations, Public Holidays and extended times during the examinations, are posted at the main entrance and on the Library's webpage, social media and e-mail.

Use of Electronic resources

We encourage users to make use of our e-Resources which are accessibly remotely. Access to the Library's electronic collections is available from the Library's web page for current Rhodes University staff and registered students. As a significant portion of these e-resources is subject to terms and conditions stipulated in license agreements, community members are limited to on-site access only. Community members who need access to subscription-based resources must contact the Circulation Desk at: libloansupport@ru.ac.za

Library Facilities and Venues

Research Commons

Located on Level 2 in the Main Library, the Research Commons is a dedicated space for academic staff, researchers and senior post-graduate (Master's and Doctoral) students. A valid

Rhodes University ID card is required to gain access to this area.

Postgraduate Commons (PGCs)

Located on the Ground Level, the PGC is a dedicated space for academic staff, researchers and postgraduate (Honours, Master's and Doctoral) students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to gain access to this area. For further information on research support:

<https://www.ru.ac.za/library/researchsupport/>

Information Commons (IC)

Located on Level 2 in the Main Library, the IC is a dedicated space for undergraduate students, accessible during Library operating hours, with differentiated learning spaces, fifty-six PCs and a dedicated Information Literacy Coordinator available during Library hours. To access the libguide for new students:

<https://ru.za.libguides.com/newstudents>

or for more information about IC:

<https://ru.za.libguides.com/InfoCommons>

24/7 study area

This facility is available to all registered students. A valid Rhodes University ID card is required to access the facility from 22:30 to 08:30.

CORY LIBRARY FOR HUMANITIES RESEARCH

Cory Library collects archival and published material to support research in the humanities and

social sciences. Its book, journal and archival holdings are particularly strong in the fields of Eastern Cape history, heritage and culture, mission and church history, family history, and various southern African topics, including politics, literature, education, mining, commerce and agriculture. Since the initial deposit of Sir George Cory's collections, there has been a focus on the history of the Eastern Cape and on Makhanda itself. Cory Library's collections include manuscripts and other documents, Cape and other government publications, rare and modern books, pamphlets, periodicals and newspapers, maps, photographs, audio-visual recordings, and electronic media. Through its book publishing programme (the Graham's Town Series, Eastern Cape Themes, and Eastern Cape Reprints), Cory Library contributes to the intellectual and academic culture of the University.

<https://www.ru.ac.za/corylibrary/>

Access

Cory Library is a non-circulating library. It is open to students and staff of Rhodes University in the first instance. Members of the wider research community and the public are welcome to buy readers' tickets to do research in this library. To contact Cory Library, use the following email address: cory@ru.ac.za

Hours of opening:

Mondays – Fridays, 08.30 - 16.30

ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

REGISTRAR'S DIVISION

Interim Registrar

MG Karels, LLB, LLM (UFS), LLD (Unisa)

Manager: Academic Administration

S Flanagan

Manager: Student Bureau

D Wicks (Admissions - Student Bureau)

Manager: Student Recruitment

L Frazenburg BSS Hons (UFS)

Manager: Governance and Secretariat

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S OFFICE

Vice-Chancellor

S Mabizela, BSc, BSc (Hon), MSc (UFH), PhD (Pennsylvania State)

Personal Assistant and Manager:

Administration

M Burger

Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic and Student Affairs (DVC: A&SA)

MLE Monnapula-Mapesela, BSc Ed(NUL), BEd (UOFS), M.Ed(UOFS), PGDip. HE(Rhodes), PhD (UFS)

Project Coordinator and Assistant to the DVC: Academic and Student Affairs

T Qeqe BCom (Rhodes), BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Research, Innovation & Strategic Partnerships (DVC: RISP)

N Mzilikazi BSc (Zoology, Chemistry), BSc Hons (Zoology) (University of Transkei), MSc (Zoology) (University of Natal), PhD (Zoology) (University of KwaZulu Natal)

Project Officer and Personal Assistant to the DVC: RISP

S Gangiah

Director: Equity and Institutional Culture

Dr C Kelly PhD Psychology, Mphil Diversity Studies (UCT)

Director: Institutional, Research, Planning & Quality Promotion (IRPQP)

RC Nnadozie, BSc Hons(IMSU), PGCE (UKZN), PGDip-Info Systems Man (SUN), MSc, PhD (UKZN)

Director: Office of the Vice Chancellor

S Smailes, BSocSci, LLB (Rhodes), LLM (Wits), Higher Diploma in Labour Law (Wits), Attorney at Law

LEGAL UNIT

Manager: Prosecutions and Legal Services

M von Wildemann-Cloete, LLB (NMMU)

Manager: Contracts and Legal Services

I Amojee, LLB (UJ)

Manager: Employee Relations

B Selana, LLB (NMMU), PGDiP Labour Law Practice (Cum Laude)

CENTRE FOR HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH, TEACHING AND LEARNING

J-A Vorster, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)

COMMUNICATIONS & ADVANCEMENT DIVISION

Director

DIVISION OF STUDENT SERVICES & DEVELOPMENT

Director of Division of Student Services & Development

P Tondi, B. Th (UKZN), M.A (Moral and Cultural Studies) (UFS), PhD (Religion and Culture Studies) (UKZN), M.A Higher Education Studies (UFS)

Manager: Residence Life, Support and Development

M Noholoza, NDip LIS (PE Tech) BA Hons Sociology (NMU)

Manager: Student Wellness

C Lewis, BSocSci (UFS), BSocSci (Hons)(UFS), PGCE (UFS), MSocSci (UFH), PhD (Rhodes)

FINANCE DIVISION

Chief Financial Officer

Director

G Erasmus BCom (UWC)

DIVISION OF PEOPLE AND CULTURE

Director of People and Culture

SJ Robertson, BA (Hons)(Rhodes)

Senior Manager: Specialist HR Services

H Saayman, B Tech (UNISA); Nat Dip (UNISA); Management Programme (TUKS)

Senior Manager: Recruitment and Staffing

N Gongqa, BA (UFH)

Manager: Training and Development

S van der Merwe, MCom (Rhodes), BCom (UNW), NHD Management (TUT)

Manager: HR Equity & Employee Relations

F Tshuku, B Tech (NMU); Nat Diploma (NMU)

**Manager: Recruitment and Staffing
(Academic)**

M Maccario, BCom Hons (NMMU)

Manager: Recruitment and Staffing (Support)

L Bradfield, BSocSc (Rhodes)

Manager: Total Rewards

R Nagar, BA (Hons)(NMU)

Senior HR Practitioners

L Titus, B Tech HRM (NMU)

B Nelana, Post Grad Diploma in Enterprise
Management (Rhodes)

RESIDENTIAL OPERATIONS DIVISION

Director: Residential Operations

J Pillay, NDP MBA (Rhodes) PG Certificate
HEM (Bath University)

FOOD SERVICES

C Avery

Manager: Housekeeping Services

N Magodla

**Assistant Manager: Housekeeping & Central
Cleaning**

Assistant Manager: Housekeeping

Esona Mtinkulu

MANAGER: CONFERENCING & EVENTS

C Avery

FACILITIES DIVISION

Director: Facilities Services

D van Dyk BSc (QS)(UFS)

Manager: Campus Protection Unit

J Mabotja

Manager: Grounds and Gardens

N Langeni

Manager: Building Maintenance

Manager: Electrical Section

M Koopman

Manager: Engineering and Mechanical Works

FINANCE, ADMIN AND PROCUREMENT

Deputy Director: Operations Administration,

Finance & Procurement

W Lombard, BCom (RAU), BCom
(Hons)(UNISA)

Manager: Administration

S Gumede

INFORMATION AND TECHNOLOGY

SERVICES

Director: Information and Technology Services

N Ripley, BSc (Natal)

Manager: Operations

DR Sieborger, MA (Rhodes)

Manager: Service Delivery

T Chambers, MBA (Rhodes)

**Manager: Application Development and
Management Information Systems**

L Angus, MSc (Rhodes)

Division of Global Engagement

Director: Division of Global Engagement

OM Quinlan, MSc (Econ) (London)

DIVISION OF RESEARCH & INNOVATION

Director: Centre for Postgraduate Studies

S Mutereko, PhD (UKZN), MSoc Sc (UKZN),
BSc (Hons) (UZ), BSc (ZOU), DipEd (UZ)

Director: Division of Research & Innovation

vacant

**Personal Assistant to the Director & Research
Officer**

A Nzwanga, BComm (Rhodes)

Manager: Research Administration

T Mantolo, National Diploma (WSU), B-Tech
(DUT)

Manager Postgraduate Funding

N Austin, BA, PDEM (Rhodes)

Manager: Technology Transfer Office

P Ntshakaza, MSc (Rhodes)

NRF Grants Specialist

S Peter, Bsc Honours (UFH) (UFH), PGDip:
Research Management (Stellenbosch)

Senior Administrator: Research Office
vacant

Administrator: Postgraduate Funding

N Mkosana, MSc (UFH)

Assistant Administrator

S Makeba, Diploma: HR (NMU)

Administrative Assistant

X Cele, PGDip: Archives and Records
Management (Fort Hare)

STUDENT WELLNESS SECTION

HEALTH CARE CENTRE

Head Nurse

H Ferreira, BCur Education and Administration
(NWU), 4-year Nursing Diploma (Charlotte Searle
NC)

Nurses

T Fanisi, BTech OCC Health (DUT), Nursing Management (NWU), 4-year Nursing Diploma (Frere NC)

CM Cannon, Diploma Nursing Science, Diploma Occupational Health & Safety (Oxbridge Academy)

N Mtintsilana, Bcur Nursing Science (WSU)

L Meli, 4-year Diploma in Comprehensive Nursing (Lalitha Nursing college)

HIV OFFICE

N Mthunzi

CAREER CENTRE

Counselling Psychologist, Career Office

A Maako BA (NWU), BHSc (Honours) (NWU), MHSc (NWU)

Graduate Recruitment Programme

Coordinator

T Mesani

COUNSELLING CENTRE

Manager: Counselling Centre

Vacant

Counselling Psychologists

C Parkinson, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M.A. (Rhodes)

Y Kalyanaraman

D Timms BSocSci (UFH), BSocSci

(Hons)(UFH), MSocSci (UFH), PGCE (UNISA),

BA Criminology (UNISA)

SPORTS OFFICE

Manager: Sports Administration

M Sigila

Assistant Manager: Sports Administration

L Vutha

HALLS OF RESIDENCE MEN'S HALLS

THE FOUNDER'S HALL

Hall Warden

P Mashazi, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes), Certificate IP Law (WIPO-UNISA)

Botha House

P Mashazi, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, PhD (Rhodes), Certificate IP Law (WIPO-UNISA)

College House

S Zondo, BA (Wits), BSS Hons (UCT), MA Neuropsych (UCT) BSc (Premedical) AUIS (Barbados)

Cory House

Vacant

Matthews House

Keith Kambani

Kuda Rukweza

WOMEN'S HALLS COURTENAY-LATIMER HALL

Hall Warden

N Fumbatha, MCom (Financial Markets) (Rhodes)

Oriel House

Q Andangnui, Mcom Financial Management (Rhodes)

Beit House

A Qomfo, ND: Library and Information Science (NMU), BTech: Library and Information Science (NMU), PGDip in Knowledge and Information Systems (Stellenbosch)

Charlotte Maxeke House

N Fumbatha, MCom (Financial Markets) (Rhodes)

ST MARY HALL

Hall Warden

L Maholo

John Kotzé House

L Maholo, BCom, BCom (Hons)(Rhodes)

Lilian Britten House

NQE Babeli, BSS, BSS (Hons), MSocSci (Rhodes University)

Olive Schreiner House

A Mxalisa, (BA, BAHons, MA (Political Science) Research (NMU)

Phelps House

A Adams, MA (Linguistics) UWC, HDHET (CPUT), National Diploma (Education) Bellville College of Education

HOBSON HALL

Hall Warden

TL Chambers, MBA, PDHE (Rhodes)

Dingemans House

TL Chambers, MBA, PDHE (Rhodes)

Hobson House

F Gunzo, MEd ICT (Rhodes) BSocSci (Hons) (UFH), PhD (Rhodes)

Livingstone House

Z Kota, BSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

Milner House

M Isaacs, MSc (Rhodes)

Starling House

N Yantolo, PGCE (Rhodes), BSS (Hons) (Rhodes)

**HALLS FOR MEN AND WOMEN ALLAN
WEBB HALL
Hall Warden**

Y Motara, BScS (Hons), MSc, PhD
Winchester House
Y Motara, BScS (Hons), MSc, PhD
Canterbury House
S Kunju, BMus (Hons), PGCE

Canterbury Annexe
Nokuthula Chonco
Salisbury House
Tulisa Mondliwa
Truro House
Vacant

**DROSTDY HALL
Hall Warden**

C Parkinson, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M.A. (Rhodes)
Allan Gray House
S Carolus, BJourn (Hons) (Rhodes)
Graham House
NS Nkosi, (NS) Nkosi, BEd (Hons), MEd (Wits)
Prince Alfred House
C Parkinson, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), M.A. (Rhodes)
Celeste
Vacant

**SOLOMON MAHLANGU HALL
Hall Warden**

S Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm,
MSc(Pharm)(Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)
Adamson House
S Khamanga, BSc (Swaziland), BPharm,
MSc(Pharm)(Rhodes), PhD (Rhodes)
Atherstone House
U Bontsi, National Diploma in Food Service
Management (WSU)
Robert Sobukwe House
L Xaba, BSS, PGDIS, MIS
New House
L Griffioen, BA (Rhodes), HDE (Rhodes)

**KIMBERLEY HALL
Hall Warden**

J Nene J Nene, BBA, PGDIPLIS (UKZN)
Gold Fields House
Luyanda Dube
Kago Nkosi
De Beers House
S Chindipha

Rosa Parks
B Chitambo
Esther Mahlangu House
J Nene J Nene, BBA, PGDIPLIS (UKZN)
MIRIAM MAKEBA HALL
Hall Warden
D Khanye, Dfil (UCT)
Chris Hani House
D Khanye, Dfil (UCT)
Enoch Sontonga
F Chindeka
Thomas Pringle House
M Ntsane
Walker House
S Roodt, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

**GAVIN RELLY POSTGRADUATE
VILLAGE
Warden**

L Juma, LLD (Rhodes)
Oakdene
A Ntlatsana B.Sc (Rhodes), B.Sc (Hons)
(Rhodes), M.Sc (Rhodes)

**NELSON MANDELA HALL
Hall Warden**

E Ofei
Stanley Kidd House
T Moleko
Helen Joseph House
M Maponya, BSocSc, BSocSc (Hons), (UCT),
MA (Rhodes)
Guy Butler House
E Ofei
Adelaide Tambo House
O Lehasa

**LILIAN NGOYI HALL
Hall Warden**

M Ntlati BSocSc (UCT), BSocSc (Hon)(UCT)
Centenary House
M Chirombo, BFA (Hons)(Rhodes)
Ruth First House
Z Kweleta
Victoria Mxenge House
S Klaas, BA, BA (Hons), MA (Rhodes)
Joe Slovo House
M Ntlati BSocSc (UCT), BSocSc (Hon)(UCT)

**OPPIDAN HALL
Hall Warden**

M Shivambu
G Manamela

DESMOND TUTU HALL

Hall Warden

C Magadza, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes)

Margaret Smith House

L Baloyi-Mokwena M Tech Water Science (TUT)

Ellen Kuzwayo House

C Magadza, MSc (Pharm)(Rhodes)

Amina Cachalia House

Solethu Sibanda

Buhle Mgadi

Cullen Bowles House

K Ntकिनca, MSc (Social Science) (Rhodes)

HUGH MASEKELA HALL

Hall Warden (Acting)

V Baneti, BAdmin (HRM) – (UFH) Bachelor of Administration – Public Sector Human Resources Management, Law Master’s Candidate LLB and LLM Candidate (Wits) – Bachelor of Laws (UFH)

Calata

NC Mzimane, Bachelor of Commerce (BCom, Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) (Rhodes)

Hilltop 7

G Thondhlana, PhD (Rhodes)

Fatima Meer

V Baneti, BAdmin (HRM) – (UFH) Bachelor of Administration – Public Sector Human Resources Management, Law Master’s Candidate LLB and LLM Candidate (Wits) – Bachelor of Laws (UFH)

Sisulu House

B Mankantshu, Master of Social Science (Rhodes)

DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

Full details of rules and regulations for the various degrees, diplomas and certificates may be found in the relevant Faculty sections.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Degrees		Minimum duration
BBusSc	Bachelor of Business Science	four years
BCom	Bachelor of Commerce	three years
BCom(Hons)	Bachelor of Commerce with Honours	one year
BEcon	Bachelor of Economics	three years
BEcon(Hons)	Bachelor of Economics with Honours	one year
MBA	Master of Business Administration	two years
MCom	Master of Commerce	one year
MCom	Master of Commerce in Financial Markets	two years
MCom	Master of Commerce in Taxation	two years
MEcon	Master of Economics	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DEcon	Doctor of Economics	two years
Diplomas		
AdvDipBA(PG)	Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis	one year
DipAcc(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy	one year
DipEntMan(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management	one year
DipTax (PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation	one year
DipBA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Business Analysis	one year
DipARM(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation	one year

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

Degrees		Minimum duration
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)	preservice four years full-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Foundation Phase Teaching)	four years part-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Senior/FET Phase) Mathematics	three years part-time
BEd	Bachelor of Education (Senior/FET Phase) English	three years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Bilingual Education for Diversity and Access	two years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Curriculum Studies	two years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Educational Leadership and Management	two years part-time

BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in English Language Teaching	two years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Information Communication Technology Education	two years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Mathematics Education	two years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Primary Education	two years part-time
BEd(Hons)	Bachelor of Education Honours in Science Education	two years part-time
MEd	Master of Education	one year full-time, two years part-time
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years full-time
Diplomas and certificates		
ACEFL	Advanced Certificate in Education Foundation Phase Literacy	two-year part-time
PGCE	Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior/FET Phase)	one year full-time
PGDip(HE)	Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education	two years part-time
PGDip(SL)	Postgraduate Diploma in Sustainability Learning	two years part-time
PGDip(CE)	Postgraduate Diploma in Higher Education Community Engagement	two years part-time

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

Degrees		Minimum duration
BA	Bachelor of Arts	three years
BA (Hons)	Bachelor of Arts with Honours	one year
BFA	Bachelor of Fine Art	four years
BJourn	Bachelor of Journalism	four years
BMus	Bachelor of Music	four years
MA	Master of Arts	two years
MFA	Master of Fine Art	one year
MMus	Master of Music	one year
DMus	Doctor of Music	four years
DLitt	Doctor of Literature	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
BSocSc	Bachelor of Social Science	three years
BSocSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	one year
MSocSc	Master of Social Science	two years
DSocSc	Doctor of Social Science	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years

Diplomas and Certificates

HDipPsychotherapy	Higher Diploma in Psychotherapy	one year (min)
HDipTheaStud	Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies	one year (min)
DipFineArt	Diploma in Fine Art	four years
DipELT(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: English Language Teaching	one year
DipIS(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: International Studies	one year
* DipLGA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: Local Government Administration	one year
DipESL(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language	one year
HDipJourn(PG)	Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)	one year
* DipMedMgmt(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	one year
DipPsychol(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology	one year
<i>* not currently offered</i>		

FACULTY OF LAW**Degrees****Minimum duration**

LLB	Bachelor of Laws	four years
LLM	Master of Laws	two years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
LLD	Doctor of Laws	

FACULTY OF PHARMACY**Degrees****Minimum duration**

BPharm	Bachelor of Pharmacy	four years
MPharm	Master of Pharmacy	two years
MSc	Master of Science	two years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	three years
DSc	Doctor of Science	

FACULTY OF SCIENCE**Degrees****Minimum duration**

BSc	Bachelor of Science	three years
BSc(Inf Sys)	Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	three years
BSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Science with Honours	one year
MSc	Master of Science	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DSc	Doctor of Science	

THE RESIDENCES

Residence accommodation is comfortable and attractive. Most of the older residences, some designed by Baker and Kendall, the original architects of Rhodes, have been restored externally and the interiors modernised. Generally, students have their own rooms. We have 3829 single residence rooms on campus due to Covid-19 regulations. First year students are allocated to these rooms using a lottery system. Early application for residence accommodation is essential and ensures a wider choice of residence. For details of residence fees see the Fees and Charges section.

The fifty-five residences are grouped in fourteen clusters, all with their own dining-clusters, and all within easy walking distance of lectures and town. There are three women's clusters, one men's cluster and 10 clusters accommodating men and women in separate residences, as well as a separate Postgraduate Village, which offers a choice between self-catering, and full board.

Each cluster largely governs its own internal affairs. However, certain rules apply to all students in residence (see the Student Disciplinary Code). A student may be required to leave a university residence at any time if the Director of Student Services and Development, in consultation with the relevant Residence Cluster Coordinator, determines that this is in the best interest of the residence or the student.

Subject to conditions established by the Director of Student Services and Development, Residence Cluster Coordinators have the authority to decide which returning or Oppidan students (those who have previously lived in a Rhodes residence) may be admitted to their clusters. They may refuse admission or readmission if deemed appropriate. In such cases, the Residence Cluster Coordinator must provide a written justification of the decision to the Director of Student Services and Development.

The final decision, with regard to admitting a student into residence cluster always be vested with the Vice Chancellor.

A Residence Cluster Coordinator oversees a group of residences within a cluster. Each individual residence is managed by a Residence Head, supported by Residence Student Assistants and House Committees. Senior members of the academic and administrative staff are appointed as Fellows of the various clusters, where they play an active role in the life and development of their respective communities.

Residence Head's powers of search

A Residence Cluster Coordinator or Residence Head may conduct a search of a student's room if there are reasonable grounds to believe that evidence of a disciplinary offence, or an attempted offence, may be found therein. All such searches must be carried out in strict accordance with the Student Protocol for Search and Seizure.

Housekeeping

It is important to be aware that there are certain times when housekeepers are required to enter student rooms. They are trained, as per hotel standards, to knock three times before entering a room. They are also required to say "housekeeping" between each knock. If there is no response from the room, they are then permitted to enter using the master key, which has been entrusted to them.

Reasons why housekeeping may be required to enter a student room include: window cleaning; fumigation; requisition work; checking Rhodes University furnishings etc.

Responsibility for University property

Each student allocated a room in residence must sign a Room Statement Form as and when required to do so by the cluster Residence Head listing all university furniture and other property in the room and certifying that it is in good order. At the end of each term when students are required to clear their rooms, the house Residence Head will check the rooms, and the students will be held responsible for leaving all the furniture, other property and the

room itself, in the same good order in which it was found (fair wear and tear excepted).

In the case of damage to, or loss of, university property, the student or students responsible, if known, are required to bear the cost. If not known, the cost of loss or damage will be charged either to a particular group of students or to the general funds of students in the house.

A student should report any damage or loss of university property in a room while he/she is in occupation, and for which he/she is not responsible, immediately, in writing, to the house Residence Head. If this is not done, it will be presumed that the loss or damage is the responsibility of the occupant of the room, who will have to bear the cost.

Insurance (accident)

Students are not covered by university insurance while at Rhodes unless they are injured while engaged in activities for which they are remunerated by the university. All other insurance is the responsibility of each student.

Loss of or damage to students' property

Students are strongly advised to ensure that they carry the necessary insurance against theft, housebreaking, fire and other similar risks.

The University will in no way hold itself responsible for any loss or damage by theft, fire or any other means to students' property kept in the residences either during term time or during vacations.

All students' room doors are fitted with locks. Student rooms should be locked at all times.

Property left in residence box rooms

Any property belonging to persons who no longer live in residence, which has been stored or left in residence box rooms, will be sold if it has not been removed from such box rooms by the end of the first vacation of each year. The proceeds will be paid into an official account of the relevant Cluster

Committee for the benefit of the students of the House concerned.

Property left in residence box rooms is left entirely at the student's own risk.

Residence during vacations

Undergraduate residences (undergraduate and postgraduate students)

- a) Accommodation in residence is available during the April and September recesses, when normally at least one women's residence and one men's residence are open. No accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or during December and January each year.
- b) Students wishing to stay in the vacation residences during the April and September vacations must submit the appropriate online application on ROSS (Application for Vacation Accommodation Form) two weeks prior to the start of the vacation in question.
- c) Students remaining in residence during the April vacation pay an extra fee for room and board (see Fees and Charges section).

NB University residences are used during most vacations for conferences etc. Students must clear their residence rooms during all vacations. The University has the right to close all, or any, houses and Clusters during a vacation, and determines when, for how long and on what conditions residential facilities are available during vacations and at other times.

Residence fees do not cover accommodation during vacations, except in the following case:

- a) Students may move into residence at the beginning of the academic year up to two days before the day on which they register academically, and one day before the beginning of the second, third and fourth terms.
- b) A student may remain in residence 24 hours after the end of the first and third terms, and 48 hours after completing the June and November examinations.

No reduction in fees is made if students finish their examinations before the official end of term.

NB Students not writing examinations (including students who have not obtained DP certificates) must leave residence before the examination period begins. No reduction in residence fees will be granted.

Accommodation in residence is normally available during the supplementary/aegrotat examinations in November and February, and students wishing to return to residence early for the purpose of writing such examinations must submit the appropriate form (Application for Vacation Accommodation) available from the Residential Operations Division, Student Bureau or cluster Residence Heads, at least two weeks prior to the start of the day accommodation is required. A fee will be charged for such accommodation.

Postgraduate students (Celeste House, Oakdene House, Gilbert Street postgraduate units)

- Full-time students will be accommodated in Celeste House, Oakdene House and three smaller houses on campus.
- Students may remain in residence throughout the year, if they have registered administratively.
- Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. This will also allow them to have meals in a dining cluster. In the event of all dining clusters being closed, the students will have to make their own arrangements for meals.
- A pro-rata rebate will only be paid out in the final year of study upon provision of proof of submission of thesis.
- Cooking is permitted in designated self-catering units only. Subletting of rooms, or permitting squatting, will result in exclusion from the residence.
- Students who wish to make use of the self-catering facilities provided in Oakdene, Celeste and Gavin Relly Post Grad Village residences, must indicate their choice when registering administratively. Should a student need to change during the year, under exceptional circumstances this will be considered. An application should be sent via email to meals@ru.ac.za.

Postgraduate students (Gavin Reilly Postgraduate Village)

- Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. The different rates for self-catering and full board, are indicated in the fees booklet.
- If a student opts for full board, their meals will be provided in the Courtenay Latimer dining cluster. Meal bookings are managed online on ROSS. Email meals@ru.ac.za with any queries relating to meal bookings.
- Cooking is permitted in the units. A fridge and hotplate are provided.
- Subletting of rooms or permitting squatting will result in exclusion from the village.

RU Health Care Centre

The Health Care Centre is staffed by four qualified nursing sisters and two Health Care Centre assistants. The Sisters attend to minor ailments, dispense medicines, dress wounds, carry out first aid, run a contraception clinic and conduct health education during regular clinic hours. There is a 24-hour emergency service. The Health Care Centre has eight beds for in-patients, such as those with infectious diseases in need of nursing care or isolation, depression or other psychological disorders. Students may choose any medical practitioner they wish to attend them. They or their parents are responsible for the medical practitioner's charges, the cost of any prescriptions made up by local chemists, and the fees for any additional special nursing required by an individual student. Students requiring operations or specialised attention not given in the Health Care Centre are moved to hospital for treatment, and are responsible for any resultant charges. A student who is admitted to the Health Care Centre must comply with the Health Care Centre rules and cluster obey all lawful instructions by the Health Care Centre sisters.

Mail to residences

Students should notify their correspondents that letters must be addressed to the particular house they live in, and not merely to Rhodes University.

THE RESIDENCES

The following is a list of the appropriate postal addresses and Residence Heads' telephone numbers:

Allan Webb Cluster Private Bag 1027
Cluster Coordinator 6038010
Cluster Administrator 6038474
Canterbury House 6038577
Canterbury Annexe 6037238
Salisbury House 6038010
Winchester House 6038011
Truro House 6038519

Courtenay-Latimer Cluster Private Bag 1031
Cluster Coordinator 6038044
Cluster Administrator 6038575
Beit House 6038044
Charlotte Maxeke House 6038045
Oriell House & Annex 6038886

Desmond Tutu Cluster Private Bag x1042
Cluster Coordinator 6038336
Cluster Administrator 6037452
Ellen Kuzwayo House 6037467
Amina Cachalia House 6037468
Cullen Bowles House 6038038
Margaret Smith House 6038336

Drostdy Cluster Private Bag 1025
Cluster Coordinator 6038016
Cluster Administrator 6038586
Allan Gray House 6038014
Celeste 6037602
Graham House 6038015
Prince Alfred House 6038016

Founders Cluster Private Bag 1028
Cluster Coordinator 6038019
Cluster Administrator 6038588
College House 6038020
Cory House 6038021
Matthews House 6038022

Hugh Masekela Dining Cluster Private Bag 1038
Cluster Coordinator 6037716
Cluster Administrator 6037718

Calata House 6037469
Hilltop 7 6037715
Fatima Meer 6037716
Sisulu House 6037517

Hobson Cluster Private Bag 1030
Cluster Coordinator 6038025
Cluster Administrator 6038578
Hobson House 6037467
Dingemans House 6038025
Livingstone House 6038583
Milner House 6038855
Starling House 6038916

Solomon Kalushi Mahlangu Cluster
Cluster Coordinator 6038030
Cluster Administrator 6038589
Atherstone House P Bag 1036
6038030

Adamson House P Bag 1034
6038029
Robert Sobukwe House P Bag 1029
6038031
New House P Bag 1037
6038032

Kimberley Cluster Private Bag 1026
Cluster Coordinator 6038582
Cluster Administrator 6038590
De Beers House 6037543
Gold Fields House 6038582
Esther Mahlangu House 6037717
Rosa Parks 6037067

Lilian Ngoyi Cluster Private Bag X1040
Cluster Coordinator 6037065
Cluster Administrator 6038692
Centenary House 6038833
Ruth First House 6038720
Victoria Mxenge House 6038697
Joe Slovo House 6037065

Miriam Makeba Cluster Private Bag 1041
Cluster Coordinator 6038035
Cluster Administrator 6038861
Enoch Sontonga House 6038035
Thomas Pringle House 6038036

Walker House	6038039
Chris Hani	6038069

Nelson Mandela Cluster	Private Bag X1673
Cluster Coordinator	6038042
Cluster Administrator	6037198
Stanley Kidd House	6038037
Helen Joseph House	6038916
Adelaide Tambo House	6038042
Guy Butler	6038693

Oppidan Cluster	
Residence Head	6038229

Postgraduate Cluster	
Cluster Coordinator	6038581

GRPGV	6038581
Oakdene	6038349

St Mary Cluster	Private Bag 1032
Cluster Coordinator	6037510
Cluster Administrator	6038576
John Kotze House	6037510
Lilian Britten House	6038387
Olive Schreiner House	6038049
Phelps House	6038048

Discipline in the residences

The relevant rules and procedures are to be found in the Student Disciplinary Code and the Cluster and House rules applicable in each house. Students should ensure that they are aware of these.

Special diets

Meat, Vegetarian, Halaal, Hindu, African, Fast Food and Health Diets are offered. Regretfully specialised medical diets cannot be offered.

Fees for residence accommodation

(a) Fees payable for residence accommodation are set out in the "Fees" section of the Calendar.

NB A student who has moved into residence but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.

(b) Residence fees are currently set according to a facility-grading system.

(c) Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made where students change residences. The total amount is debited to the students' account.

Cancellation of provisional or final residence booking

In the case of an early withdrawal from residence, for any reason, other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a cancellation fee of two months residence fee will be levied over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee (IF) deadline as set out in the Fees Booklet each year.

Sharing of double rooms

Where, for University convenience, students are required to share accommodation, a 25% discount of the lodging fee for a single room is payable to the student for the period that the room was shared. For discount and adjustments, the residence year is taken as 249 days.

Accommodation in University transit housing units

In order to meet the demand for residence accommodation a number of students are allocated to suitable transit houses. This accommodation is temporary, and students housed in such accommodation will be required to move into residences as and when vacancies occur in residences. Placement in any particular cluster or residence cannot therefore be guaranteed.

Linen and laundry

Bed linen is supplied and laundered free of charge. Washing machines and tumble driers are installed in each residence for students' personal laundry.

Rebate on residence fees

No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason.

Residence merit scholarships

A number of residence merit scholarships are available each year on application. Specific criteria are laid down for these scholarships. Applications should be made to the Residence Head concerned, who will pass them on to the Residence Cluster Coordinator for consideration by a committee consisting of Residence Heads and student leaders in that residence.

Students leaving residence during the academic year

- (a) Students who wish to withdraw from residence before the end of the academic year, must give notice of such intention, in writing, to the Student Bureau.
- (b) Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the scale set out in the section on "Fees and Charges".
- (c) Students who have withdrawn from residence during the course of the year must vacate their rooms within 24 hours of having submitted such notification to the University.

Electrical appliances

No fridges, hot plates, snackwich makers, immersion heaters or other cooking appliances are permitted in residence rooms. Kettles are allowed.

Residence booking

Students must apply for residence accommodation for subsequent years by a date made known in a circular published by the Registrar each year. Please note that in view of the demand for residence accommodation, the application must be submitted to the Student Bureau on or before the due date.

Meal management system

A computerised meal management system operates in all dining clusters. Students who have been awarded bursaries, NSFAS loans or full financial aid packages may not withdraw any credit balance from their account. Students will be refunded twice yearly (at the end of each semester) with the credit owing to them (up to the maximum refundable amount, as stipulated in the Fees & Charges booklet) as a result of unbooking meals. Meal credits will not be paid out at other times. Meal refunds are limited to a maximum amount per semester. See Fees & Charges for details.

RHODES UNIVERSITY STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

Policy Particulars

DATE OF APPROVAL BY RELEVANT COMMITTEE STRUCTURES DATE OF APPROVAL BY SENATE EXECUTIVE: 21 AUGUST 2012,

DATE OF APPROVAL BY DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE: 22 AUGUST 2012 DATE OF APPROVAL BY SENATE : 7 September 2012

DATE OF APPROVAL BY COUNCIL: 20 September 2012

Revised: Senate Executive: 4 June 2013 / Senate 21 June 2013

Revised: Council Chairperson's Circular: 29 July 2013

Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 26 September 2013

Approval by Senate: 25 October 2013 / Approval by Council: 5 December 2013

Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 1 April 2014

Approval by Senate: 30 May 2014 / Approval by Council: 19 June 2014

Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 25 September 2014

Approval by Senate 5 September 2014/Approval by Council 18 September 2014 Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 22 April 2015

Approval by Senate: 5 June 2015 / Approval by Council: 18 June 2015

Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 22 September 2017

Approval by Senex: 10 October 2017/Approval by Senate: 20 October 2017 Approval by Council: 30 November 2017

Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 27 March 2018

Approval by Senate: 1 June 2018

Approval by Council: 14 June 2018

Revised: Disciplinary Committee: 31 March 2020

Approval by Senate: 3 July 2020

Approval by Council: 16 July 2020

Approval by Disciplinary Committee: 18 May 2023 Approval by Senex: 8 August 2023

Approval by Senate: 18 August 2023

Approval by Council: 14 September 2023

COMMENCEMENT DATE: 1 January 2015 (following revision)

REVISION HISTORY:

REVIEW DATE: 2026

POLICY LEVEL: COUNCIL

RESPONSIBILITY: REGISTRAR'S DIVISION

**IMPLEMENTATION & MONITORING: OFFICE OF THE VICE-CHANCELLOR;
COUNCIL and REGISTRARS DIVISION**

REPORTING STRUCTURE: DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE > SENATE > COUNCIL

1. APPLICATION OF RULES

1.1 In common with other communities of like size and complexity, the University has rules which contribute to the smooth and harmonious running of the institution.

1.2 If the University identifies a risk and it is in the best interest of the University community to do so, the University may act in terms of these interests in order to avert the risk.

1.3 The rules and procedures in this Student Disciplinary Code apply to every student of the University regardless of whether the alleged conduct in question takes place on or off campus. Where the alleged conduct has taken place off campus, there must be a sufficient link between the alleged conduct in question and the University and/or it must be reasonably likely to bring the University into disrepute. All policies and procedures governing students must be consistent with this Code. In the case of any inconsistency with this Code, the Code prevails. The headings in this Code are for ease of reference only and do not have any relevance to the **interpretation** of the clauses contained herein.

1.3.1 All disciplinary proceedings are confidential except as provided by this code.

1.4 A student shall not contravene:

- (a) Any of the rules set out in Rule 4 of this Code.
 - (b) Any rule of the Halls of residence of the University.
 - (c) Any rule of the Oppidan Union; or
 - (d) Any rule of the SRC or the Sports Council.
 - (e) Any rule set out in the Examinations Policy.
- A contravention of any of these rules shall be deemed a disciplinary offence.

1.5 The Higher Disciplinary Authority has jurisdiction over all offences which contravene the rules as set out in this Code.

1.6 The Lower Disciplinary Authorities have jurisdiction over all offences which contravene the rules as set out in this Code unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or the equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

1.7 An Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all Oppidan students.

1.8 A Hall/House Warden shall have jurisdiction over:

- (a) All students resident in the Hall/House concerned; and
- (b) All other students who commit any disciplinary offence referred to in Rule 4 in any of the constituent houses of the Hall, the dining halls or the precincts which form part of the Hall. If there is concurrent jurisdiction, the Hall Warden of the Hall where the alleged offence occurred shall exercise jurisdiction unless there is agreement to the contrary.

1.9 A Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students in another Hall where:

- (a) the student's Hall Warden cannot hear a matter because s/he has an interest in the matter and
- (b) in order to ensure a separation of power
- (c) the student's Hall Warden appoints another Hall Warden to hear the case. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

1.10 A House Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students in another House (from within the Hall or another Hall) where:

- (a) the student's Hall Warden cannot hear a matter because s/he has an interest in the matter and
- (b) in order to ensure a separation of powers
- (c) the student's Hall Warden appoints another House Warden to hear the case. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

1.11 The Library, Information & Technology Services Division, the Registrar's Division and Sports Council have jurisdiction over all offences contained in the Library Use and Conduct Code, the IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code, Examination rules and the Sports Council rules respectively unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or an equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

1.12 The Campus Protection Unit has jurisdiction over all offences contained in Rule 4.7 as set out in

this Code unless there is a possibility of a sanction greater than 75 hours compulsory service, or an equivalent fine, in which event the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

1.13 The SRC has jurisdiction over all offences contained in its rules provided that as soon as it determines to take action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

1.14 The burden of proof in all disciplinary matters is on a balance of probabilities.

1.15 The University is an English medium University, and all disciplinary proceedings will accordingly be conducted in English, unless alternative arrangements are made at the request of the accused student, which request must be conveyed to the Prosecutor at least 3 (three) days before the hearing.

1.16 A student who is convicted of any crime in a court of law shall be rebuttably presumed to have committed the crime(s) of which they have been found guilty.

2. DEFINITIONS

In this Disciplinary Code, unless the context otherwise clearly indicates:

Affirmation means a solemn declaration in lieu of an oath.

Advisor means a person representing an accused student at a disciplinary hearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. An advisor must be a registered student of the University. No accused student may be represented at a Lower Disciplinary Hearing by a person who is qualified to practise as an attorney or advocate whether or not that person is admitted to practise as such or practises as such in the ordinary course. Should the Advisor be a law student, an Assistant Prosecutor may be appointed to represent the University as a presenter at the Lower Disciplinary Hearing.

Appeal means an appeal as contemplated in Section 8.

Assistant Prosecutor means a suitably qualified person appointed by the Vice-Chancellor – for such a period as the Vice Chancellor may periodically determine – to assist the Prosecutor/s in investigating and assessing contraventions of this Code and represent the University before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Appeal Committee. The Assistant Prosecutor is usually appointed from within the ranks of law students.

Competent verdict means any verdict that is provided for in Chapter 26 of the Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977 (as amended). **Compulsory service** means any appropriate service as determined by the Registrar or a Hall/House Warden as the case may be. **Common cause** means any fact or issue that is not in dispute.

Days means days within official university terms as set out in the Rhodes University Calendar to the exclusion of Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays unless the Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Prosecutor/s, directs that a hearing be commenced or continued outside official University dates, **or** the accused student agrees thereto

Digs means accommodation in Makhanda which is not a residence, occupied by a student, with or without his/her parents or guardians.

Disciplinary authority means any Board, Committee or person authorised to hold a disciplinary hearing, or any person required to carry out an investigation to determine whether or not a student should appear at a disciplinary hearing to answer a charge of committing a disciplinary offence.

Disciplinary Board means a panel of three suitably qualified people appointed in the discretion of the Vice-Chancellor, (or his/her delegate), one of whom shall be designated Chairperson, to hear matters deemed by the Vice-Chancellor (or his/her delegate) to be of a serious nature, including but not limited to sexual offences.

Disciplinary Appeal Committee means a panel of three people appointed by the Vice-Chancellor (or his/her delegate), one of whom shall be the designated chairperson, to hear matters on appeal from a Proctor or from a lower disciplinary authority.

Disciplinary Committee means the sub-committee of Senate charged with overseeing disciplinary

matters.

Fine means a sum of money payable by a student as a sanction by a student in exceptional circumstances.

Hall Disciplinary Panel means a panel convened in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Hall Warden. The Panel shall consist of at least one Hall Warden, one Senior / Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. The panel is to be chaired by either a Hall Warden, a Warden or a Hall Fellow.

Hate Speech means any utterance – verbal, written, published, advocated or communicated in person – directed towards any person that could reasonably be construed to be demonstrate a clear intention to:

- (a) Be hurtful
- (b) Be harmful or incite harm
- (c) Promote or propagate hatred

The grounds of discrimination are as follows: race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language and birth; or any other discrimination-based grounds which

- (i) Causes or perpetuates systematic disadvantage
- (ii) Undermines human dignity
- (iii) Adversely affects equal enjoyment of a person's rights and freedoms in a serious manner.

Visiting means no visitors are permitted in a university residence between midnight and 7.30 daily, without the express permission of the warden.

Jurisdiction period means any period during which a student can be held accountable for his/her conduct and includes but is not limited to the following:

- (a) Attendance at a Summer School or an Orientation Week Programme or any similar period of attendance at the University, however described.
- (b) The time when a registered student is in Makhandia for a supplementary examination or for any other reason linked to the University and its functions.
- (c) The time when any previously registered student has returned to or remained in Makhandia, and who thereafter registers again and, specifically, a person in this category who is present in Grahamstown during the Orientation Week.
- (d) The time when any registered student, whilst out of Makhandia, is representing the University at

any academic, club, cultural, sporting, society or other official University function or activity.

(e) Any other time by agreement with the accused student.

(f) The University retains jurisdiction to prosecute a person for a disciplinary offence, to finality, and in accordance with the Code if that person is still a 'student' in terms of the Code when disciplinary proceedings are instituted (this will include when notice of a hearing has been served on the student) The aforementioned jurisdiction period will include the exercise of the right of appeal in terms of the Code.

No-Contact Order means an absolute prohibition from making contact directly or indirectly, with the named person(s) in any way including but not limited to contact in person, by mail, by telephone, by electronic media or by or through any other medium or person, unless the Vice-Chancellor, Proctor presiding over a disciplinary hearing, or Disciplinary Board determines otherwise. **Oppidan** means a student living in 'digs'.

Person with legal qualifications means a person who is a legal practitioner or a person who has an LLB degree or a postgraduate qualification in law.

Presenter means a person in the Lower Disciplinary Authority who investigates and presents a case on behalf of the Hall/House.

The status of the presenter may vary from case to case and will normally follow line authority. For example, a Sub-Warden would present to a Warden and a Warden would present to a Hall Warden. In circumstances where there would be a conflict of interest for a Hall Warden to adjudicate a matter, a Hall Warden may then present the case to another Hall Warden.

Proctor means a suitably qualified person appointed by the Vice-Chancellor, for such a period as the Vice-Chancellor may from time to time determine, to preside at a disciplinary hearing.

Prosecutor means a suitably qualified person, appointed by the Vice-Chancellor for such a period as the Vice-Chancellor may from time to time determine, to investigate and assess contraventions of this Code and represent the University before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Appeal Board and to make written representations to a Disciplinary Appeal

Committee.

Public nuisance means any act, omission or condition on any premises, including any building, structure or growth thereon, which is offensive or dangerous, or which materially interferes with the ordinary comfort, convenience, peace or quiet of other people or which adversely affects the safety of the public.

Representative means a person representing a student at a disciplinary hearing before a Proctor, or a Disciplinary Board. A representative may be a SRC Defence Counsellor, a member of the University staff, a registered student of the University, an attorney or advocate.

Residence means a building belonging to or leased by the University housing students either on or off the campus, but excluding digs.

Search and seizure A Hall/House warden (excluding the Oppidan Warden) who is lawfully in charge of a University premises, or a Prosecutor/s, or the Campus Protection Unit, or the Vice-Chancellor or his/her nominee, who reasonably suspects the breach of any law or any breach of this Code may enter such University premises for the purpose of searching the premises and any student thereon. Such search and seizure must be carried out in terms of the **Protocol for search and seizure on Rhodes University campus**.

Settled by Mediation means that the parties to the mediation have reached an agreement that is reduced to writing and signed by both parties.

Student means the following persons:

- (a) Any person who is registered as a student at the University.
- (b) Any person who has been accepted by the University with a view to his/her becoming a registered student.
- (c) Any person who has left the University where the question of the propriety of a degree improperly obtained, or of conduct during an examination, is in issue.
- (d) Any person contemplated in (a) to (c) above when disciplinary proceedings are instituted (this will include when notice of a hearing has been served on that person) until disciplinary proceedings (including any appeal proceedings) are finalised. Suspension in the context of a sanction

means a temporary or permanent postponement of the implementation of the sanction subject to a condition. **Suspension** in the context of the Vice-Chancellor's powers means in terms of Rule 5.1 (a) that a student may be ordered not to attend classes, and/or participate in any other University activities, and/or remain in residence (if applicable), and / or set foot on campus, pending a final decision in a disciplinary matter or criminal prosecution.

3. MEDIATION

3.1 Any student who has been the victim of any form of harassment (sexual, racial, gender-based, religious etc.), defamation, or other offensive verbal behaviour, may elect to have the complaint settled by mediation rather than at a disciplinary hearing. At the discretion of the Prosecutor/s any other suitable matter may be referred, in writing, to mediation.

3.2 Mediation shall not be an option in matters which are (in the discretion of the Vice-Chancellor/ or his/her delegate) of a serious nature.

3.3 Any student complaining of the type of behaviour set out in 3.1 above (hereafter called the complainant) may approach the Director: Student Services and Development. The Director: Student Services and Development or his/her designate, may, if the complainant so requests, assist the student in making contact with an appropriate counsellor to assist such student.

3.4 If no counselling is undertaken or if, after counselling, the complainant desires mediation, then the Director: Student Services and Development shall contact the person/s who allegedly harassed, defamed or behaved offensively (hereafter called the respondent/s) and enquire of him/her/them whether they wish to settle the issue by mediation.

3.5 Where mediation is desired and agreed to by all parties, a suitably trained and qualified person will be appointed to mediate the dispute.

3.6 As mediation is a voluntary process, if at any time either the complainant/s or the respondent/s wish to withdraw from the mediation process, the process shall cease.

3.7 Where the parties do not agree to mediation, or the mediation is unsuccessful, the complainant/s

may request to proceed by means of a disciplinary hearing in which case s/he/they must refer the matter to a Prosecutor/s.

3.8 Where the dispute is settled by mediation, the complainant/s will waive his/her/their right to request to proceed with disciplinary action.

3.9 The mediation process shall be privileged, confidential, and no information disclosed during such process shall be disclosed or be admissible at any subsequent disciplinary hearing.

4. DISCIPLINARY OFFENCES

4.1. A disciplinary offence is behaviour which, without justification

(a) Unlawfully infringes another person's human rights as contained in the Bill of Rights, Chapter 2 of the Constitution, 1996.

(b) Is an offence in terms of South African Law (common law or statutory law), including any regulations, instructions or protocols promulgated in terms thereof, and such act is prejudicial, or potentially prejudicial, to any member of the University Community.

(c) Materially interferes with the safety, security or well-being of any member of the University community.

(d) Materially interferes with the governance and proper administration of the University.

(e) Materially interferes with the conditions necessary for teaching, learning, research or community service.

(f) Materially interferes with the maintenance of order and discipline at the University.

Without restricting the generality of Rule 4.1 the following are examples of disciplinary offences if committed during the jurisdictional period:

4.2 A student must comply with any lawful notice, instruction, request, order, direction or sanction issued in terms of this Code. A written mediated agreement has the same status as a lawful notice. Breach of a written mediated agreement is a disciplinary offence. The breach of a no-contact order is a disciplinary offence.

4.3 A student may not commit any common law crime. As far as common law crimes are concerned,

the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

4.4 A student is bound by the Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002, and its regulations. The offences sections shall be applicable as disciplinary offences.

4.5 A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act 32 of 2007.

4.6 A student may not commit *furtum usus* (unlawful use or removal of the property of another person without their permission but without any intention to steal e.g. borrowing of another person's clothing without permission) of another's property.

4.7

(a) A student possessing a motor vehicle or motor cycle in Makhanda must register it with the Student Bureau when registering as a student each year, and supply the make, registration number, and the student's address. In the event of a student acquiring possession of a vehicle in Makhanda after registration, s/he must register it with the Student Bureau within 72 hours of acquiring it.

(b) A student may not park a vehicle in any area in the precincts of the University reserved for other purposes.

(c) A student is bound by the provisions of the National Road Traffic Act 93 of 1996, and its regulations, as amended, with the necessary changes, to all roads on the campus of the University.

(d) A student charged with certain offences under Rule 4.7 may elect to admit their guilt in accordance with an admission of guilt penalties as laid down from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee.

4.8

(a) A student may not contravene the offences sections of the Liquor Act 27 of 1989.

(b) A student may not contravene the offences sections of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act 140 of 1992, as read with the Protocol for Students on the Use of Illicit Drugs.

(c) A student may not consume alcohol on any part of the University property without the written permission of the Vice-Chancellor, or such other person to whom the Vice-Chancellor has in writing delegated the authority to control the possession of or use of alcohol.

(d) A student may not be under the influence of alcohol or drugs where this interferes with the rights of other persons or their property.

(e) A student may not be in possession of any glass bottles and glasses containing liquor and soft drinks whilst on any part of the campus that has been designated by the Registrar to be a glass free area.

4.9

(a) A student may not contravene section 2 of the Makana Local Municipality Prevention of Public Nuisances By-Law as published in the Provincial Gazette no.1991 dated 10 October 2008.

(b) A student may not at any time make an unreasonably loud noise. Sound systems shall be turned off at 22h00 on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Thursdays and Sundays and at 24h00 on Fridays and Saturdays. This rule applies equally to students in residence and in 'digs'.

(c) A student may not use abusive or threatening language that is audible beyond the precincts of a digs or a residence.

(d) A student may not remove motor vehicle registration number plates, street signs, street numbers, hotel names, doctor's name plates or any other similar property without the authority of the lawful owner or occupant.

4.10

(a) A student may not contravene the offence sections of the Firearms Control Act 60 of 2000, the Dangerous Weapons Act 71 of 1968 and the Explosives Act 26 of 1956.

(b) A student may not bring a firearm (including an air-rifle and air-gun) or use a firearm on any part of the University property without the permission of the Vice-Chancellor.

4.11

A student may not be violent or disorderly.

(a) A student may not contravene the Acceptable Use Policy or IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code as published by the Information & Technology Services Division as read with the relevant legislation.

(b) A student may not contravene the Policy for Advertising on Campus by Students and Student Organisations.

4.12

(a) A student shall notify the Student Bureau of

their contact details i.e. home address, address in Makhanda, e-mail address and cell phone number. In the event of a student moving residences or digs, s/he must notify the Student Bureau of his/her new address within seven days.

(b) A student must identify him/herself by producing a student card or any other satisfactory form of identification upon request by any member of the University staff. Such power shall only be exercised where the staff member seeking the information has reasonable cause to believe that the student has committed a disciplinary offence, or that the student in question is in a position to give information about the commission of a disciplinary offence. Failure by a student in these circumstances to answer promptly and truthfully and provide satisfactory identification will be regarded as a serious breach of discipline.

(c) A student may not damage or deface any property of the University or any property whatsoever within the precincts of the University.

(d) A student may not intentionally interfere with any Rhodes University emergency equipment (emergency assistance buttons, fire-extinguishers, cameras and telephones, etc.).

(e) A student may not put up a poster on any surface not specifically designated or reserved for putting up of posters.

(f) A student may not occupy or use any portion of the University premises otherwise than in accordance with the Rules and Regulations of the University or in any manner contrary to the purposes for which such premises have been intended to be used by the University or for which they are, in fact, normally used.

4.13

(a) A student shall obey all lawful instructions given by any member of the University staff concerning his/her conduct, including an order to proceed immediately to, and remain at, his/her place of residence or the Campus Protection Unit office.

(b) A student shall obey a lawful instruction by the Prosecutor/s to furnish information to him/her or to appear before any disciplinary authority provided:

(i) that any student appearing before the Prosecutor shall be cautioned that she/he need not answer any question the answer to which is likely

to expose him/her to a disciplinary hearing.

(ii) that an accused student appearing before the Prosecutor shall not be compelled to furnish him/her with a written statement. An accused student may, however, furnish the Prosecutor with a written statement if s/he freely chooses to do so.

4.14

(a) A student may not take into an examination/test venue, or have in their possession whilst in such a venue, any cell phone, book, memoranda, notes, papers or other materials whatsoever, except answer books or such other books, or other materials as shall have been supplied by the Examinations Officer or authorised by the examiners.

(b) A student may neither aid/attempt to aid another candidate during an examination/test, nor obtain/attempt to obtain aid from another candidate. A student may not communicate or attempt to communicate in any way with any other candidate during an examination/test.

(c) Absence without authority: The incident of a student being absent without authority will be dealt with as an academic matter.

(d) Instances of plagiarism will be dealt with in terms of the University Plagiarism Policy. All students are required to familiarise themselves with and comply with this policy.

(e) Every member of the academic staff shall have the right to exclude from class any student guilty of misconduct or insubordination in such class. If the exclusion is for more than one lecture or other class meeting it shall be reported in writing to the Head of the Department concerned. The HOD may, after an enquiry where the student/s concerned have been given the right to explain his/her/their alleged misconduct, confirm or vary the order of exclusion. If the order of exclusion is for more than two weeks, it must be reported, in writing, by the Head of the Department to the Dean of that Faculty. After considering the Head of Department's report, the Dean of the Faculty may confirm or vary the order, or refer the matter to the Prosecutor/s.

4.15

(a) While a student may receive visitors in a University student residence (this includes balconies, verandas and common rooms) no visitors are permitted in a University student residence

between 24h00 (midnight) and 07h30 daily, without the express permission of the warden. All visitors to any residence must be escorted at all times and hosts are responsible for their guests' conduct during this time.

(b) In application of the above rules, there are residence rules applicable to each hall of residence. Students are required to familiarize themselves with their own residence rules and to ensure that the friends/partners who visit them in the residence are aware of the relevant Hall or House rules.

4.16

(a) A student may not initiate, raid, or coerce another student, with or without the consent of the participants.

(b) A student may not be present in a residence of which he/she is not a member, without being in compliance of the rules of the University.

(c) A student may not engage in conduct which interferes or is likely to interfere with teaching, studying, research, lectures, meetings, or other events at the University, any constituent part of the University, an associated research institute, the administration of the University, or of any other of the normal processes and activities of the University.

(d) A student may not interfere, even by omission, with the governance and proper administration of the University.

(e) A student may not engage in conduct which obstructs or interferes with an officer, member, employee, and any other student in the performance of his/her lawful duties.

4.17

(a) A student may not engage in any conduct which is offensive to and/or defamatory of any staff member, student, or member of the public.

(b) A student may not be insubordinate towards any member of the University staff.

(c) A student may not utter, distribute, display, show, screen or project disparaging, discriminatory, and derogatory material based on a person's race, cultural identity, gender or sexual orientation – this includes hate speech.

(d) A student may not engage in conduct likely to bring the University, or any part of it, into contempt or disrepute

(e) A student may not engage in any form of

harassment or discrimination.

4.18

(a) A student may not intimidate, interfere with, or harass potential University witnesses.

(b) A student may not deliberately mislead a Prosecutor or University official in an attempt to affect the outcome of disciplinary action during an investigation.

(c) A student may neither deliberately nor negligently respond untruthfully to any relevant and lawful question put to him/her in the course of a disciplinary hearing or by a Prosecutor during an investigation into an alleged disciplinary offence.

(d) A student may neither hinder nor obstruct the hearing of any disciplinary proceedings or fail to obey an instruction given by the person chairing or conducting the proceedings.

(e) A student may not fail to attend a disciplinary hearing. During a hearing, a student must remain in attendance until excused.

(f) If a student fails to attend a disciplinary hearing and the person chairing/conducting the proceedings is satisfied that service of the notice had been effected – in terms of rule 7.3 and that all reasonable attempts to contact the student have been made, then the disciplinary hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

(g) A student may not intentionally:

i) Insult any person lawfully present at a disciplinary hearing during its sitting.

ii) Interrupt the proceedings or otherwise misbehave during a hearing.

A student who contravenes this rule is liable to exclusion from the hearing and to immediate punishment on condition that s/he is first given an opportunity to either explain or to apologise.

4.19 A student may not conspire with or aid and abet anybody in committing an offence.

4.20 A student may not contravene the Library Use and Conduct Code.

4.21 A student may not contravene Rule 1.3.1 subject to the recognition of his/her rights in terms of South African law.

4.22 Voluntary intoxication caused by any substance to the extent that a person lacks intention or capacity is not a defence to any offence in this

Code.

5. DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

5.1 The Vice-Chancellor

The Vice-Chancellor is the Chief Disciplinary Authority of the University and has the following powers:

(a) S/he may take interim action against any student as s/he in his/her discretion may consider desirable in the case of any apparent disciplinary offence by the student. In exercising this power, the Vice-Chancellor may suspend the student concerned from attendance at classes and/or from participation in any other activities of the University pending a final decision in the matter. In suspending the student, the Vice-Chancellor or his/her designate shall allow the student to make an oral representation against suspension.

(b) S/he may delegate all or any of his/her powers in connection with student discipline to a Deputy Vice-Chancellor or any other person.

(c) Any additional powers, functions and/or privileges as assigned to the Vice-Chancellor by council, as contemplated in section 7(6) of the Rhodes University Statute.

(d) Notwithstanding the terms of the appointment of the University Prosecutor/s and Proctor/s, the Vice-Chancellor shall be entitled, at any time, to relieve any of them of the powers entrusted to them herein, and may thereafter appoint another person/s in their stead, subject in all cases to the provisions of the Labour Relations Act 66 of 1995, as amended.

(e) The Vice-Chancellor shall, when exercising disciplinary powers, have jurisdiction over all students, shall be entitled to preside at any disciplinary hearings (alone or, in his/her discretion, with two suitably qualified assessors) and shall have the power to impose the same sanction as any disciplinary authority may impose.

(f) The Vice-Chancellor or the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor may determine to withhold examination results of any student, in respect of whom an investigation by a Prosecutor is pending, until any proceedings resulting from the investigation have been completed or withdrawn.

(g) The Vice-Chancellor has the power to exercise clemency. This power shall only be invoked once all

internal remedies have been exhausted. Clemency should only be granted in exceptional circumstances after a thorough investigation.

(h) The Vice-Chancellor (or person designated to perform this function by the Vice-Chancellor) may issue a no-contact order. Such an order may be on such terms and on such conditions and for such period of time as the Vice-Chancellor (or person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) may in his/her discretion consider desirable. A no-contact order may be issued whether or not a student has lodged a formal complaint against a student in respect of an alleged breach of this Code. Before making such an order the Vice-Chancellor (or the person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) shall allow oral representations in person from the student against whom the order is sought and the university prosecutor as to whether or not a no-contact order is to be issued. The maximum period of a no contact order is six months unless exceptional circumstances exist. Unless the Vice-Chancellor determines otherwise when issuing a no contact order, the order shall constitute an absolute prohibition from making contact, directly or indirectly, with the named person(s) in any way including but not limited to contact in person, by mail, by telephone, by electronic media or by or through any other medium or person. Any student against whom a no-contact order has been issued, may, before the expiration date of the order, approach the Vice-Chancellor (or the person designated by the Vice-Chancellor) with a request to rescind the order on the basis that exceptional circumstances exist that warrant rescission. A hearing, similar to that which preceded the issuing of the order will be held to allow both representations, in person, by both the student and the prosecution, before the decision as to rescission of the order is made.

5.2 The Acting Vice-Chancellor

When the Vice-Chancellor is absent from the University, the Acting Vice-Chancellor (or if no acting appointment has been made, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor: Academic and Student Affairs) shall take over the disciplinary powers vested in the Vice-Chancellor.

5.3 The Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor

The Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor shall oversee student discipline at the University and may

request updates on all matters involving student discipline at all levels and communicate such updates to the Vice-Chancellor.

5.4 The Registrar

The Registrar shall be responsible for the overall administration of the student disciplinary system and shall be responsible for, but not limited to, the following:

- (a) Maintaining a central hard copy repository of all documents relating to the Higher Disciplinary Authorities.
- (b) Making available case precedents to both the Prosecutor/s and the accused and his/her representative. Such precedents must remain in the Registrar's office given their confidential nature.
- (c) Endorsing academic transcripts where directed by a Proctor.
- (d) Exclusion of a student where directed by a Proctor.
- (e) Recording the outcomes of cases on the University Student Discipline Database (Protea).
- (f) Posting outcomes of each Higher Disciplinary case on the designated official University notice board outside the Student Bureau, unless otherwise advised by the Proctor or Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor.
- (g) Posting the June and November case summaries as produced by the Prosecutor/s on the designated official University notice board outside the Student Bureau.
- (h) Enforcing and monitoring only the sanctions of compulsory service ordered by the Higher Disciplinary Authorities and that of examination venue offences.
- (i) Withholding examination results where a student has not completed compulsory service in the stipulated time.
- (j) Refusing re-admission to residence at the beginning of a new academic year where a student has not completed compulsory service in the stipulated time.
- (k) Overseeing the progress made by each convicted student as regards their compulsory service and/or payment of compensation orders and/or fines ordered by the higher disciplinary authorities.
- (l) Convening a Disciplinary Appeal Committee

and a Disciplinary Board.

(m) Collating and distributing documents to be placed before a Disciplinary Appeal Committee and a Disciplinary Board.

(n) Providing administrative assistance if and when requested by the Prosecutor/s.

(o) Recording the acquisition of vehicles by students after registration in terms of Rule 4.7.

(p) Ensuring that the latest version of this Code appears in the Calendar and on all electronic platforms of the University.

5.5 Director: Student Services and Development

The Director: Student Services and Development has no disciplinary jurisdiction, but is responsible for the following:

(a) Posting the June and November case summaries (as produced by the Prosecutor/s) on designated official University notice boards.

(b) Providing a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Lower Disciplinary Authorities. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Affairs on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

(c) Drafting an annual trends analysis of Lower Disciplinary cases in order to identify areas of concern and to ensure consistency of sanctions.

(d) Communicating any incident report that may involve discipline at the higher level, to the Prosecutor/s within 48 hours. These incident reports should not include statements as these will be gathered by the Prosecutor/s. Such incident reports should contain the following:

(i) A description of the incident, including the date, time and place.

(ii) The names, student numbers, and contact cell-phone numbers of the affected persons and potential witnesses.

(e) Liaising with Hall Wardens to ensure that the Hall Administrators are enforcing and monitoring all sanctions of compulsory service and fines ordered by a Lower Disciplinary Authority.

5.6 Campus Protection Unit

The Head: Campus Protection Unit shall be responsible for the following:

(a) Receiving incident reports and ensuring that they are hand-delivered to the Prosecutor/s **within 48 hours** (it is vitally important that this time frame is adhered to). These incident reports should **not** include statements as these will be gathered by the Prosecutor/s. Such incident reports should contain the following:

(i) A description of the incident, including the date, time and place;

(ii) The names, student numbers and contact cell-phone numbers of the affected persons and potential witnesses;

(b) Serving charge sheets where requested to do so by the Prosecutor/s. The charge sheets must be served **within 48 hours** and a return of service must be delivered to the Prosecutor/s immediately following the service.

6. HIGHER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

6.1 The Proctor

(a) A Proctor shall have jurisdiction over all students and in respect to all disciplinary offences set out in this Code.

(b) If, during a hearing before a Proctor, s/he becomes unable to continue to serve and it appears that s/he will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, the proceedings may be terminated and new proceedings commenced de novo before another Proctor.

(c) A Proctor may, at any time after the accused student has pleaded in terms of Rule 7.9 and before the proceedings are finalised (either by a finding of not-guilty or by the imposition of sanction in the case of a guilty finding), if there is reason to believe that there are grounds for a no-contact order, or if a no-contact order is requested by any of the parties involved, authorise that a hearing as contemplated in Rule 5.1(h) take place.

6.2. Disciplinary Board

(a) A Disciplinary Board means a panel of three people appointed by the Vice-Chancellor, one whom shall be the designated Chairperson.

(b) A Disciplinary Board shall have jurisdiction

over all students and over all offences of a serious nature, including but not limited to sexual offences as set out in this Code.

(c) If, during a hearing before a Disciplinary Board, any member of the Board becomes unable to continue to serve, and it appears that the Board member will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, the proceedings may continue with the remaining Board members, or be terminated and new proceedings commenced de novo before another Board. This decision will be made by the Chairperson of the Board.

(d) The decision to prosecute a matter as a sexual offence shall be determined by the Prosecutor/s.

6.3 The Prosecutor

(a) The Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Prosecutor/s, may appoint Assistant Prosecutors to assist the Prosecutor/s. The Vice-Chancellor may, at his/her discretion, appoint any suitably qualified person to act as an Assistant Prosecutor.

(b) The Prosecutor/s and Assistant Prosecutors shall have the power to investigate any alleged disciplinary offence which is reported, that they are referred to, or of which they become aware. In conducting an investigation, the Prosecutors have the authority to request assistance from any University Official, if so required. If it appears that a student has committed a disciplinary offence they may, at their discretion, convene a hearing.

(c) The Prosecutor/s may, in assessing a case, put the allegation to the student prior to the student being charged with a disciplinary offence. The student must be warned and cautioned that s/he is under no obligation to make any statement whatsoever, but if s/he does, then it should be a voluntary statement in writing which may then be handed in as evidence.

(d) The Prosecutor/s shall have the power to terminate or suspend proceedings already commenced before any of the lower disciplinary authorities referred to in this Code on condition that there are reasonable grounds for doing so and that the rights of the accused are not unduly compromised.

(e) The Prosecutor/s shall provide a written update in June and November of each year to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor and the Registrar of

the progress made in each case they have dealt with. The Registrar will post these updates on the official University notice board outside the Student Bureau.

(f) The Assistant Prosecutors shall draft a case summary for each case with the names of the parties deleted for the Registrar to post on the designated official University notice board.

(g) The Prosecutor/s may direct that a case be heard by a Lower Disciplinary Authority.

(h) At the Prosecutor/s discretion a plea bargain discussion may occur prior to the commencement of a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board.

7. PROCEDURE IN HEARINGS BEFORE A PROCTOR OR DISCIPLINARY BOARD

7.1 A student appearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board may be assisted by any member of the University staff, any registered student of the University, other than a student summoned to answer charges in the same proceedings, or an attorney or advocate, provided that such representation shall be at his/her own cost. A person assisting a student by virtue of this provision will be referred to as their representative.

7.2 Where the Prosecutor/s is/are satisfied that there is a prima facie case against a student, and in the case of an offence that has occurred off campus that it is a matter that should be dealt with by this Code, s/he should draw up a notice setting out:

- (i) The disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, or any alternative disciplinary offence/s.
- (ii) The date, time, and place of the offence/s.
- (iii) The person/s against whom the offence/s was/were allegedly committed, if any, and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the charge/s s/he will be responding to.
- (iv) The date, time, and place of the hearing.

7.3 The notice must be served on the student in person in the first instance by the Prosecutor/s, their nominee, or a member of the Campus Protection Unit. In the case of an Oppidan student, the notice must be served on the student in person in the first instance by the Prosecutor/s, their nominee, a member of the Campus Protection Unit, or an Oppidan Warden. The notice must be served on the accused at least five days before the date of the

hearing. Should the student not be located in person in the first instance, the notice may be served by the Prosecutor/s or their nominee via email to the student's official Rhodes University email address. The student shall then be deemed to be served.

(a) In the event that a student is not in attendance in Makhandla, the notice may be served by the Prosecutor/s or their nominee by email to the student's official Rhodes email address.

7.4 An accused student will be entitled to receive a bundle of the documents, witness statements and/or affidavits, photographs and/or details of any electronic evidence the Prosecutor intends to use at least five days prior to the hearing. In the case of electronic evidence, arrangements will be made for the accused to access such evidence at least three days prior to the hearing. A bundle shall also be provided to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. Witness statements relating to evidence in aggravation of sanction need not be provided.

7.5 The person serving the notice must inform the Prosecutor/s in writing as to when, how, where, and to whom the notice was served.

7.6 The Prosecutor/s shall have the right to direct that any student attends and gives evidence and remains in attendance until excused from a disciplinary hearing.

7.7 The Proctor may, for any good reason, postpone a hearing.

7.8 At a hearing, before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, the reading of the charge, the plea, the evidence of all witnesses, any oral arguments and the reasons for both the judgment and sanction shall be digitally recorded.

7.9 The Prosecutor shall read the charge/s to the accused student only when all the parties are assembled before the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. The accused student will be required to answer the charge/s (i.e. plead to the charge/s). S/he may:

- (a) Deny that s/he committed the offence (Not Guilty).
- (b) Admit that s/he committed the offence (Guilty).
- (c) Admit to a lesser offence (e.g. charged with assault with intent to commit grievous bodily harm but only admits common assault).
- (d) Allege that s/he has already been found guilty

or not guilty of the disciplinary offence (i.e. the same set of facts).

(e) Allege lack of mental capacity (should this be alleged the evidence to be led must include oral evidence of a psychiatric assessment to support this allegation).

7.10 Where a student admits a charge (pleads guilty), the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall question the student to ensure that the student's admission of the charge (plea of guilty) is a genuine and complete admission on the question of both fact and law.

7.11 Where the accused student is represented, his/her representative may hand in a written plea statement in lieu of the questioning mentioned above.

7.12 If the Proctor or Disciplinary Board is satisfied that the student's answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge (a plea of guilty) with no defence, the student may be found guilty of the charge or a competent verdict, as the case may be, without any evidence being heard.

7.13 Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty), the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any such questions. Where a student elects to answer questions and admits to any of the allegations in the charge/s, these charges will be regarded as proved.

7.14 Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty), the Prosecutor shall lead viva voce (oral) evidence in support of the charge. The Prosecutor may submit written statements from witnesses. These written statements may be received into evidence if their content is common cause and if the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board allows this.

7.15 Witnesses appearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board will be required to confirm that the evidence they are about to give is truthful.

7.16 Each witness will be examined, cross-examined, or re-examined (as the case may be) by only one person at a time – though not necessarily

the same person for different witnesses.

7.17 An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that s/he is not compelled either way. Where the student is represented, his/her representative may lead the evidence on behalf of the defence. The student may then be cross-examined by the Prosecutor. After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

7.18 An accused student will have the right to call witnesses. Should the accused elect to give evidence, his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses.

7.19 A bundle of the documents, witness statements and/or affidavits, photographs and/or details of any electronic evidence which the defence intends to use at the hearing must be submitted to the Prosecutor/s at least three days prior to the hearing. A bundle shall also be provided to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. Written statements may be received into evidence if their content is common cause and if the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board allows this.

7.20 The Proctor or the Disciplinary Board may question any witness, including the accused student, at any time while they are giving evidence. The proceedings may be conducted in either the accusatorial or the inquisitorial method; alternatively, a combination of both may be used.

7.21 The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall decide on any question of law, procedure, or the admissibility of evidence. In deciding any question of procedure not provided for in this Code, or on the admissibility of evidence, s/he will not be bound by the formal rules of criminal procedure or evidence applicable in any court of law. Instead, s/he will follow the dictates of fairness, natural justice and relevance, even if this includes the application of the rules of procedure and evidence applicable in courts of law.

7.22 The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board may call any witness not already called, or recall any witness who has already given evidence, if s/he believes that the evidence or further evidence of that witness is essential to the just decision of the case.

7.23 After all the evidence has been presented, the Prosecutor and the accused student or his/her representative shall have the right to give a closing argument regarding guilt or innocence of the accused to the Proctor or Disciplinary Board. This argument may be delivered orally or in writing, or both.

7.24 After the conclusion of the arguments, the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall there and then, or after time is taken to consider the verdict, give a judgment with reasons for the verdict, as to whether or not the accused is guilty of the charge/s, alternative charge/s, or a competent verdict. In a case before a Disciplinary Board a verdict shall be reached by way of a majority vote.

7.25 Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence the Prosecutor and the student or his/her representative may lead evidence in aggravation or mitigation of sanction. Thereafter the Prosecutor and the student or his/her representative may address the Proctor or Disciplinary Board on what the sanction should be.

7.26 A Proctor or Disciplinary Board may, at any time after the accused student has pleaded in terms of Rule 7.9 and before the proceedings are finalised (either by a finding of not-guilty or by the imposition of sanction in the case of a guilty finding), if there is reason to believe that there are grounds for a no-contact order, or if a no-contact order is requested by any of the parties involved, refer the matter in terms of Rule 5.1 (h).

7.27 The Proctor or Disciplinary Board will there and then, or after time is taken to consider the sanction, give a judgment setting out the reasons for sanction and the sanction imposed.

7.28 A Proctor or Disciplinary Board shall have jurisdiction to impose any one or more of the following sanctions upon a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence:

- (a) Deprivation of a degree improperly obtained.
- (b) Permanent exclusion from the University.
- (c) Exclusion from the University, its premises, and from participation in all University activities (which shall include all student activities) for a specified period.
- (d) Exclusion from a specific University residence

or all residences.

(e) Exclusion from attendance at certain classes and/or University examinations, either permanently or for a specified period.

(f) Exclusion from participation in University activities or from such post or office in the University as may be specified, either permanently or for a specified period.

(g) Imposition of a fine not exceeding 20 % of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(h) Payment of a sum of money required to compensate for any loss, damage, or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence.

(i) A period of compulsory service.

(j) Prohibition from driving or possessing a motor vehicle/motorcycle on campus. (Note: This sanction may only be imposed on a student who is found guilty of a disciplinary offence involving the use and/or driving of a motor vehicle/motorcycle).

(k) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to five years.

(l) Endorsing the academic record of the student to the effect that the student's conduct has been unsatisfactory.

(m) Any other appropriate sanction.

7.29 Where a student has been acquitted due to lack of mental capacity, the student may not remain at the University or return to the University without undergoing a full psychiatric assessment, the findings of which must confirm that the student is of sound mind.

7.30 In assessing the sanction to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Proctor or Disciplinary Board hearing the matter, shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol or drugs at the time the offence was committed as an aggravating factor.

7.31 Where a student has been sanctioned in terms of this Code, the sanction shall come into effect immediately regardless of whether the student intends to take the matter on appeal, unless the Vice-Chancellor, on written application by the student, decides that there is good cause to suspend the implementation of the sanction pending the outcome of an appeal. The written application by the student shall set out fully all relevant facts

and submissions that he or she wishes the Vice-Chancellor to consider in arriving at a decision in this regard.

7.32 If there is reason to believe that a condition upon which the whole or a portion of a suspended sanction rests has been breached, the student shall, on two days' notice, be required to attend an enquiry for the purpose of establishing whether or not an order should be made bringing the suspended sanction into operation.

7.33 If a student who has been directed to appear before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board fails to appear at the place, date, and time specified in the notice, fails to remain in attendance or to attend any adjourned proceedings, the Prosecutor shall make all reasonable attempts to locate the student. If the Proctor or Disciplinary Board is satisfied that all reasonable attempts have been made to contact the accused the hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

7.34 If, during the course of a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, it comes to the knowledge of a Prosecutor that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which s/he has been charged, the Prosecutor may charge the student concerned with such supplementary disciplinary offence/s and, provided that the provisions of this Code in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed. The evidence lead until that point will retain its full force and effect.

7.35 At any disciplinary hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, no person/s other than the Proctor, members of the Disciplinary Board, Prosecutor/s, Assistant Prosecutors, the accused and his/her representative, parent/s, legal guardian/s, counsellor or any person requested by the complainant may attend. The status of a parent, legal guardian, counsellor, or person requested by the complainant, is strictly that of an observer who may support the student and not in any way engage in the process. The Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board retains the right to exclude any of these parties from a hearing on the grounds of inappropriate behaviour.

7.36 If a student appearing at a hearing before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the Proctor or the Chair of the Disciplinary Board may, after warning the student of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed. On such occasions, the proceedings will continue in his/her absence.

7.37 Within seven days of the imposition of a sanction by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, the Proctor or Chair of the Disciplinary Board shall record the charge/s, plea/s, material facts found proved, including aggravating and mitigating circumstances, if any, the reasons for the verdict, the verdict, the sanction imposed, and the reasons for the imposition of the sanction, and forward such record to the Registrar, the Prosecutor/s and the convicted student and his/her representative. This document constitutes the record of the proceedings.

7.38 The record should be made available to the Prosecutor/s and any student summoned to appear before a Proctor, or his/her representative, so that it may be referred to as a precedent in future enquiries or be used by such student in the preparation of her/his defence.

7.39 If either the Proctor or the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor is of the view that the sensitivity of a particular case renders publication of the details undesirable, s/he may withhold or restrict publication.

7.40 If a student is not able to complete any compulsory service within the time specified by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, written application for an extension of time shall be made to the Registrar. The Registrar, after consultation with a Prosecutor, may authorise an extension provided that he/she is satisfied that valid grounds exist.

8. APPEAL FROM A PROCTOR OR DISCIPLINARY BOARD

8.1 A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board shall, have the right to appeal such decision. Such an appeal will be a 'wide appeal', which may

incorporate grounds of appeal and/or review. This Rule must be read in conjunction with Rule 8.7.

8.2 The appeal will be decided by a Disciplinary Appeal Committee appointed by the Vice-Chancellor or his/her designate.

8.3 A student (or his/her representative) wishing to exercise the right of appeal shall, within five days of being sanctioned, advise the Registrar in writing that s/he wishes to have the case appealed. The request for appeal shall be accompanied by a deposit of an amount to be determined on an annual basis and payable to the Registrar, which shall serve as part payment for costs related to the appeal, which shall immediately become due and payable. The deposit shall only be refundable to the student in the event that the conviction is quashed.

8.4 At the request of the student (or his/her representative) the digital recording of the proceedings will be made available to a recognised transcription service. The full cost of the transcription of the entire digital recording shall be borne by the student. If the student wishes to rely on the recording in the appeal proceedings, s/he will be responsible for providing the members of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee and the Prosecutor/s with a transcription of the entire digital recording by an organisation or business that normally transcribes court records, at his/her own cost.

8.5 Within 5 days of the record being transcribed the student (or his/her representative) may submit written submissions (in regard to the appeal) to the Disciplinary Appeal Committee (and a copy provided to the Prosecutor/s).

8.6 Within 5 days of having received the written submissions of the student (or his/her representative), or within 5 days of the record being transcribed (should the student (or his/her representative) fail to submit written submissions) the Prosecutor/s may submit written submissions to the Disciplinary Appeal Committee (and a copy provided to the student or his/her representative).

8.7 Should the Prosecutor/s be of the view that the sanction imposed by a Proctor or Disciplinary Board is so lenient as to be unjust, s/he shall have the right to have the sanction appealed before a Disciplinary Appeal Committee.

8.8 The Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall decide the outcome of the appeal solely upon a consideration of the record and the written submissions of both parties. **No further evidence and/or submissions unless specifically requested by the Disciplinary Appeal Committee, shall be permitted.**

8.9 The Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall have the following powers:

- (a) To confirm, alter or reject the decision or find the student guilty on an alternative charge or competent verdict;
- (b) To confirm, reduce, increase, alter or set aside the sanction and replace it with an appropriate sanction; or
- (c) Generally to give such judgment or impose such sanction or make such order as the Disciplinary Appeal Committee deems fit.

8.10 The decision of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall be determined by a majority vote.

8.11 The Chairperson in consultation with the members of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee shall within seven days of having received written submissions by both parties (alternatively, should either party not make any written submissions, within 10 days of the record being transcribed) provide the student involved, the Prosecutor/s and the Registrar with a written report setting out the Disciplinary Appeal Committee's decision and the reasons for such decision.

9. LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

Lower Disciplinary authorities include Assistant Wardens, Wardens, Hall Wardens, Oppidan Wardens, a Hall Disciplinary Panel, designated Library staff, designated Information Technology staff and designated Campus Protection Unit staff and designated Registrar's Division staff.

9.1 A member of a Lower Disciplinary Authority shall be disqualified from exercising any of the functions or powers conferred upon him/her by this Code in a disciplinary hearing, if s/he witnessed all or any of the conduct alleged to constitute the disciplinary offence, or is the complainant, or has a personal interest in the matter except in the circumstances outlined in 9.5 below.

9.2 There must be a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case in order to comply with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, and the rules of natural justice and fairness.

9.3 Hall/House Wardens shall not have jurisdiction over shoplifting.

9.4 No legal representation or person with legal qualifications will be permitted to represent a student appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. A student appearing before such authority may, however, be accompanied by a Sub-Warden, or a Hall or House Senior/Head Student. Such person shall be referred to as the accused student's advisor. Should the student's advisor (as per the definition) be a law student, an Assistant Prosecutor may be appointed to represent the University at the Lower Disciplinary Hearing.

9.5 Any student in respect of whom a Hall/House Warden has jurisdiction shall have his/her hearing before the Hall/House Warden alone or in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Hall Warden, before a Hall Disciplinary Panel. A Hall Disciplinary Panel shall consist of at least one Hall Warden, one Senior / Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. The panel is to be chaired by either a Hall Warden, a Warden or a Hall Fellow.

9.6 Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may, rather than appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority, be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee. It should be noted that there are six admissions of guilt sanction documents relating to offences falling within the jurisdiction of Oppidan Hall Wardens, Hall/House Wardens, the Library, Information & Technology Services Division, designated Registrar's Division staff and the Campus Protection Unit. In the case of an admission of guilt, separation of powers is not necessary. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before

the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Oppidan Warden, Hall/House Warden, Director: Library Services or Director: Information & Technology Services Division, the Registrar's Division or in the case of traffic offences the Head: Campus Protection Unit, in writing within three days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the student is deemed to have admitted guilt and the relevant authority may, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

9.7 A Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have jurisdiction over the following students:

- (a) All students resident in the Hall/House concerned;
- (b) All students who commit a disciplinary offence in any of the constituent houses of the Hall/House, the dining halls or the precincts which form part of the Hall/House. If there is concurrent jurisdiction, the Hall Warden of the Hall where the alleged offence occurred shall exercise jurisdiction unless there is agreement to the contrary;
- (c) In order to ensure a separation of powers as set out in Rule 9.2 above, a Hall Warden may hear a case emanating from any other Hall. This will only apply where the Hall Warden does not exercise his/her discretion to convene a Hall Disciplinary Panel.

9.8 The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all students who are not in residence. Where the alleged conduct has taken place off campus, there must both be a sufficient link between the alleged conduct in question and Rhodes University, and

/ or it must be reasonably likely to bring Rhodes University into disrepute. The Oppidan Hall Warden shall not have jurisdiction over shoplifting, domestic violence and contraventions off campus of the National Road Traffic Act 93 of 1996, and its regulations, as amended.

9.9 A Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have jurisdiction over the following

offences:

- (a) All offences set out in Rule 4 unless there is a possibility that a sanction greater than that of the jurisdiction of a Hall/House Warden may be justified, in which case, the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter.

- (b) A contravention of any Hall or House Rule.

9.10 A Hall/House Warden shall have the power to search and seize as set out in the definition section. Such search and seizure must be carried out in terms of the **Protocol for search and seizure on Rhodes University campus**, as read with the **Protocol for Students on the Use of Illicit Drugs**.

9.11 The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have jurisdiction over all offences set out in Rule 4 unless there is a possibility that a sanction greater than that of the jurisdiction of a Hall Warden may be justified, in which case, the Prosecutor/s must be consulted for a decision as to which disciplinary authority shall hear the matter;

9.12 The Hall Wardens and Oppidan Warden shall provide a written update at the end of each term of the cases in their Hall to the Director: Student Services and Development of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Hall. The Director: Student Services and Development shall collate all such reports and provide a written update in June and November of each year of Lower Disciplinary cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Lower Authorities.

10. PROCEDURE IN HEARINGS BEFORE LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

10.1 Where a Warden is satisfied that a student has committed a disciplinary offence and the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel has jurisdiction, s/he should:

- (a) Draw up a notice setting out the disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, the date, time and place of the offence/s, the person against whom the offence/s was/were allegedly committed (if any), the property in respect of which the offence/s were committed (if any), and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the

charge/s she/he has to meet. The notice must also set out the date, time, and place of the hearing.

(b) The notice must be served on the student in person.

(c) The notice must be served on the accused at least three days before the date of the hearing.

(d) The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may postpone the hearing if a valid reason is given.

(e) When all the parties are assembled the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel shall read the charge/s to the accused student. The accused student will be required to answer the charge/s (i.e. plead to the charge/s). S/he may:

(i) Deny that s/he committed the offence – plead “not guilty”. Should the student plead “not guilty” it is at this point that a separation of power must be implemented.

(ii) Admit that s/he committed the offence – plead “guilty”.

(f) Where a student pleads guilty, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel shall question the student to ensure that the student’s plea includes all the relevant facts of the offence.

(g) If the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel is satisfied that the student’s answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge with no defence – pleads guilty – the student may be found guilty of the charge without any evidence being heard.

(h) Where a student denies the charge or pleads not guilty the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Chair of the Hall Disciplinary Panel may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any of the questions posed to him/her. Where a student elects to answer questions and admits any of the allegations in the charge/s, they will be regarded as proved.

(i) Where a student denies the charge – pleads not guilty – the Presenter shall lead oral evidence in support of the charge.

(j) Witnesses appearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary

Panel will be required to affirm that the evidence they will give will be truthful.

(k) An accused student or his/her representative will have the right to cross-examine any witnesses called by the Presenter. Thereafter such witnesses may be re-examined by the Presenter. Each witness will be examined, cross-examined, or re-examined (as the case may be) by only one person at a time – though not necessarily the same person for different witnesses.

(l) An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that the student shall not be compelled to give evidence. Where the student is assisted / represented his/her advisor may lead the evidence on behalf of the accused. She/he may then be cross-examined by the Presenter. After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

(m) An accused student will have the right to call witnesses. Should the accused elect to give evidence his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses.

(n) The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may ask questions of any witness, including the accused student, at any time whilst they are giving evidence.

(o) After all the evidence has been led or presented, the Presenter and the accused student or his/her advisor shall have the right to make a final statement should they so wish.

(p) Thereafter the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall deliver a decision as to whether the accused student is found either guilty or not guilty of the charge/s.

(q) Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence/s, both the Presenter and the student or his/her advisor may present argument in aggravation or mitigation of sanction.

(r) Thereafter the Presenter and the student or his/her advisor may address the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel on what the sanction should be.

(s) The Hall/House Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel will give a decision setting out the reasons for sanction and the sanction imposed.

(t) A Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may impose the following sanctions:

- (i) Exclusion from the Hall.
- (ii) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.
- (iii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.
- (iv) Exclusion from participation in any Hall or House activity for a maximum of 1 (one) term.
- (v) Exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of Sub-Warden.
- (vi) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 5 (five) years.
- (vii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence; and
- (viii) Suspension of visiting rights for a period of time.
- (u) An Oppidan Warden may impose the following sanctions:

- (i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.
- (ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.
- (iii) Exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of Sub-Warden.
- (iv) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 5 (five) years; and
- (v) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

10.2 In assessing the sanction to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel hearing the matter shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol/liquor/drugs at the time the offence was committed as an aggravating factor. As far as common law crimes are concerned, the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

10.3 A House Warden or Assistant Warden may impose the following sanctions:

- (a) A fine not exceeding 5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.
- (b) Compulsory service up to 50 (fifty) hours.
- (c) Suspension of all or part of any of the above sanctions for a period of up to 1 (one) year subject to a specified condition; and

- (d) Suspension of visiting rights for a period of time.

10.4 The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel must inform the student that they have the right to take the matter on appeal as contemplated in Rule 8 (with the necessary changes as required by the context).

10.5 If a student who has been directed to appear before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel fails to appear at the place and on the date and at the time specified in the notice, or fails to remain in attendance, or to attend any adjourned proceedings, the Presenter shall make all reasonable attempts to locate the student. If the Hall/House Warden is satisfied that all reasonable attempts have been made to contact the accused the hearing shall proceed in his/her absence.

10.6 If, during the course of a hearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel, it comes to the knowledge of a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which she/he has been charged, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may charge the student concerned with such supplementary disciplinary offence/s and, provided that the provisions of this Code in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed, the evidence led to that stage retaining its full force and effect.

10.7 The Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel shall have the right to direct that any student attends and gives evidence and remains in attendance until excused from a disciplinary hearing.

10.8 If a student appearing at a hearing before a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the Hall/House Warden, Oppidan Warden or Hall Disciplinary Panel may, after warning the student of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed. On such occasions, the proceedings

will continue in his/her absence.

10.9 Where a student has been sanctioned in terms of this Code, the sanction shall come into effect immediately regardless of whether the student intends to take the matter on appeal, unless the Vice-Chancellor, on written application by the student, decides that there is good cause to suspend the implementation of the sanction pending the outcome of an appeal. The written application by the student shall set out fully all relevant facts and submissions that he or she wishes the Vice-Chancellor to consider in arriving at a decision in this regard.

11. SUB-WARDENING STAFF

Sub-Wardens may only administer admission of guilt sanctions as defined by the Registrar on an annual basis and for minor infringements of house rules, and in imposing such sanctions, shall not exceed 50% of the sanction that a House Warden or Assistant Warden may impose.

12. REGISTRAR'S DIVISION STAFF

(a) Registrar's Division staff designated by the Registrar shall have jurisdiction over all students writing examinations in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the Examination Rules and Regulations.

(b) There shall be a Registrar's Division Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Registrar's Division staff appointed for this purpose by the Registrar.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be

imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Registrar in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Registrar's Division Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) The Registrar shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Registrar's Division Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

13. UNIVERSITY LIBRARY STAFF

(a) Library staff designated by the Director: Library Services shall have jurisdiction over all student library users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the Library Use and Conduct Code.

(b) There shall be a Library Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Library staff appointed for this purpose by the Director: Library Services.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with

the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Director: Library Services in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Library Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Director: Library Services shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Library Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official University notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

14. INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY SERVICES DIVISION STAFF

(a) Information & Technology Services Division staff designated by the Director: Information & Technology Services Division shall have jurisdiction

over all student computer users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in the IT Facilities Use and Conduct Code.

(b) There shall be an Information & Technology Services Division Disciplinary Committee consisting of two members of the Information & Technology Services Division staff appointed for this purpose by the Director: Information & Technology Services Division.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Director: Information & Technology Services Division in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Information & Technology Services Division consisting of the Manager: Student Services and Manager: IT Operations, shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Director: Information & Technology

Services Division or his/her nominee shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Information & Technology Services Division. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted, and reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

(g) Copyright and Take Down Notices will be dealt with in the following way:

(i) First Offence – Students will be notified by the Information & Technology Services Division of a warning and can accept guilt or ask to appear before a disciplinary authority.

(ii) Second Offence – Students will be notified and sanctioned 40 hours of compulsory service administered by the Information & Technology Services Division. If a student declines to accept the admission of guilt, the student shall appear before a hearing.

(iii) Third or any following Offence – Students will be handed over to the University Prosecutor/s by the Information & Technology Services Division.

15. CAMPUS PROTECTION UNIT

(a) Campus Protection staff designated by the Head: Campus Protection Unit shall have jurisdiction over all student vehicle users in respect of any contravention of a rule contained in Rule 4.7 of this Code.

(b) There shall be a Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee consisting of the Head: Campus Protection Unit and two members of the Campus Protection Unit staff appointed for this purpose by the Head: Campus Protection Unit.

(c) Students who are charged with certain disciplinary offences, which are agreed to from time to time by the Disciplinary Committee, may be permitted to admit their guilt in accordance with the admission of guilt sanctions as laid down from time to time by the Registrar after consultation with the Disciplinary Committee, rather than appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/

he cannot be compelled to admit guilt. Any student issued with a notice that an admission of guilt sanction may be imposed in respect of a particular offence who elects to appear before a disciplinary authority rather than accept the sanction shall notify the Head: Campus Protection Unit in writing within seven days of being issued with such notice. If no such notice has been given, the relevant authority may, after a further seven days, impose the prescribed period of compulsory service or debit the student's fees account.

(d) The procedure to be followed should a student elect to appear before a Lower Disciplinary Authority will be as set out in Rule 10 of this Code with the necessary changes.

(e) The Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee shall have the authority to impose the following penalty per offence:

(i) A fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

(ii) Compulsory service up to 75 (seventy five) hours.

(iii) Payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

(f) The Head: Campus Protection Unit shall provide a written update (June and November) of cases to the Director: Office of the Vice-Chancellor of the progress made with each case dealt with by the Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee. This update will be posted by the Director: Student Services and Development on designated official notice boards and electronic notice boards with the names of the parties deleted and be reported on at the Disciplinary Committee.

16. APPEAL FROM A DECISION OF A HALL/HOUSE WARDEN, OPPIDAN WARDEN, LIBRARY DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, INFORMATION & TECHNOLOGY SERVICES DIVISION, CAMPUS PROTECTION UNIT DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE, REGISTRAR'S DIVISION, SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD OR SPORTS COUNCIL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE

16.1 A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by a Hall/House Warden, Oppidan

Warden, Library Disciplinary Committee, Information & Technology Services Division Campus Protection Unit Disciplinary Committee, Registrar's Division, SRC Disciplinary Board or Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have the right to have such verdict and sanction appealed as contemplated in Rule 10.4 above.

16.2 A Prosecutor shall have the right to have a sanction imposed by a lower disciplinary authority appealed on the same grounds as set out in Rule 8 of this Code. The procedure that shall be followed, and the powers of the Disciplinary Appeal Committee, shall be as set out in Rule 8 of this Code.

17. THE SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD

17.1 There shall be a Board of the above title consisting of as many members as the SRC shall by resolution from time to time determine.

17.2 This Board shall have the power to enquire into a disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student at any function organized or controlled by the SRC, both on or off the University premises, provided that as soon as it determines to take such action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Board shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

17.3 The Board shall have the following powers to penalize any student found by it to have committed a disciplinary offence:

- (a) imposition of a fine not exceeding 2.5% of the Bachelor of Arts fee or 35 hours of compulsory service.
- (b) exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one term, or both.
- (c) payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence.

17.4 The SRC Disciplinary Board must ensure that there is a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and

presenting the case, in order to ensure compliance with the rules of natural justice and constitutional rights and fairness. The procedure to be followed shall be the same as contained in Rule 10 as is relevant to the SRC Disciplinary Board.

17.5 A student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by the SRC Disciplinary Board shall have the same right of appeal as set out in Rule 16 and the procedure to be followed in Rule 16 shall apply.

18. THE SPORTS COUNCIL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEE

18.1 There shall be a Committee of the above title consisting of the Chairperson of the Sports Council or deputy and two further members nominated by the Chairperson or the deputy from the members of the Student Sports Council. This Committee shall have the power to enquire into any disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student where the breach alleged has been either:

- (a) of a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs.
- (b) committed by students on University property set aside by the Council for student activities under the control of the Sports Council; or
- (c) committed by students elsewhere than on University property but while members of a University team or touring party are under the control of the Sports Council.

As soon as it determines to take disciplinary action, the Committee shall immediately report the matter to the Prosecutor/s who may decide to refer it to another disciplinary authority, in which case s/he shall immediately inform the Sports Council of the decision. The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

18.2 The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have the following powers to penalize any student found by it to have breached a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs:

- (a) suspension from participation in any sporting activity of the University either totally or in part for a period not exceeding one term.
- (b) imposition of a fine not exceeding 2.5% of the

Bachelor of Arts fee or 35 hours of compulsory service.

(c) order the payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence.

18.3 The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee must ensure that there is a separation of powers. The person chairing the hearing cannot be the person investigating and presenting the case, in order to ensure compliance with the rules of natural justice and constitutional rights and fairness. The procedure to be followed shall be the same as contained in Rule 10 as is relevant to the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee.

18.4 In the case of a student who has been found guilty and sanctioned by the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee, the same right of appeal and the same procedure set out in Rule 16 shall apply.

DIVISION OF STUDENT SERVICES AND DEVELOPMENT

RU SPORTS

Due largely to the residential nature of the campus, both competitive and recreation sport play a very important role in the life of the student at Rhodes. 1987 saw the introduction of the new Sports Council (formerly Sports Union) constitution which seeks to provide the infrastructure and facilities to cater for all sporting groups on campus. In order to accommodate these needs, the RU Sports has some thirty (30) clubs which cater for a wide range of interest at high performance, competitive and social/recreational levels. Sport at Rhodes is unique in that all students are free to make use of certain of the facilities without being obliged to join a particular club. However, students wishing to play sport or take part in recreational pursuits at a higher level do need to join clubs in order to take advantage of the structured programmes presented by the RU Sports.

The compact nature of the campus provides all sporting facilities within easy walking distance of the residences. The easy accessibility and availability of facilities are responsible for the very high participation rate (85%) in sport and recreation by the student population. The RU Sports Team assisted by student the sports clubs committees take care of the day to day organization of the club activities and in ensuring that students have access to infrastructure which allows the clubs to operate effectively. This section of the Division

of Student Services and Development also offer sports scholarships for student athletes.

Clubs generally provide for participation at two levels. Students engaged in competitive sport represent the university at national level through the University Sports South Africa (USSA) competitions. At a local level, they further participate in the Nelson Mandela Bay and Sarah Baartman District sports federations and leagues. Equally important is the second tier of participation: the **intra-mural sports programme**, which caters for students who prefer a more social and recreational involvement in sport, this is to ensure that the needs of both competitive and social sportsmen and women are met. RU Sports upholds the philosophy that sport and recreation are integral to the holistic development and educational experience of every student

In an attempt to involve as many students as possible RU Sports offers a wide range of activities which include: Aikido, Aquatics, Archery, Athletics, Basketball, Canoe, Chess, Cricket, Dance Sport, First Aid, Fly Fishing, Golf, Hockey, Mixed Martial Arts, Mountain, Netball, Pool, Rifle, Rowing, Rugby, Sailing, Soccer, Squash, Surfing, Table Tennis, Tae Kwon do, Tennis, Volleyball and Underwater. In addition to these activities the Rhodes University Health Suite offers Aerobics and Indoor Cycling Classes and a well-equipped Weights Training Facility.

STUDENT AFFAIRS

THE OPPIDAN UNION

The *Oxford English Dictionary* defines an **Oppidan** as “an inhabitant of a university town as distinguished from a member of the university itself.” At Rhodes University, this refers to students who live off campus in accommodation rented independently of the institution. These students are commonly known as **Oppidans**, or **Oppis** for short, and we also call ourselves “**Digs**” students. The Oppidan Community is the **largest single student body** at Rhodes. While Oppis enjoy the benefits of greater independence and freedom from certain structures of residence life, living off campus also brings its own unique challenges. To support students in navigating these challenges, the **Oppidan Union** was established. The Union consists of the **Cluster Coordinator, Residence Student Assistants, and the House Committee**, who are all dedicated to assisting Oppis with their academic, social, and personal needs.

Oppidan Union Services

The Oppidan Union is responsible for initiating and maintaining a range of student benefits:

- The Oppidan Common Room is located on the first floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building. It features lounge suites, a smart TV, Wi-Fi, tables, chairs, and study cubicles. Additionally, the common room includes a kitchen equipped with hot water, a fridge, a stove, and dining tables for student use during lunch or any day. The kitchen also has a microwave available for students to prepare noodles, warm their food, or use for any other microwave needs. The Oppidan office provides complimentary tea, coffee, sugar, and milk for students from Monday to Friday.
- The Oppidan Office assists students in finding off-campus accommodation that fits their budget, with a particular emphasis on NSFAS-accredited options. The hall administrator at the Oppidan Office provides this information and is responsible for keeping the list of off-campus accommodations up to date. Additionally, the office facilitates the

accreditation process for student accommodations.

- The Oppidan Committee comprises various portfolios dedicated to representing the interests of Oppidans and encouraging their participation in a range of Union activities, such as social events, inter-res sports, and community engagement. The Oppidan Union aims to provide a well-balanced and enriching university experience. It regularly collaborates with the SRC and the Centre for Higher Education Research, Teaching and Learning (CHERTL), and participates in mentoring programs for first-year students, as well as exam workshops. These initiatives ensure that students excel academically while also focusing on their holistic development and overall university experience.
- The Oppidan Office coordinates and manages the Oppidan shuttle/bus service, which operates from Monday to Friday, 5 PM to 11 PM, and on Saturday and Sunday from 6 PM to 9 PM. Students can catch the bus at the Oppidan Bus Shelter. During exam periods and SWOT week, the service hours are extended until 1 AM to ensure that students who study late have transportation available. The Oppidan bus runs within the Makhanda CBD and the surrounding township area.
- The Oppidan Union operates a website and several social media pages, including TikTok and Instagram, to keep students updated on events and activities taking place in the hall and across the university.
- The Oppidan Hall Cluster Coordinators (two in total), assisted by ten Residence Student Assistants, are available to provide advice, support, and assistance to students in crisis. They address issues related to student care, discipline, development, conflict resolution, lease and digs mate concerns, and emergencies. Students are encouraged to contact the Cluster Coordinators:
- **Matimu Shivambu:**
Cellphone: 074 229 8425
Email: matimu.shivambu@ru.ac.za

- **Gladys Manamela:**

Cellphone: 076 847 8032

Email: gladys.manamela@ru.ac.za

- They are usually available from 13:00 PM to 4:30 PM. Additionally, the Oppidan cluster administrator, **Lungi Mhlapo**, can be reached at: Telephone: 046-6038229

Email: lmhlapo@ru.ac.za , She is on duty in the Oppidan Office from 8:30 AM to 1:30 PM and is typically the first point of contact.

The Oppidan Office is located on the first floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building.

The cluster administrators and coordinators are responsible for managing and coordinating all areas of the Union's activities and are available to assist Oppidans whenever possible.

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council is a legislated body whose members are elected annually. Its primary purpose is to represent the student body both within and outside the university. It also negotiates with the university authorities on their behalf. In addition, the University's numerous clubs and societies fall under the Student Representative Council's jurisdiction.

The SRC can be contacted at the SRC Offices on the top floor of the Bantu Stephen Biko Building. They can also be reached via e-mail at srcrepresent@ru.ac.za or srscg@ru.ac.za

MISSION STATEMENT

We, the Students' Representative Council of 2023 strive to not only for academic excellence but to empower the student body to be action-orientated and to be socially responsible. We stay committed in ensuring that students are holistically well to be better adaptive in our evolving environment. We aim to empower and positively impact the lives of not only the student body, but of the community amongst us. We also pledge to represent students from all walks of life regardless of race, gender, socioeconomic background and all other factors that make us unique."

SRC REPRESENTATION ON UNIVERSITY COMMITTEES

SRC members serve on various University committees, including, but not limited to, the following:

Council, Senate, Executive Committee of Senate, Institutional Forum, Budget Committee, Disability Committee, Distinguished Teaching Award, Equity and Institutional Culture Committee, Senate Examinations Committee, Financial Aid Committee, Gender Action Forum, Honorary Degrees Committee, Institutional Planning Committee, Information Technology Steering Committee, Internationalization Committee, Library Committee, Orientation Committee, Board of Residences, Rhodes University Academic Freedom Committee, Safety/Events Committee, Senate Disciplinary Panel, Student Services

Council, Teaching and Learning Committee, Visual Representation, Arts and Culture Committee (VRACC), the Community Engagement Committee, the Language Committee and the Wardens Appointments Committee.

SOCIETIES

Please direct any enquiries regarding societies to the SRC Societies Councillor:
srscsocieties@ru.ac.za.

12th Trinity Society
35mm
Abasa (Association for the Advancement of Black Accountants Student Chapter)
Ass. of Black Securities and Inv. (ABSIP)
Activate
Association of Catholic Tertiary Students (Acts)
African Drum (MARIMBA)
African Union Youth Club
African Women Chart Accountants
Anglican Society (Ansoc)
Anglican Society
Apostolic Faith Mission Student Campus Ministries (AFM-SCM)
Art Soc
Astronomy
Babilanto
Ballroom Dancing
Bapedi Ba Rhodes
Believers Loveworld (BLW)
Black Lawyers Society
Black Management Forum Book club
Chemistry Society (CHEMSOC)
Chi-Alpha
Common Ground
Democratic Alliance Student Organisation (DASO)
Debating
Developer's Society
DYN
East African Society (EASOC)
Economic Freedom Fighters Society (EFF)
Enable
Enactus (SIFE)
Fencing Forward in faith

Galela amanzi
 Game Society (GAMESOC)
 Gender Action Project
 Geology
 Golden Key
 Guitar
 Hellenic
 Hindu Student Society (Hindu)
 Hip Hop
 His People Bible Society
 HULT Society
 Igwijo Society
 INK Society (INK)
 Inkwenkwezi (SHINE)
 Isaiah 26:8 (Student Christian Fellowship)
 Isintu Soc
 Jehova Jirah Haven (JJH)
 Law Society
 Legal Activism
 Lesotho
 Live Music
 Malawian
 Masincedane
 Marimba
 Rhodes University Melodies (RUM)
 Masibeyel'embo Society
 Methodist Student Society (MethSSoc)
 Mixed Martial Arts (MMA)
 Mountain Club
 Movie Soc
 Muslim Student's Society (MSA)
 Namibia Society (NAMSOC)
 Nazareth Tertiary Stud. Association (NATESA)
 Neko Anime Society
 Nhlanhla Ya VaTsonga
 Old Apostolic Stud Association (OASA)
 Oppidan Press (Oppipress)
 Pan African Youth Dialogue (PAYD)
 Photography Society (Photosoc)
 PASMA (Pan Africanist Student Movement of Azania)
 Psychology Society
 Presidents Awards
 Rhodes Adventists
 Rhodes Business
 Rhodes Economics
 Rhodes Entrepreneurs
 Rhodes Music Radio

Rhodes Ultimate
 Rhodes Politics Society
 Roar (Rhodes Organization for Animal Rights)
 Rotaract (Rotary Club Partner)
 Rhodes University Computer Users Society (Rucus)
 Rhodes University Melodies (RUM)
 RU AllStars
 RU Black Lawyers Ass. Stud. Chapter
 RU Studios
 RU Economics society
 Rhodes University Pharmacy Students Association (RUPSA)
 Student Action for the Environment (SAFTE)
 South African student's Congress (SASCO)
 Science for Society
 Southeast Alaska Conservation Council (SEACC / RU GREEN)
 Student HIV/AIDS Resistance Campaign (SHARC)
 SCO (Students Christian Organization)
 Skate
 Ubuntu
 Rhodes University Science and Information Systems Society (SUDO)
 Swazi Alive
 Swazi Society
 Thapelo Kuze Foundation
 Rhodes University Toastmasters
 Tree of Life
 Twelve Apostle Student Association (TASA)
 Vha Venda Society
 Voice of Glory
 Wine tasting
 West African Society
 Youth Quake
 Zambian Society (Zamsoc)
 Zimsoc/Zim Unlimited (Zimbabwe Soc)
 Zion Christian Church Stud. Fellowship
 Zoology Society (ZOOSOC)
 Zulu Society

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL PRESIDENTS

The years cited here represent the years in which these individuals were elected President of the SRC:

1910 CN Thompson

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

1913	HG Goldwater	1959	JA Benyon
1914	HT Gamble	1960	WG Pietersen
1915	HT Gamble	1961	IA Macdonald
1916	JC Hops	1962	B Moore
1917	EG Gamble	1963	M Chapman
1918	AK Dugmore	1964	M Bands
1919	PJ Erasmus	1965	E Webster
1920	HE Hockley	1966	J Sprack
1921	NP Sellick	1967	P Haxton
1922	EH Wilde	1968	P Harris
1923	W Thurlbeck	1969	KW Meaker
1924	AA Morris	1970	R Wanless
1926	BC Gordon	1971	J Whitehead
1927	H Bennett	1971	K Satchwell
1928	WH Elliot	1972	P Clarke
1928	H Bennett	1973	M King
1930	G Wynne	1976	A Lamprecht
1931	JT Davidson	1977	A le Grange
1932	GHD Camp	1978	I Smuts
1932	HJ Chapman	1979	N Willett-Clarke
1933	HJ Chapman	1980	C Butler
1934	REM Blakeway	1981	J Campbell
1935	GCD Hodgson	1982	M Kenyon
1936	GCD Hodgson	1983	S Rankin
1937	HHC Holderness	1984	A Williams
1938	AL McKenzie	1985	J Bowen
1938	TFW Harris	1986	J Masey
1939	JF Gaylard	1987	S Middleton
1940	GHA Simms	1988	P Tandy
1941	ECC Owen	1989	R Dixon
1942	JD Peter	1990	R Dixon
1942	DR Butler	1991	R Amner
1943	HH Hall	1992	D Lee
1944	RE Lipstrue	1993	C Tsampiras
1946	I Smith	1994	K Jurgensen
1947	H Self	1995	V Ndebele
1948	HF Kirby	1996	C Khoza
1949	LDS Glass	1997	W Mene
1950	MM Tatham	1998	P Mothibi
1951	TW Higgs	1999	T Moleko
1952	HS Perry	2000	M Charlesworth
1953	PJ Duminy	2001	M Webber
1954	LS Melunisky	2002	J Chipunza
1954	MJ Roberts	2003	T Moyo
1955	LS Melunisky	2004	T Halley
1956	B Goedhals	2005	B Green
1957	JJ Breitenbach	2006	F Morbi
1958	WS Yeowart	2007	R Pillay

2008	X Nyali
2009	K Loni
2010	E Ofei
2011	A Magubane
2012	M Maralack
2013	S Badi
2014	B Bense
2015	S Makhubo
2015	Z Maqubela
2016	MG Sandi
2017	R Mabaso
2018	N Mahlangu
2018	K.Chingono
2019	S Mngadi
2020	K Mphahlele
2021	L Nkambule
2022	B Modisaotsile
2023	A Tyala
2024	T May
2025	L Ndubela

CONSTITUTION FOR STUDENT GOVERNANCE

The full text of this Constitution and its associated Schedules is available from the SRC Offices and from the University Library.

Preamble

We, the students of Rhodes University (hereinafter called “the University”) herein affirm the supreme and inalienable right of all students at the University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge. We determine that the Student Representatives’ Council (hereinafter called “the SRC”) shall be our primary governing body in matters falling within its jurisdiction, which will ensure the conveyance of the student voice to the Administration, the University Senate and Council in matters of institutional policies. We will promote the welfare and progress of the University community and enforce our rights and uphold our responsibilities; establish an effective, efficient, responsible, and responsive form of co-operative student government; encourage discussion, investigation and expedient resolution of student problems, concerns, and ideas; support and help implement the desires of the Student Body; provide leadership; recognize student accomplishments so that the role of the student is rewarding and meaningful; retain the authority to appoint and remove student representation of the University standing committees and advisory boards to which the SRC normally makes appointments. We task the SRC to report to us through our broadly elected leadership contained within the Student Parliament. We, the students of the University, in confidence of this Constitution, do hereby ratify and agree to follow and implement the Constitution.

Objectives

This Constitution is founded by and for the students with a developmental consideration of the functional needs of the University student population. We, (the SRC) as the active voice of the student body, acknowledge our duty to maintain a key responsibility in the workings of the Institution.

This document is intentionally flexible, as well as representative of the unique dynamics of the University.

Definitions

TERM	DEFINITION
Alumni Board	Advisory board to the new SRC
Convener	The person who chairs the first meeting of Student Parliament, normally the Vice-President.
Deputy Speaker	Is a person who chairs Student Parliament in the absence of the Speaker.
General Meetings	Meetings which the student body are invited to attend by the SRC.
External Cluster Meetings	External cluster meetings are operational meetings chaired by the SRC Vice- President with additional support of Councillors. Their portfolios deal Councillors whose portfolios deal with matters that involve the broader community of Makhanda i.e. the Oppidan Councillor.
Internal Cluster Meetings	Internal cluster meetings are operational meetings chaired by the Vice-President of the SRC with Councillors whose portfolios deal with matters that involve the Rhodes University community, i.e. the Residence Councillor.

Independent Electoral Board (IEB)	Is an independent body set up in terms of the rules to oversee and govern the SRC and its substructure elections.
Quorate	The minimum number of members of the student body or a student governance structure must be present at any of its meetings to make the proceedings of that meeting valid.
Registered student	A student who is registered with the University regardless of faculty and department.
Speaker	A person who chairs Student Parliament.
Student Body	All persons registered as students of Rhodes University.
Student Parliament	Serve as the collective voice for all student governance substructures within Rhodes University.

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

Article 1.1 Status

This Constitution is the supreme authority that provides principles that help address student matters within the competence of the Student Body. All other Constitutions and/or documents within the Student Body, which fall under the SRC, are subject to the provision of and derive their authority and jurisdiction from this Constitution.

Article 1.2 Name

SRC refers to the “Students’ Representative Council, Rhodes University” as the existing body present in this Constitution.

Article 1.3 Powers and Duties

Subject to the provisions of this Constitution the SRC shall be empowered to:

- 1.3.1 Represent on behalf of the students of the University to the Council, Senate and other bodies and officers of the University.
- 1.3.2 Administer the funds placed at its disposal by the University Council for the promotion of student activities as well as such other permitted and authorised funds raised by a subscription or levy.
- 1.3.3 Recognise and regulate established University approved societies and organisations.
- 1.3.4 Organise, control, be responsible for and manage social functions and schemes for the benefit of students.
- 1.3.5 Affiliate to bodies and organisations outside the University.
- 1.3.6 Constitute an SRC Disciplinary Board in order to exercise the powers enforced by the Student Disciplinary Code.
- 1.3.7 Summon and conduct general student body meetings of with students and any other meetings of the student body.
- 1.3.8 Represent the student body both on campus and externally.
- 1.3.9 To perform all such other duties as bodies of this nature may lawfully require to do.

Article 1.4 Logo of the SRC

The logo of the SRC shall include Rhodes University’s Coat of Arms with the word “SRC” on the right-hand side alongside the Coat of Arms, and beneath that, the words “Representing Leaders”. The numerals of the substantive year for which the SRC is in office shall be superimposed above and between the two statements described above.

Article 1.5 SRC Term of Office

The term of office for the SRC shall be the duration of an academic year, from January to December; with the elections being held as per Schedule 7.

CHAPTER 2 THE STUDENT BODY

Article 2.1 Membership and Voting Rights

- 2.1.1 All registered students, including full- time, part- time, occasional and continuing-education students, shall qualify as voting members of the Student Body.
- 2.1.2 All students registered with the University who are not full-time students they are not counted for quorum, but are allowed to vote, request and seek out the SRC for matters concerning the Constitution.
- 2.1.3 Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend and participate in SRC held discussions during general, student governance sub-structures, organisations and student political meetings. Each participant must commit to the rules and order outlined per specified meeting.
- 2.1.4 Voting in terms of student governance sub-structures shall be limited to those members who are entitled to vote.

Article 2.2 General Meetings

The SRC shall call two compulsory meetings general meeting for the purposes of rendering a semester report to the student body. The report shall be presented to the Student body by SRC President.

In the third week of the first term of the year, the SRC shall call a meeting where they shall present their state of the University address. This shall be done by the SRC President.

- 2.2.1 A General Meeting of the student body members shall be held as and when is necessary and feasible and only if:
 - 2.1.1.1 The SRC President or 50% of the SRC call such a meeting or
 - 2.2.1.2 A written request is made by at least 100 members of the student body to the SRC, accompanied by a written motion for the purposes of the meeting.
- 2.2.2 The SRC shall give at least 5 five working days' notice of the date, time and venue when the meeting shall occur with disclosure of an agenda.
- 2.2.3 Student body members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity to put additional matters onto the meeting's agenda.
- 2.2.4 The SRC President or the Vice-President, and in their absence, the Secretary-General shall chair the meeting. Thereafter, if they are absent then any other member of SRC Council shall be voted to chair the meeting. The person elected by the SRC, shall act as the chairperson of the general meeting and shall have an ordinary and casting vote.
- 2.2.5 The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as contained in Schedule 8, shall apply at all general meetings.
- 2.2.6 Quorum
 - 2.2.6.1 Quorum for a general meeting shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.
 - 2.2.6.2 Quorum for a general meeting, summoned by the SRC or requisitioned by members shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.
 - 2.2.6.3 In the event no quorum is reached at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the drafted minutes shall be circulated to all members of the student body, who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after they would be taken as confirmed.
 - 2.2.6.4 Once a meeting has been declared quorate, it remains quorate even if members leave during the course of business.

Article 2.3 Minutes of Meetings

- 2.3.1 The SRC shall keep and circulate the minutes of the proceedings from each general meeting.

Article 2.4 Resolutions

- 2.4.1 Resolutions may only be adopted in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection made by any present members.
- 2.4.2 A resolution shall be only adopted by a majority of members present in the meeting, in exception of no-confidence related to the provisions of section 3.5.3 shall apply.
- 2.4.3 A resolution adopted at a general meeting shall take immediate effect unless otherwise stipulated in the resolution.

Article 2.5 Finance

- 2.5.1 All funds made available by the University for Student Governance shall only be applied in accordance with an approved budget.
- 2.5.2 The different student governance sub-structures who rely on the SRC for funding shall submit annually a prescribed formatted budget to the SRC before the specified time.
- 2.5.3 SRC finances shall be administered according to Schedule 1 of the Constitution.

CHAPTER 3 THE SRC

Article 3.1. Composition of the SRC

- 3.1.1 The SRC comprises of a President, Vice- President, Secretary-General, Treasurer-General, Academic Councillor, Activism and Transformation Councillor, Community Engagement Councillor, Environmental Councillor, International Affairs Councillor, Media Councillor, Oppidan Councillor, Projects Manager, Residence Councillor, Sports and Societies Councillor, Post Graduate Affairs Councillor and the Student Benefits and Sponsorship Councillor.
- 3.1.2 In a situation where a decision needs to be made, each member has only one vote. However, in case of a deadlock, the President or alternative Chairperson has a casting vote.
- 3.1.3 The SRC Executive comprises the President, Vice-President, Secretary-General, Treasurer-General and two further positions filled by the twelve non-executive council members.
 - 3.1.3.1 The two open Executive positions shall be filled through an internal SRC vote.
 - 3.1.3.2 The twelve non-executive council members shall comprise of the twelve openly contested positions.
- 3.1.4 The Oppidan Councillor and the Residence Councillor shall be elected from within their respective constituencies.
- 3.1.5 Each Hall shall elect one Hall representative to join the SRC Residence Representative Committee. Once complete, the Residence Councillor will oversee and manage the entire committee.
- 3.1.6 The sixteen openly contested Executive and non-Executive positions shall be campaigned based on each portfolio that commits to 3.1.7., 3.1.9 and Schedule 6.
- 3.1.7 An individual may run for more than one position in one election period.
- 3.1.8 If in terms of 3.1.7., if an individual receives the highest number of votes in two positions then they must select one of those positions and the runner-up in the other position will assume the other portfolio.
- 3.1.9 Candidates contesting the positions of President and Vice-President shall all run for the position of President and may run for an additional portfolio as stated in 3.1.7.
 - 3.1.9.1 The candidate with the highest number of votes shall assume Presidency, unless s/ he chooses to waive this privilege, in which then the position shall be offered to the second highest vote candidate.
 - 3.1.9.2 The candidate with the second highest number of votes shall assume the position of Vice-President. Should any candidate decline that position then the second highest vote candidate shall be offered the Vice-President title.
- 3.1.10 The SRC may establish committees, task groups (SRC members only) and working groups (SRC members and non- SRC members) as they see fit.

Article 3.2 Gender Parity

- 3.2.1 The SRC and any other student governance structures shall strive to not have more than 50% male or female-identifying bodies in leadership positions.

Article 3.3 The SRC Executive Committee

- 3.3.1 The SRC Executive consists of six members, namely the President, Vice-President, Secretary-General (Chairperson), the Treasurer-General. Two additional members will be selected from the remaining twelve SRC members.
- 3.3.2 In the event of a tied vote within the SRC, the Chairperson shall have the casting vote.
- 3.3.3 The duties of the SRC Executive Committee are:
- 3.3.3.1 To deal with urgent matters which affect the students' interests that arise from SRC and general meetings.
 - 3.3.3.2 To generally act for and represent the SRC in the period between SRC meetings or, in terms of the Constitution. To deal with such matters as the SRC deems fit.
 - 3.3.3.3 To develop proposals or define the parameters in which issues are addressed and brought up in debates. In addition, the conduct and structure enable a streamlining that provides SRC Executive a context of any arisen situation.
 - 3.3.3.4 To deal with matters that need to be dealt within the timeframe from the last outgoing SRC meeting to the new SRC elections for the following year.
 - 3.3.3.5 To assume overall responsibility for all SRC related executed resolutions and implemented decisions made by the Executive team.
 - 3.3.3.6 To ensure that the new SRC member is fully instructed their role and capabilities prior to handing over the position.
- 3.3.4 Executive meetings:
- 3.3.4.1 The SRC Executive members shall meet at least once per fortnight.
 - 3.3.4.2 The Secretary-General shall chair all meetings, and in their absence, then the SRC Executive members shall elect another chairperson who is not the President.
 - 3.3.4.3 Quorum shall be three members.
 - 3.3.4.4 The minutes of each SRC Executive meeting shall be considered, corrected if necessary, and then confirmed by the SRC at the next meeting.

Article 3.4 Meetings of the SRC

- 3.4.1 The SRC shall meet at least once a week while the University is in session during the undergraduate term time.
- 3.4.2 All meetings shall be convened by the President and in their absence by the Vice-President, thereafter in their absence, by the Secretary-General.
- 3.4.3 Special meetings shall be convened:
- 3.4.3.1 On request of the President, and during of their absence, by the Vice-President, thereafter their absence, the Secretary-General.
 - 3.4.3.2 When a resolution to this effect is passed by the SRC.
 - 3.4.3.3 When a written request, signed by no fewer than three members stating the business to be considered, is made to the Secretary-General.
 - 3.4.3.4 The President shall chair all meetings, and in their absence the position will be taken by the Vice-President or thereafter in their absence, by the Secretary-General. If all three members are not present, then any SRC mandated member will occupy the chairperson role.
 - 3.4.3.5 50% of SRC members constitute the quorum. In the event no quorum is reached at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the drafted minutes shall be circulated to all members of the student body, who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after they would be taken as confirmed.

- 3.4.3.6 All questions shall be decided by a consensus or a majority of the members present and voting, except that in the following cases the majority shall be at least two thirds:
 - 3.4.6.1 Finance;
 - 3.4.6.2 Recognition of Societies;
 - 3.4.6.3 Special Permission for using the University by a recognised structure.
 - 3.4.6.4 Election rules;
 - 3.4.6.5 Amendments to any of the Constitution's schedules
 - 3.4.6.6 Instituting any disciplinary action against an SRC member.

Article 3.5 Forfeiture of Office on the SRC

- 3.5.1 In keeping with emphasising the right of all student body to acquire and advance in knowledge, as well as recognise leadership, therefore, it is vital that each SRC member upholds the highest behaviour and standard. Each SRC member will be subject to the Student Disciplinary Code if they are:
 - 3.5.1.1 Placed subsequently on academic probation and/or academically excluded from the University.
 - 3.5.1.2 Found guilty of a University disciplinary offence before the University Proctor and sentenced to a fine. In excess of 25% being the maximum of the fine, the University Proctor can impose, exclude, issue community service of 75 hours.
 - 3.5.1.3 If a vote of no confidence against a member of the SRC as detailed in the procedure 3.5.3.6
- 3.5.2 In the event that an SRC member has forfeited their place on the SRC:
 - 3.5.2.1 If the SRC President portfolio is forfeited then the following procedure will take place:
 - 3.5.2.1.1 The SRC Vice-President shall assume the role as President
 - 3.5.2.1.2 The SRC Executive shall re-assign the executive portfolios through consensus from amongst themselves. If failing to reach consensus, then the rest of SRC members will vote.
 - 3.5.2.1.3 The SRC shall elect one of its non-executive members to the SRC Executive.
 - 3.5.2.1.4 If the runner-up in the vacated constituency is available and willing to take the forfeited place, the SRC shall co-opt the runner-up according to the results of the previous election.
 - 3.5.2.1.5 In the event of no runner-up is willing to be co-opted, the IEB shall convene another election for that constituency.
 - 3.5.2.2 In the case that the forfeited portfolio is an SRC Executive member:
 - 3.5.2.2.1 The procedure outlined in 3.5.2.1.1 - 3.5.2.1.5 shall apply.
 - 3.5.2.2.2 In the case that the forfeited portfolio is a non-SRC Executive member: the procedure outlined in 3.5.2.1.4. – 3.5.2.1.5 shall apply.
- 3.5.3. Motion and Vote of No confidence:
 - 3.5.3.1 A motion of no- confidence may be instituted against an SRC member in an SRC meeting.
 - 3.5.3.2 For the motion to be considered, it must have majority of the council members in agreement
 - 3.5.3.3 The person will be given five working days to prepare a defence against this claim.
 - 3.5.3.4 During the defence meeting, the Speaker of Student Parliament and IEB will be present, whereby the SRC member will be given an opportunity to present their defence.
 - 3.5.3.5 The SRC President will present the reasons as to why the council has set this motion of no confidence in the sitting.
 - 3.5.3.5.1 In a case where the motion of no confidence is against the President then the Vice-President will be the one that gives the members a reason for this motion.
 - 3.5.3.6 After this the members of the SRC will vote through a secret ballot. Two thirds of council votes need to be in favour for the motion to pass.

- 3.5.3.7 After an SRC member has been voted out of the council, the SRC President shall call a student body meeting to explain the reason behind the vote of no confidence.
- 3.5.4. In the event that an official charge is laid against a SRC member, they will immediately be placed on extended leave to allow for extensive investigations into the accusation.

Article 3.6 Privileges of the SRC

- 3.6.1 SRC members receive certain privileges for their service to the student body and the University such as:
 - 3.6.1.1 A financial incentive (honorarium) that will be determined by the Director of Student Affairs after consultation with the SRC President soon after the SRC elections;
 - 3.6.1.2 SRC members who are living in residence are not required to pack up their rooms during vacation, except for the December vacation, which follows the same manner as Sub-Wardens;
 - 3.6.1.3 SRC members are given second preference to pick a room in their residences after the Sub-Wardens have made their selection;
 - 3.6.1.4 SRC members shall have free access to the gym during their terms of office.

Article 3.7 Continuity and handing-over

- 3.7.1 Previous SRC members will be responsible for handing-over and familiarising the new SRC with their new portfolios and roles.
- 3.7.2 There will be two meetings per week between the current SRC and the upcoming SRC.
- 3.7.3 The session is done over at least eight sessions.
- 3.7.4 If any current or upcoming members do not attend the sessions, then they will be subject to the conditions stipulated in the Honorarium document.
- 3.7.5 The out-going SRC member should prepare documentation for their replacements before the sessions start, and failure to do so shall be subject to the conditions stipulated in the Honorarium document. This documentation should be sent to the SRC Student Development and Support Officer at least a fortnight before hand over occurs.
- 3.7.6 Where possible, the incoming SRC shall shadow the outgoing SRC in various committees until the end of the academic year.
- 3.7.7 The Alumni Board shall act as an advisor to the SRC.

CHAPTER 4 CLASS AND FACULTY STUDENT REPRESENTATION

Article 4.1 Class Representatives Electoral Process

- 4.1.1 Every class shall elect a minimum of one and a maximum of two Class Representative.
- 4.1.2 A Class Representative is to be elected within the first two weeks after the commencement of the course.
- 4.1.3 The electoral process is to be conducted by the Head of Department or their nominee.
- 4.1.4 A registered student of the course is eligible to run as a Class Representative.
- 4.1.5 The electoral process shall run as follows:
 - 4.1.5.1 The floor shall be opened for nominations;
 - 4.1.5.2 A nominee shall either accept or decline the nomination;
 - 4.1.5.3 The nominees shall be afforded the opportunity to present a short motivational speech to the class.
- 4.1.6 The nominees are to leave the room while the class casts their votes by a show of hands.
- 4.1.7 A Class Representative's tenure is for the period of an academic year.
- 4.1.8 The SRC Academic Councillor shall allow students a period of a week after the elections in which to lodge any complaints with regards to any procedural irregularities pertaining to the elections.
- 4.1.9 In the event of a vacancy the SRC Academic Councillor or Head of Department shall facilitate a by-election until the vacancy is filled.

Article 4.2 Faculty Representatives Electoral Process

- 4.2.1 Two Faculty Representatives for each faculty shall be elected from among the Class Representatives.
- 4.2.2 The Faculty Representatives for each faculty shall be elected at the first meeting of the Class from among other Class Representatives at their first meeting.
- 4.2.3. The electoral process is to be conducted by the IEB.
- 4.2.4 Any Class Representative is eligible to run for the position of Faculty Representative for their respective faculty. The electoral process shall run as follows:
 - 4.2.4.1 The floor shall be opened for nominations;
 - 4.2.4.2 A nominee shall either accept or decline the nomination;
 - 4.2.4.3 The nominees shall be afforded the opportunity to present a short motivational speech to the class;
 - 4.2.4.4 The nominees are to leave the room while the Class Representatives cast their votes through a ballot or by a show of hands.
- 4.2.5 A Faculty Representative's tenure is to be for a period of one academic year.
- 4.2.6 The IEB Complaints Officer shall allow Class Representatives a period of a week after the elections in which to lodge any complaints with regards to any procedural irregularities pertaining to the elections.
- 4.2.7 In the event of a vacancy the IEB shall facilitate a by-election until the vacancy is filled.

Article 4.3 General and Special Meetings

- 4.3.1 The SRC Academic Councillor shall convene a general meeting of the Class Representatives at least once a semester.
- 4.3.2 The SRC Academic Councillor shall convene a general meeting of the Faculty Representatives at least once a term.
- 4.3.3 The SRC Academic Councillor may call a special meeting of the Faculty or Class Representatives, when necessary.
- 4.3.4 Any member of the SRC may attend any meeting of the Faculty or Class Representatives in observance.
- 4.3.5 The following records are to be kept:
 - 4.3.5.1 All general and special meetings shall have an agenda;
 - 4.3.5.2 Minutes of all general and special meetings are to be taken by an elected member of the meeting;
 - 4.3.5.3 Copies of these records are to be held by the SRC Academic Councillor and the SRC Vice-President.
- 4.3.6 Quorum for a general or special meeting of the Faculty or Class Representatives shall be 50%. In the event of quorum not being reached, the draft minutes of the meeting shall be circulated to all Faculty or Class Representatives, who shall be given an opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after the minutes and decisions shall be taken as confirmed.
- 4.3.7 Roles, Powers and Duties of a Class Representative:
 - 4.3.7.1 A class representative must be afforded the respect and value which comes from being a democratically elected representative.
 - 4.3.7.2. Class Representatives must:
 - 4.3.7.2.1 Facilitate the efficient communication of their respective classes concerns to the lecturer, and/or the Head of Department;
 - 4.3.7.2.2 Actively participate in dispute resolutions between their class and the Department;
 - 4.3.7.2.3 Effectively communicate, to their class, any information from the SRC as directed by the SRC Academic Councillor;
 - 4.3.7.2.4 4.3.7.2.4. Meet with their current lecturer regularly to maintain lines of communication and to convey any class related issues or concerns;

- 4.3.7.2.5 Patiently and equitably listen to any complaints or concerns relayed to them by their class;
- 4.3.7.2.6 Serve as a first-class role model for their fellow classmates and thus must uphold the highest level of studiousness and behaviour;
- 4.3.7.2.7 Follow all reasonable directives promulgated by the SRC Academic Councillor.
- 4.3.8 Class Representatives may:
 - 4.3.8.1 Put forward suggestions as to the conduct and structure of their lectures and courses;
 - 4.3.8.2 Submit class objections, complaints and suggestions regarding academic resource material;
 - 4.3.8.3 Call a meeting of their classmates to facilitate discussion regarding class, course and academic matters.

Article 4.4 Roles, Powers and Duties of a Faculty Representative

- 4.4.1 A faculty representative must be afforded the respect and value which comes from being a democratically elected representative.
- 4.4.2 Faculty Representatives must:
 - 4.4.2.1 Conduct themselves in accordance with schedule 3 of the is Constitution;
 - 4.4.2.2 Facilitate a meeting of the Class Representatives in their respective faculties once a term;
 - 4.4.2.3 Patiently and equitably listen to any complaints or concerns relayed to them by the Class Representatives;
 - 4.4.2.4 Effectively communicate the any concerns, complaints and suggestions, from the Class Representatives, to the faculty;
 - 4.4.2.5 Facilitate the efficient communication of their respective classes concerns to the Dean of Faculty.
- 4.4.3 A Faculty Representative is a full sitting member of the Faculty Board of their respective Faculty.

Article 4.5 Removal from Office

- 4.5.1 A Faculty or Class Representative may be removed from office in the event that they have failed to uphold their duties and responsibilities as defined in this policy or have acted in a manner which brings the SRC or the University's name into disrepute.
- 4.5.2 A Faculty or Class Representative shall be removed from office by a two-thirds majority vote by the Class Representatives.
- 4.5.3 In the event that a Faculty or Class Representative has been removed from office, the HOD shall facilitate a by-election process.
- 4.5.4 Faculty or Class Representative shall cease to be representatives when they deregister from their departments/Faculty.

CHAPTER 5 HOUSE AND HALL STUDENT REPRESENTATION

Article 5.1 House Representation

- 5.1.1 Every House shall elect or appoint house representatives which, in accordance with its Hall Constitution, shall serve and represent its students and act as an advisory committee to the House Warden.
- 5.1.2 The Hall Senior Student or SRC Hall Rep shall be a member of the Student Parliament.
- 5.1.3 The exact procedures and portfolios available for election or appointment shall be left to the individual House to decide.

Article 5.2 Hall Representation

- 5.2.1 Every Hall shall elect or appoint a Hall Senior/Head Student and an SRC Hall representative who,

in accordance with its Hall Constitution and with other members of the Hall Committee, shall be an advisory committee to the Hall Wardens.

5.2.2. The Hall Senior or SRC Hall representatives shall be a member of the Student Parliament.

Article 5.3 Notification of election

5.3.1 The Hall Warden or their nominee shall be responsible for informing the SRC Student Development and Support Officer, within one week of election or appoint, of the names and contact details of all student members of the Hall and House Committees.

Article 5.4 Meetings

5.4.1 The SRC Residence Councillor shall co-ordinate a meeting of all House and Hall Senior/Head Students at least once a term and as and when is necessary.

5.4.2 These meetings may coincide with a meeting of the Board of Residences.

Article 5.5 SRC Residence Representative Committee

5.5.1 Each Hall will elect one individual to serve on the SRC Residence Representative Committee.

5.5.2 These elections shall take place at the same time as the SRC general elections, unless a by-election needs to be held.

5.5.3 The Postgraduate Village and the Oppidan Hall are not considered to be Halls for the purposes of this election.

5.5.4 The role of the Committee is to advise the Residence Councillor and to act as a liaison between the halls and the Residence Councillor.

5.5.5 The Residence Councillor and the Residence Representative Committee shall meet once a fortnight.

5.5.6 Each Hall Representative shall fulfil the functions as outlined in his or her Hall Constitution and any additional function that the Residence Representative Committee may determine.

5.5.7 The Residence Councillor shall chair all Residence Representative Committee meetings, unless unable to do so, in which case the Residence Representative Committee shall elect an alternative chair from among its members.

5.5.8 In the event of a tied vote within the Residence Representative Committee, the Residence Councillor shall have a casting vote.

CHAPTER 6 SRC DISCIPLINARY BOARD

The SRC Disciplinary Board (hereinafter referred to as "the Board") shall at all times be subject to the provisions of the Student Disciplinary Code.

Article 6.1 Composition

6.1.1 The SRC shall invite the penultimate and final year LLB students of the Law Faculty to submit applications to sit on the SRC Disciplinary Board.

6.1.2 The applications must include the applicant's Curriculum Vitae.

6.1.3 The criteria for being chosen include practical experience at the University Law Clinic and/or vacation legal practice experience.

6.1.4 The SRC shall elect five persons as permanent members of the Board.

6.1.5 The term of office of a member of the SRC Disciplinary Board shall be from January of each year until December of that same year.

6.1.6 The SRC shall elect one of the five persons as the Chairperson of the SRC Disciplinary Board:

6.1.6.1 The Chairperson will appoint their Secretary from this team;

6.1.6.2 The Chairperson will chair all proceedings of the hearings and conduct of the Board;

6.1.6.3 In the absence of the Chairperson, the Chairperson's nominee will convene and preside over the proceedings.

6.1.7 The SRC Disciplinary Board cannot convene any proceedings without the presence of a designated SRC member, who shall have observer status only.

- 6.1.8 A member of the Board may only be removed from office by the SRC in consultation with the Law Student's Council on grounds of serious misconduct.
- 6.1.9 In the event of a vacancy on the SRC Disciplinary Board the SRC shall choose a replacement from applications already in its possession.
- 6.1.10 Subject to the provisions of the Students' Disciplinary Code, the SRC may summon a student to appear before the Board to answer any disciplinary charge which the Board is competent to try.

Article 6.2 Functions and Powers

- 6.2.1 General
 - 6.2.1.1 The Board is competent, upon application and within its area of jurisdiction or with regard to substructures that receive funds from the SRC, to:
 - 6.2.1.1.1 Review the proceedings, actions and Resolutions of: 6.2.1.1.1.1 Student governance substructures; 6.2.1.1.1.2 Members of student governance structures.
 - 6.2.1.2 Settle disputes relating to the:
 - 6.2.1.2.1 validity and fairness of Student Governance substructure elections;
- 6.2.2 Discipline
 - 6.2.2.1.1 validity of referenda;
 - 6.2.2.1.2 validity of resolutions taken by student governance substructures.
 - 6.2.2.1.3 interpretation of this Constitution as well of student governance substructures;
 - 6.2.2.1.4 interpretation of the rules of the SRC and
 - 6.2.2.1.5 any other matter for which provision has been made in this Constitution.
 - 6.2.2.2 After convicting a student, the Board may at their discretion impose one or more of the following punishments:
 - 6.2.2.2.1 A monetary payment to compensate any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to the person who suffered from the offense;
 - 6.2.2.2.2 Exclusion from entering the Bantu Stephen Biko Building for a period not exceeding one month;

Article 6.3 Procedure at Hearings

- 6.3.1 The model of the proceedings shall mimic a system that makes use of a Proctor or the one described in the Student Disciplinary Code.
- 6.3.2. In the event that a person, who has been served with a notification of an SRC Disciplinary Board hearing, cannot attend the hearing, they shall notify the SRC Disciplinary Board's Chairperson.
- 6.3.3 In the event that a person fails to attend a hearing, the hearing may proceed in their absence (see Rule 10.5 of the Student Disciplinary Code).

Article 6.4 Quorum

- 6.4.1. A quorum shall be three members.

Article 6.5. Case Records

- 6.5.1 A case record must be written for every hearing before the Board.
- 6.5.2 The case record shall contain the following information:
 - 6.5.2.1 The list of members present during the hearing
 - 6.5.2.2 The accused(s): name, address and student number
 - 6.5.2.3 The charge: in terms of the Student Disciplinary Code
 - 6.5.2.4 The date of hearing
 - 6.5.2.5 The plea: The accused(s) plea to the charge
 - 6.5.2.6 Verdict
 - 6.5.2.7 Facts found proven
 - 6.5.2.8 Mitigating factors
 - 6.5.2.9 Aggravating factors

6.5.2.10 Penalty (the penalty issued needs to be enforced within 21 days of receipt of the case record which will be sent to the accused(s)).

6.5.2.11 Reasons for penalty

6.5.2.12 The signatures of those listed in above in point 6.5.2.1.

6.5.2.13 The date that the case record is signed.

6.5.3 Copies of the case record are to be sent to the accused(s), the SRC office, the Director of Student Affairs and the University Investigating Officer and kept for the Board's own records.

6.5.4 A further copy, in which the names of those involved have been deleted, shall be posted on notice board(s) designated by the Director of Student Affairs for that purpose.

Article 6.6 Findings

6.6.1 A finding shall be made by a majority vote from the present members.

6.6.2 All members who agree with the findings and reasons shall sign and put into writing.

Article 6.7 Admission to Hearings

6.7.1 SRC Disciplinary Board hearings shall take place in camera.

6.7.2 Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend non-disciplinary SRC Disciplinary Board hearings.

6.7.3 A non-member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Board for permission to attend a non-disciplinary Board hearing.

6.7.4 In the event of the Board ordering, upon application of one of the parties, at a non-disciplinary hearing, that the proceedings before them, or part thereof, take place in camera, all spectators shall leave the hearing.

Article 6.8 Reviews

6.8.1 If upon consideration of the disciplinary record, the student wishes for the case to be reviewed, they must make such a request to the Director of Student Affairs within five days of receiving the case record.

6.8.2 The procedure to be followed will, thereafter, be in accordance with rule 19.4 of the Student Disciplinary Code.

Article 6.9 Termination of Membership

6.9.1 A person shall cease to be a member of the Board if:

6.9.1.1 A written resignation letter has been accepted by the SRC Secretary-General

6.9.1.2 That person ceases to be a member of the Student Body

6.9.1.3 A disciplinary action has taken place and the Board member is found guilty, whereupon immediate termination of membership will occur.

CHAPTER 7 STUDENT PARLIAMENT

Article 7.1 Composition

The Speaker, the Deputy Speaker and the Secretary of Student Parliament shall be non-SRC members elected by the Student Parliament at its first seating of the new academic year. These three members shall form the Student Parliament Executive: The SRC Vice-President shall be the convener of Student Parliament.

Student Parliament comprises of:

7.1.1 SRC members

7.1.2 The Chairpersons of Student Disciplinary Board and of the Student Defence Council

7.1.3 The Hall Senior/Head Students OR SRC Hall Representatives

7.1.4 Four representatives from the Oppidan Union (out of that selection, there must be one sub-warden and three elected representatives other than the SRC Oppidan Councillor)

7.1.6 The Faculty Representatives

7.1.7 The SRC Societies Council

7.1.8 The Students Sports Council

Article 7.2 Aims and Objectives

- 7.2.1 The Student Parliament shall serve as the collective voice for all student governance substructures within Rhodes University.
- 7.2.2 It shall serve to keep the SRC, its members, and student governance structures accountable, transparent in their principles and values as laid out in Schedule 5 of this Constitution.
- 7.2.3 They may make recommendations to and receive reports from the SRC and the necessary substructures.

Overall, the necessary parties must have transparent communication between one another.

Article 7.3 Constituting the Student Parliament

- 7.3.1 In February, the SRC Vice-President shall call for a sitting of Student Parliament at a predetermined time and place.
- 7.3.2 As soon as the Student Parliament members are summoned, and once the Student Parliament Executive, the IEB Impartial Officer shall declare the first sitting of Student Parliament duly constituted in provision of this Constitution and the Student Parliament Policy.

Article 7.4 Term of Office

- 7.4.1 The term of office of Student Parliament shall be for the duration of the academic year.

Article 7.5 Functions and Powers

Student Parliament shall:

- 7.5.1 Make recommendations to the SRC on policy matters
- 7.5.2 Facilitate communication between its members
- 7.5.3 Exercise all other powers allowed under this Constitution
- 7.5.4 Monitor the functioning of the SRC for the Student Body any SRC related reports

Article 7.6 Obligations

Student Parliament shall:

- 7.6.1 Act in accordance with the rules of the University when exercising its powers
- 7.6.2 Behave in a manner that conforms to the Student Code of Ethics contained in Schedule 5 of this Constitution
- 7.6.3 Strive for co-operation and communication between the different student governance substructures

Article 7.7 Obligations of Members

Members shall:

- 7.7.1 Serve individually and collectively the interests of the Student Body when formulating policy or making decisions on matters concerning the Student Body
- 7.7.2 Perform the duties and functions allocated to them by the Student Parliament within reasonable deadlines
- 7.7.3 Ensure effective communication in adopting any Student Parliament resolutions, once they have committed to relevant constituencies

Article 7.8 Sitzings of Student Parliament

- 7.8.1 Ordinary Sitzings
 - 7.8.1.1 Ordinary sittings of Student Parliament shall be held at least once per term and all members shall attend such meetings.
 - 7.8.1.2 According to the University calendar, the Speaker shall give at least seven days' notice of the date, time and venue of such a sitting, with the disclosure of a provisional agenda.
 - 7.8.1.3 Members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity of not less than five days to place items on the agenda. The opportunity will close 48 hours before the sitting.
 - 7.8.1.4 The elected Speaker shall chair the sittings of Student Parliament and, in the absence of the Speaker, the elected Deputy Speaker shall chair the sitting of Student Parliament.
 - 7.8.1.5 The Speaker shall not possess an ordinary vote unless they form part of Student

Parliament as provided for in article 7.1 of this Constitution.

7.8.1.6 The Speaker shall only have a casting vote in the event of a deadlock.

7.8.1.7 The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as outlined in Schedule 8 of this Constitution, shall apply to all sittings of Student Parliament.

7.8.2 Extraordinary Sittings

7.8.2.1 An extra-ordinary sitting of Student Parliament shall be held if the SRC Vice-President or the Speaker calls such a sitting, or at least 5 members submit a written request to the Speaker for such a sitting, accompanied by a written motivation for consideration at the sitting of Student Parliament;

7.8.2.2 Notice of the date, time and venue of an extra-ordinary sitting of Student Parliament, with disclosure of the agenda, shall be given at least twenty-four hours before such a sitting.

7.8.3 Quorum

7.8.3.1 Quorum shall constitute two thirds of all members of Student Parliament.

7.8.3.2 In the event of a quorum not being met, the sitting of Student Parliament shall continue with those members present. Draft minutes of the sitting shall be circulated to all members of Student Parliament who will then be given the opportunity to object any decisions taken by those present within 48 hours, where-after they shall be considered as present by the Executive of Student Parliament.

Article 7.9 Vote of No Confidence

7.9.1 A motion of no confidence, may be instituted against an SRC member or a Student Parliament Executive member.

7.9.2 For the motion to be considered, it must meet the following requirements:

7.9.2.1 Be tabled as the only agenda item for the sitting of Student Parliament.

7.9.2.2 Majority of Student Parliament members in agreement with the motion.

7.9.2.3 Substantial evidence must be provided to Student Parliament members detailing the reasons why there should be a motion of no confidence as guided by the Constitution of Student Governance.

7.9.2.4 Detailed reasons must have been given to the member concerned at least five working days before the sitting.

7.9.3 During the defence meeting, the Speaker of Student Parliament, SRC president and an IEB representative will be present whereby the member concerned will be given an opportunity to present their defence.

7.9.4 The Speaker of Student Parliament will present the reasons as to why Student Parliament has set this motion of no confidence in the sitting.

7.9.5 In the case where the motion is against the Speaker; the Deputy Speaker will be the one who gives the members of Student Parliament the reasons for this motion.

7.9.6 After the reasons have been given for the motion of no confidence, the members of Student Parliament will vote in a secret ballot. Two thirds of Student Parliament votes need to be in favour for the motion to pass.

7.9.7 After an SRC member, or a Student Parliament Executive member have been voted out, the SRC President shall call a Student Body meeting to explain the reasons behind the vote of no confidence.

Article 7.10 Minutes of Student Parliament

7.10.1 The minutes of Student Parliament shall be circulated within three days after the sitting.

7.10.2 The Student Parliament Secretary shall keep minutes of each Student Parliament sitting.

7.10.3 The meeting's minutes shall be submitted and will await for arrival upon the following sitting of Student Parliament, and thereafter signed by the Speaker.

7.10.4 Once the minutes have been approved, they will be available upon request by any interested parties within three days of its approval.

7.10.5 A document register shall record all documents considered by Student Parliament and be

available upon request by any interested party.

Article 7.11 Recommendations to the SRC

- 7.11.1 Recommendations may only be made in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection thereto by present members.
- 7.11.2 A recommendation shall be adopted by a majority vote.

Article 7.12 Admissions to Student Parliament

- 7.12.1 Members of the Student Body, who are not part of the Student Parliament, may attend and observe Student Parliament meetings. Their rights are further defined below.
- 7.12.2 The Student Body may apply in writing to the Student Parliament Speaker about a particular matter disclosed on the agenda; such requests may reasonably be granted or refused. All applications and their outcomes are to be publicised at the sitting in question.
- 7.12.3 A non-member of the Student Body qualifies to perform the same privilege outlined in sub-point 7.12.4
- 7.12.4 The Speaker of Student Parliament may at their discretion, invite a non-member of the Student Body to attend and/or to speak during the meeting.

Article 7.13 Termination of Membership

A person shall cease to be a member of the Student Parliament if:

- 7.13.1 A written notification from the particular student governance structure to that effect has been noted by Student Parliament;
- 7.13.2 They are absent without a valid excuse from two consecutive sittings;
- 7.13.3 They fail to attend without a valid excuse twenty- five percent of the scheduled Student Parliament sittings during their term of office.

CHAPTER 8 CONSTITUTIONAL MATTERS

Article 8.1 Amendments

- 8.1.1 Any proposed amendment to this Constitution must be discussed and recommended for approval by two-thirds of the Student Parliament.
- 8.1.2 Once an amendment has been recommended for approval, it shall be publicised to the Student Body who may then submit comments to the Student Parliament regarding the proposed amendment.
- 8.1.3 The Student Parliament shall then discuss the proposed amendment in light of the comments received and recommend adjustments.
- 8.1.4 The SRC shall present final proposed amendment before the Senate and Council for approval.

Article 8.2 Ratification

- 8.2.1. Having been approved by two-thirds of the votes cast by the Student Parliament and recommended for approval by the SRC and accepted by Senate and Council, this Constitution and all rules properly enacted thereunder, shall become effective immediately and shall supersede all previous provisions of Student Governance.

Article 8.3 Student Liberties

The SRC acknowledges that we are bound to:

- 8.3.1 Freedom of association
- 8.3.2 Freedom of enquiry and expression
- 8.3.3 Student participation in Institutional Government according to the Bill of Rights (Chapter 2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and as outlined in Schedule 4

Article 8.4 Constitutional Review

- 8.4.1 This Constitution shall be reviewed every three years.
- 8.4.2 In the event that there is a particular section or chapter that needs to be reviewed before the above- mentioned period the Student Parliament shall call for a sitting that reviews that chapter.

CHAPTER 9 RULES GOVERNING THE ELECTION OF MEMBERS TO THE SRC

SRC Elections and by-elections must take place annually in the manner prescribed by the Rhodes University Independent Electoral Board.

SCHEDULE 1

Administrative Procedures of the SRC

The SRC will be subject to and guided by the University's financial policies and protocols.

SCHEDULE 2

STUDENT LIBERTIES

The SRC acknowledges that according to the Bill of Rights (Chapter 2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa it is bound to Student Liberties:

Freedom of Association

- The membership, policies and actions of a student society will be voted on by those who hold *bona fide* membership in the University community.
- Policies of student societies should be consistent with the Student Body Constitution. An affiliation with an extra mural organisation is not an adequate reason to disqualify a student society from institutional recognition, so long as the campus society complies with the SRC purpose and policies.
- Student societies shall not discriminate based on race, creed or national origin in the determination of membership, although religious qualification may be required for some societies whose aims are primarily related to the furtherance of their religious beliefs.

Freedom of Enquiry and Expression

- Students and student societies shall be free to discuss all questions of interest and to express opinions publicly and privately. They should be free to conduct orderly enquiry into decisions and actions that affect their environments, as well as respond to them through public expressions or demonstrations. Students and authorised student societies shall be allowed to invite and to hear other opinions on institutional policies. Institutional control over campus facilities should not be used as a device of censorship.
- The University should strive to safeguard against physical abuse of students who, by orderly and legal means, demonstrate their freedom of enquiry and expression. The university will not take disciplinary action against students who question traditional values or expose unpopular causes.

Student participation in Institutional Governance

- Students should be free to express, individually and collectively, their views on issues of institutional policy and of general interest where inconsistencies exist between practice and the theoretical principles outlined by the University.

SCHEDULE 3

CODE OF ETHICS

In keeping with emphasising the right of all students who come to Rhodes University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge, and the recognition of student leadership. Each student should act as examples and be held to the very highest standards in terms of their behaviour, as well as including those who are part of Student Governance Sub-structures shall subscribe and seek to, live by the principles of:

Honesty: knowing that truthfulness and sincerity are attributes of good character and effective leadership.

Service: being aware of the fact that true happiness comes only through helpful service to others.

Industriousness: knowing that real progress can be achieved only if the mind can comprehend and the physical body ready to perform individual and community tasks.

Humility: being convinced that true humbleness of the spirit is the way to maintain social relationships.

Justice: believing that an individual must be fair and just in dealing with fellow students, and therefore they must not to condemn without hearing a defence. They must consider all factors before forming an opinion or passing judgement of another's motives.

Cooperation: realising that they must work closely and harmoniously with others in order to achieve success.

Responsibility: assuming always full responsibility for their actions and accepting opportunities to fulfil their academic, social, economic and moral obligations.

Charitableness: being tolerant, generous and considerate towards social relationships, as well being courteous, gentle and kind in their attitudes and actions without discrimination.

Self-Discipline: acting with reasonable restraint, organising time commitments and not indulging in excessive behaviour that will result in disrepute to themselves or to the University. Most importantly, Student Body leaders must embody these principles during their service.

SCHEDULE 4

LIST OF PORTFOLIOS

1. THE PRESIDENT: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

- 1.1 The President of the SRC must have completed successfully at least 3 semesters of university study at Rhodes University to be eligible for election. The President is responsible for the following functions:
- 1.2 Co-ordinate the functions of the SRC as a formal University Body.
- 1.3 Carry out the functions laid down in the SRC Constitution.
- 1.4 Liaise with the University authorities on matters relevant to the SRC, the Student Body and individual students.
- 1.5 Together with the Secretary-General, the SRC President fulfils an important liaison and public relations function, on behalf of the SRC.
- 1.6 Ensure a positive image of the SRC and ensures that all SRC members uphold the code of ethics.
- 1.7 Has the right to issue press releases or issue permission to members to issue press releases.
- 1.8 Shall set aside a reasonable amount of time to consult with members of the Student Body or the SRC, or to consider student matters.
- 1.9 Ensure that SRC members set aside a reasonable amount of time to the Student Body for consultation on matters within the ambit of their portfolio and also on other matters when the exigency of the situation calls for consultation.
- 1.10 Act as a liaison between students and University structures on concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations.
- 1.11 Chair all SRC, Statutory, extraordinary and emergency meetings, unless unable to do so in which case the Vice-President or Secretary-General shall deputise.
- 1.12 Compile an annual report on the activities of the SRC during their term of office. The report must be submitted to the Director of Student Affairs no later than one month after the induction of the new SRC.
- 1.13 Oversee the activities of the Vice-President, Secretary-General and the Treasurer-General.
- 1.14 The President shall be accountable to the SRC Executive and to the SRC in respect of the performance of their functions.

2. VICE-PRESIDENT: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

The Vice-President is responsible for the following functions:

- 2.1 Chair all SRC Executive, Statutory, and Emergency Meetings in the absence of the President.
- 2.2 Comply with reasonable instructions from the President.
- 2.3 Represent the President when required to do so.
- 2.4 Deal with all matters concerning the Student Body.

- 2.5 Take responsibility for the internal workings and functioning of the SRC.
- 2.6 Ensure that task lists, responsibility charts and other such planning is done/implemented and the results of this filed.
- 2.7 Ensure that systems are created to ensure the optimal implementation of the SRC's plans of action.
- 2.8 Advise the President and the SRC on internal matters.
- 2.9 Take responsibility for an on-going structures audit.
- 2.10 Act as a liaison between students and University structures on concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations.
- 2.11 Establish clusters or portfolio committees which hand in reports monthly on their functions.
- 2.12 Chair Internal and External cluster meetings which will be held once each month.
- 2.13 Oversee the activities of the Internal Cluster, namely the Secretary-General, Oppidan Councillor, the Residence Councillor, Academic Councillor, and the Societies Councillor; External Cluster: Media Councillor, the International Councillor, the Activism and Transformation Councillor, the Environmental Councillor and the Community Engagement Councillor; Financial Cluster: Projects Manager, Student Benefits and Sponsorship.

3. SECRETARY-GENERAL: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

The Secretary-General is responsible for the following functions:

- 3.1 Chair of the SRC Executive meetings, and in their absence the Executive shall elect a chair besides the President.
- 3.2 Chair of all SRC statutory, emergency meetings in the absence of the President and Vice-President, unless unable to do so in which case the SRC shall elect a nominee.
- 3.3 In conjunction with the Vice-President, take responsibility for the internal workings, administration and functioning of the SRC. This includes inter alia:
 - 3.3.1 Agendas and minutes (and published via the Student Parliament)
 - 3.3.2 Grievances procedures
 - 3.3.3 All policies relating to SRC's working
 - 3.3.4 Overall responsibility for liaison with SRC staff members
 - 3.3.5 Responsibility for the utilisation and maintenance of the Student Bantu Stephen Biko Building's offices.
- 3.4 Ensure that systems are created to ensure the optimal implementation of the SRC's plans of actions.
- 3.5 Ensure that appropriate linkage/liaison mechanisms exist between the Executive, Secretariat, SRC and the Student Parliament.
- 3.6 Receive and co-ordinates termly portfolio reports and is responsible for a portfolio assessment which shall be communicated to the Student Parliament.
- 3.7 Report to the SRC any recommendation made by the Student Parliament to the SRC.
- 3.8 Advise the President and Vice-President on internal matters.
- 3.9 Work with and liaise with the Media Councillor to be the spokesperson of the SRC.
- 3.10 Fulfil all external activities involving the SRC including such activities as involve:
- 3.11 contact with other Educational Institutions
- 3.12 overall South African political and social developments
- 3.13 any other national or international events which affect students
- 3.14 Collate relevant information on current affairs as required by the SRC.
- 3.15 Maintain contact with SAUS.
- 3.16 Report, and be accountable to, the Presidency of the SRC.

4. TREASURER-GENERAL: EXECUTIVE MEMBER

The Treasurer must have passed (at least) Accounting I, and is responsible for the following functions:

- 4.1 Administer the finance operations of the SRC in conjunction with the SRC Financial Administrator.
- 4.2 Spearhead the budgeting process.
- 4.3 Responsibility for and assists in the banking functions of the SRC.
- 4.4 Present interim financial statements to the SRC once a term and make recommendations based on these.
- 4.5 Together with the SRC Financial Administrator, shall interact with the University Audit Committee.
- 4.6 Co-ordinate all fundraising efforts of the SRC and assist the Student Benefits and Sponsorship Councillor where possible.
- 4.7 Advise and assist SRC substructures with their financial transactions and ensure their familiarity with financial guidelines and procedures.
- 4.8 Issue an annual budget report.
- 4.9 Issue an updated budget report, within five working days of receipt of such a petition requesting such a report, signed by at least fifty members of the student body.
5. ACADEMIC COUNCILLOR
 - 5.1 Must be in good academic standing as per Chapter 9 of the Constitution.
 - 5.2 Ensures the development of an environment conducive to academic excellence.
 - 5.3 Ensures appropriate and constant liaison amongst staff and students at faculty and departmental level.
 - 5.4 Creates or enhances education initiatives within the university and within the region and our country.
 - 5.5 Participate in any academic planning.
 - 5.6 Assists the SRC in keeping abreast of debates on academic issues.
 - 5.7 Acts as a liaison between students and University structures concerns relating to academic issues.
 - 5.8 Oversees the activities of class representatives, faculty representatives and mentors and academic representatives.
 - 5.9 Assists students in academic appeals.
6. ACTIVISM AND TRANSFORMATION COUNCILLOR
 - 6.1 Co-ordinates all activism programmes on behalf of the SRC and is the spearhead and driving force for the SRC's transformation programme.
 - 6.2 Co-ordinates all activism programmes on behalf of the SRC and is the spearhead and driving force for the SRC's transformation programme.
 - 6.3 Organises an awareness week on an appropriate topical issue.
 - 6.4 Represents the SRC on transformation forums and equity forums.
 - 6.5 Liaises with South African Universities Students on National Transformation Programmes.
 - 6.6 Shall assist student representatives at a faculty level to engage transformation and other concerns, especially those involving curriculum development.
 - 6.7 Creates relevant forums and other appropriate mechanisms for the engagement of transformation debate.
 - 6.8 Oversees the functioning of transformation representatives in the residence system.
 - 6.9 Maintains good relations with Equity and Institutional Culture Office.
7. COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT COUNCILLOR
 - 7.1 Must have at least one certificate of participation from the Rhodes University Community Engagement.

- 7.2 Must have at least one certificate of participation from the Rhodes University Community Engagement.
- 7.3 Co-ordinates SRC Community Interaction Programmes.
- 7.4 Represents the SRC in Community Interaction Programmes.
- 7.5 Initiates and sustains Community Interaction Programmes.
- 7.6 Liaises between the SRC, Rhodes University Community Engagement and Community Engagement Representatives.
- 7.7 Fosters a good relationship with the Rhodes University Community Engagement Office.

8. ENVIRONMENTAL COUNCILLOR

- 8.1 Shall represent the SRC on the Environmental Committee.
- 8.2 Shall represent the SRC on the Environmental Committee.
- 8.3 Shall engage with the University on the implementation of the Environmental Policy.
- 8.4 Co-ordinates all environmental programmes on behalf of the SRC.
- 8.5 Promotes environmental awareness within the hall system and across campus in general.
- 8.6 Ensures the incorporation of environmental issues within the curriculum by liaising with the Academic Councillor.
- 8.7 Assists students on any initiatives relating to environmental affairs.
- 8.8 Maintains a good relationship with the Safety Health and Environmental Office on all student issues with regards to safety, health and environment.
- 8.9 Oversees the functioning of the Environmental representatives.

9. INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS COUNCILLOR

- 9.1 Co-ordinates SRC International Programmes.
- 9.2 Liaises between the SRC and the International Office.
- 9.3 Convenes an International Students' Forum.
- 9.4 Initiates student exchange programmes.
- 9.5 Represents the SRC in International Forums.
- 9.6 Acts as a liaison for all concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations in relation to International students.
- 9.7 Maintains a good relationship with the International Office.

10. MEDIA COUNCILLOR

- 10.1 Ensure that systems are created to ensure the optimal publication of the SRC's plans of action.
- 10.2 Ensures that appropriate liaison structures exist between the Executive, SRC and the Student Parliament.
- 10.3 Is the chief publicity agent of the SRC within the University.
- 10.4 Edits and publishes a publication that allows for the sharing of ideas and debating of issues affecting students.
- 10.5 Acts as a liaison between the SRC and student media organisations.
- 10.6 Leads the SRC media team and may outsource certain functions to this team.
- 10.7 May issue press releases in consultation with the President or Vice- President.

11. OPPIDAN COUNCILLOR

- 11.1 When elected the Oppidan Councillor may not be in his or her first year of academic study at Rhodes University.
- 11.2 The Oppidan Councillor shall be elected from within their constituency.
- 11.3 The Oppidan Councillor must have been an Oppidan student for a minimum of two academic terms.
- 11.4 Chairs the Oppidan Council.

- 11.5 Shall maintain, in conjunction with the Oppidan Committee, regular contact with the Oppidan Community by means of newsletters and publications, in liaison with the Media Councillor.
- 11.6 Is responsible for informing the SRC on matters concerning the Oppidan Community.
- 11.7 Ensures availability to Oppidan students who request consultation or consideration on Oppidan matters.
- 11.8 Ensures open lines of communication between Oppidan Students, the SRC and the University Authorities.
- 11.9 Acts as a liaison between the Oppidan Committee and the SRC.
- 11.10 Acts as a liaison between the Oppidan Sub wardens and the SRC.
- 11.11 Acts as a liaison between Oppidan students and University structures for all concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations in relation to Oppidan Students.
- 11.12 Shall undertake to address off-campus safety and security concerns via the appropriate university structures and shall actively pursue the implementation of safety and security measures off campus.

12. POSTGRADUATE AFFAIRS COUNCILLOR

- 12.1 Must be a postgraduate student.
- 12.2 Shall be allocated a seat on Senate and University Council.
- 12.3 Shall work with the Student Benefits and Sponsorships Councillor for postgraduate funding.
- 12.4 Shall liaise with the Centre for Postgraduate Studies.
- 12.5 Shall chair the Postgraduate Forum.
- 12.6 Shall liaise between postgraduate students and the SRC.
- 12.7 Acts as a liaison between postgraduate students and university structures, concerning issues relating to postgraduate students.
- 12.8 Must create relevant forums to engage postgraduate students.

13. PROJECTS MANAGER

- 13.1 Acts as chair of all project planning committees that fall under the SRC.
- 13.2 Organises projects on behalf of the SRC.
- 13.3 Co-ordinates the hosting of visiting SRC's from other Institutions.
- 13.4 Co-ordinates the organisation of entertainment functions during Orientation Week.
- 13.5 Shall organise at least one function per term according to the regulations as laid down by university regulations.
- 13.6 Shall actively seek to secure sponsorship for SRC projects together with the Student Benefits Councillor.

14. RESIDENCE COUNCILLOR

- 14.1 Must be resident in a Rhodes University residence.
- 14.2 The Residence Councillor shall be elected from within their constituency.
- 14.3 The Residence Councillor must have been in Rhodes University residence for a minimum of a semester.
- 14.4 Is ex-officio a member of the Board of Residences.
- 14.5 Acts as a liaison between students and University structures for residential concerns relating to University structures, rules and regulations.
- 14.6 Liaises with hall and house senior students and the SRC hall representatives.
- 14.7 Shall set aside a reasonable amount of time for consultation with residence students and consideration of residence matters.
- 14.8 Oversees the activities of hall residences representatives.
- 14.9 Chairs the SRC Residence Representative Committee.

- 14.10 Shall undertake to address on-campus safety and security concerns via the appropriate university structures and shall actively pursue the implementation of safety and security measures on campus.
- 14.11 Liaises between the SRC and the wardens.

15. SPORTS AND SOCIETIES COUNCILLOR

- 15.1 Oversees the activities of the Societies Council and Sports Council and sports representatives.
- 15.2 Makes recommendations to the SRC for the recognition of new societies.
- 15.3 Is responsible for arranging briefings/workshops with societies on behalf of the SRC.
- 15.4 Is responsible for arranging Societies' Evening and other exhibitions on the behalf of the SRC.
- 15.5 Liaises with SRC societies.
- 15.6 Liaises with all sports clubs through the Sports Administration.
- 15.7 Acts as the SRC representative on Sports Administration meetings.
- 15.8 Must be a member of the University Sport South Africa Student Parliament.

16. STUDENT BENEFITS AND SPONSORSHIP COUNCILLOR

- 16.1 Investigates and attends to all issues that are associated with the development of benefits or amenities for the Student Body.
- 16.2 Seeks to ensure that existing student benefits are implemented.
- 16.3 Pursues individual requests from students for benefits or amenities, either within the residence structure (in liaison with the Residence Councillor) or campus life in general in liaison with the President or the Treasurer-General.
- 16.4 Shall set aside a reasonable amount of time for consultation with students and consideration of student benefit matters.
- 16.5 In conjunction with the Treasurer-General, organises fundraising activities and actively searches for sponsorship for SRC activities.
- 16.6 Liaises with other SRC members with a view to securing benefits such as discounts at stores, student nights and other such benefits.
- 16.7 Must ensure that the student body is made aware of all benefits available to them.
- 16.8 Liaises with relevant stakeholders.
- 16.9 Assists students with financial appeals.
- 16.10 Sits on the Financial Aid Committee.

SCHEDULE 5

SRC STANDING RULES OF ORDER

The conduct and behaviour of members at meetings are set out below. In the case where there is disagreement and these rules require interpreting, the Chairperson shall interpret. Where there is doubt, the SRC may consult Robert's Rules of Order, the modern edition, whose rules the SRC shall generally follow.

1. The business of the meeting shall be conducted in accordance with the rules that appear below.
2. The Chairperson shall interpret these Standing Rules by means of formal ruling either at their own instance or when requested to do so by a member of the SRC or Student Body. Where no provision is made in these rules to cover a point of procedure that may arise, the Chairperson may rule on any such point.
3. Any member of the SRC or Student Body may contest the Chairperson's ruling and may explain his or her objection. The Chairperson shall have a right to explain his or her ruling after which it shall be put to the vote without further discussion. If the Chairperson's ruling is not upheld, this shall not be deemed a vote of no confidence in the chair.

5.1 Chairperson

The President of the SRC or in his or her absence, the Vice-President shall be Chairperson of the

SRC or Student Body Meetings.

The Vice-President, or any other member of the Executive or SRC, may be called upon by the Chairperson to preside.

Before a vote takes place, all questions shall be put to the meeting by the Chairperson, who shall after the vote then declare whether the question has been carried or lost.

The Chairperson shall have both a deliberative and casting vote.

These Standing Rules relating to the "Chairperson" shall not be altered except by a two thirds majority of the SRC or Student Body.

5.2 Amendment or Suspension of Rules

5.2.1 These rules shall be amended by a motion as constituted, provided twenty-four hours' notice of such motion is given, and except where it is specifically stated in the Standing Rules that a two-thirds majority shall be sufficient.

5.2.2 Any rule may be suspended by a simple majority of the SRC or Student Body, except where it is specifically stated in the Standing Rules and that a two-thirds majority is required, by a motion passed without notice having been given.

5.2.3 Rules 5.2.1 and 5.2.2 shall require a two-thirds majority of the SRC or Student Body for amendment, but may be suspended by a motion passed without having been given.

5.3 Agenda

5.3.1 The agenda shall be determined by the SRC Executive, and presented to the SRC or Student Body at least twenty-four hours before the meeting.

5.3.2 Amendments to the Agenda, after the Agenda has been presented to the SRC or Student Body, may be made without notice by a simple majority of the SRC or Student Body.

The usual order of the Agenda shall be:

- a) Attendance
- b) Leave of Absence
- c) Other Matters for the Agenda
- d) Confirmation of Minutes
- e) Matters Arising
- f) To note the report of the SRC Executive
- g) University Committees - matters for information
- h) Any other business

5.3.3 The Agenda shall conform to the standard form of University agendas as per the sample attached.

5.4 Quorum

5.4.1 At general meetings of the Student Body, five percent of the full student body qualified to vote shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.2 At meetings of the SRC, fifty percent of the full SRC shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.3 At meetings of the SRC Executive or SRC Secretariat or SRC Disciplinary Board, three members shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.4 At meetings of the Student Parliament, one third of the full Student Parliament shall constitute a quorum.

5.4.5 In the event of there not being a quorum at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the Student Parliament (in the case of a general Student Body or Student Parliament meeting) or the respective SRC Committee (in terms of the SRC, SRC Executive, or SRC Secretariat) who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, where after they would be taken as confirmed.

5.4.6 Once a meeting has been declared quorate, it remains quorate even if members leave during the course of business, there by resulting in a lack of a quorum as defined above.

5.5 Voting

- 5.4.7 Voting shall be by show of hands, except where the SRC or Student Body has accepted by a two-thirds majority that voting on any motion shall be by ballot. Such acceptance may only take place after the above motion has been tabled but before it has been moved.
- 5.4.8 Observers
- 5.5.2.1 With the permission of the SRC, by simple majority, observers may speak, but may not vote, at a meeting of the SRC.
- 5.5.2.2 The Observers must give reasons for wishing to speak and may not rise on any point except to deliver his or her specific address or to clarify on that address.
- 5.5.2.3 Any person who is not a registered student at the University may not attend a Student Body meeting without the prior permission of the Chairperson; such a person may be given speaking rights by the Chairperson of the meeting but may not vote, and may not rise on any point except to deliver his or her specific address or to clarify on that address.

5.6 Conduct of Meetings

- 5.6.1 Any member may bring any matter before the SRC by submitting a written motion to the Executive at least five days before the meeting of the SRC.
- 5.6.2 Whenever an amendment is duly moved and seconded, that amendment, or the latest, if several amendments are moved and seconded, must first be voted on. If there is a majority in favour of the amendment, the original motion is lost. The amendment then becomes the substantive motion. An amendment to this amended version of the original (now the substantive motion) may be moved. Any amendment to the original motion not yet voted on which can, with the necessary changes, be treated as an amendment to the now substantive motion is voted on in order of priority, the later preceding the earlier. When no further amendment is offered to an amended motion, the amended motion, which has become the substantive motion, is voted on as the substantive motion in order to discover whether a majority prefer it to the status quo.
- 5.6.3 Voting shall take place by a show of hands, unless a member requests, or the chair directs, that a ballot shall be taken. Members shall address the chair and shall not, without the permission of the chair, speak for more than seven consecutive minutes.
- 5.6.4 If two or more members simultaneously address the chair, the chair shall decide the order of precedence.
- 5.6.5 All questions put to the meeting by members of the SRC must be put through the chair who may decline to put any questions.
- 5.6.6 It shall be open for any member of the SRC to move that the subject under discussion shall be dealt with in committee, and, if seconded, such motion shall be put without further discussion. Whenever, in the opinion of any member, any matter has been sufficiently discussed, that member may:
- Move that the question be now put, or
 - Move that the SRC proceed to the next business on the agenda.
- Either motion, if seconded, shall be put to the vote without further discussion or amendment.
- If the latter motion is carried, the matter under discussion shall not be further discussed at that meeting, and may not be raised again at any subsequent meeting except by way of a fresh notice of motion.

5.7 Minutes

- 5.7.1 Accurate minutes shall be kept of every SRC and Student Body Meeting, and shall conform to the standard form of University Minutes as per the sample attached.
- 5.7.2 The minutes shall contain the following information:
- 5.7.2.1 The ratification of the minutes of the previous meeting, plus any matters

- arising therefrom.
- 5.7.2.2 The text of every motion and amendment moved and accepted by the Chairperson with the motion was carried, lost or withdrawn, whether the motion was correlated and the number of votes cast in favour of it and against it, in addition to the number of abstentions.
- 5.7.2.3 Where a member desires it, the fact that a particular member voted for or against, abstained from voting or declined to vote on a particular motion.
- 5.7.2.4 A report on who was presiding over the meeting and of any changes which took place in the occupancy of the chair.
- 5.7.2.5 Ruling by the Chairperson on the interpretation of the Constitution and, where the Chairperson directs, on matters of procedure.
- 5.7.2.6 Recommendations put forward by members of the SRC or Student Body where it is agreed that these should be minuted.
- 5.7.2.7 Such explanations regarding the procedure followed by the SRC or Student Body as may be necessary to make other information given in minutes fully comprehensible.
- 5.7.2.8 5.7.2.8. Summaries of speeches or any questions which the SRC or Student Body requests, by a vote taken without discussion.
- 5.7.2.9 A set of minutes of each session shall be filed in a safe and proper place together with a copy of any reports presented.
- 5.7.2.10 Minutes will be sent to all members of the SRC, the SRC Student Development and Support Officer, and the Manager of Student Services.
- 5.7.2.11 Minutes shall be posted on the SRC website in a timely fashion.

5.8 General

- 5.8.1 These Standing Rules of Order shall apply to all meetings of the SRC.
- 5.8.2 These Standing Rules of Order shall at all times be read and interpreted in conjunction with the Constitution of the Students.

Example of SRC Agenda

SRC-2019.4

RHODES UNIVERSITY

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

A MEETING WILL BE HELD ON MONDAY, 30 APRIL 2012 AT 18:00 IN THE R.A. ROOM,
RHODES UNIVERSITY.

AGENDA

- 2019.04.01 PRESENT**
- 2019.04.02 LEAVE OF ABSENCE**
- 2019.04.03 DECLARATION OF CONFLICT OF INTEREST**
- 2019.04.04 QUORUM**
- 2019.04.05 OTHER MATTERS FOR THE AGENDA**
- 2019.04.06 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES**
- 2019.04.07 MATTERS ARISING**
 - 7.1 Student Parliament (item 2019.03.2)
 - 7.2 Student Body Meeting
 - 7.3 RmR Show (item 2019.03.7)

- 7.4 SRC Signage
 - To RECEIVE a report from the Media Councillor
- 7.5 Protest
 - To RECEIVE a report from the Activism and Transformation Councillor
- 7.6 Gender neutral residences

2019.04.08 MATTERS ARISING FROM THE SRC EXECUTIVE

- 8.1 Society Budget requests and finances

2019.04.09 UPCOMING EVENTS

2019.04.10 REPORT BACKS

- 10.1 Purple Thursdays
- 10.2 Equity and Institutional Culture Committee

2019.04.11 UNIVERSITY COMMITTEES

2019.04.12 DATE AND TIME OF NEXT MEETING

2019.04.13 MEETING CLOSED

/mf

GENERAL INFORMATION

ACADEMIC ATTIRE

Chancellor: A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with gold lace. With this gown, a black velvet mortarboard cap is worn, featuring a gold tassel and gold lace edging.

Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellors: A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with silver lace. With this gown, a black mortarboard cap with a silver tassel and silver lace edging is worn.

Vice-Principal: A gown made of black silk and having the facings and sleeve-openings edged with silver lace. With this gown, a black mortarboard cap is worn, featuring a silver tassel and a narrow silver lace edging.

Chairperson of Council: A gown made of black silk and having a collar and facings of gold trimmed with black braid. With this gown, a black mortarboard cap is worn, featuring a tassel of gold threads to match the facings.

Members of Council: A black gown, the front facings and bottom of the sleeves of which are trimmed with gold ribbon 25mm wide. With this gown, a black mortarboard cap with a black tassel is worn.

President of Convocation: A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple edged with narrow silver lace. With this gown, a black mortarboard cap with a purple tassel is worn.

Registrar: A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple 150mm wide, and with the lower half of each sleeve covered with purple, with the addition of a 10mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and between the purple and black on each sleeve. With this gown, a black mortarboard is worn, featuring a purple and white tassel.

Bedellus: A plain black gown with wrist-length sleeves. Each sleeve is trimmed with four horizontal bands of purple velvet and features a purple velvet wing at the top, edged with narrow silver lace. With this gown, a black mortarboard cap is worn.

Graduates: Bachelors and Master's wear a black gown of the same design as that worn by Master's

of Arts in the University of Oxford. Doctors of Philosophy wear a scarlet gown of the same design as that worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge. Doctors other than Doctors of Philosophy wear a scarlet gown of the same design as the scarlet full-dress gown of Doctors in the University of Oxford.

Undergraduates: A black gown of the design worn by scholars in the University of Oxford.

Undergraduate Diplomands: Black gown with a black stole 110mm wide. The length of the stole alternates with bands of white and purple stripes, each 10 mm wide. The left end features a Rhodes University crest, and the right end is embroidered with the letters 'RU' in purple. The stoles awarded to four-year diplomands feature gold tassels, while the stoles awarded to three-year diplomands have black tassels.

Postgraduate Diplomands and Certificate Candidates

Black gown with a black 110mm-wide stole. The front of the stole features a band of white and purple stripes, each 10mm wide, with black fringe for NQF level 8 qualifications and white fringe for NQF level 7 qualifications. The stole is lined with the relevant Faculty colour and piped around with a 5mm-wide white cord.

Hoods

Bachelors' hoods are made in an Oxford simple shape. Master's and Doctoral hoods are made in the full shape used in the University of London.

Where a Bachelor's hood is bound with a second colour, the binding is placed over the anterior and posterior sides of the hood and is 13mm wide on both the inside and outside. The facing on the hood for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy is 50mm wide inside the anterior side at the bottom, tapering to nothing at the centre of the neckband. The edging of the Master's and Doctoral hoods is 7mm wide on the outside of the cowl and the cape.

Hoods for different degrees

BA	Black lined with white and bound with purple
MA	Black lined and edged with white
DLitt	Scarlet lined and edged with white
BFineArt	Black lined with ultramarine blue
MFineArt	Black lined and edged with ultramarine blue
BJourn	Black lined with cherry red
BMus	Black lined with adonis blue
MMus	Black lined and edged with adonis blue
DMus	Scarlet lined and edged with adonis blue
BSc	Black lined with bottle green
BSc(InfSys)	Black lined with light green
BSc(SofDev)	Black lined with bottle green and faced with primrose yellow
MSc	Black lined and edged with bottle green
DSc	Scarlet lined and edged with bottle green
BPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and faced with bottle green
MSc(Pharm)	Black lined with bottle green and bound over with chartreuse
MPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and bound over the cowl with bottle green
DSc(Pharm)	Scarlet lined and edged with chartreuse
PharmD	Black lined and edged with scarlet facing
LLB	Black lined with old gold
LLM	Black lined and edged with old gold
LLD	Scarlet lined and edged with old gold
BEd	Black lined with white and bound (prev BPrimEd) with light brown
BEd(Hons)	Black lined with terra cotta
MEd	Black lined and edged with terra cotta
BAcc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with dark red
BBusSc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with lapis lazuli
BCom	Black lined with primrose yellow

MCom	Black lined and edged with primrose yellow
MBA	Black lined with primrose yellow and bound over the cowl with lapis lazuli
BEcon	Black lined with buttercup yellow
MEcon	Black lined and edged with buttercup yellow
DEcon	Scarlet lined and edged with buttercup yellow
BSocSc	Black lined with silver-grey
MSocSc	Black lined and edged with silver grey
DSocSc	Scarlet lined and edged with silver grey
PhD	Black lined and edged with scarlet (all faculties)

The hood for the degree of Bachelor with Honours is the hood for the corresponding Bachelor's degree piped down the anterior side with a white cord 5mm wide.

All Doctors wear a round black velvet bonnet of the design worn at Cambridge University and trimmed with gold cord and tassels.

Academic attire to be worn by staff members who hold qualifications from universities which do not prescribe their own academic attire:

- The gown is made of black material and follows the same pattern as the Bachelor's, Master's, or Doctor's gown of Rhodes University, depending on the person's qualification. For example, a Doctor from such a university wears a Doctor's gown, and a licentiate wears a Master's gown. The gown must have a facing, 50mm wide, down each side in front, in the distinctive colour of the Faculty to which the person concerned belongs.
- There is no hood.

Academic attire and the dress worn with it on particular occasions

Full ceremonial occasions: Full academic attire as prescribed above.

Academic occasions: Full academic attire as prescribed above.

Other occasions: Black gowns are worn without hoods or caps.

Messrs T. Birch and Co., Ltd., Makhanda, have been appointed the University's preferred service provider for academic dress and have undertaken to maintain adequate stocks and sell them at reasonable prices.

AWARD OF COLOURS

Half Colours, Colours and Honours (undergraduate only): A student must be awarded a degree in a minimum stipulated period of time (N years) with no transfer credits from any Institution or qualification.

Half Colours: The candidate must obtain at least 60 credits as firsts (1sts) and 60 credits at upper seconds (2A) in the final year and firsts (1sts) in half the remaining NQF credits.

Colours: The candidate must obtain 120 NQF credits in firsts (1sts) in the final year (3rd or 4th depending on the degree) and firsts (1sts) in half of the remaining NQF credits.

Honours: The candidate must obtain firsts (1sts) for every course in the qualification.

Half-Colours, Colours and Honours (postgraduate only):

To be awarded Colours, the qualification must be awarded with distinction or awarded with 120 NQF credits in the year with first class passes.

IN THE FACULTY OF LAW

LLB with Distinction

1. Class 1 in 12 semester courses or their equivalent for which a candidate was registered in the penultimate and final years of study; and
2. An aggregate of at least 70% in all courses for which the candidates had been registered in the penultimate and final years of study. For the purposes of calculating the aggregate, the percentage of a full course shall carry double the weight of that of a semester course. A candidate who has obtained an average of 69.5% will be regarded as having met the 70% standard.

Award of colours

1. For an award of half colours, a candidate must have obtained first-class passes in at least six semester courses or their equivalent in the final year of study, and have obtained an aggregate of at least 70% in all courses in the academic year for which the candidate was registered. A candidate who has obtained an average of 69,5% or above will be regarded as having met the 70% standard.
2. For an award of Colours, a candidate must have been awarded the LLB degree with distinction.

Award of Honours

For an award of Honours, a candidate must have been awarded the degree of LLB with distinction and have obtained an aggregate of at least 75% in all the penultimate and final year courses for which the candidate had been registered. A candidate who has obtained an average of 74,5% or above will be regarded as having met the 75% standard.

FINANCIAL AID

Undergraduate Financial Aid packages, consisting of loans, merit awards, bursaries and rebates, may be offered to financially needy and academically deserving South African Citizens. The criteria for eligibility and value of the financial aid provided are determined annually by the Financial Aid Committee.

For further information, please consult our website <https://www.ru.ac.za/researchgateway/postgraduate/funding/>

Postgraduate Financial Aid comprises scholarships, bursaries, and loans. Rhodes University offers several scholarship programmes that attract excellent students and researchers to pursue their studies at the postgraduate level. Further funding for postgraduate research is made available through the NRF, WRC, MRC, and other funding bodies via individual bursaries or project-linked bursaries.

For further information, please consult our website <http://www.ru.ac.za/research/postgraduates/fundin> g.

CONVOCATION

Convocation is a statutory body which meets at least once a year to discuss any matters affecting the University and to convey its resolutions to the University Council and the Senate. All graduates of Rhodes University, the Vice-Chancellor, the Deputy Vice-Chancellors, academic staff, the Registrar, the University Librarian, the Director of Student Affairs, and those former professors and associate professors elected by the Senate and Council to be emeritus professors or emeritus associate professors, are members of Convocation. The Registrar is Secretary ex officio. All members are entitled to vote for office-bearers.

President: Mr S Mngadi
Secretary: The Registrar

THE ASSOCIATION OF OLD RHODIANS

The Old Rhodian Union, reconstituted as the Association of Old Rhodians in 2024, was founded in 1911 by Professor Cullen Bowles and Sir George Cory to form a link between past and present students and staff of Rhodes University.

The Association of Old Rhodians administers a bursary fund from which it awards several bursaries annually to children and grandchildren of Old Rhodians.

President: Professor Rosa Klein
Vice-President: Mr Qondakele Sompondo

THE SPORTS ADMINISTRATION AND SPORTS FACILITIES

The Rhodes University Sports Council was established in 1905. The Council promotes sports and physical recreation, providing and maintaining sports facilities and equipment on campus. The Head of Sports Administration and staff are responsible for the day-to-day administration of

University sport and sports clubs, as well as for implementing the policies of the Sports Council.

The use of sports facilities is restricted to all bona fide students of Rhodes University, Club members, members of the Council, and full-time staff members who are honorary members of the Sports Council. Non-Rhodes affiliated people/groups can only use these facilities by prior arrangement with the Sports Administration and may be liable for a charge applicable to each facility.

Facility cards may be purchased from the Sports Administration office by the following persons:

1. Spouses of members of staff and their dependants of 16 years and over;
2. Old Rhodians, their spouses and their dependants of 16 years and over;
3. Students' spouses, partners, and their dependents aged 16 and over.

Swimming pool cards may also be purchased from the Sports Administration by the above individuals.

Whilst all bona fide students, Council members and staff have free access to some facilities, official club practices, matches, and competitions take priority in the use of all facilities.

Sports facilities

1 swimming pool
1 rugby field (floodlit)
2 cricket fields
1 100m archery range (floodlit)
1 beach volleyball court (floodlit)
4 netball courts (floodlit)
1 outdoor basketball court
3 soccer fields (floodlit)
9 squash courts
1 rowing tank
1 athletics track (floodlit)
8 tennis courts (floodlit)
1 rifle range
Martial arts dojo (karate, mixed martial arts, taekwondo)
Health suite:
Weights facility
Aerobics studio
Spinning studio

Climbing wall
Basketball,
Volleyball Hall (Alec Mullins Hall)
Rowing, sailing & canoe clubhouse at Settlers Dam
1 Hockey Astro turf field (floodlit) - artificial surface

Sports clubs

Archery; Athletics (Road Running, Track and Field, Triathlon); Basketball; Canoe; Chess; Cricket; Dance Sport; First Aid; Fly fishing; Golf; Hockey; Health Suite (Gym, Aerobics, Indoor Cycling) Karate; Mixed Martial Arts; Mountain Climbing; Netball, Pool; Rifle; Rowing; Sailing; Rugby; Soccer; Squash; Surfing; Tennis; Taekwon-do; Underwater (SCUBA & Underwater Hockey); Volleyball

Sports scholarships

- Sutherland/Old Rhodian Bursary Fund: This bursary is awarded annually to a prospective student with above-average potential in their chosen sports. The holders must meet the University's standard entrance requirements. This bursary is tenable for the first year of study only.
- Sports Administration Scholarship: These scholarships are awarded to students and prospective students who excel in their chosen sporting codes and have represented their province or nation at the provincial or national level.
- Ally Weakley Fund: This is the bursary awarded yearly to a rugby player.

THE STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council, elected by the student body, represents the students of Rhodes University both on campus and off campus. The SRC negotiates with the University authorities on behalf of students and administers funds allocated by the Council for student activities.

All student clubs and societies, except sports clubs, are financed by the SRC, which makes grants to student societies, to its various committees, to the publications under its control, and for student social functions.

The SRC assists in organising Orientation Week.

Externally, the SRC maintains contact with other educational institutions and arranges seminars and speakers on issues of general interest to students.

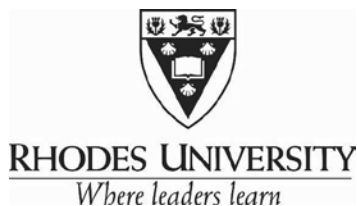
According to the Student Disciplinary Code, the SRC may take disciplinary action against students who violate University rules. All disciplinary action is reported to the Vice-Chancellor, who deals with more serious offences.

THE STUDENT SERVICES COUNCIL (SSC)

In accordance with tertiary education legislation, a Student Services Council has been established. In compliance with this legislation, the SSC has equal representation from both university staff and students. As a subcommittee of the Senate, the SSC makes recommendations directly to the Senate, and thereby to the Council.

The SSC has been tasked with examining every aspect of student life to integrate students into campus life as quickly as possible, so that each student may become academically productive in the shortest possible time. This will be achieved by ensuring that students from different backgrounds feel socially and culturally at ease in all aspects of campus life.

Students are encouraged to approach the Director of Student Services and Development, or any member of the SSC, with recommendations, complaints, or concerns about any aspect of student life on the Rhodes campuses.



Rhodes University fees booklet

2026

This document has been compiled by the Student Fees Office at Rhodes University. Please direct any queries to the relevant office using the contact details given below.

STUDENT FEES OFFICE	POSTGRADUATE FUNDING
studentfees@ru.ac.za	pgfunding@ru.ac.za
046 603 8007	046 603 8755
046 603 8178	046 603 7362
046 603 8743	046 603 8936
046 602 8152	

FINANCIAL AID OFFICE	STUDENT BUREAU
finaid@ru.ac.za	registrar@ru.ac.za
046 603 7089	046 603 8175
046 603 8912	046 603 8654
046 603 8660	046 603 8103
046 603 8372	046 603 8276

All figures in this booklet are given in South African Rand (ZAR)

Table of contents

Payment options	1
South African students.....	1
NSFAS funded students.....	1
International students	2
Important information for all students.....	2
Banking details.....	2
Bursaries, fee remissions and concessions	3
Recognised bursaries and scholarships.....	3
Fee remissions, concessions, and special arrangements (full-time students only)	3
Academic Merit Award Scheme (South African students only).....	3
External Loans	3
Penalties for non-payment of fees.....	3
Refunds.....	3
Notice of withdrawal/deregistration (including residence)	4
Other fee considerations	4
Block fees (tuition fees)	4
Oppidan fee (students who live off-campus).....	4
Meals for oppidans	4
Additional courses	4
Single-course fees.....	5
Departmental and additional charges	5
Clubs and societies.....	5
Examination fees.....	5
IT Shop	5
Off-campus network.....	5
General fees	6
Tuition fees.....	8
Residence fees.....	14

PAYMENT OPTIONS

South African students

OPTION 1

An Initial Fee Payment of 10% of the annual tuition fee and, where applicable, 25% of the annual residence fee, is required by **16 January 2026 for returning students** and **23 January 2026 for first-time entering students**.

Carefully note the payment due dates if you wish to be accommodated in residence.

Additional charges to be paid monthly as per student fee statements.

The Initial Fee Payment	
Tuition only	7 277.00
OR	
Tuition and residence:	7 277.00 + 25 268.00 = 32 545.00

The balance of fees to be paid as set out below.

	Due date	Tuition	Residence
By Initial Fee Payment due date	16 January / 23 January 2026	10%	25%
A further 25% of fee	31 March 2026	35%	50%
A further 25% of fee	30 June 2026	60%	75%
A further 25% of fee	30 September 2026	85%	100%
Any balance still outstanding	30 November 2026	100%	

OPTION 2

A 5% discount may be **claimed in writing** if the full annual tuition fee and, if applicable, full annual residence fee is paid **on or before 16 January 2026 for returning students and on or before 23 January 2026 for first-time entering students**. The discount cannot be applied to tuition or residence fee separately as it applies to full fees.

OPTION 3

Payment of the **full fees** by debit order with 11 monthly instalments from 1 February 2026 to 1 December 2026. The debit order application form can be obtained by emailing debitorders@ru.ac.za, or on the Rhodes University website at www.ru.ac.za/studentfeesandfinancialaid. The form must be completed and signed by the person whose bank account is to be debited. All relevant documentation must be submitted by **16 January 2026**. Incomplete applications will not be considered.

A penalty of R259.00 will be charged on all unpaid debit orders. Three consecutive unpaid debit orders will result in the automatic cancellation of the debit order facility.

NSFAS funded students

NSFAS funded students are **not required to pay an Initial Fee**. Registration clearance is granted based on a funding list provided by NSFAS. NSFAS does not pay for additional charges that are not related to tuition, accommodation, and books. The fee-payer will be liable for other costs incurred.

Additional charges to be paid monthly per student fee statements.

International students

OPTION 1

Returning and first-time entering international students will be required to pay 50% of their tuition and residence fees for the year by **16 January 2026 for returning students** and **23 January 2026 for first-time entering students**. The balance of fees is due by **31 May 2026**.

Carefully note the payment due dates if you wish to be accommodated in residence.

Additional charges to be paid on receipt of student fee statements.

International students Initial Fee Payment	
Tuition only	36 731.00
OR	
Tuition and residence:	89 528.00

OPTION 2

A 5% discount may be **claimed in writing** if the full annual tuition fee and, if applicable, full annual residence fee, is paid **on or before 16 January 2026 for returning students** and **on or before 23 January 2026 for first-time entering students**. The discount cannot be applied to tuition or residence fee separately as it applies to full fees. Please note that if the application is not submitted within the stipulated timeframe, the discount will be forfeited.

International student levy

This is a compulsory additional charge for all international students per annum.

	Undergraduates	Postgraduates
From SADC countries	13 821.00	9 375.00
From Africa (excluding SADC)	17 651.00	11 678.00
Elsewhere	19 627.00	13 821.00

- Master/Visa card facilities are available
- Flywire Payment Option available for all international transfers <https://rhodesuni.flywire.com/>

Important information for all students

Electronic Fund Transfers (EFTs) can take up to three (3) days to reflect on the student account. Fee-payers need to take this into consideration in order to adhere to the fee payment deadlines.

Registration will not be permitted if none of the options above have been taken up.

The Initial Fee Payment is required upfront and cannot be paid by payment arrangement unless you opt for the debit order facility.

BANKING DETAILS

Rhodes University Student Fees
First National Bank
Makhanda Branch
Account number 6214 5504 553
Branch code 210717

Please note: Use the student number as the reference.

BURSARIES, FEE REMISSIONS AND CONCESSIONS

Recognised bursaries and scholarships

Holders of recognised bursaries and scholarships, including Rhodes University scholarships and merit awards, may offset their award against the Initial Fee Payment required for registration. The award letter must be emailed to studentfees@ru.ac.za. If the total bursary amount paid exceeds the fees payable, the student may draw the balance on condition that the Bursar has given written permission. Please note that it is the responsibility of the student to ensure that bursary donors make payments timeously and in accordance with the University regulations. Students who hold full bursaries are reminded that they will require funds on arrival at the University for the purchasing of books, etc., as it is not University policy to make loans or advances against bursaries prior to the funds being received.

Fee remissions, concessions, and special arrangements (full-time students only)

An application may be made for a second-child remission should a parent have more than one child attending the University in the same academic year, as full-time students. The remission is equal to 30% of the tuition fee for any child after the first.

Academic Merit Award Scheme (South African students only)

Special merit awards are automatically made by the University to eligible students enrolling for the first time for an undergraduate degree. The awards, **ranging from R29 940.00 to full tuition fee**, are based on the final National Senior Certificate examination results. Should the student withdraw from Rhodes University during the academic year, the merit award will be reduced on a pro rata basis. To qualify for one of these awards, a student would have to obtain at least 47 admission points in the National Senior Certificate examination.

International students are not eligible for merit awards.

External Loans

Please note that it is the responsibility of students negotiating loans with financial or other institutions to ensure that all payments are made to the University by the dates specified above.

The Initial Fee Payment may **NOT** be reduced by virtue of a student having negotiated a loan with a financial or other institution.

Monies once paid into a student account will not be refunded unless all fees have been paid and a credit balance is reflected on the account, irrespective of any bursaries held or meal refunds due to the student. This is usually processed at the end of the academic year or when the student withdraws from the University.

Penalties for non-payment of fees

The University will not release results, academic transcripts, or degree parchments if any fees are in arrears.

Refunds

Account refunds or payments to students will be made via Bank transfer. Credit-balance refunds will only be made upon receipt of a written application from the person/organisation responsible for paying the account, supported by confirmation of banking details and proof of payment. This is usually processed at the end of the academic year or when the student withdraws from the University. A small credit may be retained to cover any additional second-semester charges.

NOTICE OF WITHDRAWAL/DEREGISTRATION (including residence)

Students who wish to withdraw or suspend their studies must give notice, in writing, to the Registrar of the University. This must be emailed to registrar@ru.ac.za.

Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves during the year is liable for a pro-rata fee for tuition and/or residence fees up to the date of cancellation. The basis of the calculation will include an academic year of 250 days.

Any student who withdraws their application for tuition or residence before registration will be liable for a cancellation fee of 10% of the relevant fee if less than one month's notice is given, or 2.5% if longer.

In the case of an **early withdrawal from residence**, for any reason other than immediate family bereavement, medical illness or academic exclusion, a **cancellation fee of two months' residence fee** will be levied, over and above the fee calculation for the period of residence accommodation. A penalty will not be charged if a provisional residence booking is cancelled prior to the Initial Fee deadline of **16 January 2026 for returning students** and **23 January 2026 for first-time entering students**.

In terms of Section 17 of the Consumer Protection Act (CPA), it states.

- A service provider may charge a reasonable fee for cancellation.
- Regard must be had to the nature of the service, the length of notice to cancellation, the reasonable potential to find an alternative consumer (in our case, this would be a student) and the general practice of the university sector.

OTHER FEE CONSIDERATIONS

Block fees (tuition fees)

The regulations of the various faculties prescribe the number of courses full-time students are normally expected to take in each year of their curriculum.

Unless otherwise stated, the annual block fees include tuition fees for classes and laboratories, fees for ordinary University examinations and library fees for the normal number of courses. Full-time students taking fewer than the normal number of courses in any given year will still be liable for the full block fee.

Oppidan fee (students who live off-campus)

All full-time registered students living off-campus will be charged a compulsory oppidan fee of R440.00.

For clarity, please refer to <https://www.ru.ac.za/oppidan/faq>

Meals for oppidans

The meal options available are breakfast, lunch, and supper on weekdays and weekends.

The costs are different for breakfast (R24.47 per meal) and lunch and supper (R65.82 each per meal)

Additional courses

Subject to the regulations of the various faculties, **undergraduate students** may take, in any year, one course more than the normal number prescribed for that year of their curriculum without an extra charge. **Full-time postgraduate** students may take, in any year, one undergraduate course free of charge if they have obtained prior approval of their head of department and of the dean of the faculty concerned. A postgraduate student in Law may take first-year courses in any one language subject in any year without extra charge. The undergraduate course becomes payable separately once deregistered from the full-time course.

Single-course fees

Students doing one course towards completing their degree must be registered as a full-time student but will be charged the single-course fee.

Departmental and additional charges

These charges are for course materials, handouts, field trips, printing vouchers, etc., and are additional charges to the student fee account. The charges vary as they depend on the courses taken and options chosen in each year of study.

Clubs and societies

These charges refer to the subscriptions or membership fees charged for clubs and societies that are charged to student accounts.

Examination fees

Examination fees must be paid at the start of each semester for ordinary examinations written by students returning to write on extended DP certificates.

Students who fail to provide acceptable identification at examinations will be fined R398.00 per exam session.

IT Shop

IT consumables such as USB flash sticks, external hard drives, etc., are available from the IT Shop. Please see <https://www.ru.ac.za/informationtechnology/itshop> for more information.

Off-campus network

This charge applies when connecting to the student network from one of the private flat complexes in town and where such access is available. See <https://www.ru.ac.za/studnet> for details.

GENERAL FEES

New students (SA and International)	
Application fee up to 30 September (SA and international applicants)	100.00
Tuition acceptance fee (non-refundable)	800.00
Residence acceptance fee (non-refundable)	1 000.00
Late registration (not in attendance on the prescribed date)	2 060.00
Examination fees	
Supplementary examinations	
Per course or half course	1 626.00
Per subsidiary course (PGCE)	448.00
Extended DP examinations	
per course	1 626.00
per half course	1 009.00
Extended DP Initial Fee Payment	888.00
Initial Fee Payment: Special categories including upgrading NCP's	888.00
Transcripts	
Current students	
Transcripts (first academic transcript request, no charge, each for the June and December examination session. Any further request is charged)	99.00
Transcripts with course outlines	110.00
Alumni	
Degree certificates are handed to candidates when they graduate or posted as soon as possible after the graduation ceremony to those graduating <i>in absentia</i> . Other certificates are posted to candidates as soon as possible after the results are issued. A duplicate certificate is issued on production of an affidavit or the damaged original certificate. An amended degree parchment: issued because of student error or negligence in providing information, such as the spelling of names, etc.	
Cost of transcript	178.00
Cost of course outline	21.00
Cost of letters of completion	68.00
Cost of transcript and letters of completion	241.00
Cost of transcript with course outlines	188.00
Re-scrutiny	
The fee is refundable if re-examination changes the classification of the result to the student's advantage. An invigilation fee per paper may also be payable.	2 495.00
Copy of script	277.00
Other penalties/levies	
Unpaid debit order	259.00
Failure to produce ID at examinations/cell phone ringing at exams	398.00

Miscellaneous fees		
Exemptions		
per course		924.00
per half course		507.00
Certificates		
Certified statements of course on application: pre-1982		581.00
Replacement degree or diploma certificate		975.00
Amended degree parchment		975.00
Student card		283.00
Printing vouchers (optional)		varies
Photocopying vouchers (optional)		varies
Off-campus student network access		516.00
Visiting research students		
	per year	3 069.00
	per semester	1 554.00
	per term	802.00
Non-degree, diploma or certificate courses		
Occasional students	per course	single-course fees
Continuing education and casual students, per course		6 093.00

TUITION FEES

FULL-TIME BACHELOR'S DEGREES

Undergraduate students registering for the second semester will be charged 50% of the annual fee

BA	63 519.00

Students not registered for BJourn and who take Journ 2, 3, or 4 courses will be charged the BJourn degree fee

BA Foundation Course	

First two years	per year	46 104.00

BBusSc	

First three years	per year	69 494.00

Fourth year		55 665.00

BCom		69 494.00

BCom Foundation Course: first two years	per year	50 201.00

BEcon		69 494.00

BEd		63 438.00

BFineArt	see also other fees	63 519.00

BJourn	

The equipment levies for students studying Journalism 2, 3, 4 and diploma have been included in the Journalism tuition fee

First year		63 519.00

Second year (includes equipment levy)		74 533.00

Third year (includes equipment levy)		80 135.00

Fourth year (includes equipment levy)		82 097.00

BMus	

All years of study (see also other fees)	per year	67 277.00

BPharm	

First year (professional indemnity insurance, SAPC registration and annual fee, scrubs, Book-Master the mystery of medicines, name badges, handouts and printing material)		68 491.00

Second year (professional indemnity insurance, SAPC annual fee, SAMF book, handouts and printing material)		72 872.00

Third year (professional indemnity insurance, SAPC annual fee, handouts and printing material)		74 781.00

Fourth year (SAPC annual fee, handouts and printing material)		78 294.00

BSc		66 082 .00

BSc Foundation Course	

First two years	per year	45 418.00

BSc (Information Systems)		69 494.00
BScD (Software Development)		69 494.00
BSocSc		63 519.00
BSocSc: Foundation Course	per year	46 104.00
LLB		71 254.00

*A student who takes Comp Sci 2 or 3 or Information Systems 2 or 3 and is NOT registered for a BBusSc, BCom, BEcon, BSc (InfSys) or BScD degree, will be charged an additional tuition fee of **R3 152.00***

FULL-TIME DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

PG Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation		54 641.00
Advanced Diploma in Business Analysis		37 856.00
PG Diploma in Business Analysis		65 198.00
PG Diploma in International Studies		49 517.00
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management		54 641.00
PG Diploma in Heritage Management (PDHM)		59 356.00
DipAcc (PG) (Preliminary) 1, 2, 3 or more courses HDAP		67 277.00
DipAcc (PG) HDAC		69 706.00
PG Diploma in Taxation		49 517.00
PG Diploma English Language Teaching		49 400.00
PGCE		51 787.00
PG Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies		67 156.00

PART-TIME DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

BEd In-service	per year	16 391.00
BEd In-service incidental costs	per year	21 492.00
PG Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation	50% first year	27 321.00
PG Diploma in Advancement and Resource Mobilisation	50% second year	27 321.00
PG Diploma in Business Analysis	75% first year	48 899.00
PG Diploma in Business Analysis	25% second year	16 299.00
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management	75% first year	40 981.00
PG Diploma in Enterprise Management	25% second year	13 660.00
PG Diploma in English Lang Teaching	per year	29 882.00
PG Diploma in Economics Journalism	per year	22 880.00
PG Diploma in Higher Education CE – HECE	per year	25 100.00

PG Diploma in Media Management	per year	36 247.00
PG Diploma in Sustainability Learning	Per year	25 050.00
PGDHE	per year	25 050.00
PGCE	per year	25 613.00
Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Literacy Teaching	per year	17 511.00

SINGLE-COURSE FEES

Science (including Geography and Psychology)	25 273.00
Final course in major or principal subjects	31 760.00
Other (including Mathematics)	24 247.00
Half courses (two half courses = cost of 1 full course: not 2 x60%)	

FULL-TIME HONOURS DEGREE

Candidates for Honours degrees may attend an introductory language course with no extra charge.

Science (includes Environmental Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography and Information Systems)		
First year		58 568.00
Additional years	per year	24 417.00
Accounting		
First year		69 838.00
Additional years	per year	24 447.00
Journalism & Media Studies		
First year		67 406.00
Additional years	per year	24 417.00
Financial Management		
First year		49 517.00
Additional years	per year	24 417.00
Other		
First year		47 982.00
Additional years	per year	24 417.00

PART-TIME HONOURS DEGREE

Science (includes Environmental Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems)

	per year	36 371.00
BEd (Hons)		
First two years	per year	23 735.00
Additional years	per year	10 244.00
BEd (Hons) Namibia	per year	28 345.00
Journalism & Media Studies	per year	36 371.00
Other Honours degrees	per year	26 977.00

MASTER'S DEGREES

- Tuition and supervision
- If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.
- Registration and tuition fees must be paid, even if candidates in a particular year makes no call on their supervisor's time.
- The minimum period of study for a Linguistics and Applied Language Studies degree is two years after a Bachelor's degree (if permitted) or one year after an Honours degree.
- A pro-rata fee will be applied upon registration of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies students.

All faculties other than as specified below

Full-time and part-time fee, unless specified below	per year	31 930.00
Bioinformatics		
	per year	42 348.00

Business Administration (MBA)

MBA part-time

Registered in 2024 and prior		41 405.00
Registered in 2025		81 980.00
Registered in 2026		81 980.00

Education

including English Language Teaching in the Department of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

Full-time students

First two years	per year	21 856.00
Subsequent years	per year	30 565.00

Part-time students

First three years	per year	16 563.00
Subsequent years	per year	24 759.00
Namibia	per year	35 688.00

Financial Markets		
<i>Charge includes the cost of financial exchange exams</i>		
First year		66 422.00
Additional years	per year	26 979.00
Journalism & Media Studies		
Full-time		31 866.00
Part-time, first two years	per year	16 050.00
Third year (thesis year)		11 099.00
Additional years	per year	21 172.00
Psychology (Clinical/Counselling)		
First year		31 930.00
Second year		11 953.00
Third year		21 856.00
Psychology (by thesis only)		
Full-time	per year	21 856.00
Part-time	per year	11 271.00
Taxation		
First three years	per year	37 906.00
Additional years	per year	46 785.00
SPECIAL MSc DEGREES		
MSc (Environmental Biotechnology)		
First year of registration		79 991.00
Additional years	per year	46 785.00
MSc (Expl/Econ part-time)		
Modules	per module	11 099.00
Field courses	per field trip	21 346.00
Attendance of modules for non-degree purposes	per week	13 233.00
Students not in attendance	per year	7 684.00
Thesis supervision and laboratory fees	per year	11 099.00
Equipment levy	per annum	427.00
MSc (Economic Geology) (full-time)		
Students completing degree in one year		22 197.00
Field courses	per field trip	21 346.00
Thesis supervision and laboratory fees	per year	11 099.00

PhD CANDIDATES

- If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.
- Tuition, supervision, and examination fees
- Registration and tuition fees must be paid even if candidates in a particular year make no call on their supervisor's time.
- The minimum period of study for a PhD degree is three years after an Honours degree, or two years after a Linguistics and Applied Language Studies degree.
- A pro-rata fee will be applied upon registration of PhD students

All faculties other than Education

per year	31 930.00

Education Faculty

Students full-time

First three years	per year	21 856.00

Subsequent years	per year	30 565.00

Students part-time

First three years	per year	16 563.00

Subsequent years	per year	24 759.00

Namibia	per year	35 733.00

PHD in Psychotherapy		16 904.00

SENIOR DOCTORATES

Examination fee. (No other fees are payable)	31 930.00

AD EUNDEM GRADUM CANDIDATES

As for Linguistics and Applied Language Studies degrees above

RESIDENCE FEES

16a Prince Alfred Street Adamson House Adamson House doubles Adelaide Tambo House Amina Cachalia House Calata House Canterbury Annexe Canterbury Annexe doubles Canterbury House Canterbury House doubles Cullen Bowles House Ellen Kuzwayo House Helen Joseph Annexe Doubles Helen Joseph House Hilltop House Starling House	New House Joe Slovo House New House Annexe 1 double New House Annexe 4 New House Annexe 4 doubles Prince Alfred House Rosa Parks House Salisbury House Salisbury House doubles Sisulu House Stanley Kidd doubles Stanley Kidd House Truro House Winchester House 73 + 74 African Street	92 851.00
Allan Gray House Allan Gray House doubles Atherstone House Atherstone House doubles Beit Flat Beit House Botha House Botha House doubles Centenary House Chris Hani House College House College House doubles Cory House De Beers House De Beers House doubles Dingemans House Founders Annex Founders Annexe doubles Goldfields House Goldfields House doubles Graham House Guy Butler House Hobson House Hobson House doubles Charlotte Maxeke House Charlotte Maxeke House doubles John Kotze House John Kotze Annex	Lilian Britten Annex Single Lilian Britten Annex Doubles Lilian Britten doubles Lilian Britten House Livingstone House Margaret Smith House Matthews House 31 South Street Milner House Milner House doubles Olive Schreiner House Olive Schreiner House doubles Oriel Annexe doubles Oriel Annexe Oriel House Oriel House doubles PG Holding residence Phelps House Enoch Sontonga Milner House Annexe doubles Robert Sobukwe House Robert Sobukwe House doubles Ruth First House Sanatorium Thomas Pringle House Victoria Mxenge House Walker House	97 482.00

POSTGRADUATE RESIDENCES (SPECIFIED)	FULL BOARD	SELF-CATERING
Gavin Relly Postgraduate Village		
Single room without air-conditioning	112 790.00	81 845.00
Single room with air-conditioning	118 387.00	87 445.00
Celeste and Oakdene		
	110 029.00	79 087.00
5 Gilbert Street, 6 Gilbert Street, John Kotze Annexe, Gilbert Street postgraduate units, 27 South Street and African Street		
	110 029.00	N/A

RESIDENCE FEES DURING VACATIONS		
April recess: (Including meals)	per day	291.00
Early arrivals or late departures: (including meals)	per day	180.00

MISCELLANEOUS FEES		
Loss of room key		335.00
Failure to return room key: the end of second and fourth terms		335.00
Loss of cupboard key		660.00
Additional length bed		180.00

Additional information

- Residence fees differ because some residences have better facilities and/or are more desirably located.
- Student accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. Where, for the convenience of the University, students are permitted to share accommodation, a 25% discount on the lodging will be applied. For discounts and adjustments, the residence year is taken as 250 days (postgraduate residence year is 340 days). A student does not have the right to claim an allowance for sharing a room where single accommodation in the residence is available.
- No charge is made for linen supplied or for laundry services. Students must provide their own toiletries and towels.
- No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study requires such absence. (Certificates to this effect must be obtained from the relevant academic head of department and submitted to the Residential Operations Division.)
- Unbooked meals will be refunded to students' fee accounts at the end of each semester. Refunds will be limited to a maximum of **R4 003.57** per semester for those in undergraduate residences and **R5 444.86** per semester for those in postgraduate residences.
- The cost of meals for residence students is different for breakfast (R18.69 per meal) and lunch and supper (R44.03 each per meal).
- Accommodation for students in undergraduate residences is available for a specific fee during the April vacation periods. No vacation accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or the December/January period.

- Students who have withdrawn from residence must vacate their rooms within 24 hours of having given such notification to the University.
- Applications for residence fee remissions must be made to the Director: Residential Operations Division. Residence fee remissions will only be considered in cases of family emergencies (e.g., immediate family bereavement, illness of student, etc.).

DEPARTMENTAL CHARGE ESTIMATES

These charges are provisional only and may be revised during the year. However, charges for handouts (as determined) are compulsory.

ACCOUNTING		
Accounting 101, 102 and 112	per semester	102.00
Accounting 2		204.00
Accounting 3		207.00
Auditing 3		365.00
Principles of Professional Accountancy		350.00
Management Accounting and Finance 3		250.00
Taxation 3		365.00
Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy		2 700.00
Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation		997.00
Accounting Honours (Financial Accounting)		2 700.00
AFRICAN LANGUAGES		
isiXhosa I, II and III (MT)		180.00
isiXhosa I, II and III (NMT)	each	331.00
Honours and field trips		331.00
Honours (Joint)		170.00
Master's		120.00
Linguistics & Applied Language Studies		176.00
AFRIKAANS & NEDERLANDS STUDIES		
Afrikaans & Nederlands I		384.00
Afrikaans & Nederlands II and III	each	384.00
Afrikaans & Nederlands Honours		299.00
Afrikaans & Nederlands Honours (Joint)		271.00
ANTHROPOLOGY		
Anthropology I and II – handouts	each	200.00
Anthropology III – fieldtrips and handouts	each	300.00
Anthropology Honours - fieldtrips and handouts		600.00
PG Diploma		600.00

BIOCHEMISTRY		
Biochemistry 2 course material	each	269.00
Biochemistry 3 course material	each	375.00
Biochemistry 2 lab and equipment levy	each	277.00
Biochemistry 3 lab and equipment levy	each	277.00
Biochemistry Honours course material	each	138.00
BIOINFORMATICS		
Levy for computer laboratory usage where appropriate	per annum	5 500.00
BIOTECHNOLOGY		
Biotechnology Honours course materials		450.00
BOTANY		
Botany 102 handouts	second semester only	230.00
Botany 102 and Cell Biology 101 shared e-textbook	per annum	650.00
Botany 201, 202, 301 and 302 handouts	each per semester	150.00
Botany 2 practicals and field trip	per semester	1 900.00
Botany 3 practicals and field trip	per semester	1 900.00
Botany Honours (including a field trip)	per annum	3 000.00
Optional field trip to Namaqualand	per annum, voluntary	2 100.00
CHEMISTRY		
Chemistry 101, 102	each per semester	455.00
Chemistry 201, 301, 202, 302	each per semester	480.00
CHERTL		
PhD		1 200.00
PGDHE		1 000.00
CHINESE STUDIES		
Chinese 1, 2 and 3	per annum	0.00
Chinese for Specific Purposes, course materials and textbooks	per annum	0.00
Chinese Studies Honours	per annum	0.00
CLASSICS		
Classics 101 and 102	per annum	469.00
Classics 201 and 202	per annum	384.00
Classics 301 and 302	per annum	384.00
Classics Honours	per annum	271.00
Classics Honours (Greek/Latin)	per annum	271.00
Classics Honours (joint)	per annum	163.00
Classics Master's	per annum	156.00
Classics Linguistics and Applied Language Studies	per annum	163.00
Greek 101 and 102	per annum	129.00
Greek 2	per annum	214.00

Greek 3	per annum	284.00
Latin 101	per annum	214.00
Latin 102	per annum	114.00
Latin 2	per annum	214.00
Latin 3	per annum	284.00
COMPUTER SCIENCE		
Introduction to ICT	each	50.00
Computer Science 101	each	250.00
Computer Science 102	each	20.00
Computer Science 112	each	50.00
Computer Science 201	per semester	220.00
Computer Science 202	per semester	80.00
Computer Science 301	per semester	180.00
Computer Science 302	per semester	50.00
Computer Science Honours (100% / 60%)	per annum	350.00
Computer Science Honours (40%)	per annum	200.00
Levy for computer usage		
Introduction to ICT	per semester	313.00
Computer Science 112	per semester	313.00
First year (mainstream)	per semester	396.00
Second year	per semester	539.00
Third year	per semester	715.00
Honours (100% and 60%)	per annum	1 588.00
DRAMA		
All courses		
Course material	each	142.00
Theatre instruction and equipment	each	1 321.00
ECONOMICS & ECONOMIC HISTORY		
Economics 101 and 102	each per semester	600.00
Economics 201	per semester	150.00
Economics 202	per semester	800.00
Economics 312, 313, 314, 317 and 318	each per semester	150.00
Economics 315, 316 (including e-book)	first semester	1 000.00
Economics Honours full	per annum	2 500.00
Master's in Financial Markets: coursework and e-book	per annum	3 250.00
Master's in Financial Markets: thesis	per annum	700.00
Master's by research thesis	per annum	700.00
Economics PhD	per annum	700.00

EDUCATION

Charge includes printed materials, Dalro royalties, field trips, printing costs for electronic submitted material.

PGCE (FP/IP)		2 404.00
PGCE (SP/FET)		2 404.00
BEd (FP) first year		2 090.00
BEd (FP) second year		2 090.00
BEd (FP) third year		3 000.00
BEd (FP) fourth year		4 530.00
BEd (IP)	per year x 2 years	2 119.00
BEd (ICT, LO, Science)		1 414.00
MEd (full supported thesis or coursework)	full fees year 1	1 929.00
MEd (full supported thesis or coursework) – additional years	each	962.00
Full thesis (other)	full fees year 1	1 568.00
Full thesis (other) – Additional years	each	523.00
BEd (Hons) Foundation Course		549.00
BEd (Hons) Elective courses		1 460.00
PhD		1 045.00
PGDip Sustainability Learning		2 500.00
PGDip HE		600.00

ENGLISH

Charge includes supplementary readings, study guides, etc. and Dalro fees where applicable

English I	per annum	410.00
English II and III	each per annum	297.00
English Honours	per annum	512.00
Karoo Trip – Honours	per annum	2 000.00

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Environmental Science 201 and 202	each	243.00
Environmental Science second year: field trips	each	1 200.00
Environmental Science 301 and 302	each	256.00
Environmental Science third year: field work/ trip	each	1 600.00
Environmental Science Honours	each	542.00
Environmental Science Honours: field trip	each	3 600.00
Environmental Science Honours: EIA course		2 417.00

EXTENDED STUDIES (FOUNDATION COURSES)

Science (handouts, field trip and lab expenses, computer skills)	R602.00
Humanities (handouts, field trip and lab expenses, computer skills)	R336.00
Commerce (handouts, field trip and lab expenses, computer skills)	R336.00

FINE ART		
<i>Please note that these are average costs, as costs vary from student to student</i>		
Fine Art Practice 1 and 2		4 733.00
Fine Art Practice 3	varies	5 175.00 – 9 520.00
Fine Art Practice 4	varies	5 176.00 – 12 573.00
Art History & Visual Culture 1- 4	each	193.00
Levy for computer lab usage where appropriate	per semester	909.00
FRENCH		
French 1	each	436.00
French 2 and 3	each	321.00
French Honours (joint)		254.00
French Honours (full-time)		473.00
GEOGRAPHY		
<i>Charge includes course material and non-residential field trips</i>		
Earth Science 101	first semester	178.00
Geography 102	second semester	150.00
Geography 201 and 202	each per semester	224.00
Geography 301	second semester	224.00
Geography 302	first semester	371.00
Geography Honours	per module	431.00
Geography Environmental Water Management Honours	per module	431.00
Geography Spatial Development Honours	per module	431.00
Full-time Linguistics and Applied Language Studies and PhD		431.00
GIS laboratory fee usage where appropriate	per semester	614.00
Field courses		
<i>This amount is an average; destination, transport and available accommodation dependent</i>		
Geography 201 and 202		881.00
Geography 301		747.00
Geography 302		881.00
Geography Honours	per module	1 044.00
Geography Honours student conference		1 284.00
Geography Honours introductory field trip		1 209.00
GEOLOGY		
Earth Science 101	per module	170.00
Course material		
GLG 102	per semester	200.00
GLG 201 and 202	each per semester	200.00
GLG 301 and 302	each per semester	200.00
Geology Honours	per annum	300.00

Field courses		
GLG 102	per annum	412.00
GLG 2	per annum	1 696.00
GLG 3	per annum	1 836.00
Geology Honours	per annum	3 851.00
Equipment levy		
GLG 201 and 202	each per semester	40.00
GLG 301, 302	each per semester	49.00
Geology Honours	per annum	479.00
Research MSc/PhD	each per annum	715.00
GERMAN		
German 1, 2 and 3 (Foreign Language)	each	198.00
German Honours		198.00
German Linguistics and Applied Language Studies		171.00
HISTORY		
History 101 and 102	each	135.00
HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS		
HKE 1 and 2	per annum	315.00
HKE 3	per annum	411.00
Honours: manuals, handouts and field trips	per annum	1 200.00
ICHTHYOLOGY		
Ichthyology 2		
Course materials and practicals	per semester	224.00
Field trip	per annum	2 100.00
Ichthyology 3		
Course materials and practicals	per semester	224.00
Field trip	per annum	2 100.00
Ichthyology Honours		
Course materials	per annum	627.00
Field trips	per annum	8 257.00 – 11 763.00
INFORMATION SYSTEMS		
<i>Charge includes handout and copyright charges. A Dalro fee not more than R240.00 may be charged per course</i>		
Information Systems 201	per semester	30.00
Information Systems 202	per semester	30.00
Information Systems 203	per semester	30.00
Information Systems 301	per semester	30.00
Information Systems 302	per semester	50.00
Information Systems Honours: 100% and 60%	per year	100.00
Honours: 40%	per year	50.00

Start-up week	per year	600.00
Levy: computer usage		
First year	See computer sci	
Second year	per semester	446.00
Third year	per semester	668.00
Honours 100% and 60%	per annum	1 484.00
JOURNALISM & MEDIA STUDIES		
Handouts and Dalro		
JMS 1		25.00
JMS 2		50.00
JMS 3		530.00
JMS 4		570.00
PGDip		570.00
Honours		100.00
Master's (all years)		500.00
Master's - Production (practical)		750.00
PDMM: textbooks, readers and course handouts		3 283.00
Equipment levy		
JMS	first year	360.00
JMS 2		2 915.00
JMS 3		5 831.00
JMS 4		6 745.00
PGDip		5 831.00
Honours		2 915.00
Master's (All years)		2 205.00
PHD	first year	2 205.00
Consumables		
JMS 1		25.00
JMS 2		75.00
JMS 3	each	100.00
JMS 4		100.00
PGDip		100.00
Honours	each	100.00
Master's (all years)		100.00
Master's – Production (practical)		250.00
Fieldtrips, studio fees, exhibition, printing and documentary project expenses		
JMS3, PGDip & MA Production	per field trip	1 500.00
JMS4 studio fees, fieldtrips, documentary project, printing and exhibition expenses		
Fieldtrips	per field trip	3 000.00

Transport for journalistic fieldwork	per student	1 000.00
Photo-journalism studio fees	per student	1 000.00
Exhibition expenses	per student	600.00
Television documentary project expenses	per student	2 000.00
Design professional printing expenses	per student	1 000.00
LAW		
<i>This is a charge per degree, and LLB students will not be charged for the individual law courses</i>		
LLB-N1		745.00
LLB-N2		675.00
LLB-N3		1 670.00
LLB-N4		1 600.00
Introduction to Law		160.00
Foundations of Law		180.00
Legal Interpretation		30.00
Constitutional Law A		30.00
Constitutional Law B		30.00
Legal Pluralism		35.00
Law of Contract A		35.00
Law of Persons		30.00
Law of Property A		35.00
Law of Contract B		35.00
Law of Life Partnerships		35.00
Law of Property B		35.00
COL 101 (Dalro fee)		130.00
COL 101		20.00
COL 102		20.00
COL 201 & COL 202		277.00
Legal Theory 1 DALRO fee		55.00
LINGUISTICS AND APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES		
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 1	per annum	600.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 2	per annum	599.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies 3	per annum	185.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Honours (Joint)	per annum	151.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Honours	per annum	301.00
Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Master's	per annum	301.00
Coursework Master's	per annum	301.00
Professional Communications	per annum	386.00

MANAGEMENT		
<i>Charge includes handouts and DALRO royalties</i>		
Management 101, 102	each per semester	141.00
Management 101, 102 (interactive online textbook)	once off	676.00
Management 211, 212, 213 and 214	each per term	141.00
Management 211, 212, 213 and 214 (interactive online textbook)	once off	971.00
Management 311, 312, 313 and 314	each per term	212.00
BBS 4 / Honours: papers 1–7	each per term	998.00
BBS 4 / Honours: paper 8	once off	2 222.00
MATHEMATICS (PURE & APPLIED)		
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 101, MAM 102 and MAT1F	per annum	239.00
Mathematics for Sciences MAT 1S	per annum	239.00
Theory of Finance TOF 1C1 and TOF 1F	per annum	239.00
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 201	first semester	179.00
Mathematics & Applied Mathematics MAM 202	second semester	179.00
Applied Mathematics MAM 311, MAP311, MAP 312 and MAP314	per annum	358.00
Mathematics MAM 311, MAT 311, MAT 313 and MAT 315	per annum	358.00
MICROBIOLOGY		
Microbiology 2 course material	per annum	73.00
Microbiology 3 course material	per annum	112.00
Microbiology 2 and 3 laboratory and equipment levy		291.00
Microbiology 201 field trip		969.00
Microbiology 302 field trip and events		244.00
Microbiology Honours course material		147.00
Levy for computer usage where appropriate		3 721.00
MUSIC & MUSICOLOGY		
<i>Charge includes course materials and use of equipment</i>		
Ethnomusicology 101		387.00
Ethnomusicology 202		400.00
Instrumental Music 1, 2 and 3		650.00
Music and Musicology Honours		700.00
Music and Musicology Honours Joint		700.00
Music 4		700.00
Music Culture and History 3		700.00
Music Health and the Brain 1		350.00
Music Linguistics and Applied Language Studies by performance and Linguistics and Applied Language Studies Thesis		700.00
Music Master's		700.00
Music PhD		700.00

Music Theory and Analysis 101 and 102		459.00
Musicology 102 and 201		387.00
Sound Technology 1S1		489.00
Sound Technology 2		750.00
Sound Technology 3		750.00
PHARMACY		
Levy for computer laboratory usage where appropriate	per semester	602.00
PHILOSOPHY		
Philosophy 101 and 102	each	160.00
Philosophy 201 and 202	each	160.00
Philosophy 3	each	480.00
Honours	each	800.00
Joint Honours	per paper	320.00
MA Coursework	per paper	800.00
LiNtetho zoBomi 101 and 102	per semester	330.00
PHYSICS		
Physics 101, 102, 1E1 and 1E2	each	200.00
Physics 201 and 202	each	227.00
Physics 301 and 302	each	253.00
Physics Honours	per annum	479.00
POLITICAL & INTERNATIONAL STUDIES		
<i>Charge includes course fee, handouts, DALRO and photocopying</i>		
Political & International Studies 101 and 102	per semester	0.00
Political & International Studies 2	annually	0.00
Political & International Studies 3	annually	0.00
Honours	annually	0.00
Joint Honours	annually	0.00
Master's (resident only)	annually	0.00
PhD (resident only)	annually	0.00
PSYCHOLOGY		
Psychology 1		120.00
Psychology 2		335.00
Psychology 3		335.00
Organisational Psychology 2		335.00
Organisational Psychology 3		335.00
Psychology Honours		722.00
Clinical Psychology professional fee		3 351.00
Clinical Psychology Resale		1 257.00
Counselling Psychology resale fee		1 257.00

Counselling Psychology professional fee		3 351.00
SOCIOLOGY		
Sociology 1, 2 and 3	per annum	500.00
Industrial Sociology 2 and 3	per annum	500.00
Honours and Master's coursework thesis	per annum	250.00
STATISTICS		
Statistics 1P1 and 1S1	per semester	170.00
Statistics 1C2	per semester	315.00
Mathematical Statistics 102		280.00
Mathematical Statistics 201 and 202	each per semester	280.00
Mathematical Statistics 301 and 302	each per semester	330.00
Mathematical Statistics Honours		500.00
Levy for computer laboratory usage where appropriate	per semester	614.00
ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY		
Cell Biology 101 handouts	first semester	300.00
Cell Biology 101 e-textbook	first semester	650.00
Entomology 200 and 300 handouts	each per semester	200.00
Entomology 200 lab class materials	per annum	604.00
Entomology 300 lab class materials	per annum	200.00
Zoology 102 handouts	second semester	200.00
Zoology 102 lab class materials	second semester	0.00
Zoology 102 e-textbook	second semester	600.00
Zoology 200 and 300 handouts	each per semester	200.00
Zoology 201 e-textbook	first semester	600.00
Honours handouts	each per annum	150.00
Field trips		
Entomology 201, 301 (Weekend trip)	each second semester	2 100.00
Entomology 201, 301 (Day trip)	each second semester	1 000.00
Entomology 202	first semester	1 200.00
Entomology 302	first semester	250.00
Honours	per annum	1 100.00
Zoology 201	first semester	400.00
Zoology 202	second semester	400.00
Zoology 301	first semester	1 200.00
Zoology 302	first semester	400.00



RHODES UNIVERSITY
Where leaders learn